

The
History
Compendium

- **Head Office** : B-32, Shivalik Main Road, Malviya Nagar, New Delhi-110017
- **Sales Office** : B-48, Shivalik Main Road, Malviya Nagar, New Delhi-110017
Tel. : 011-26691021 / 26691713

Typeset by Disha DTP Team



DISHA PUBLICATION

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

© Copyright Publisher

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form without prior permission of the publisher. The author and the publisher do not take any legal responsibility for any errors or misrepresentations that might have crept in. We have tried and made our best efforts to provide accurate up-to-date information in this book.

For further information about the books from DISHA,

Log on to www.dishapublication.com or email to info@dishapublication.com

CONTENTS

Unit-I : ANCIENT HISTORY OF INDIA

- 1. Sources of Ancient Indian History** **H-1-H-12**
Introduction; Religious; Secular & Sangam Literature
- 2. Pre-historic Period** **H-13-H-22**
Introduction; Stone Age; Chalcolithic (Bronze) Age; Iron Age
- 3. Indus Valley Civilization** **H-23-H-38**
Introduction; Discovery; Geographical Extent; Nomenclature; Centres; Controversial Period
Features; Link with other Civilizations; Decline; Survival and Continuity
- 4. The Vedic Age** **H-39-H-52**
Introduction; Coming of The Aryans; Various; Theories regarding the ancestry of Aryans;
Original Home of the Aryans; Important Vedic Fact; Advent and Expansion of Aryans in India;
Vedic Rivers; Early Vedic Age; Later Vedic Age
- 5. Emergence of Mahajanapadas & Magadh** **H-53-H-58**
Introduction; Origin and Development; Causes of New Culture and Religion; Different
Mahajanapadas; Emergence of Magadh
- 6. Religious Revolution** **H-59-H-74**
Introduction; Society; Jainism; Buddhism; Hindu Revivalist Movement
- 7. The Mauryan Empire** **H-75-H-90**
Introduction; Chandragupta Maurya; Bindusura; Ashoka; Mauryan Administration; Mauryan
Art and Architect; Aftermath of Maurya
- 8. The Sangam Age** **H-91-H-98**
Introduction; The Cholas; The Pandayas; The Cheras; Sangam Literature & Polity; Law and
justice; Social life; Economy; Religion; Art and Architecture
- 9. The Gupta Empire** **H-99-H-118**
Chandragupta I; Samudragutpa; Chandragupta II; Kumaragupta I; Maheraditya; Skandagupta;
Vikramaditya; Revenue and Trade; Administration: Art and Architecture; Literature; Science
and Technology; Post-Gupta Age
- 10. India After Harsha** **H-119-H-128**
Introduction; Gurjara-Pratiharas; Palas; The Rajputs; Growth of Regional Languages; Muslim
Invasion of Sindh

UNIT-II : MEDIEVAL HISTORY OF INDIA

- 11. Medieval Period** **H-129-H-138**
Introduction; Sources of Medieval Period; Early Medieval Period; Emergence of new Kingdoms
- 12. The Delhi Sultanate** **H-139-H-154**
The Background of Delhi Sultanate; Slave Dynasty; Khilji Dynasty; Tughlaq Dynasty; Sayyid
Dynasty; Lodi Dynasty; Administration of Sultanate; Post-Sultanate Period; Prominent Rulers
of Delhi Sultanate

13. The Vijayanagar Empire **H-155-H-160**

Introduction; Vijayanagar Dynasties; Amara-nayaka System; Architecture of the city of Vijaynagar

14. Sufi and Bhakti Movement **H-161-H-166**

Introduction; The Sufi Movement; The Bhakti Movement

15. The Mughal Empire **H-167-H-186**

Introduction; Major Events During Mughal Period; Features Of Mughal Administration; The Mughal Family Tree; Emperors of Mughal Dynasty; The Suri Dynasty; Economic And Social Developments; Arts & Culture; Decline of Mughal empire

UNIT-III : MODERN HISTORY

16. Chronology of the British India **H-187-H-202**

Introduction; The Portuguese; The Dutch; The English; The French; Carnatic War; 18th Century India; Socio-Economic Condition; Governor Generals; Important Acts in British India

17. The British East India Company **H-203-H-218**

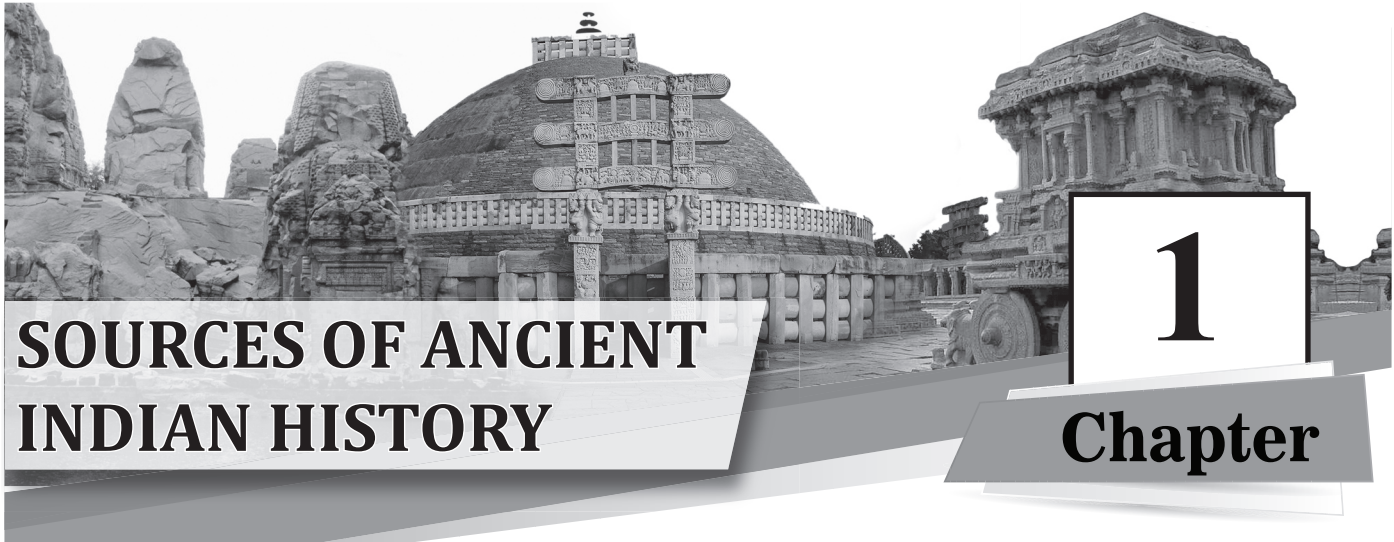
Introduction; Bengal In 18th Century; Battle of Plassey; Battle of Buxar ; The Expansion of British Empire; Economic Impact of British Rule in India; Stages of British Colonialism

18. Indian Freedom Struggle **H-219-H-264**

Intro; Revolts; The 1857 Revolt; National Movement
Indian National Congress; Major Movement Acts, Commission and Parties; Famous Personalities of Indian Freedom Struggle

HISTORY

UNIT-I : ANCIENT HISTORY OF INDIA



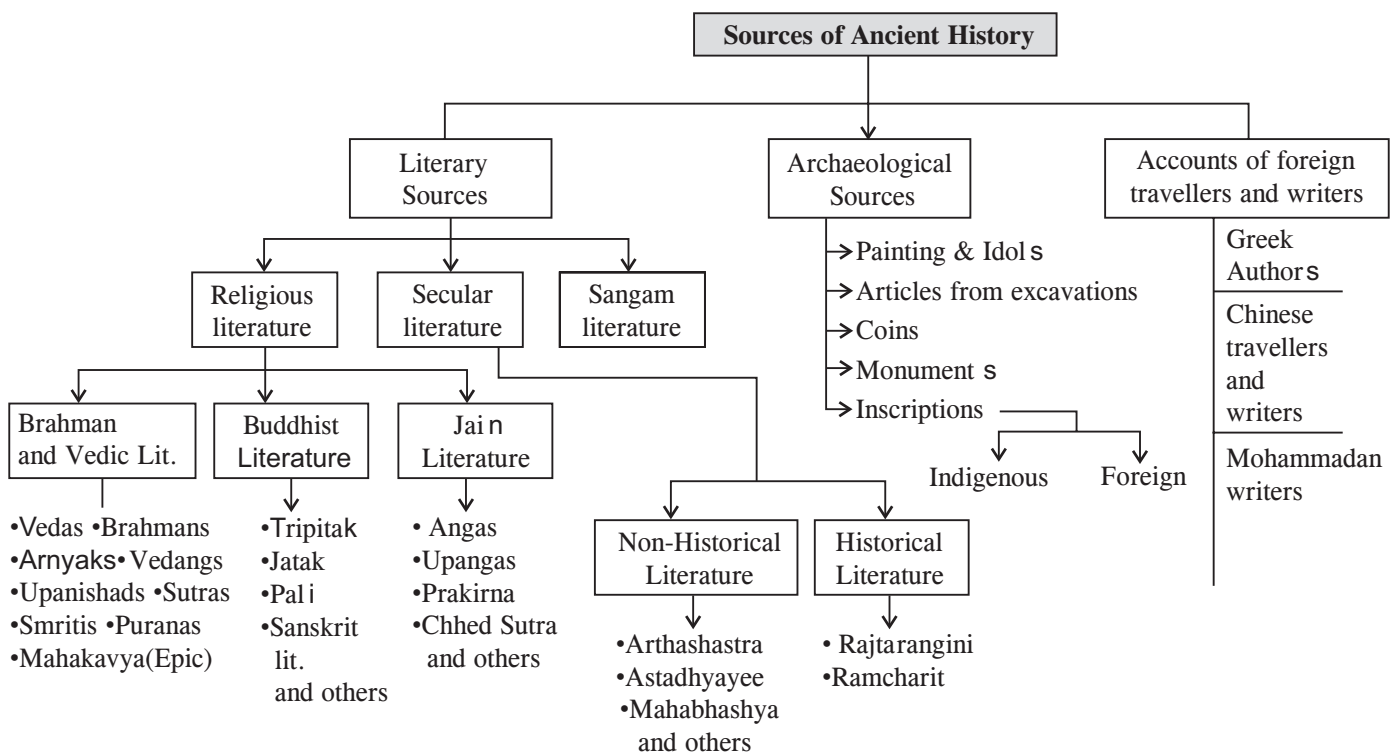
SOURCES OF ANCIENT INDIAN HISTORY

1

Chapter

Introduction

Generally, Ancient History of India is divided into three periods - **Palaeolithic period** (pre-historic period); **Mesolithic period** (Prime historic period) and **Neolithic period**. The three stone ages (old, middle and new) are known as pre-historic period and there is no written evidence found for the study of that period. Though with the help of different sources we are able to study it in a chronological order. These sources include coins, monuments, old weapons, toys and ornaments, etc. For the study of ancient history in a good chronological order we need to divide the different sources into three broad divisions - (1) **Literary sources** (2) **Archaeological sources** (3) **Accounts of foreign travellers and writers**.



LITERARY SOURCES

RELIGIOUS LITERATURE

Brahmans and Vedic literary Source

The Vedas

The word 'veda' originated from the root 'vidi', i.e. to know, signifying knowledge. It is also known as *Shruti* (to hear). There are four vedas - the *Rigveda*, *Samaveda*, *Yajurveda* and *Atharvaveda*.

Rigveda

The Rigveda is the oldest one, and therefore, is also known as 'the first testament of mankind'. It must have been composed around 1700 B.C. The first three vedas are known as 'Trayi'. It has 1017 hymns (Sukta) and is divided into ten *mandalas*. After the addition of the eleven Bal Khilya Sutra the total no. of hymns becomes 1028. The tenth mandala, said to have added later as its language differs from the other nine mandalas, contains the famous *Purushasukta* explaining the four *varnas* (*Brahmana*, *Kshatriya*, *Vaishya* and *Shudra*) born from the mouth, arms, thighs and feet of the creator. Thus, the Rigveda has 10 Mandalas, 1028 Suktas and 10,580 Richas.

The 7th and 2nd Mandalas were the very first composition, later on the other mandalas were composed. The 7th and 2nd Mandalas are called '*Vansha Mandal*'; the handwritten script of 8th mandal is called 'Khila' and the 1st and 10th are known as 'Kshepak'.

Yajurveda

It has 40 chapters and 2000 hymns. It is a *ritual veda* and has two main texts: Krishna Yajurveda and Shukla Yajurveda. It is also called the book of sacrificial *prayers*. Krishna Yajurveda contains *mantras* (*hymns*) and the Shukla has commentary *in prose*. *Kasthak*, *Kapishthal*, *Maitrayani*, *Taittiriya* and *Vajasneyi* are the five branches of Yajurveda in which the first four are related to the Krishna Yajurveda and the last one is to Shukla Yajurveda. Yajurveda is a good collection of hymns composed in both prose and poetry. *Ishopanishad*, the last chapter of Yajurveda, is philosophical and metaphysical whereas the rest of all parts of Yajurveda's subject matter is the law and legislation of various *yajanas*.

Samaveda

The Samaveda is a collection of *melodies*. It has 1549 Shlokas (richas) but except 78 all the rest of the hymns have been borrowed from the Rigveda. These were meant to be sung at the time of soma sacrifice. Samaveda has two parts: *Purvarchika* (having six subdivisions called '*Apathaka*') and *Uttrarchika* (having nine subdivisions called '*Prapathaka*'). To the historical point of view the Samaveda has less importance.

Atharvaveda

It is the latest of the four. It describes the popular *beliefs* and *superstitions* of the humble folk. It is divided into 20 books volumes. It contains 731 hymns and 5,987 mantras.

About 1200 **Mantras** have been taken from the Rigveda. The hymns of Atharvaveda tell how to overcome the evil spirit. *Shaunk* and *Pippalad* are the two available branches of this veda. The Atharvaveda is also known as *Brahmaveda* or *Atharvagirasveda*. For a very long time it was not considered in the category of the Vedas. It is a book of *magical formulae*.

Points to Remember

- In Rigveda we have 40 rivers and the *Saraswati* river is called the *mother of rivers*.
- The name of four oceans found in the Rigveda are Apar, Purva, Saraswat and Sharyajavat.
- 6 mandals from 2nd to 7th of Rigveda are called *Gotra Vamsha Mandalas* (*Kula Grantha*).

Vedas	Upvedas	dealing with
Rig	Dhanurveda	Archery
Sam	Gandharva	the art of music
Atharva	Ayurveda	the medical science
Yaju	Sthapatyaved	Architecture

The Brahmanas

The Brahmanas were composed after the vedas to explain the hymns of the vedas. Every veda has several Brahmanas attached to it. **Kausitiki** and **Aitareya** are the Brahmanas books of the Rigveda composed by **Hotri priests**. Aitareya has 40 chapters. Kausitiki is also called *Sankhyayan Brahman*. 'Taittiriya is the Brahman of Krishna Yajurveda and Shatpath is attached to shukla Yajurveda composed by Adhvaryu priest Yagyavalka. It narrates the progress of culture from Kuru-Panchal to Videha. The one hundred chapters of Shatpath are divided into 14 sections which are very exhaustive and important of all the Brahmanas. The Samaveda has three Brahmanas i.e. Tandayamaha Brahman, Khadvisha Brahmana and Jaiminiya Brahman were composed by **Udgatri priests**. The Gopath Brahman is attached to the Atharvaveda.

In his Mahabhashya, Patanjali has described thousands of branches of Samveda but only three branches, i.e. Kauthum, Ranayaniya and Jaimaniya are available.

The name of Rishabha and Arishtanemi (Jaintirthankar) are found in the Rigveda environment of jungles were called *Aaranyak* (the word *aranyak* means 'the forest'). They deal with philosophical doctrines and mysticism to answer the various complex questions, related to human life. In fact, these are the concluding portion of the Brahmanas. There are seven Aranyakas, i.e. **Aitareya**, **Sankhyayana**, **Taittiriya**, **Maitrayani**, **Madhyanandin**, **Talvakar** and **Jaiminiya**. These books are *opposed to sacrifices and rituals* and lay emphasis on *meditation* and *moral virtues* to form a bridge between the Karma Marga (way of work) and the Gyan Marga (way of knowledge).

The Upanishads

The word upanishad is a combined form of the two Sanskrit words, *i.e.* *upa* and *nishad* which means *to sit down near someone* (here, the Guru) and get the secret knowledge by him. There are 108 upanishads, *e.g.* **Jesh, Kath, Ken, Mandukya, Brihadaranyka, Mundaka, Chhandogya, Taittiriya, Aitareya and Kaushitiki** are some important upanishads. The Upanishads are anti-ritualistic discussing the theories of creation of the universe and defining the doctrine of action with the goal to attain salvation through meditation and self-control. The Upanishads were composed by several learned saints between 800 and 500 B.C. The famous doctrine of Advaitavada is ascertained in the Upanishads. The famous national statement '*Satyameva Jayate*' has been taken from the *Mundaka Upanishad*.

All the works referred above are known as *shrutis*, which means '*revelation*'. The word *shruti* means '*hearing*' and refers to the rhythms of the infinite hearing by the soul.

Vedangas

The six vedangas - **Shiksha, Kalpa, Vyakarana, Nirukta, Chhanda and Jyotisha** were composed in the later Vedic period. Shiksha deals with the appropriate pronunciation of the Mantras. Kalpa is related to rituals, duties and sanskara. Vyakarana deals with grammar and the science of language, Nirukta with etymology. Yaskacharya's Nirukta is very famous. Chhanda deals with rhyming scheme. Chhandasutra was composed by Acharya Pingle. Jyotish deals with astronomy in which we find the proper calculation of the right position of the sun and the moon and various heavenly bodies to perform rituals and ceremonies. Jyotish vedanga is a famous book for it in which we get as many as 400 shlokas.

Sutrars

Kalpasutra is quite famous among Sutra Literature. It has three parts - Srauta, Grihya and Dharma. Srauta Sutra explains the subjects of rituals and various types of yajnas ceremonies. **Sankhyanan, Aashvakayan, Latkayan, Kattayana and Bodhayan** are the chief compositions of Sutra literature. Grihya Sutra deals with various sanskaras and the four *Ashramas*, *i.e.* *Brahmacharya, Grihastha, Vanprastha* and *Sannyasa* of human life. Dharmasutra deals with the social life of the Vedic era in which various code of conduct and religious matters are explained. Besides these we have Kaushiki sutra (Medical science and remedies) and Sulva sutra.

Smritis

Smriti means '*remembrance*'. Smritis, the auxiliary treatises of the vedas, are regarded as a part of the revelation. There are six famous smritis: Manu smriti (of pre-Gupta period), Yajnavalkya smriti (of Pre-Gupta period), Narad smriti (of Gupta period), Parashara smriti (Gupta period) Brihaspati smriti (Gupta period) and Katyayana smriti (Gupta period).

Points to Remember

Name of the Smritis	Chief Commentators
Manu	Vishwarupa, Medghatithi, Govindraj Kulluk Bhatt
Yajnavalkya, Narad	Vishwarupa, Vijnyaneshwar, Apararka
Parashar	Madhavacharya

Assess Yourself

Match the Column		
A.	Srauta	1. Geometrical construction & making of canopy
B.	Grihya	2. Therapeutic
C.	Dharma	3. Ceremonics and sacrifices
D.	Kaushiki	4. Husbandry
E.	Sulva	5. Social behaviour and religious matters and Varnasramas

Puranas

The 'Purana' means 'the old'. There are 18 '*Puranas*' in which the *Matsya purana* is the oldest puran. These puranas describe the genealogies of various royal dynasties, *i.e.* Maurya, Andhra, Shishunag, Gupta, etc. The name of puranas are: Brahma, Padma, Vishnu, Shiva, Bhagvat, Narad, Markandey, Agni, Bhavishya Brahma-vaivartya, Linga Varah, Skanda, Vaman, Kurma, Matsya, Garur and Brahmand. Besides these there are 19 Upapuranas. Lomharsha or his son Ugrashrava is said to be the compiler of puranas.

Mahakavya (Epics)

There are two Mahakavyas (Epics), *i.e.* the **Ramayana** (Valmiki) and the **Mahabharata** (Ved Vyasa). **The Ramayana** the oldest epic of the world, is known as '*Adi Kavya*'. It consists of 24,000 shlokas divided into 07 **Kandas** (Bal Kand, Ayodhya Kand and Aranya Kand, Kishkindha Kand, Sundar Kand, Lanka Kand and Uttar Kand). The 1st and 7th Kand were the latest additions to the Ramayana. The Ramayana is said to be composed in 5th century B.C. Originally it had only 6, 000 verses. Later on it became 12,000 and finally it has 24,000 shlokas.

The Mahabharat of Ved Vyasa is the longest epic of the world consisting of 1,00,000 shlokas in 18 parvans or chapters in which shanti parvan is the largest parvan. The *Bhagavad Gita* is extracted from the Bhishma Parvan of the Mahabharata. The Mahabharata is said to be composed between 400 B.C. to A.D. 400. Originally it had only 8,800 shlokas under the name of *Jay Samhita*, later on it was called *chaturvinshati sahasri samhita* or *Bharat* consisting of 24,000 shlokas and finally it became *Mahabharata* or *Shatasahasri Samhita* with 1,00,000 shlokas. It is also called '**Panchamveda**'.

Darshans

Like Smritis, Vedangas and Upvedas, Darshans are also the auxiliary treaties of the vedas. There are six schools of Indian philosophy known as *Shad-Darshans*. These are Sankhya (Kapil), Yoga (Patanjali), Nyaya (Akshapad Gautam), Vaishesika (Uluka Kanada), Purva Mimansa (Jaimini) and Vedanta or Uttar Mimansa (Badarayana).

Buddhist Literature

Tripitaka

There are three tripitak - Vinay Pitaka, Sutta Pitaka and Abhidhamma Pitaka. *Pitaka* means 'basket'. The original texts were written on palm-leaves and kept in baskets. Therefore these works were called Pitaka. *Sutta Pitaka* is the gist of Buddha's sayings, *Vinay Pitaka* explains the code and conduct of Buddhist organization. Abhidhamma Pitaka is divided into seven parts. Dighra Nikaya, Majjhim Nikaya, Samyukta Nikaya, Anguttar Nikaya and Khuddaka (Kshudraka Nikaya) are the chief divisions of sutta-pitaka. *Sutta Pitaka* deals with the religions discourses of Buddha.

Deepvansha and **Mahavansha** present the chronicles of Sri Lanka dealing with the important events related to the various rulers and their administrations.

Milindapanhs (i.e. questions of Milinda, the gando-greck rules) presents dialogues between Menander and Buddhist saint Nagsen.

Sanskrit Texts

Buddha charitya, Saundarananda, Sutralankar, Sariputra Prakaran and Vajra suchi are famous books written by *Ashwaghosha*. Pragyaparimita Karika are the sources of the contemporary historical materials. Visudhamagga, Atthakatha, Vasumitra's Mahavibhasa Shastra and Nagarijuna's Madhyamika Kuria are Sumangalvasini by Buddhaghosa supply us some important historical material with doses of religious messages.

Jatak Kathas

There are 549 or 547 tales describing the pre-birth stories of Buddha. These are the parts of art and literature and useful for the historical study of 3rd century B.C. They present a socio-economic conditions of Mauryan Period.

Assess Yourself

Match the column	
A. Indian Buddhist text	1. Jatakas
B. Ceylonese Buddhist Chronicles	2. Dipavansha
C. Tibetan Buddhist text	3. Mahavansha
	4. Divyavadana

Jain Literature

The literature of the Swetambaras is written in Ardhamagadhi Prakrit including 12 Angas, 12 Upangas, 10 Prakirnakas, 06 Chhedasutras, 04 Mulasutras and 02 Sutra Granthas. All the Jain granthas were compiled in the Council of Vallabhi in A.D. 516 in which we can find the exposition of about Prasenjit, Ajatshatru, Vibishar etc. Parishtaparvan and Bhadrabahu charit supply the descriptions about Chandragupta Maurya. Parishtaparvan, Trishishta Shalaka, Purusham Choritra, Dwayashray Mahakavya, Mahaveer Charit, Kumarpal Charit are the important religious books helpful for the study of ancient history.

Assess Yourself

Match the column	
A. Navasahasanka charit	1. Jai Singh
B. Kumarpal charit	2. Nyaya Chandra
C. Hampir kavya	3. Ballal
D. Bhoja prabandh	4. Aswaghosha
E. Buddhacharita	5. Bhadrabahu
F. Kalpa sutra	6. Sarvanandin
G. Loka vibhanga	7. Padmagupta

Secular Literature

Non-historical Sources

Arthashastra: It was composed by *Kautilya (Chanakya)*. It gives a methodological analysis of political and economic conditions of the Mauryan period.

Mudra-rakshasa: It was written by **Vishakh Dutt** during Gupta Period. It explains the destruction of the Nandas by Chandra Gupta Maurya with the help of **Chanakya**.

Astadyayee composed by Panini, is a grammar on which Patanjali has written annotation. Its name is **Mahabhashya**. This book explains the conditions of Mauryan Period. Gargi Samhita describes the onset of the yavanas in India. Similarly, Kalidash's Abhijnayan Shakuntalam and Malvikagnimitram explain the conditions of society and culture of the Gupta's period. The fight between the Yavan and Pushyamitra Sunga is also mentioned in it. The Swapnavasvadutta of Bhasa throws light on the various events of the Gupta period. Buddha swami's, 'Vrihadkata', 'Kshemendra's. Vrihatkathamajari, Somdeva's, 'Kathasaritsagar' are the important books describing the ancient society and culture of India.

Mudrarakshasa and **Devichandraguptam** are the compositions of the Gupta period. The establishment of the Maurya dynasty, the fall of the Nanda Vansha, Ramgupta as well as **Dhruvadevi's** story, all are explained by Vishakhadutta. King Harshavardhana of 7th century A.D. wrote Naganand, Priyadarshika and Ratnavali. In the very period his courtier poet *Banabhatta* wrote '*Harshacharita*'. In all these compositions we gain the knowledge of Harsha's kingship and administration.

Gaudvaho by Vakpatiraj explains the victory of king Yashovarman of Kannauj and the subjugation of Gauda. Padmagupta Parimal wrote Navsahasanka Charit. It describes the various events of the Parmara of Malva. Vilhana in his epic **Vikramank dev charitam** has described the achievements of the King of Chalukya Vikramaditya (VI). **Chand Bardai's (Prithviraj Raso)**, Jayanak's Prithviraj Vijay and Kumarpal Charit, Jaganakas' Parmal Raso are some important compositions through which we understand the various events of Rajputana Period.

Historical Literature

In 12th century A.D *Kalhana* wrote '*Rajtarangini*' describing about the rulers of Kashmir. *Rajtarangini* is considered to be the **first historical book of India**. Sandhyakar Nandi's Ramcharit is also a historical creation describing the works and achievements of Rampal, the pal ruler of Bengal.

Assess Yourself

Match the column	
A. Ramcharit	1. Kalhan
B. Rajtarangini	2. Vakpatiraj
C. Parmal Raso	3. Vilhan
D. Prithviraj Vijay	4. Jayanak
E. Vikramadev Charit	5. Jagnik
F. Gandvaho	6. Sandhyakar Nandi

Assess Yourself

Match Box	
A. Arthashastra	1. Harshvardhana
B. Astadhyayee	2. Chanakaya
C. Mahabhashya	3. Panini
D. Malvikagnimitram	4. Patanjali
E. Swapnavasavdutta	5. Bhash
F. Ratnavali	6. Kalidas

Sangam Literature

Sangam was a college or assembly of Tamil poets held under Royal patronage of Pandayan Kings in Madurai. It is said that the assembly lasted for 9,990 years and was attended by 8,598 poets and 197 pandyas. The narrative texts are called **Melkannakku** (consisting of 18 major works and 10 idylls) show that the early Tamil people were pastoral. These are heroic poetry giving ideas of the state formation in which the army consisted of the groups of warriors, and the taxation system and judiciary.

The didactic texts cover the early centuries of the Christian era. **Padnekilkanakku** is called **Kilakanakku** (18 minor works) describes the code of conduct and occupations of various social groups. Kural or Muppall, a part of Padnekilkanakku, was written by Tiruvalluvar is called 'The Bible of Tamil Land'.

The Three Sangam at a glance				
Sl. No	Venue	Chairmanship	Available texts	No. of patron
I Sangam	Ten-Mudurai (South) (Old-Capital) of Pandayas	Agattiyar	×	89
II Sangam	Kapatapuram/Alvai (engulfed in sea)	Agastaya Tolakapiyyar (grammar & poetics)	Tolkappiyam	59
III Sangam	North Madurai	Nakkirar	Ettutogai, Pattu-Pattu* Patinenkanakku	49

*Ettutogai and Pattu-Pattu are called Melakanakku.

Sangam Epics: Silappadikaram, Manimekalai, Sivaga Sindamani, etc. Around the 6th century A.D. the two epics, *i.e.* Silappadikaram (the story of the Anklet) and Manimekalai were composed. The first was written by **Ilango Adigal** which deals with the story of Kovalan and Madhavi of Kaveripattinam. Kovalan falls in love with Madhavi and forgets his noble wedded wife Kannagi. This epic is called '*Illiad of Tamil poetry*'. The Manimekalai, written by a grain merchant named **Sittalai Sattanar**, deals with the adventures of Manimekala, the daughter born of Kovalan and Madhavi. The authors of the two epics were friends who were the contemporaries of the Chera King Senguttuvan, who ruled in the 2nd century A.D. These epics reflect the social and economic life of the Tamils upto about the 6th century A.D. The Manimekalai is strongly tinged with Buddhism whereas the Sivaga Sindamani (Jivaka Chintamani), written by Jain Tiruttakradevas, is tinged with Jainism. Sivaga Sindamani shows the dominance of Sanskrit style over the indigenous style of the previous epics. Bharatam, a Tamil epic, was composed of Perudevanar. It also has great importance in Tamil literature.

Sangam Literature and their authors	Authors	Subject/nature/Hint
Agattiyam	Agastya	A work on grammar of letters
Tolkappiyam (Tamil grammar)	Tolakapiyyar	A treatise on grammar & poetry
Ettutogai (8 anthologies)	- -	Melkannakku combined form.
Pattu Pattu (10 idyls)	- -	Melkannakku combined form.
Patinenkilakanakku (18 minor works)	- -	A didactic work.
Kural (Muppall)	Tiruvalluvar	A treatise on polity, ethics, social norms.
Silappadikaram	Ilango Adigal	A love story of Kovalan Smadhavi
Manimekalai	Sittalai Sattanar	The adventures of Manimekalai

Sivaga Sindamani	Tiruttakadevar	A sanskrit treatise
Bharatam	Perudevanar	The last epic
Pannirupadalam (grammar)	12 disciples of Agastya	A grammatical work on puram literature
Kakkipadinyam (Prosody)	- -	A work on prosody

Assess Yourself

Match the Column

A. The earliest tamil work	1. Kural or Muppall
B. The Bible of Tamil land	2. Agattiyam
C. The Illiyad of Tamil poetry	3. Silappadikaram
D. A book of Philosophy & Maxims	4. Tirukkural

Know more about Literature

Some important Literature/Books	Writer
Anekant Vijay	Haribhadra Suri
Kuvalaymala	Udyaodan Souri
Kalpasutra	Bhadrabahu
Nyaya Bhasya	Vatsyayana
Mudra Rakshas	Vishakha Dutt
Malvikagnimitram	Kalidas
Raghuvamsam	Kalidas
Meghdootam	Kalidas
Ritusamahar	Kalidas
Mrichcha katikam	Shudrak
Kam Sutra	Vatsyayana

Kadambari	Banbhata
Ballal Charit	Anand Bhatt
Katha Sarit Sagar	Somadeva
Kavya Darsha	Dandin
Kirartarjunyam	Bharavi
Nitishatakma	Bhartahari
Vikramovarshiyam	Kalidas
Charudatta	Bhasa
Pratigya Yaugan dharayana	Bhasa
Prayag Prasasti	Harisena
Sankhya Akarika	Ishwar krishna
Padartha Dharma	Sangraha
Vyasa Bhasya (A yogophi)	Acharya Vyasa

ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOURCES

The systematic study of ancient buildings, monuments and work of art present evidences and knowledge about the ancient world. Coins, Inscriptions, Monuments and Material from excavations are the great sources through which we study about the old civilization and culture of ancient time.

Excavations

The credit for excavating the Pre-Aryan past goes to *Sir William Jones* of Asiatic Bengal Society (established on 1st Jan 1784). James Prinsep, the Secretary of ABS succeeded for the first time in deciphering the Brahmi script. Sir Alexander Cunningham, the *father of Indian archaeology*, arrived India in 1831. He judged out the ruins of ancient site of Pre-Aryan Civilization. He judged out the ruins of ancient side of pre-Aryan culture. He was appointed Archaeological surveyor by the Indian Government.

Later on, in 1901, Lord Curzon revived this work and John Marshall was appointed as its director general and he discovered

the cities Harappa and Mohenjodara. Rakhal Das Banerji, in 1922, found seals at Mohenjodaro. It was the remains of pre-Aryan civilization. Later on the sites were excavated under the direction of Marshall from 1924 to 1931.

Sir R.E. Mortimer Wheeler made important discoveries at Harappa after the Second World War. Indian epigraphists as Bhanu Daji, Bhagavanlal Indrajai, Rajendralal Mitra and R.G. Bahndarkar contributed in the excavations of new sites.

12 Angas - (Acharang Sutta, Suyagandang Sutta, Thanang, Samvayang Sutta, Bhagvati Sutta, Nayadhammakaha Sutta, Uvasagdasao Sutta,) etc. **11 Upangas** - (Aupapatik, Rajprashniya, Jeevabhigam, Pushya Chulika, etc.) **10 Prakirnanas**-(Bhati Pariksha, Sanstar, Tandul Vaitalik, etc.) **06 Chhed Sutras**-(Nisheeth, Mahanisheeth, Vyavahar, Panchkalpa, etc.) **04 Mula Sutras** Uttradhyayan, Khadavshyak, Dashvaikali, Pakshik, Sutta, etc.).

Coins

- The study of coins is called *numismatics*. Important historical facts are obtained through it. Samudragupta's Aswameda coins, lion slayer coins reflect his ambitions and love of hunting. He has been seen playing on a lyre in a coin that gives an idea of his love of music. The **Punch Mark Coins** (of silver and copper) are the *earliest coins of India*. The Kushanas issued Gold coins depicting many deities on their coins. The coins of Vima Kadphises bear the figure of Lord Shiva. Thus, coins are helpful in discovering ideas about the complementary economic condition and provide facts with date that help us in fixing chronology. In *Panini's Astadhyayee*, Brahmin literature and Upanishadas we find the descriptions of Vedic coins or currency named Nishka, Shatman, Suvarna, and Panishka. The Gold coins of Gupta's period are quite important in this context.
- Inscriptions:** Inscriptions are the words cut on stone or metals. The study of inscriptions is called *epigraphy*. Inscriptions are the most reliable evidence and are free from interpolations. Ashoka's rock-cut edicts, pillar edicts, inscriptions of Kharvela and Allahabad Prasasti by Harisena and the inscriptions found at Khalimpur and Bhagalpur of the Gupta Age are important evidences.

Important Inscriptions
Samundragupta ⇒ Prayag Prasasti
Eran Prasasti
Nalanda Copper Plate.
Chandragupta II ⇒ Mehrauli Iron pillar
Skandagupta ⇒ Junagarh Prasasti
• Bhitari Prasasti
• Indore Royal Charter
Buddhagupta Paharpur ⇒ Copper Plate (R.C.)
Bagaz Kui ins. ⇒ Rigvedic Indian Gods, <i>i.e.</i> Indra, Varun, Mitra, etc.

Monuments

Monuments and buildings reflect the growth of material prosperity and the development of culture. The ancient monuments of Taxshila provide information about the Kushanas and its sculpture imparts the knowledge of Gandhar Kala. The Mauryan history is known by the *Stupas*, *Chaityas* and *Vihars*.

Famous Ancient Monuments (Indian and Foreign)	
Monument	Place
Sarnath	Varanasi
Ajant-Alora	Aurangabad
Dashavatar Mandir	Devgarh, Lalitpur
Bhitargaon's brick temple	Kanpur
Parvati Mandir	Nachan Kuthar
Shiva Mandir	Donda Platue, Java
Angakorvat Mandir	Cambodia
Borobudoor	Java
Bogajkoi and Percipolus	Turkey
Vaishnan Mandir	Kano Mountain Malaya

Some important literature/Books	Writer
Amarkosha	Amarsimha
Chandrvyakarana	Chandragomin
Panchatantra	Vishnu Sharma
Hitopadesha	Narayan Bhatta
Aryabhattachya	Aryabhattachya
Dasajitika Sutra	Aryabhattachya
Aryashtashata	Varahmihira
Brihatsamhita	Varahmihira
Panchasidhantika	Varahmihira
Laghu and Brihat Jataka	Varahmihira
Nitisastra	Kamandaka
Natya Darpan	Ramchandra
Kavyalankara	Bhamaha
Dashpadarthashastra	Dignaga
Brahma Sidhanta	Brahmagupta
Charak Samhita	Charak
Astanga hridaya	Vagbhata
Shalya Shastra	Sushruta
Ashwashastra	Shalihotra
Nayayavatar	Sudhasena
Visuddim agga	Buddhaghosa
Praman samuchchay	Ignaga
Nyayapranesh	Dingnath
Bhattikavya	Bhatti
Tatvarthadhigam sutra	Umashwati
Mitakshara	Vigyaneshwar
Setubandh	Pravarsen
Abhinav bharti	Abhinav Gupta
Shringar Prakash	Bhoj

ACCOUNTS OF FOREIGN TRAVELLERS AND WRITERS

Before the arrival of Alexander, some Greek authors like Herodotus, Ktesia, Hikeios and Skylax wrote some scripts of information about India. With the expedition of Alexander the great some men of letters came to India and took interest in Indian philosophy and culture. Among them Aristobolus, Anesicritus and Neorkus are very famous. Megasthenes, the ambassador of Seleukos Nikator to Chandragupta Maurya, wrote a highly valuable account of India, in his book 'INDICA'. This book was translated by Maicrindal.

Tsumachin (100 B.C.) , the *father of the history of China*, was the first Chinese historian describing about India. Tibetan writer **Lama Taranath** wrote Kangyur and Tangyur through which we know about Shaka, Kushan and Parthians. In about 8th century A.D. close relationship sprouted between India and Arab countries. Arab writers and travellers started taking interest in writing about Indian society and its code and conducts which became a source of knowledge through which a datewise history could be constructed. Let us study the following chart.

Books of Foreign Travellers

Author	Book	Subject
↓ Greek	Megasthenes Indica Ptolemy 2nd cent A. D. Geography Ariens 2nd cent A.D. Indica, Invasion of Alexander Pliny 1st cent A.D. Natural historia Anonymous (A.D. 80) Periplus of the Erythrean Sea	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information of Mauryan India. • Geographical treatise on India. • Based on the contemporary authors of Alexander • Trade relation between Rome and India, Indian animal and plants. • Personal Voyage of Indian Coasts.
↓ Chinese	Tsumachin 1st cent. B.C. Fa-Hien (A.D. 399) Record of the Buddhist Countries Hieun-Tsang (A.D. 629) Buddhist record of the western world Itsing (A.D. 670) A record of Buddhist religion Hwui-li Life of Hieun Tsang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Personal opinion about India. • The Gupta Emperor - the 5th cent .A.D • Condition of India in the period of Harshavardhan. • The Guptas under Sri Gupta in the 7th Cent .A.D. • Accounts of Hiuen Tsang's travel in India.
↓ Mohamadan Writer	Ibne Khurdadab Kitabul Masalakh wal Mamalik 9th Cent. A. D. Suleiman Silsija-ul-Tavarish Almasudi Muruj-ul-Jahan Albiruni Tarikh-ul-Hind Ibna-Batuta Rihla	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indian society and trade ways. • Indian sea coast, conventions, culture. • Indian society. • Contemporary Indian history. • India under the Kingship of Muhammad Tughlaq

Some Remarkable Facts

1. *Beal* and *waters* translated the work of Hiuen-Tsang.
2. *Herodotus* is regarded as the father of History wrote '**Historica**'.
3. *Hieun-Tsang* is called the *King of travellers* who wrote '**Si-Eu-Ki**'
4. *Takkusu* translated 'Si-Eu-Ki' under the name of **A record of the Buddhist region.**

Exercise - 1

1. Who among the following is known to have regulated the course of Vitasta in Kashmir by his engineering operations?
 - (a) Vajraditya
 - (b) Damodargupta
 - (c) Sura
 - (d) Suyya
2. The Sangam text Tolkappiyam is a work on
 - (a) Astronomy
 - (b) Grammar
 - (c) Music
 - (d) Medicine
3. The earliest evidence of Silk in India comes from the archaeological site of
 - (a) Bhagwanpura
 - (b) Nevasa
 - (c) Rangpur
 - (d) Ropar
4. An upper Palaeolithic Mother Goddess made of bone has been obtained from
 - (a) Godavari valley
 - (b) Narmada valley
 - (c) Son valley
 - (d) Belan valley
5. The Third Tamil Sangam was held at
 - (a) Tanjore
 - (b) Madurai
 - (c) Kanjeevaram
 - (d) Mahabalipuram
6. The earliest inscriptions were written in which language?
 - (a) Pali
 - (b) Prakrit
 - (c) Sanskrit
 - (d) Tamil
7. The ancient Indian play Mudrarakshasa of Visakhadutt has its subject on:
 - (a) a conflict between Gods and Demons of ancient Hindu lore
 - (b) a romantic story of an Aryan prince and a tribal woman
 - (c) the story of the power struggle between two Aryan
 - (d) the court intrigues at the time of Chandragupta
8. From among the following, which pair is not matched?
 - (a) Patanjali – Mahabhashya
 - (b) Hala – Gatha Saptshati
 - (c) Bhadrabahu – Brihat Katha Manjari
 - (d) Ashvaghosa – Harsh Charit
9. The objects like pottery, tools and ornaments that humans made in the past are called
 - (a) Monuments
 - (b) Coins
 - (c) Inscriptions
 - (d) Artifacts
10. Which one of the following is not a part of early Jains literature?
 - (a) Therigatha
 - (b) Acaranga sutra
 - (c) Sutrakritanga
 - (d) Brihat kalpasutra
11. The famous Vedic saying, “War begins in the minds of men”, is stated in the :
 - (a) Upanishad
 - (b) Atharvaveda
 - (c) Samaveda
 - (d) Yajurveda
12. Which of the following does the Puranas contain?
 - (a) Laws of Manu and the history on various dynasties
 - (b) Hymns in favour of the Gods
 - (c) Thoughts on the mystery of life and universe
 - (d) Mythology
13. Most of the Upanishads seem to have been composed by whom?
 - (a) Brahmins
 - (b) Kshatriyas
 - (c) Buddhists
 - (d) Non-aryans
14. Who wrote a book ‘Return of the Aryans’ ?
 - (a) Bhagvan Das Gidvani
 - (b) L.D. Kalla
 - (c) Avinash Chandra Das
 - (d) D.S. Trivedi
15. Which of the following Brahmana texts belongs to Atharvaveda?
 - (a) Shatpatha
 - (b) Aitareya
 - (c) Gopatha
 - (d) Panchavinsh
16. The expounder of Yoga philosophy was :
 - (a) Patanjali
 - (b) Shankaracharya
 - (c) Jaimini
 - (d) Gautam
17. The famous dialogue between Nachiketa and Yama is mentioned in the :
 - (a) Chhandogyopanishad
 - (b) Mundakopnishad
 - (c) Kathopanishad
 - (d) Kenopanishad
18. Which of the following pairs indicating the contents of the sacred Buddhist Pitakas is not correctly matched?
 - (a) Vinaya Pitaka — rules of monastic discipline
 - (b) Abhidhamma Pitaka — philosophical development of the Buddha’s teachings
 - (c) Sutra Pitaka — Stories of the Buddha’s previous births (Jataka stories)
 - (d) Dhammapada — The original sermon of the Buddha of Sarnath
19. Robert Bruce foote, who discovered first palaeolithic tool in India, was originally a
 - (a) Palaeobotanist
 - (b) Geologist
 - (c) Archaeologist
 - (d) Historian
20. The earliest Buddhist literature which deal with the stories of the various birth of Buddha are
 - (a) Vinaya pitakas
 - (b) Sutta pitakas
 - (c) Abhidamma pitakas
 - (d) Jatakas

Exercise -2

1. Consider the following statements :
- Historians use the word source to refer to the information found from manuscripts, inscriptions and archaeology.
 - Ramayana and Mahabharata are also important source of ancient Indian history.
- Which of the above is / are correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
2. Mrichhakatikam, written by Shudraka deals with
- The love affair of a rich merchant with the daughter of a courtesan.
 - The military expedition of Samudragupta.
- Which of the above is correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
3. Consider the following statements: Al-Beruni's Kitab-ul-Hind is
- A sympathetic study of Indian civilization.
 - Mainly a political history of India.
 - Critical of Mahmud Ghaznavi's plundering raids of India.
 - Mainly a study of India's cultural, social and intellectual history.
- Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct?
- (a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 4
(c) 2 and 4 (d) Alone
4. With reference to the Jambudvipa, consider the statements
- Bharatvarsha was also called Jambudvipa.
 - Early Buddhist evidence suggests that Jambudvipa was a territorial designation from the third century BC.
- Which of the above is / are correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
5. Who among the following teachers were visited by Siddhartha Gautama in the quest of knowledge before his enlightenment?
- Alara Kalama
 - Udraka Ramaputra
 - Makkhali Gosala
 - Nigantha Nataputta
- Indicate your answer from the codes given below:
- Codes:**
- (a) 1 and 4 (b) 4 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 2
6. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| A. Tirukkural | 1. Ilangoadigal |
| B. Shilpadikaram | 2. Sattanar |
| C. Manimakhilai | 3. Tolkappiyar |
| D. Tolkappiyam | 4. Tiruvalluvar |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (b) 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| (c) 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (d) 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |
7. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| A. Abhidhamma Pitaka | 1. Matters of doctrine and ethics |
| B. Sutta Pitaka | 2. Rules of monk order |
| C. Vinaya Pitaka | 3. Members of great community |
| D. Mahasanghika | 4. Matters of psychology and metaphysics |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 2 | 4 | 1 | 3 |
| (b) 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (c) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
8. **List-I (Author)** **List-II (Work)**
- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| A. Sudraka | 1. Mrichhakatikan |
| B. Visakhadatta | 2. Mudrarakshasa |
| C. Kalidasa | 3. Vikramorvasiyam |
| D. Bhavabhuti | 4. Uttara Ramacharita |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (d) 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
9. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| A. Time taken by the Earth to orbit the sun | 1. Aryabhata |
| B. Calculation of the value of π (pi) | 2. Bhaskaracharya |
| C. Invention of the digit Zero | 3. Budhayana |
| D. The game of snakes & ladders | 4. Gyanadev |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 2 | 4 | 1 | 3 |
| (b) 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |
10. Which of the following statements is/ are correct?
- Early Buddhist literature is generally composed of the canonical text.
 - The Buddhist schools classify their canonical literature as only the Pitakas.
- Select the correct answer using the code given below:
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
11. Consider the following statements relating to Jain literature :
- The sacred books of the Jainas are known as Siddhanta or Agama.
 - The language of the earliest Jain texts is eastern dialect of Pali known as Ardha Magadhi.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (d) Suyya is known by his engineering operations regulated the course of the Vitasta in Kashmir, thereby arresting the devastating periodical floods and consequent famine and promoted irrigation and agricultural operations over an extensive area.
2. (b) The Tolkappiyam is a work on the grammar of the Tamil language and the earliest extant work of Tamil literature written by Tholkappiyar.
3. (b)
4. (d) Mother goddess of bone has been obtained from the upper Palaeolithic level of the Belan valley.
5. (b) 6. (b)
7. (d) The Mudrarakshasa ("The Signet of the Minister"), a historical play in Sanskrit by Vishakhadatta (4th century CE) narrates the ascent of the king Chandragupta Maurya to power in Northern India.
8. (c) 9. (d)
10. (a) Therigatha was a part of the Buddhist literature.
11. (d) 12. (d) 13. (b)
14. (a) The book 'Return of the Aryans' was written by Bhagvan S. Gidvani. This book tells the epic story of the Aryans – a gripping tale of kings and poets, seers and gods, battles and romance and the rise and fall of civilizations.
15. (c) The Gopatha Brahmana is the only Brahmana, a genre of the prose texts describing the Vedic rituals, associated with the Atharvaveda.
16. (a) The ancient Sage Patanjali was an expounder of the Yoga Sutras one of the most important text of yoga covering all aspects of life. Patanjali's Yoga Sutras describe the working of the mind and emotions.
17. (c) The famous dialogue between Nachiketa and Yama about transmigration of soul is mentioned in the Kathopanishad.
18. (d) 19. (b)
20. (d) Jatakas are the stories that tell about the previous lives of the Buddha, in both human and animal form.

EXERCISE-2

1. (c)
2. (a) Mrichhakatikam is attributed to Sudraka it is a ten act drama. It deals with the love story of a rich merchant with the daughter of a courtesan.
3. (a) 4. (c)
5. (d) Gautama studied under various teachers and followed their practices until he mastered them all. His first teacher was Alara Kalama who taught a form of meditation leading to an exalted form of

absorption called "the state of no-thingness", a state without moral or cognitive dimension. Gautama saw this was not going to solve suffering, and continued his search.

The next teacher was Udraka Ramaputra who taught him meditative absorption leading to "the state of neither perception nor non-perception". Again, Gautama realised this was not the state he was looking for. (Both Alara and Udraka are by some scholars considered to be Jain followers.)

6. (a) Correctly matched pairs are:

Tirukkural — Tiruvalluvar

Shilpadikaram — Ilangoadigal

Manimekhalai — Sattanar

Tolkappiyam — Tolkappiyar

7. (d) The Abhidhamma Pitaka is the last of the three Pitakas constituting the Pali Canon, the scriptures of Theravada Buddhism. Abhidhamma has been variously described as philosophy, psychology, metaphysics, etc. Sutta Pitaka matches with matters of doctrine and ethics.

The Vinaya Pitaka is a Buddhist scripture, one of the three parts that make up the Tripitaka. Its primary subject matter is the monastic rules for monks and nuns.

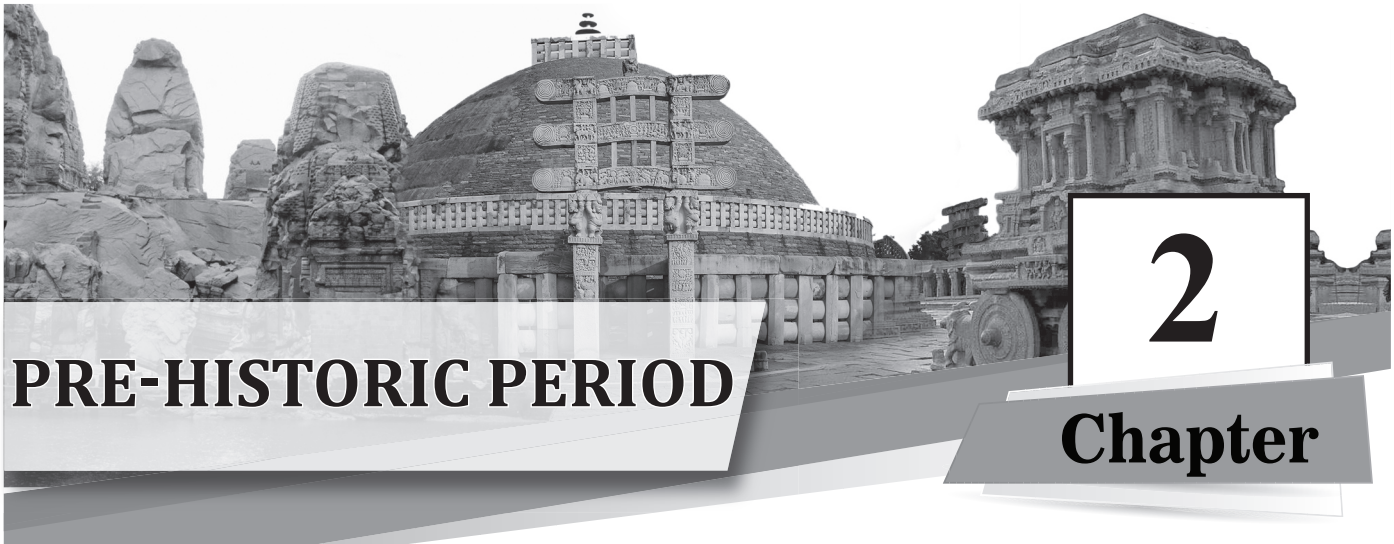
Mahasanghika matches with members of great community.

8. (a) The Correct match list of author and their works is :

Author	Work
Sudraka	Mrichhakatikam
Visakhadatta	Mudrarakshasa
Kalidasa	Vikramorvasiyam
Bhavabhuti	Uttara Ramacharita

Sudraka's Mrichhakatikam (The little clay Cart) is unquestionably a master piece in the realm of ancient Sanskrit drama. If we expect literature of the time to faithfully represent the age then the little clay cart has achieved this criterion more than any other plays of ancient Sanskrit tradition. The Mudrarakshasa ("Signet Ring of the Rakshasa, the Chief Minister of the last Nanda King"), a historical play in Sanskrit by Visakhadatta (4th century CE) narrates the ascent of the king Chandragupta Maurya to power in Northern India with the aid of Chanakya, his Guru and Chief Minister. Vikramorvasiyam (Urvasi won Through valor) is based on the old legend of the love of the mortal Pururavaas for the heavenly damse Urvasi. Uttara Ramacharita (The story of Rama's later life), depicts Rama's coronation, the abandonment of Sita, and their reunion.

9. (c) The correct match list is:
- Aryabhata — Invention of the digit zero.
 Bhaskaracharya — Time taken by the earth to orbit the sun.
 Budhayana — Calculation of the value of π (Pi)
 Gyandeva — The game of snakes and ladders
- Zero was invented in India by Indian mathematicians dating as early as 5th century. They widely used it in calculations, astronomy and astrology. Zero was spread by Arabians to the Europe and thereon it was spread all over. The famous Hindu mathematician, Bhaskaracharya, in his treatise Surya Siddhanta, calculated the time taken for the earth to orbit the sun to nine decimal places (365.258756484 days). Bhaskaracharya rightly calculated the time taken by the earth to orbit the sun hundreds of years before the astronomer Smart. His calculations was – Time taken by earth to orbit the sun (5th century): 365.258756484 days. The value of Pi was first calculated by Budhayana, and he explained the concept of what is known as the Pythagorean Theorem. The game of snakes and ladders is most popular in almost all houses and across all countries of the world. The credit for the game should go to the 13th century Marathi saint poet composer Gyanadev, Jnanadeva, also known as Jnanashwar. When the saint invented the game it was called Mokshapat.
10. (c) Canonical texts are those that are linked to Gautama Buddha in one way or another. Canonical texts comprise three different kind of texts - the sutras (discourses), vinaya (discipline) and abhidharma (analytical texts), together they are called the 'Three Baskets' or Tipitaka (in Pali language) and Tripitaka (in Sanskrit).
11. (a) **Agam Literature**-This consists of original scriptures compiled by Gandharas and Srut-kevalis. They are written in the Prakrit language.
Non-agam Literature-This consists of commentary and explanation of Agam literature and independent works, compiled by elder monks, nuns, and scholars. They are written in many languages such as Prakrit, Sanskrit, Old Marathi, Gujarati, Hindi, Kannad, Tamil, German, and English.



PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD

Chapter 2

Introduction

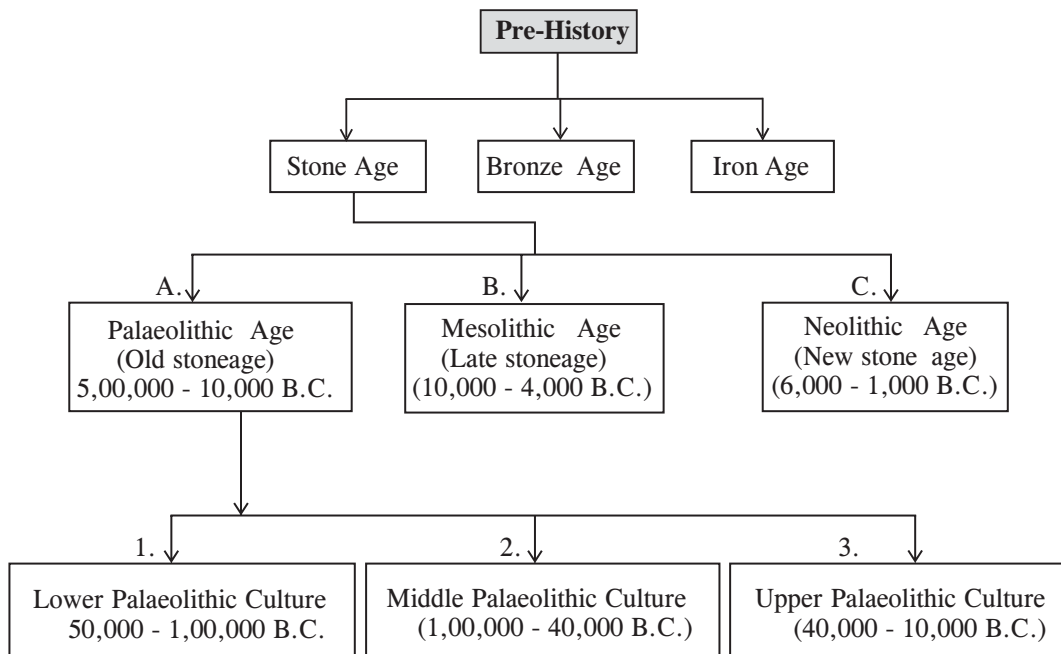
The credit for the rediscovery of Indian pre-history goes to **Dr. Primrose**, an Englishman, who was the first person to discover pre-historic implements (*stone knives and arrow-heads*) in 1842 at *Lingsugur* (Karnataka). However *John Evans* was first to publish discovery of *flints* on the bed of the Narmada river near Jabalpur in 1853.

In 1930, M.C. Burkitt published an account of collection from the *Krishna basin* and in 1935 H.de Terra of T.T. Paterson studied the glacial sequence of *Kashmir* and *Punjab*. The efforts of the 1940s resulted in the publication of *Stuart Piggott's Prehistoric India* in 1950.

Historians divide the Pre - historic period into three sections-

1. Stone age
2. Bronze age
3. Iron age

For the study of these ages we have nothing except fossils and some tools and paintings left by them. We *do not have any written record* as the primitive people were unaware of pen and papers. The primitive people were shorter in height and had a smaller brain. They did not have a social life like us. The *earliest human fossils* has been found in *Africa* dating about *4.2 million* years. No easily *human fossils* have been found in India except a **hominid fossil from Hathnawia** in the Narmada valley dating back to 1.4 million years ago. The stone age is divided into three parts, i.e Palaeolithic, Mesolithic and Neolithic ages. Let us study this chart.



STONE AGE

A. Palaeolithic (Old Stone) Age

In 1930, **Gabriel de montillet**, a french investigator, started naming the cultural divisions in the manner of compartments or stages. In this context the Palaeolithic age (old stone age) comes first. It was an age of hunting and food gathering culture. *Palaeo* means 'old' and '*lithic*' means 'stone'. For this it is called palaeolithic which is divided into three phases Lower, Middle and upper Palaeolithic culture.

1. Lower Palaeolithic Age (5,00,000-1,00,000 B.C.)

It covers the greater part of the *Ice Age*. The people were wanderers. They did not know how to grow food. They used to eat fruits, birds and raw animal flesh, etc. The tools were usually made of hard rock, '*Quartzite*' and therefore the man of Palaeolithic age is called '*Quartzite Man*'. For hunting they used hand-axe, cleavers, flaxes and chopper of irregular shapes. Fossil of "Homo Erectus", from Hathnaura (Narmada basin), of this age has been found. This age is represented by *Sohan culture* (Now in Pakistan).

Important Sites:

Sohan Valley (Punjab), Belan Valley (Mirzapur), Narmada Valley (Madhya Pradesh), Didwani (Rajasthan), and Bhimbetka (M.P.), Singrauli basin (U.P), Chhotanagpur (Jharkhand), Assam, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and in whole India except Sind Kerala.

2. Middle Palaeolithic Age (1,00,000 - 40,000 B. C.)

It was an *age of flakes*. A bit change in the shape of tools made of stones or bones is remarked. Now they started using blades, points and scrappers made of flakes. Still they had no house to live in. They lived under the rocks in caves and hollow tree trunks. They were afraid of wild creatures. *Neanderthal* man dominated this stage of human evolution.

Important Sites:

Bankura and Purulia (West Bengal), Nevasa, Nodur Madhmeshwar, Suregaon and Nevasa (Maharashtra), Malprabha and Ghatprabha basin (Karnataka). Narmada valley, etc. In Bhimbetka (M.P) 200 rock shelters, caves and thousands of paintings have been traced which are of middle Palaeolithic age, i.e scrapper and borer culture.

3. Upper Palaeolithic Age (40,000 - 10,000 B.C.)

In this period, human lived as *nomadic* hunter-gatherers. The traces of *Homo sapiens* have been discovered. Rock paintings and carvings have been found in Bhimbetka that reflect art and rituals of this period. The animals

depicted in these are mostly bisons, elephants, tigers, boars, rhinoceros, etc. The upper Palaeolithic art is characterised by red and green colours.

Important Sites:

Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Bhopal (Bhimbetka) and Chhotanagpur (Jharkhand).

Points to Remember

- P.F. Shum Designated the cultural past of man in as early as 1776.
- In 1836. C.J. Thomson arranged the exhibits in Danish museums.
- Lubbock of France divided the stone age into Palaeolithic & Neolithic in 1865.
- The Palaeolithic culture of India developed in Pleistocene period.
- First of all Robert Bruce discovered a Palaeolithic stone tool in India in 1863.
- With the coming of Yale Cambridge Expedition in 1935, led by Deterra and Paterson the research for the Palaeolithic got a new height in India.

B. Mesolithic Age (10,000 - 4,000 B.C.)

It was an intermediate stage in the stone age ended with the introduction of agriculture. It is also known as late stone age or Microlithic age. The domestication of animals have been witnessed from M.P and Rajasthan. Men were still savage but pottery making (Tilwara) and permanent habitation were in existence.

Tools: Microliths (tools) were very small in size and length varies from 1 to 8 cm. Backed blade, core, point, triangle, lunate and trapeze were the main tools. Some of earlier used were continued like scraper, burin, choppers, etc.

Important Sites:

Bagor, Tilwara (Rajasthan), Akhaj, Valasana, Langhnaj, Hirpur (Gujarat), etc. The earliest evidence for the domestication of animals has been founded in Bagor. It has provided stone paved habitational floors, human burials besides some tiny pieces of handmade potsherds. Langhnaj has three cultural phases. The first produced microliths, burials and animal bones, the second phase has two ground axes and a ring stone and the third phase is remarkable for potsherds.

In central and North India we have Bhimbetka (M.P) where many rock shelters with microliths on floor and paintings on walls have found. In Adamgarh we have got signs of animals domestication. Sarai Nahar Rai Morhana Pahar and Lekhani are some important sites. Burnt clay lumps and fire hearths have been discovered from these sites.

Coming towards the eastern part of India we have so many places from where microliths (fairly large and prepared on block chlorite stone) have been discovered. Burdwan, Purulia Bankura (West Bengal); Mayurbhanj, Keonjhar, Sundergarh and Kuchai in Orissa and Chhota Nagpur in Jharkhand and Sehargigi in Meghalaya are the important sites of this location. In South, 11 sites of microlithic clusters have been found in Tinnevely district of Tamil Nadu, 25 microlithic sites are reported in the area between Krishna and Bhima rivers in Shorapur doab.

C. Neolithic Age (6,000 - 1,000 B.C.)

It was an age of polished tool culture. Men started living a settled life. Agriculture and domestication of animals were started. They discovered the art of producing fire by the friction of stones and got the taste of cooked flesh. For hunting bows and arrows were invented. They learnt the art of pottery. Their pots were well made and decorated with paintings. They had the knowledge of boat making for journey. They also learnt the art of spinning and weaving clothes. Tool making became an important profession and a variety of polished tools were manufactured. Picks, scrapers, bodkins, chisels, mortars, eyed needles and pierced batons were the important tools. Neolithic men started respecting their ancestors. They offered honourable burial for the dead and constructed tombs for them. These tombs were called Dolmens. It was an age of revolution, i.e. neolithic revolution of stone age. The wheel was an important discovery of this age.

Important Neolithic Sites

Sites/State

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| • Chirand, Chechar | - Bihar |
| • Kuchai | - Mayurbhanj (Orissa) |
| • Taradih & Singhbhumi | - West Bengal |
| • Uthur, Nagarjunakonda | - Andhra Pradesh |
| • Maski, Brahmagiri, Hallur, | - Karnataka |
| • Tekkalakota, Sanganakallu | |
| • Paiyampalli | - Tamil Nadu |
| • Burzahom & Gufkral | - Kashmir |
| • Bellan, Chopani Mando | - Uttar Pradesh |

M.H. Krishnan has found some polished tools in Mysore. Burzahom is remarkable for pit-jewellery houses.

Points to Remember

- The word 'neolithic' was coined by John Lubbock in 1865.
- In 1860, Le Mesurier made the discovery of neolithic tools.
- In South India, Fresher discovered neolithic tools in Bellary.
- The microliths were discovered by Carlyle in 1867 from Vindhya Rock shelters.
- Subbarao excavated, in 1948, at Sangankallu in Bellary.
- Palaeolithic man in India is also called 'Quartziteman'.

CHALCOLITHIC (BRONZE) AGE

This age is marked by the use of copper as copper was the first metal used by the man of this age. The economy was based on subsistence agriculture, stock-raising, hunting and fishing. The dead were buried in North-South position in Maharashtra but in South India it was in East-West direction. The chalcolithic people slaughtered animals for food. Some perforated stone discs are found which were used for *jhum-cultivation*. The supply of copper was limited. People did not know the art of mixing tin with copper. The decline in rainfall from about 1200 B.C. led to the decay of this culture. Due to the agitation of epidemics the culture of chalcolithic people came to an end. Transitional stage between stone age and humans started living settled life.

Important sites:

Probably, this culture was extended from the Chhotanagpur plateau to the upper Gangetic basin. Some sites are found at Brahmagiri near Mysore and Navada Toli on the Narmada.

Copper hoards have been found in a wide area from West Bengal, Orissa, Haryana, Andhra Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh. From Gungeria (M.P) we have found 424 copper tools and weapons and 102 thin sheets of silver objects. Stone tools have also been found in excavations. Mostly the copper hoards

were supplemented by stone tools that paved the way of a settled life in a good portion of the Ganga - Yamuna doab. Besides these, the two types of pottery, i.e. *O.C.P.* (Ochre Coloured Pottery) and *B.R.W.* (Black and Red Ware), showing Harappan influence, have been excavated from various sites.

O.C.P. (2000 BC - 1500 B.C) : It is essentially a red-slipped ware. From a trial excavation carried out in Bisauli (Badaun) and Rajpur Parsu (Bihar). It was revealed that the ochre coloured pottery wares occurred below the early Iron Age levels. The copper hoard culture represents one of the transitional phases of the Harappan intrusion into the Gangetic Valley.

B.R.W. (1000 B.C) : The O.C.P culture was succeeded by B.R.W which was an attractive variety of ceramics prepared by a fringing technique. From the inside and around the rim on the outside these are completely black and the rest of the outer surface is brick red. Chemical studies show that the black colour is caused by carbon. It is concluded that the some dried pot must have been given a coating of some organic resin, oil or some other matter, before firing. During firing the organic material on the surface is burnt leaving the carbon free. Black and Red wares are usually medium to small in size which can be called 'Table wares' usually limited to bowls and dishes.

Some Important Features of Chalcolithic Age

- Both Kharif and Rabi crops were cultivated
- Barley was the main crop.
- A highly specialised store blade industry of siliceous store is found.
- Cotton was produced first time in this period.
- First village communities in Peninsular India was found.
- Jhum cultivation was practised.
- First time fortified settlements were built, e.g. sites of Daimabad, Inamgao, Nagada, etc.

Chalcolithic Culture at a Glance

Culture	Period	Ware-features	Grown crops	Sites
Ahar Culture	2800-1500 B.C	White designed black and red ware.	rice, ragi, gram, jwar, bajra, kulthi, lentil.	Ahar, Balahal, Gilund. (Rajasthan)
Kayatha culture	2450-1700 B.C	Chocolate coloured slipped ware, red painted buff ware, combed ware.	rice, ragi, gram, jwar, bajra, kulthi, lentil.	Chambal and its tributaries. (Madhya Pradesh)
Malwa Culture	1900-1400 B.C	The walwas ware is coarse in fabric with thick buff surface.	Wheat & barley.	Narmada and its tributaries, Navada toli, Eran, Nagada. (The largest chalcolithic settlement) in M.P.
Savalda Culture	2300-200 B.C	-	-	Dhuria (Maharashtra)
Jorwe Culture	1500-900 B.C	Painted black on red with matt surface dishes on stand, sprouted vases, stemmed cups, jars, basins etc.	rice, ragi, gram, jwar, bajra, kulthi, lentil.	Maharashtra, Prakash, Daimabad and Inamgao.
Prabhas Culture	2000-1400 B.C	Lustrous Red Ware (Harappan / Indus civilisation) belonged to this culture)	-	-
Rangpur Culture	1700 - 1400 B.C	Lustrous Red Ware (Harappa Indus belong to this culture civilisation)	-	Gheol and Kallubhar rivers in Gujarat

IRON AGE

The 'Iron Age' in the *world context* began about 1300 B.C. Its use in India also began around this period. But *Gordon* could find no evidence for the use of iron in India before 250 B.C. and *Wheeler* thought that the knowledge was introduced by *Achaemenids* in 500 B.C. However, *Banerjee* opined that Iron working began as early as 1000 B.C. and became common around 800 B.C.

We have evidence of Iron at Pirak (1000 B.C.); at Mundigak and in the graves of Gandhara (1000 B.C.). In South India also Iron appeared around 1000 B.C. in Dharwar (Karnataka).

Iron age is usually associated with the painted grey ware (P.G.W.) the ceramics which have been fired grey and then painted with black designs. Thus, the grey colour was obtained by firing thin clay pots to as high a temperature as 800°C. For these wares no grey colour was used for making them attractive.

Pre-Historic findings

• Atranjikhhera	– Textile printing.
• Burzahom	– Pit-dwelling.
• Chirand	– Serpant cult.
• Bhimbetka	– Caves of Homo Sapien, 500 painted rock shelter
• Nevasa	– Evidence of cotton.
• Hastinapur	– Wild sugarcane.
• Inamgaon	– Statue of mother goddess.
• Koldihva	– Earliest evidence of rice.
• Bagor and Ajamgarh	– Evidences of domestication of animal.
• Mehargarh	– Earliest evidence of agriculture.
• Bhimbetka & Ajamgarh	– Mesolithic rock and cave paintings.
• Uthur	– Hoof impression from cattle pen ash mound.
• Vindhya rock shelter	– First discovered microliths.

In short, we can say that copper was the first metal used by the primitive people but the use of iron gave them a complete new turn in their development. The adoption of Iron brought various changes in society including agricultural practices, religious beliefs and attractive artistic styles. Sanskrit and Chinese literature said to have been flourished in this age. *Hittatiets* or the *Hittomus* discovered the metal Iron through which primitive people peeped into a new world, i.e. the agrarian world.

Some Pre-historic sites & their nature

	Sites	Phase	Location & Excavator	Finds
1.	Adamgar	Mesolithic (5500 B.C.)	Narmada valley, Hoshangabad, M.P.	Rock-shelters, animal bones & pottery
2.	Anjira	Neolithic	Surab Valley, Central Baluchistan	Chert blade industry, bone awls
3.	Atranjikheda	Iron Age	Uttar Pradesh	Iron objects, burnt bricks
4.	Birbhanpur	Mesolithic	Damodar river (W.B)	Post-holes, combined factory
5.	Brahmagiri	Neolithic/Megalithic	Karnataka, <i>S.M. Wheeler</i>	South Indian Neolithic sites
6.	Burzahom	Neolithic (3000-1700 B.C)	Kashmir, <i>Yale</i>	Two occupation levels
7.	Chandoli	Chalcolithic (1500-1050 B.C)	Maharashtra	Evidence of tin and lead alloying
8.	Chechar-Kutubpur	Neolithic	Biddupur-on the bank of Ganga	Red, grey, spouted and black wares
9.	Chirand	Neolithic and Chalcolithic (2000-1000 B.C)	Allahabad (U.P) / Allahabad University	Crude hard made pottery
10.	Diamabad	Chalcolithic (1400-1000 B.C)	Parvar valley (Maharashtra)	Jorwe culture site
11.	Gumla	Neolithic/Bronze Age	Indus & Gomol rivers by Peshawar University	Aceramic, microliths, cattle bones
12.	Hastinapur	OCP & PGW	Uttar Pradesh	Two glass bangles, cultivated crops, bone dice, glass beads
13.	Lekhania	Mesolithic (1710 B.C.)	Mirzapur (U.P.) / Allahabad University	Rock-shelters
14.	Morhana Pahar	Mesolithic	Narmada Valley, U.P. / A.C. Carlleyle	Rock-paintings & shelters
15.	Waltgal	Southern Neolithic (3000-2000 B.C)	Raichur Doab	Microlithic Industry, handmade pottery

Keep in Memory

• First metal used by man	–	Copper
• Iron was brought (discovered) by	–	Hittites
• Iron age began	–	1000 B.C
• Excellent Mesolithic cave painting	–	Bhimbetka
• Evidence of dog burial along with human beings	–	Burzahom
• Inamgaon is belonging to	–	Jorwe culture
• Eran is belonging to	–	Malwa culture
• Man appeared on the earth in	–	Quarternary period
• The largest Mesolithic site	–	Kothari river
• The Goddess of vegetative fertility of Jorwe culture	–	Sakambhari
• Main foodcrop of Chinese civilization	–	Millet
• Pre-historic India's gift	–	Domestic fowl.
• Earliest grown up cereals	–	Wheat and Ragi
• First thing learnt by primitive man	–	Making fire
• Pottery first appeared in	–	Neolithic age
• First animal tamed by Neolithic man	–	Dog
• Tools made of flakes appeared in	–	Middle stone age
• The Palaeolithic men	–	Quartzite men
• Mesolithic period	–	Microlithic industry
• Palaeolithic period	–	Nomadic culture
• Neolithic period	–	Settled life
• Homo sapiens appeared in	–	Upper Palaeolithic period
• Chalcolithic age	–	Stone copper tools
• Neolithic age	–	Polished stone tools

Exercise - 1

- Which one of the following sites is famous for prehistoric paintings?
 - Bagh
 - Ajanta
 - Bhimbetka
 - Amrawati
- The first metal to be used by man was
 - bronze
 - iron
 - copper
 - stone
- Iron was brought to many civilization by the
 - Turks
 - Greeks
 - Hittites
 - Huns
- The Megaliths of South India are mainly associated with
 - Mesolithic age
 - Neolithic age
 - Chalcolithic age
 - Iron age
- Which of the following is not a feature of Neolithic cultures?
 - Cultivation of Plants
 - Domestication of animals
 - Use of Iron for agriculture
 - Sedentary farming
- Archaeological evidence from which Chalcolithic site shows evidence of corporation, harvesting and irrigation?
 - Daimabad
 - Inamgaon
 - Navdatoli
 - Rangpur
- Inamgaon is a chalcolithic site belonging to which culture?
 - Jorwe culture
 - Malwa culture
 - Ahar culture
 - Kayatha culture
- Eran is a Chalcolithic site belonging to which culuture?
 - Jorwe culture
 - Mahwa culture
 - Ahar culture
 - Ganeshwar culture
- Pick out the wrong statement with respect to the Neolithic sites of Burzahom and Gufkral.
 - The excavations yield lots of bone tools
 - Bones of animals such as goat, sheep, cattle are seen
 - Pit dwellings were seen in both the sites
 - The sites were predominantly pastoral economics
- From which of the following hoards were four massive copper replicas – of a rhinoceros, an elephant, a chariot, and a buffalo – typical or a Chalcolithic culture obtained?
 - Prakash
 - Daimabad
 - Inamgaon
 - Navdatoli
- The goddess of vegetative fertility, worshipped during the Chalcolithic period of Jorwe culture, was
 - Sakapurni
 - Satakarani
 - Sambhuti
 - Sakambhari
- Which one of the following species of fauna has been widely appreciated as pre-historic India's gift to the world?
 - Peacock
 - Domestic fowl
 - Water buffalo
 - Humped bull
- Doojali Hudizg is an important Neolithic site in
 - Tripura
 - Manipur
 - Nagaland
 - Assam
- Stone and copper were used in
 - Chalcolithic age
 - Neolithic age
 - Mesolithic age
 - Paleolithic age
- The earliest 'man like creature' which racially differed from 'Homo sapiens' is generally known as
 - Hominid
 - Pithecangthropus
 - Sinanthropus
 - Eoanthropus
- Which one of the following statements is not correct?
 - The palaeolithic man in India know the use of fire
 - Palaeolithic granes have been found in Guntur and Kurnool Districts in South India
 - Prehistoric paintings have been found in Kaimur ranges and Mirzapur District
 - The Copper Age and the Early Iron Age can be distinguished in North India. However, the Iron Age immediately succeeds the Stone Age in South India.
- In palaeolithic society all men and women were
 - treated as of equal importance
 - men were higher status than women
 - women were higher status than men
 - none
- Which of the following ages the Homo Sapiens the human being for the first time appeared?
 - In the Mesolithic age
 - In the upper Palaeolithic age
 - In the middle Palaeolithic age
 - In the lower Palaeolithic age
- Which of the following statements is/are correct about the Neolithic culture?
 - The Neolithic age marks the concluding phase of the stone tools culture
 - The evidence of productive economy or food producing culture is an essential prerequisite for the attestation of this age
 - The presence of pottery is taken to be more conclusive diagnostic speciality of this age
 - All of the above
- Who is known as the father of Indian prehistory?
 - Le Mesurier
 - Miles Burkit
 - Subba Rao
 - Robert Bruce Foote

21. Which of the following statements is/are correct about the people of stone age?
- They had to depend entirely on tools and weapons made of stone
 - They settled down only on the slopes of the hills, in rock shelters and the hilly river valley
 - They could not produce more than what they needed for this bare subsistence
 - All of the above
22. The credit of the discovery of the first Palaeolithic in India which opened the field of prehistoric studies in the country goes to
- Burkitt
 - De Terra and Paterson
 - Robert Bruce Foote
 - H D Sankalia
23. Who among the following cultures were the first to paint their pottery?
- Mesolithic
 - Chalcolithic
 - Neolithic
 - Iron age
24. Which of the following statements is/are correct about the chalcolithic settlement?
- They domesticated cattle most probably for food and not milked for drink and dairy products
 - They did practice cultivation but not on large scale
 - The pre-Harappan phase at Kalibangan in Rajasthan and Banawali in Haryana is distinctly chalcolithic
 - All of the above
25. The people of the chalcolithic phase used different type of pottery, one of which is called black and red seems to have been widely prevalent from nearly
- 3000 BC onwards
 - 2000 BC onwards
 - 1000 BC onwards
 - 500 BC onwards
26. The widespread using of Black and Red ware (BRW) and Painted Grey Ware (PGW) mark the
- coming of Iron Technology in India
 - coming of Copper Technology in India
 - end of using bronze
 - none of the above
27. The copper boards are associated with the
- Lustrous red ware
 - Ochre-coloured ware
 - Black and red ware
 - Painted grey ware
28. The Nagara, the Dravida and the Vesara are the
- three main racial groups of the Indian subcontinent
 - three main linguistic divisions into which the languages of India can be classified
 - three main styles of Indian temple architecture
 - three main musical Gharanas prevalent in India

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Which were the earliest cereals grown by human?
 - Wheat
 - Barley
 - Maize
 - Millets

(a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2
(c) 3 and 4 (d) Neither of them
- Consider the following statements on Neolithic settlements in South India.
 - Lapidary art and domestication of animals are the remarkable features of the first phase of the South Indian Neolithic settlements.
 - The red coloured pottery were discovered in the Neolithic settlements.
 - Millet was the main crop harvested by Neolithic farmers of south India.
 - Crop rotation technique was started in the field of agriculture.

Which of the above is / are not correct?

(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 1 and 2 (d) 3 and 4
- Consider the following :

At which of the following places has the largest belt of painted rock - shelters of pre - historic period been discovered?

 - Bhaja
 - Bhimbetka
 - Jaora
 - Ajanta

Select the correct answer using the code given below :

(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 3 and 4
- With reference to Neolithic culture, consider the statement :
 - The earliest Neolithic settlement is at Mehrgarh, Baluchistan around 7000 BC.
 - V Gordon Childe defined the Neolithic chalcolithic culture as a self sufficient food economy.

Which of the above is / are correct ?

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Which of the artifacts given below could be used as source material for the prehistoric period in India?
 - Fossils
 - Hand axes
 - Pottery
 - Remains of bones

Select the correct answer using the given below

(a) 1, 2 and 4 (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 2, 3 and 4

- Consider the following representatives of different cultures:
 - Arretine ware
 - Northern black polished ware
 - Painted grey ware
 - Ochre coloured pottery

Their correct chronological sequence is

(a) 3, 4, 1, 2 (b) 4, 3, 1, 2
(c) 3, 4, 2, 1 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

Matching Based MCQ

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| List-I | List-II |
| A. Birbhanpur | 1. Banas culture |
| B. Ujjain | 2. Copper hoard |
| C. Kayatha | 3. Ochre-coloured pottery |
| D. Ahar | 4. Microliths |

Codes:

A	B	C	D
(a) 3	4	2	1
(b) 4	3	2	1
(c) 2	3	4	1
(d) 1	4	2	3
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| List-I | List-II |
| A. Mando | 1. Jammu and Kashmir |
| B. Sutkangendor | 2. Baluchistan |
| C. Daimabad | 3. Maharashtra |
| D. Alamgirpur | 4. Uttar Pradesh |

Choose the answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

(a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) all of these (d) none of these
- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| List - I | List - II |
| A. Palaeolithic | 1. Ground stone tools |
| B. Mesolithic | 2. Rock painting |
| C. Neolithic | 3. Flaked stone tools |
| D. Upper Palaeolithic | 4. Microlithic tools |

Codes:

A	B	C	D
(a) 1	4	2	3
(b) 3	1	4	2
(c) 3	4	1	2
(d) 2	3	4	1
- | | |
|---------------|--|
| List I | List II |
| A. Nagara | 1. Fortified settlements in Vedic literature |
| B. Pura | 2. Town in Pali literature |
| C. Nigama | 3. Fortified capital of a king |
| D. Durga | 4. City/town first mentioned in Taittiriya |

(a) A - 2, B - 3, C - 4, D - 1
(b) A - 4, B - 3, C - 2, D - 1
(c) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3
(d) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (c) The rock shelters of Bhimbetka are a repository of rock paintings within natural rock shelters with archaeological evidences from the Palaeolithic and Mesolithic periods through the Chalcolithic to the Medieval period.
2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (a)
8. (b) 9. (d) 10. (b) 11. (d) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (a) 16. (a) 17. (a) 18. (a)
19. (d) 20. (d)
21. (d)
22. (c) Robert Bruce Foote was a British geologist and archaeologist who conducted geological surveys of prehistoric locations in India for the Geological Survey of India.
23. (b) Chalcolithic Cultures were the first to paint their pottery.
24. (d) 25. (b) 26. (a) 27. (b)
28. (c) Nagara, Dravida and Vesara are three main styles of Indian temple architecture.

EXERCISE-2

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (a)
6. (d)
7. (b) The correct matching pairs are Birbhanpur and microliths, Ujjain and ochre-coloured pottery, Kayatha and copper hoard and Ahar and Banas culture.
8. (c) All the matches are correct which are paired — Mando and Jammu and Kashmir, Sutkangedor and Baluchistan, Daimabad and Maharashtra, Alamgirpur and Uttar Pradesh.
9. (c) 10. (d)



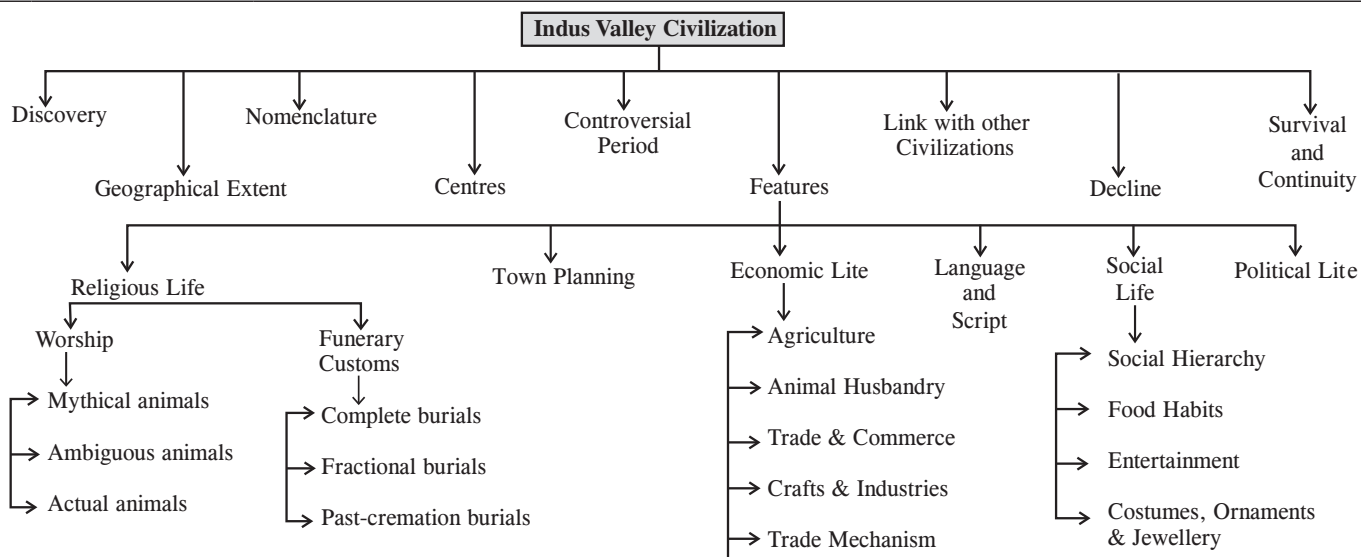
3

Chapter

INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

Introduction

Excavation of Harappa and Mohenjodaro in Punjab and Sind, now in Pakistan, awared the world about an ancient most advanced civilization contemporary to Egypt, Mesopotamia and Sham civilisation of China.



DISCOVERY

Scholar believed that the history of India began with the coming of the Aryans. When *Sir John Marshal* announced the discovery of a new civilization named Indus Valley civilization in a *London weekly* in 1924, a great sensation was created among the world archaeologists. Though, in 1826 an English man named *Charles Masson* had got large number of bricks from a place named Harappa. Later on in 1831, when Colonel Burnes was going to meet Maharaja Ranjeet Singh, he visited the Wreckage of Harappan. Similarly, in 1853 and 1856 Alexander Cunningham supervised the ruins of Harappa. In 1856 the English government started making railway track from Karachi to Lahaur. For this the work of excavation was started and many mysterious objects were obtained but on seeing those objects from ruins the workers

became frightened and the work was postponed.

It was in 1921 **Daya Ram Sahni** got the site excavated at **Harappa** in the Montgomery district of the **Punjab** (now in Pakistan) on the left bank of **Ravi**. Just after one year in 1922, **Rakhal Das Banerjee** discovered the remains of civilization at **Mohenjodaro** in the *Larkana* district of **Sindh**, now in Pakistan. These two excavations prepared the foundation of a new chapter in history which is studied under the name of **Indus Valley Civilization**. Now Let us study more about it.

GEOGRAPHICAL EXTENT

Discoveries have extended the area of the Indus Valley. The 1400 settlements, discovered so far are distributed over a very wide geographical area. It is known extent in the

West upto Sutkagendor in Baluchistan; Alamgirpur (Meerut, U.P.) in the East, Daimabad (Ahmadnagar, Maharashtra) in South and Manda (Akhoor, J & K) in the North. Thus, From West to East the **Indus Civilization covered an area of 1600 km and from North to South of 1100 km**. All the settlements are mostly located on the river banks of **Indus and Saraswati**. In 1947, after the partition of India, all the well known Harappan sites, Mohenjodaro, Harappa, Chanhudaro and Jhukar (near Larkana) went to Pakistan. The shape of the civilization was triangular covering an area of about 12,50,000 sq. km. Let's see the areas in Maps and chart.

Map of Indus Valley Civilization

Sites	Regions
Harappa	Punjab (Pakistan)
Mohenjodaro	Sindh (Pakistan)
Chanhudaro	Sindh (Pakistan)
Lothal	Gujarat

Kalibangan	Rajasthan
Banwali	Haryana
Rangpura Rojdi	Gujarat
Dholavira	Kutch (Gujarat)

NOMENCLATURE

The two names, Harappan civilization or Indus civilization are used interchangeably. The first one is derived from an *academic* tradition used in *archaeology*. Thus, *Harappan civilization* based on a notion that it began at a site which best represents the *ancient urban system* of South Asia.

Whereas, the **Indus civilization** began from the river valley of the Indus river with the largest concentration of settlement sites along the course of this river. **John Marshall** was first scholar to use this term.

CENTRES OF INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

All the sites were situated on the banks of rivers:

	Name of sites	Year of excavation	Excavator	River/Region	Archaeological Findings
I.	Harappa	1921 - 1926 - 1946 - 1856- 1986-90	Daya Ram Sahni Madho SwaroopVatsa, . S.M Wheeler, A. Cunningham R.H. Meadow	Ravi, Montgomery of Punjab (Pakistan) (Sahiwal) between Lahaur and Multan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Six Granaries in row. • Grid planned city. • Coffin burial • Cemetery-H of alien people • Virgin-Goddess • Stone symbols of Lingam and Yoni. • Clay figures of mother Goddess; Wheat and Barley in wooden mortar; Copper scale; Dice, Vanity box; Copper made mirror; workmen's quarter
II.	Mohenjodaro (Nakhlistan, i.e. Oasis of Sindh)	1922 - 1927 - 1930-31, 1947, 1964-66	R. D. Banerjee Mackay, E. J. H. Wheeler, S.M. S. J. Marshall G.F. Dales	Indus Larkana district in Sindh. (Pakistan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • City followed by grid planning. • Great Granary; Great Bath (the largest building) • Assembly hall; shell strips; Pashupati Mahadev; Bronze image of a nude woman dancer, steatite image of bearded man, human skeletons showing invasion and massacre. Painted seal (Demi God) Clay figure of mother goddess.
III.	Chanhudaro	1925 - 1931 - 1935-36	Macky N. Gopal Majumdar E.J.H. Mackay	Indus Nawabshah District in Sindh(Pakistan)	City without a citadel, Inkpot, Lipstick, Metal works, Shell-ornament makers, bead makers, shops, dog's paw imprint on a brick, Terracotta (bullock cart) Bronze toy cart with created drivers
IV.	Kalibanga	1951 The Ghaggar is known as 1961 Saraswati in Rajasthan	Amalananda Ghosh B. B. Lal and B. K. Thapar G. Dales, S.M. Wheeler	Ghaggar-river Rajasthan (India) Hanumangarh District	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shows both Pre-harappan & Harappan phase. • Furrowed land (pre-harappan) • 07 fire altars; camel bones; well; wheels of a toy cart; Mesopotamian cylindrical seal, gram; tiger marked coin.

V.	Lothal (It was surrounded by a wall)	1954-58	S. R. Rao	Between Bhogava & Sabarmati rivers Ahmedabad district (Gujarat)	First manmade port in the world , dockyard made by burnt bricks, painted jar (bird-fox) Bead makers factory, rice husk, fire altars; a measuring scale, chess playing; terracotta figurines of a horse and a ship, etc. Double burial (Male & Female), Dying Vat, Persian/Iranian seal, Bahrainian seal.
VI.	Banwali	1973	R.N. Bisht (Ravindra Nath) Bisht.	Ghaggar Hisar district Haryana (India)	Shows both pre Harappan & Harappan phase. Toy plough, Clay figures of mother Goddess, Good quantity of barley and rice. Lack systematic drainage system.
VII.	Surkotada	1964	J. P. Josi (Jagpati) Josi	Luni Kutchh Gujrat (India)	Bones of horses, Bead making shops, oval grave, pot burials.
VIII.	Sutkagendor	1927 1962	R.L. Stein George Dales	Dasht river Baluchistan (Pakistan)	Port city. Trade point between Harappa and Babylon. Human bones copper axe, an ashfullpot.
IX.	Amri	1935 1959-61	N.G. Majumdar J.M. Casal	Indus river Sindh (Pakistan)	Evidence of Antelope
X.	Dholavira	(1967-68) 1985-90	J.P. Joshi R. N. Bisht	Luni Rann (Kutchh) Gujarat (India)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unique water management • Largest site of large well and a bath. • Three parts of city. • Seven cultural stages. • Largest Harrappan inscription used for civil purposes, A stadium
XI.	Rangpur	1953	M. S. Vats B. B. Lal S. R. Rao	Mahar Gujarat (India)	Cultivation of rice
XII.	Kot Diji	1955-57	Faizal Ahmed Khan	Indus Sindh (Pakistan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wheel made painted pottery, 16 layers of culture. • defensive wall and aligned streets. • Metallurgy and artistic toys. • 05 figurines of Mother Goddess.
XIII.	Ropar	1955-56 1953-56	Y.D. Sharma S.S. Talwar R.N. Bisht	Sutlej Punjab India	Burying a dog with master rectangular mudbrick chamber. Scented soil five fold cultures. (Harappa, Kushan, Gupta and Medieval)
XIV.	Balakot	1963-76 1963-79	J.P. Joshi G.F. Dales	the Arabian sea Las Bela Valley	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remain of Pre-Harappan & Harappan Civilization • The mounds (9.7 mts (H) 2.8 sq. hectare of area)
XV.	Alamgirpur	1958	Y. D. Sharma (Yagya Dutta)	Hindon Meerut (U.P)	Eastern side of Civilization. Impression of cloth on a trough.
XVI.	Manda	1975-76	J.P.Joshi & Madhu Bala	Chenab river Akhnoor (Jammu)	Northern site of civilization Copper pin, Saddle querns
XVII.	Ganweriwala		Rafeeq Mugal	Pakistan	
XVIII.	Rakhi Garhi		Rafeeq Mugal	Jind (Haryana)	

CONTROVERSIAL PERIOD

To make a precise date for the beginning of Indus Valley Civilization scholars differ in opinions.

Scholars	Period
Marshall	3250-2750 B.C.
Mackay	2800-2500 B.C.
M.S. Vats	3500-2500 B.C.
C.J. Gadds	2350-1770 B.C.
S. Piggott & S.M. Wheeler	2500-1500 B.C.
Allbright	around 1750 B.C.
D.P. Agarwal	2300-1750 B.C.
Dales	2900-1900 B.C.
R.H. Brunswig	2800-2000 B.C.
J.P. Joshi	2550-2050 B.C.
G. Possehl	2867-2000 B.C.
Rafiq Mughal	3500-2900 B.C.

Difference between pre-harappan and proto-Harappan cultures :

All the cultures existing before the Harappa culture are called pre-harappa culture whereas proto-Harappa cultures are those pre-harappa cultures which take some close similarities with the Harappa-culture. Here it would be pertinent to indicate that the Harappa civilization belongs to the Bronze Age (during the year 2500 to 1750 B.C.) extending from Baluchistan (Pakistan) to Gujarat in India.

Comparison with others: According to Sir John Marshall that the standard of civilized life reached by the people of Harappa and Mohenjodaro was higher than that of the ancient Babylonians and Egyptians and equal to that of Sumerians.

BASIC FEATURES OF INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

Town Planning

- The most striking feature of Harappan civilisation is its town-planning and sanitation.
- Harappan cities such as Mohenjodaro, Harappa, Kalibangan, Dholavira & Surkotada, were divided into **two parts** - a **fortified settlement** on the high mounds called '**citadels**' and the main residential areas called '**lower town**'. 'Citadel' was smaller in area than the 'lower town' and located to the west of the cities.
- Houses were built of *Kiln-burnt bricks*. At Lothal and Kalibanga residential houses were made of sun-dried bricks.
- The drains, wells, bathing platforms were made of Kiln-burnt bricks.
- Most of the houses had wells within them and a **drainage system** carried the waste water to the main underground drain of the street. The covered drains had **soak-pits** and **manholes** for clearing.
- The arrangements for street lighting were available for the people.
- The main streets ran from North to South varied from 9 ft to 34 ft in width.
- Municipal authority controlled the development of the city.
- The streets ran in straight lines crossing one another at right angles. Houses stood on both sides of the streets. The street and lanes were not paved but a famous street called '**The first street**' of Mohenjodaro was surfaced with broken bricks and potsherds.
- Harappa and Mohenjodaro were built entirely of burnt bricks. All the bricks were well proportioned measuring $26 \times 12.5 \times 5.5$ cm. Large bricks (51 cm) were used to cover drains. The bricks were made of **Alluvial soil**. Wedge-shaped bricks were used in the lining of wells. Small bricks were used for making the bathroom pavements watertight. L-shaped bricks were preferred for corners.
- The buildings (dwelling house, larger buildings and public baths, granaries, etc.) were mostly plain without plasters. At Kalibanga, ornamental bricks were used in the floor of a house. The ground floor of a small house measured 8×9 metres and the large one was double of its size.
- Some of the houses were double storeyed. Wooden beams were used in making the roofs. The roofs were made of reed matting covered with thick coating mud. A few staircases have been discovered. Wooden staircase with high narrow steps (38 cm high, 13 cm wide) were used in general. The roofs were flat and enclosed by a parapet.
- Gutters of pottery (found at Chahundaro) were made for draining the rainwater. The entrance to the house was made from the street side.
- The open court was the basic feature of house planning. The courtyard (paved with bricks) was laid flat and surrounded by chambers. Doors and windows opened into it. Doors were placed at the ends of the walls, not in the middle and outer walls from the roadside had no windows.
- Perforated lattices were used as windows or ventilators. Houses had *stairways* made of solid masonry. In some buildings, the stairways led to the upper storeys which contained the bath and the living and sleeping apartments.
- An average house had besides kitchen and bath, four to six living rooms. Some large houses had near about thirty rooms. The kitchen was small and fuel was placed on a high platform.

- Cooking was done in the courtyards in the open. Sometimes an aperture in the wall was made between the kitchen and the larger room for making a 'serving hatch'. The waste water ran into the earth through a pottery vessel with a hole sunked in the kitchen.
- Every house had its bathroom on the side of the street.
- Latrine found between the bathroom and the street. The bathroom had brick pavement sloping towards one corner. Pottery rasps were used to remove thickened cuticle.
- From Mohenjodaro large **khans (inns)**, stone houses and watch towers have been unearthed. This is an extensive building on the West of the stupa measuring 69×23.5 metres. It was a priestly corporation containing the **Great Bath**. The whole complex is a single unit which is named the '*Collegiate Building*'. At that time bathing was a ritual and the Great Bath (12×7 metres) made of burnt brick, was used only on ceremonial occasions. It has *staircases* on both sides. Below the staircases is a broad platform (01 m wide, 41 cm high). It was a safe bathing place for children. There are eight bathrooms on the North of the Great Bath. This building was for priests.
- There was a large oval well which supplied water. A hall (8 metres square) has been discovered on the South of the stupa. It was used for some religious assembly. John Marshall compares it with a Buddhist rock-cut-temple while Mackay calls it a large market hall with lines of permanent stalls along the aisles. There are four well-paved aisles which are separated by rows of pillars. At Harappa a building has been discovered measuring 50×40 metres with a central passage of 07 metres wide. It was a store house for grain.
- Near the 'First street' there was a palatial building with two spacious *courtyards*, *servant quarters* and *store rooms*. It was either a temple or the residence of the Governor.
- The entire city was protected by a '*city wall*'. A small fort has been laid bare in most of the important cities.
- Like Babylonia and Egypt, Harappans did not use any foundation deposits. For this nothing is known about the ceremonies associated with the laying of foundation that can help the excavator to know about the history of the building.
- The Harappan **fortifications** were not meant to defend the township from strong attacks by enemies. It was constructed for the protection against **floods**, **robbers** and **cattle raiders**. It was also a hallmark of social authority over the area they commanded.
- The Harappan towns were encompassed by walls with gateways, the simple entry points to the town. Some of the gateways had attached guard rooms.

Do you know ?

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| • Two important Harappan crops | → Wheat, barley |
| • The most widely used metal by the Indus Valley people | → Bronze |
| • Harappan trading station | → Lothal. |
| • The most important industry | → Bead at making. |
| • Station of Harappan cattle breeders | → Nesadi |
| • The largest Harappan settlement in India | → Kuntasi |
| • Traces of rice cultivation have been found at | → Lothal and Rangpur. |

Religious life

- Harappan people had features of *Hinduism*, such as worship of the mother Goddess, Pashupati, Shiva, Sacred animals, trees, etc.
- *Clay figures* of the mother goddess as the symbol of fertility have been found.
- The three-faced deity wearing a horned head-dress, seated cross-legged on a throne, and surrounded by elephant, tiger, buffalo and rhinoceros, with deer appearing under the seat is the representation of Lord Shiva.
- Marshall has discovered some conical and cylindrical stones which indicate the *phallic worship*, i.e. *lingam worship*. Similarly, on the basis of small ring stones, Marshall suggested them the female generative organ (yoni) which indicate the worshipping of the Mother Goddess.
- At Kalibangan, fire altars have been discovered.
- We do not find any tracer of temple or places for worship at any of the Harappan sites.

Worship

- Harappans believed in animal worship. The animals fall into three groups :
 - (1) **Mythical animals** or complex animals, e.g. a semi human, semi-bovine creature
 - (2) **Ambiguous creature**, e.g. the strand unicorn accompanied with manager or incense-burner and
 - (3) **Actual animal** including the rhinoceros, the bison, the tiger, the humped bull, etc.
- The most common animal found on the Harappan seals is the **bull** which has been referred to as '**a unicorn**'.
- The cow is not depicted or introduced anywhere.
- Tree worshipping was a culture in this civilization. **Pipal tree** was the most worshipped tree.
- Indus people believed in armlets and Talisman. On a seal, a six-rayed motif is depicted signifying the sun. Clay models of oxen were used as motive offerings. Tablets of clay and copper were used as armlets.

- Swastik and cross signs were **harbingers** of good luck.
- Daya Ram Shahni has discovered the famous dancing girl called '**Devadasi**' which is depicted on a seal.
- The offering of animals in **sacrifice** was a Harappan practice which have been discovered from Mohenjodaro and Kailbangan. In a 'fire-altar' bovine, bones and outliers were discovered which represent some kind of animal sacrifice.

Funerary Customs

Three forms of burials have been found at Mohenjodaro, viz, **complete burials**, **Fractional burials** (only, a collection of bones are buried after the exposure of the body of wild beasts and birds) and **part - cremation burials**.

At **Kalibangan** three types of burial practices are noticed:

1. Extended inhumanion in rectangular or oval graves,
2. Pot-burial in the circular pit containing pots and grave goods like beads and
3. Pottery deposit in rectangular or oval graves.

At **Lothal**, two types of burial practices were followed the first type contained the grave goods and a single skeleton, the other contained two skeletons buried together.

Economic Life

Harappan people were comfort living and prosperous. Their richness was due to surplus agriculture, cattle rearing, proficiency in various crafts and trade.

Agriculture

- Agriculture was the **backbone** of the Harappan people. Sindh was a fertile part of country.
- The Indus people sowed seeds in the flood plains in November when the flood water receded, and reaped their harvests of wheat and barley in April, before the advent of the next flood.
- They produced wheat, barley, peas, kodon, sanwa, jowar, ragi, etc.
- Two types of wheat – the club wheat campactum and the Indian **dwarf wheat (Triticum sphaerococcum)** were grown.
- Barley (hordeum vulgare, probably of a small-seeded six-rowed variety, was also sound at Kalibangan. *Barley* and wheat have been the most important crops at all Harappan sites.
- Other crops include **dates**, **seasam** and **mustard** were also grown.
- It seems that as early as 180 B.C. the people of Lothal used **rice** whose remains have been found.
- *The evidence of the sugarcane has not been found yet.* Though its presence is to be expected. At Lothal and

Rangpur, rice husks and spikelets were found embedded in clay and pottery.

- A fragment of woven cotton cloth has been found at Mohenjodaro. *The Indus people were the earliest people to produce cotton.*
- The Harappans used the wooden plough with wooden or copper plough share.
- Stone and Copper sickles may have been used for harvesting the crops.
- Gabar bands or nalas enclosed by dams were used for storing the water which are found at Baluchistan and Afghanistan. *No evidences of channel or canal irrigation has been discovered from the sites of this civilization.*

Animal Husbandry

- Animals were kept on a large scale and *oxen, buffaloes* (Bubalus bubalis), *goats* (Sus cristatus), *sheep*, and *pigs* were domesticated.
- *Dogs* and *cats* were also domesticated. The *humped bulls* were favoured by the Harappans.
- *Asses* and *Camels* were used as *beasts of burden*. Camel bones are reported at Kalibangan.
- The only plausible evidence of the horse comes from Surkotada belonging to around 2000 B.C.
- *Elephants* were well known to the Harappans. They were also acquainted with the rhinoceros, spotted deer, hog deer, wild pig, etc.

Trade and Commerce

- The cities like Mohenjodaro, Harappa and Lothal were the important centres for **metallurgy**, producing **tools** and **weapons** as well as **kitchenware**.
- **Rice** seems to have been imported to Punjab from Gujarat.
- Lothal and Surkotada filled a large gap in the growing demands for **cotton**.
- Sea-shells were exported from Balakot and Lothal to Baluchistan as well as the Indus.
- **Dates**, **Shilajeet** were found at Mohenjodaro.
- The Harappans imported **metals** and semi precious **stones**, **ornaments** of gold and silver from the subcontinental areas like Lapis Lazuli from Kashmir and Afghanistan
- **Turquoise** and **jade** from Central Asia or gran, amethyst from Maharashtra and agate, Chalcedony and Carnelian from Saurashtra.
- *Gold, silver, Tin and Lead* were imported from Iran and Afghanistan. Precious stones were imported from Badakhanshan and *copper* from *Khetri (Rajasthan)*.

- The Products of Indus have been found in Mesopotamia. Its seals and products were also discovered at Sumer.
- The chief merchandise *cotton* was *exported from Lothal Harbour*. The Harappan had trading relations with the West and Central Asian sites.

Trade Mechanism

- A copper scale has been found from Harappa. This scale is divided into many parts. All the parts are same in size measuring 0.3676 inch. At that time one foot are equal to 13.2 inch.
- *The sexagesimal and decimal system were known to the Harappans.*
- The weights were made of stone and they were of cubical and spherical in shape. They followed the series in doubling from 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 and then 160, 320, 640 and so forth. The smallest weights are found of 13.64 grams.
- The unit of ratio was 16 equivalent to 13.64 grams. *16 chhatank made a ser and 16 annas made one rupee.*

Crafts and Industries

- **Weaving** was the chief industry at Mohenjodaro.
- **Pottery** was an important industry. They were also acquainted with the **art of dying** and the art of **smelting** metals.
- Balakot and Chanhudaro were for shell working and **Bangle** making Charnudaro was centre for the manufacture of **beads** of carnelian.
- **Bronze Smiths** produced images, utensils, tools and weapons.
- **Brick-laying** was an important craft of that time.
- The Harappans had the knowledge of **boat-making**, **seal-making** and terracotta manufacturing.
- The Harappans had experts beadmakers and Goldsmiths

Transport and Communications

- Harappans had good transporting system for trade.
- They used **bullock carts** and rarely horse carts for onland journey.
- They practised **navigation** on the coast of the Arabian sea. Representation of **ships** and **boats** are found on seals or graffiti at Harappa, Mohenjodaro, etc. and a terracotta model of a ship comes from Lothal.
- *Caravans of pack-oxen* were the chief means of transport for longer journeys through rougher and wooded country.

Language and Script

- The language of the Harappan is still unknown. The number of **pictorial signs** in the script vary according

to different archaeologists. For examples G.R. Hunter (1932)-149 signs, A. H.Dani (1963) - 537, Asko Parpola (1973)-396, etc. Those symbols were not alphabetic in their order.

- Their language is closer to **Dravidian** than to any other known languages.
- Their scripts were pictographic.
- The script was written **from right to left** like modern **urdu**. These scripts are found on various seals, pottery copper tablets, tools, etc.
- The script is not related to any of the contemporary Egyptian, Sumerian or Babylonian script. Some scholars call it the parent of the Brahmi Script.
- All the inscriptions discovered till now are short, with an average of half a dozen letters, the longest has seventeen. It will be a turning point in the history of India when this Indus script is deciphered.

Social Life

Social Hierarchy

- Indus people believed in simple living and high thinking.
- Traditional family was the unit of the society.
- Women were given high honour in society. Family was regulated in the name of mother.
- The Indus Civilization had four different classes in which the *society was divided* - *Scholars, warriors, businessman and labourers.*
- No evidence of caste system has been found yet.

Food habits

- The Harappans were *non-vegetarians*. Wheat, barley and bread were commonly used. They used to eat *fish, beef, mutton, poultry* occasionally.
- Coconut, dates, pomegranate, lemon and watermelon were the chief fruits they ate.

Entertainment

- They preferred indoor hobbies to outdoor amusements.
- **Dance** and **music** were their popular amusements.
- Dices, chess, fishing, hunting and swimming were the sources of entertainment.
- Gambling was also in vogue.
- On some occasions they made animals or birds fight together for their entertainment.
- Marble dolls and animals toys show that the children of Mohenjodaro were well supplied with playthings.

Costumes, ornaments and Jewellery

- The ladies were scantily dressed. They wore a short skirt that reached up to the knee; and it was held by a girdle - a string of beads.
- The male used a *robe* with or without embroidery. It was worn over the left shoulder and under the right arm.
- *Dhoti* wearing was also in practice. Perhaps they did not use footwear. Cotton was used. There is no evidence of linen or wool.
- Different types of **hair styles** were used but very long beards were not preferred. The dancing girl from Mohenjodaro has a pony tail. Some females have a plait tied with a bow at the end.
- Men's hair was parted in the middle and tied with a fillet. Sometimes the hair was gathered up in a bun or coiled in a ring on top of the head.
- Beards were trimmed and upper lips were shaven. Completely shaven faces with a small beard on the chin are also noticed.
- Mirrors of bronze were very common.
- The people followed the **veil system** in the society. Women used a special clothe over their heads which were flying from the backside of their heads.
- Man and woman both were fond of **ornaments**. Women wore a fan-shaped head-dress. Small cones of Gold, Silver, Copper and Faience were worn on the sides of the head.
- The Forehead was decorated with a **fillet** or a **headband**. **Ear-rings** were made of coils of gold, silver, copper or faience. Probably no nose ornaments were used.
- Necklaces, fillets, armllets, finger rings and bangles were used by both the sexes.
- Girdles, nose -studs, ear-studs, anklet, etc. may have been worn by woman only as are proved by the statues.
- They used some sorts of collyrium, face-powders, lip-sticks, face paints and perfumary which were also exported.

Political life

- Urbanization represents radical socio-political change.
- Harappan political system was organised on the pattern of 'city states', which were highly disciplined on account of dominant social controls.
- Harappan rulers were more concerned with commerce, than with conquests, and Harappa was possibly ruled by a class of merchants.
- Harappa was ruled by the two capital cities. The distance between the two capitals was 350 mile.
- Sir Mortimer Wheeler writes, "the lords of Harappa administered their city in the fashion not remote from that of the priest-kings or governors of Sumer and Akkad.

LINKS WITH OTHER CIVILIZATIONS

- Harappans had close trade relations with submarine. The Sumerian Civilization was a part of Mesopotamian Civilization. Mangol and Dravid were the progeniar of Sumer. The presence of a cuneiform inscription at Mohenjodaro witnesses the links with the Mesopotamians (area between Dajla and Furat).

DECLINE OF INDUS CIVILIZATION

- The Harappan Culture lasted for around 1000 years.
- *Invasion of the Aryans*, Mortimer Wheeler says, destroyed the Indus settlements.
- Men and women were massacred in the streets and houses.
- They were left lying covered without last rites.
- *E. J. H. Mackay*, Lambric and John Marshall are of the view that the decline of the Harappan Civilization was mainly due to the vagaries of the Indus river.
- Some evidence of devastation by floods is to be found at Mohenjodaro and Lothal.
- According to Thus, numerous causes, natural and human, as the **invasion of nomadic** outsiders (B.C. 1500), flood, social breakup of Harappans, the decline in trade and commerce were the major causes of its decline.

SURVIVAL AND CONTINUITY OF THE INDUS CIVILIZATION

The decline does not mean the total eclipse of all. For this, we can find the historical continuity from the Harappan period to the later periods of Indian history.

- The **worship** of 'Pashupati Shiva' and 'Lingam' is survived in these days.
- Similarly Mother Goddess, sacred tree, animals, serpent, different religious symbols such as Swastik, etc. which were prevalent in the Harappan religion, were adopted in later Hinduism and are in Vogue in present time.
- In the field of **Science and Technology**, the Indus Civilization greatly contributed to the similar future developments.
- Harappan civilization was the *womb of mathematics*.
- The **numerical** and **decimal system** were evolved there from which 'the vedic mathematics' is based.
- **Punch marked** coins is an important survival of the Indus Valley.
- The art of making pottery, baked bricks, beads, jewellery, different utensils, was adopted in the vedic civilization.

Indus Civilization at a Glance (2500 B.C. - 1750 B.C.)

- First discovered site of the civilization ⇒ Harappa (1921) by D. Sahani.
- The oldest name of the civilization ⇒ Indus civilization.
- The most suitable name (Geographical) ⇒ Indus-saraswat civilization.
- John Marshall was the first to use the term Indus Civilization (1924)

- **Different sites :**

- (I)

Ropar (Sutlej / Punjab)	}	The Northern – most site
Manda (Chenab / J.K.)		
- (II)

Bhagatrav (Kim / Gujarat)	}	The Southern – most site
Daimabad (Pravar / Maharashtra)		
- (III) [Aiimgirpur] (Hindon/U.P) – The eastern – most site
- (IV) Sutkagendar (Dashk)/Makran Coast - The Western most site.

Other important sites : Harappa, Mohenjodaro and Dholavira (The nucleus cities); Suktagendor, Balakot, Allahdino (near Karachi), Lothal (The coastal towns and ports); Chanhudaro, Kotdiji, Surkotada, Desalpur, Rojdi, Manda, Ropar, Kalibangan, Banwali, Balu and Rakhi Shahpur (other cities and township). Harappa (North) and Mohenjodaro (South) (The two capital cities)

- Latest Harappan site discovered Dholavira
- The largest site - Mahenjodaro
- The largest Indian site - Rakhigarhi.
- Indus sites found in Afghanistan - Shatughai and Mundigah.
- The makers of the Indus Civilization – Dravidian.
- Contemporary Civilizations ⇒ Mesopotamia (Dajla-Furat) at Nile and China at Whang Ho & Yang-si.
- The entry port for trade between Indus and Mesopotamia - Bahrain
- Close commercial and cultural contacts with ⇒ Sumer, Elam, Mesopotamia, Iran, Bahrain and Central Asia.
- The two most thickly populated cities - Mohenjodaro and Harappa.
- The two main trade routes:
 - I. The northern route linked North Iran and Oxus region with Kabul and the central reaches of the Indus.
 - II. The southern route linked central and south Iran with Kandhar, north Baluchistan and the more southerly regions of the Indus.
- The Indus Civilization belongs to Chalcolithic or Bronze Age. ('Chalco' means copper and lithic means stone).
- The heartland of the Indus civilization - Harappa - Ghaggar - Mohenjodaro axis.
- **Common features of major cities :** Grid system in town planning; sanitation (underground drainage system); Fortified Citadel (Exception-Chanhudaro); use of burnt bricks; dwelling houses (kitchen, bathroom and toilet); larger buildings; public baths and grainaries, etc. Assembly hall; palace of the Governor, Collegiate building gateways.
- **Main crops :** Wheat and barley; Evidence of rice in Lothal and Rangpur only. Main fruits-Coconut, Dates, Pomegranate, Watermelon, Lemon, etc. Other crops-mustard, sesame, cotton, etc. Indus people were the **first to produce cotton** in the world.
- **Animals (Domestic and wild) :** Sheep, buffalo, goat, dog, cat, pig, fowl, deer, tortoise, bull (humped and humpless), camel, elephant, tiger, rhinoceros, etc. They were not acquainted with 'Lion', trace of horse is rarely discovered. Surkotada (Kutchh, Gujarat) is the only site where the remains of a horse have been found. Camel bones are reported at Kalibangan. From Amari, a single instance of the Indian rhinoceros has been reported and of elephant from Rojdi (Saurashtra).
- **Trade :** Foreign trade with Mesopotamia or Sumeria (Nowgraa), Bahrain.

Major Imports

Material	Source
Gold	Kolar (Karnataka, Afghanistan, Persia (Iran))
Silver	Afghanistan, Persia (Iran)
Copper	Khetri (Rajasthan), Baluchistan, Arabia
Tin	Afghanistan, Central Asia, Bihar
Agates	Western India.
Chalcedony	Saurashtra
Lead	Rajasthan, South India, Afghanistan, Iran
Lapis Lazuri & Sapphire	Badak-shan (Afghanistan)
Torquise	Central Asia, Iran.
Amethyst	Maharashtra
Jade	Central Asia
Carnelian	Saurashtra

Some Important names/facts of I.V. Civilisation

- The Sumerian texts refer to two intermediate station - Dilmun (Bahrain) and Makan. It also refers to trade relation with 'Meluha' - the name given to the Indus region.
- Harappan cotton was called '*Sindon*' by the Greeks.
- A community who worshiped rivers was called '*Dariyapanthi*' in Indus civilization.
- '*Boustrophendon*' is name of Indus script. It is written from right to left and then left to right.
- English Bound System : The way of fitting the bricks in making walls. In this system one large of bricks is placed in length and the other layer is made by placing the bricks widthwise.

- Ziggurat : The temples of Sumeria.
- The traces of **Sati system** is found in Lothal (Joint buria).
- First of all **Sweden** tries to read the script of Harappan Civilization.
- **Lipistic** has been discovered from Chahundaro and Black eastern bangles from Kalibangan. **Pastry** rollar and board and bowls have been discovered from Alamgirpur Meerut.
- The evidence of coins is not found. **Barter** is assumed to have been the method of exchange of goods.
- Merchants were the ruling class of Indus Civilization.
- The Harappan did not worship their gods in temple. They did not worship the cow as we do today. They worshipped Matridev Shakti, Yoni, Pashupati, Lingam, Naga (Serpent), trees (Peepal and acacia), humped bull, the sun, water, etc. They believed in paganism and sacrificed animals in religious ceremonies.
- **Steatite** was used in seals manufacturing.
- The origin of '**swastika**' is discovered from the Indus Civilization.
- **Indra**, the commander of Aryan, is accused of causing the decline of their civilization.
- The battle of '**Hariyumpia**' (in Rigveda) has been identified with Harappa. (M. Wheeler)
- '**Susa**' are Mesopotamian places where Harappa seals were found.

Exercise - 1

1. The earliest evidence of settled agriculture from the sub-content comes from
 - (a) Kalibangan
 - (b) Amri
 - (c) Mehrgarh
 - (d) Inamgarh
2. Which of the following valleys is known for having a continuous succession of palaeolithic paintings of different periods?
 - (a) Buharbulang valley
 - (b) Bhimbetka
 - (c) Sohan valley
 - (d) Bhader valley
3. Indus valley civilization is an example of
 - (a) Pre-history
 - (b) Proto-history
 - (c) Continuous story
 - (d) History
4. The first cereals that early men grown were
 - (a) wheat and rice
 - (b) wheat and barley
 - (c) barley and maize
 - (d) barley and rice.
5. Two most important Harappan crops were
 - (a) Wheat and barley
 - (b) Sesamum and mustard
 - (c) Rice and peas
 - (d) Cotton and Sugarcane
6. Which one of the following is not one of the Harapan sites related to the maritime activities of the Harappan people?
 - (a) Lothal
 - (b) Balakot
 - (c) Sokta Kob
 - (d) Patliputra.
7. Which of the following was not the likely purpose of the Great Bath in the citadel at Mohenjodaro?
 - (a) Community bathing
 - (b) Swimming exercises and water sports
 - (c) Some elaborate ritual of vital importance, including a corporate social life
 - (d) Storage of water to be used during drought or emergency
8. Almost all Harappan towns had large granaries because
 - (a) Taxes were paid in kind, and therefore, granaries acted as a sort of public treasuries
 - (b) Surplus produce of the countryside was stored in the towns
 - (c) Food-grains were stored for the purpose of trade
 - (d) All of the above
9. From the scattered skeletal remains of the Harappans found at different sites, the most appropriate conclusion to be drawn would be that there was
 - (a) Some kind of military assault
 - (b) Mass execution or human sacrifice
 - (c) Casual burial of human bodies
 - (d) Malaria or any other pathogenic condition
10. One of the Harappan deities not represented in later Hindu religion is
 - (a) Pashupati Siva
 - (b) Seven mothers (Sapta mariksa)
 - (c) Compound creatures
 - (d) Unicorn
11. Which one of the following sites of the Indus Valley Civilization had an ancient dockyard?
 - (a) Kalibangan
 - (b) Lothal
 - (c) Rangpur
 - (d) Harappa
12. The primary purpose of a seal in the Indus Valley Civilization was probably
 - (a) to signify royalty
 - (b) as a medium of exchange in trade
 - (c) to signify ownership of property
 - (d) to indicate social status
13. Manda, the northern-most site of Indus Civilization in Jammu and Kashmir is located on the banks of which river?
 - (a) Jhelum
 - (b) Sutlej
 - (c) Chenab
 - (d) Zaskar
14. Pick out the incorrect statement about Town planning in Indus Civilization?
 - (a) There was systematic town planning on the lines of grid system.
 - (b) There was a fortified citadel on the western site and a lower town on the eastern side.
 - (c) The windows of the houses opened onto the main streets.
 - (d) There was remarkable and well developed underground drainage system.
15. Evidence of mixed cropping is seen from which site of Indus Civilization?
 - (a) Lothal
 - (b) Dholavira
 - (c) Chanhudaro
 - (d) Kalibangan
16. A circular button shaped seal called the Persian gulf seal has been obtained from which Harappan site?
 - (a) Lothal
 - (b) Mohenjodaro
 - (c) Banwali
 - (d) Kalibangan
17. Cylindrical seals of Mesopotamia have been recovered from which two Harappan site?
 - (a) Lothal and Kalibangan
 - (b) Lothal and Rangpur
 - (c) Mohenjodaro and Kalibangan
 - (d) Ropar and Rojdi
18. Which of the following types of burial is not observed at Mohenjodaro?
 - (a) Complete burial
 - (b) Fractional burial
 - (c) Post-cremation burial
 - (d) Double burial

19. Two terracotta models of Egyptian mummies have been recovered from which Harappan site?
 (a) Dholavira (b) Lothal
 (c) Kalibangan (d) Chanhudaro
20. Which of the following sites is the largest of all Indus settlements excavated?
 (a) Dholavira (b) Mohenjodaro
 (c) Lothal (d) Kalibangan
21. Almost all the people of Indus Valley Civilization were:
 (a) Nigroid (b) Proto-Austroloid
 (c) Mediterranean (d) Nordic
22. Which metal was unknown to Indus Valley Civilization?
 (a) Gold (b) Silver
 (c) Copper (d) Iron
23. A statue of bearded man was found at
 (a) Harappa (b) Mohenjodaro
 (c) Chanhudaro (d) Dholavira
24. In Indus Valley Civilization, the script was:
 (a) Kharosthi (b) Brahmi
 (c) Boustrophedon (d) None of these
25. Which one of the following Indus Valley Civilization sites gives evidence of a dockyard?
 (a) Harappa (b) Mohenjodaro
 (c) Lothal (d) Dholavira
26. Which one of the following Indus Valley Civilization sites gives evidence of a stadium?
 (a) Harappa (b) Kalibangan
 (c) Mohenjodaro (d) Dholavira
27. A seal depicting Mother Goddess with plant growing from the womb, has been found from:
 (a) Harappa (b) Mohenjodaro
 (c) Kalibangan (d) Dholavira
28. Indus Valley Civilization was discovered by:
 (a) Dayaram Sahni (b) R.D. Banerji
 (c) Cunningham (d) Wheeler
29. Harappan people had a common burial system, which is proved by
 (a) The earth burials with the head of the dead normally laid towards the north
 (b) The burial of commonly used items with the dead
 (c) Both (a) and (b) above
 (d) The burial of the dead body in the sitting posture
30. The use of lime and costly burnt bricks, instead of sundried bricks, by the Indus Valley people for construction purposes is a proof of
 (a) A moist climate on account of the close proximity of the civilization to the river valleys
 (b) Advanced technology
 (c) Better planning
 (d) Knowledge of the manufacture of lime
31. On the basis of available evidence, the Harappan civilization contributed two important things to mankind which were
 (a) Growing wheat and cotton
 (b) Knowledge of mathematics and decimal system
 (c) Copper and bronze smelting technology
 (d) Making soak-pits and earthen pipes
32. The Harappan towns and cities were divided into large _____ blocks
 (a) Square (b) Rectangular
 (c) Circular (d) Semi-circular
33. Which of the following toilet and cosmetic objects were not perhaps known to Indus Valley people ?
 (a) Copper mirrors (b) Ivory combs
 (c) Antimony rods (d) Hair-dyes
34. Which of the following was not one of the tools and implements used by Indus Valley people?
 (a) Needles and razors
 (b) Sickles and plough
 (c) Forks and spoons
 (d) Grindings stones for flouring wheat, pestles and querns
35. Which of the following features of modern Hinduism is not derived from the Harappan cults?
 (a) Shakti worship
 (b) Worship of Siva as Pashupati
 (c) Worship of Siva-linga in the form of conical and cylindrical stones
 (d) Dedication of temples to a particular deity
36. In the Harappan buildings mostly burnt bricks were used, not stones, because
 (a) Without iron tools stone-cutting was difficult
 (b) Bricks provided better flood defence
 (c) Bricks were ideally suited for the moist climate
 (d) Stone was not readily available
37. Which of the following is not a feature of the religious life of the Indus civilization?
 (a) Pipal and Acacia trees were regarded as celestial plants
 (b) The tree of life figures with great frequency on the seals
 (c) The Indus deities, like the Vedic deities, were predominantly male
 (d) The people had faith in amulets and charms, which shows that they were afraid of demons
38. From a large number of seals discovered from almost all the Harappan sites, it appears that they were used for _____ purposes.
 (a) ritualistic and religious
 (b) Commercial
 (c) Both (a) and (b) above
 (d) Symbolic
39. Which of the following is not one of the proofs of maritime activities of the Indus Valley people ?
 (a) The discovery of a dockyard at Lothal
 (b) The drawing of a ship on a seal
 (c) Discovery of a number of articles which were not produced or found in the country
 (d) Commercial links of the Harappans with the West Asian countries

40. On what evidence is South Russia/Central Asia regarded as the original home of the Aryans?
(a) Anthropological (b) Philological
(c) Racial (d) Archaeological
41. The Aryans came to India as
(a) Invaders (b) Immigrants
(c) Refugees (d) Merchants and nomads
42. Which of the following is not considered an Indo-Aryan language?
(a) Avesta (b) English
(c) Arabic (d) Persian
43. According to the theory of double invasion of India by the Aryans, the first group inhabited the Punjab, and the second group pushed its way through Gilgit and Chitral and settled in the midland country. Who put forward this theory?
(a) Dr. Giles
(b) Dr. Hoernle
(c) Sir George Grierson
(d) C.V. Vaidya
44. The chief opponents of the Aryans were the indigenous people of non-Aryan origin known as Panis and Dasas or Dasyus. The factor which enabled the Aryans to emerge victorious in the struggle against the indigenous tribes was
(a) Lack of unity among the indigenous tribes
(b) Better organization among the Aryans
(c) Superior military equipment of the Aryans
(d) Cultural superiority
45. Which of the following correctly describes the land of the Seven Rivers (Sapta Sindhu) where the initial Aryan settlements were located?
(a) The Indus Valley region
(b) The Punjab and Delhi region
(c) The region from Eastern Afghanistan to the upper valley of the Ganges
(d) The land of the Indus and its principal tributaries
46. The geographical knowledge of the early Aryans did not extend beyond
(a) Indus (b) Ganga
(c) Yamuna (d) Ghaggar
47. Which of the following was not a major industrial town of the Harappan civilization?
(a) Lothal (b) Chanhudaro
(c) Harappa (d) Kalibangan
48. Which one of the following statements regarding Harappan civilisation is correct?
(a) The standard Harappan seals were made of clay
(b) The inhabitants of Harappa had neither knowledge of copper nor bronze
(c) The Harappan civilisation was rural based
(d) The inhabitants of Harappa grew and used cotton
49. The site of Harappa is located on the bank of river
(a) Saraswati (b) Indus
(c) Beas (d) Ravi
50. The polity of the Harappan people, as derived from the material evidence, was
(a) secular-federalist (b) theocratic-federalist
(c) oligarchic (d) theocratic-unitary
51. Which one among the following is not the characteristic feature of the Harappan settlement?
(a) Doorways and windows generally faced the side lanes and rarely opened onto the main streets
(b) Houses generally had separate bathing areas and toilets
(c) The citadel was walled but the lower town was not walled
(d) Drains and water chutes from the second storey were often built inside the wall
52. The terra-cotta plough of the Harappan civilization was found at
(a) Mohenjo-daro (b) Banawali
(c) Kalibangan (d) Lothal

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- The Indus valley civilization is called non - Aryan because
 - Indus people worshipped mother Goddess.
 - It is a pictographic script.
 Which of the above statement is/are true ?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - 1 and 2
 - None of these
- Consider the following statements regarding Indus Culture -
 - It arose in the north-western part of the Indian subcontinent.
 - It is older than the chalcothic cultures.
 - No other cultural zone in the third and second century BC was as large as the Harappan.
 - It was not as advanced as the chalcothic cultures.
 Which of the above is/are correct ?
 - 4 only
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 4
 - 1 only
- With reference to Great Bath of Mohenjodaro, consider the following statements -
 - It was built by baked bricks.
 - The length of the Bath is 12 metres, breadth 7 mtrs and depth is around 2.5 metres.
 - The outer walls of the Bath are plastered by on inch thick plaster of paris.
 - By the side of the Bath there were residence of priests who use to come down for bath on special occasions.
 Which of the above is/are correct ?
 - 1 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 4
 - 2 and 3
 - 1 and 2
- How the Indus valley civilization declined? Give correct reasons contributed to the decline of civilization.
 - Due to fall in foreign trade continuously
 - Due to changing monsoon, the scarcity of rains.
 - Due to ruling of weak foreign powers.
 - Due to the animals used the pasturs in excess.
 Which of the above is / are correct
 - 1 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 4
 - 2, 3 and 4
 - 2 and 3
- Which of the following were common features of both Harappan and Mohenjodaro ?
 - Citadel mounds with a retaining wall
 - Public Baths
 - Rows of granaries
 - Rows of circular blocks for pounding grains.
 Choose the correct answer from the codes given below :
 - 1, 2 and 4
 - 1, 2, 3 and 4
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 3
- What are the evidence found regarding the decline of Harappan civilization ? Consider the statements :
 - Silt is there is Harappa because of wind sction which brought sand and slit. Houses and streets covered by slit deposits upto 30 ft above ground level.
 - Human skeletons have been found lying on the streets.
 Which of the above is/are correct ?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Consider the following statements :
 - The Harappan economy was based on agriculture, cattle rearing and crafts.
 - The Indus valley people had an elaborate drainage system.
 - In kot Diji pre-Harappan settlement has not been found.
 - Sugarcane was not grown in Indus civilization.
 Which of the above is/are correct ?
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 2 only
 - 3, and 4
 - 1 only
- Consider the following statements :
 - The inhabitants of Harappa grew and used cotton.
 - The inhabitants of Harappa had no knowledge of copper and bronze.
 - The standard Harappan seals were made of clay.
 Which of the statements given above is / are correct ?
 - 1 only
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 3
 - 1, 2 and 3
- With reference to the Harappan civilization, consider the following statements :
 - The city of Dholavira was in the form of a parallelogram guarded by a fortification.
 - A ploughed field, showing a grid of furrows, located outside the town wall has been discovered at Kalibangan.
 Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Consider the following statements :
 - Lime mortar was never used at Mohenjodaro in the construction of dwellings.
 - At Dholavira, stone was never used in the construction of dwellings.
 Which of the statements given above is / are correct ?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Consider the statements regarding the effects of Harappan civilization in modern era :
 - House plans, disposition of water supply and attention to bathing have survived till today.

2. The techniques of making a potter's wheel is similar to those used by the Harappans.
3. The election system of recent time is borrowed from Harappan political system.

Which of the above is / are correct ?

- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 2 only (d) 3 only
12. Which of the following statements are correct with regard to the Indus valley civilisation?
1. The people of this civilisation were the earliest to make use of cotton.
2. They did not cremate their dead.
3. A grid system was followed in city planning.
4. Stone was the chief building material.
- (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 4
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 2 and 3
13. Which of the following animals as figures surround the male deity in the Indus Valley Civilizations?
1. Elephant 2. Tiger
3. Rhinoceros 4. Buffalo
5. Deer

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) 1, 3 and 5

14. The tank of Great Bath complex at Mohenjodaro had stairs on
1. Northern side 2. Southern side
3. Eastern side 4. Western side

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1 only (b) 3 only
(c) 1 and 2 (d) 3 and 4

Matching Based MCQ

15. **List I** **List II**
- | | |
|--------------|--|
| A Lothal | 1. Ploughed field |
| B Kalibangan | 2. Dockyard |
| C Dholavira | 3. Terracotta replica of a plough |
| D Banawali | 4. An inscription comprising ten large sized signs of the Harappan script. |
- (a) A - 1, B - 2, C - 3, D - 4
(b) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3
(c) A - 1, B - 2, C - 4, D - 3
(d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4

16. **List I (Place)** **List II (Ex cavators)**
- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| A Harappa | 1. Rakhil Das Banerjee |
| B Chanhudaro | 2. Daya Ram Sahni |
| C Kalibangan | 3. N.G. Majumdar |
| D Mohenjodaro | 4. B.B. Lal and Kamlanand Ghose |

- (a) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 4
(b) A - 1, B - 4, C - 3, D - 2
(c) A - 2, B - 3, C - 4, D - 1
(d) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2

17. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| A. Cemeteries H and R 37 | 1. Daimabad |
| B. Dockyard | 2. Mohenjodaro |
| C. Pashupati Mahadev Seal | 3. Harappa |
| D. Copper chariot | 4. Lothal |

Codes:

- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |

18. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| A. Harappa | 1. Workmen's quarters |
| B. Lothal | 2. Dockyard |
| C. Kalibangan | 3. Dancing girl |
| D. Mohenjodaro | 4. Furrowed land |

Codes:

- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |

19. **List-I (Harappan settlement)** **List-II (River)**
- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| A. Lothal | 1. Indus |
| B. Kalibangan | 2. Satlej |
| C. Ropar | 3. Ravi |
| D. Harappa | 4. Ghaggar |
| E. Mohenjodaro | 5. Bhogao |

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D | E |
| (a) 5 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (b) 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) 4 | 5 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (d) 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |

20. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| A. Harappa | 1. Daya Ram Sahni |
| B. Mohenjodaro | 2. Rakhaldas Banerji |
| C. Lothal | 3. Amalanand Ghosh |
| D. Kalibangan | 4. S.R. Rao |

Codes:

- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (a)
6. (d) 7. (d) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (d)
11. (b) Lothal, a site in Gujarat of Indus valley civilization had an ancient dockyard. The large dockyard reflects a high degree of sea trade in this period.
12. (c) 13. (c) 14. (c) 15. (d) 16. (a)
17. (c) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (a)
21. (c) Indus Valley Civilization had been a combination of diverse racial elements. Certain anthropological investigations and examinations of the human remains show that four racial types existed in this civilization namely Proto-Australoid, Mediterranean, Alpinoid and the Mongoloid. Most of the people belong to Mediterranean race.
22. (d) Iron was not known to Indus Valley Civilization people. The first evidence of Iron is found about 1000 B.C. from Ataranjikhhera in Etah district.
23. (b) A well-known piece of art of the Harappan period is a stone sculpture of a bearded man discovered at Mohenjodaro. His eyes are half closed indicating a posture of meditation. Across the left shoulder is an embroidered cloak. In the opinion of some scholars, it could be a bust of a priest.
24. (c) Indus Scripts are popularly known as Boustrophedon scripts which are still not deciphered by the historians, researchers and scholars.
25. (c) The Indus Valley Civilization site Lothal gives evidence of a dockyard. Lothal was discovered by S.R. Rao in 1954 A.D. The dockyard is located in eastern side of Lothal.
26. (d) Recent excavations at the small township of Dholavira, in Kutch, Gujarat (India) have presented to the world some of the oldest stadiums and sign board, built by the Harappan civilization. One of the stadiums, with terraced seats for spectators, around 800 feet in length (around 283 metres) can accommodate as many as 10,000 persons. The other stadium is much smaller in size.
27. (a) Plant growing from the womb of women has been found from Harappa on a seal. That represents Earth Goddess.
28. (a) Harappan civilization was discovered in 1921–22 when two of its most important sites were excavated. The first was excavated by Dayaram Sahni and the second by R.D. Banerji.
29. (c) 30. (a) 31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (d)
34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (d) 37. (c) 38. (c)
39. (b) 40. (b) 41. (c) 42. (c) 43. (b)
44. (c) 45. (d) 46. (c) 47. (a)
48. (c) Harappan civilization was rural based civilization.
49. (d) The site of Harappa was located on the banks of river Ravi.
50. (d) The polity of the Harappan people as derived from the material evidence was a theocratic-unitary.

51. (b) Harrapa is an archaeological site in Punjab, Pakistan. It is ruin of bronz age satisfied city It had 23,500 inhabitates which was very large for its times people from this civilization had common toilets and bathing areas.

52. (b)

EXERCISE-2

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (a) 6. (c)
7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (c) 10. (d) 11. (a) 12. (c)
13. (b) The Pashupati is the only possibly male deity of Indus Valley Civilization, as depicted on various seals. This deity is surrounded by 4 wild animals and this gives an indication that it is Pashupatinath or a prototype of Lord Shiva. The deity is surrounded by 4 animals viz. an elephant, a tiger, a buffalo and a rhinoceros. Apart from this, there are 2 deers beneath the seat of the deity. The headdress of the deity has two horns. It wears as number of bangles and has a pectoral round the neck, and an inscription of seven letters appears at the top.
14. (c) The Great Bath is one of the best-known structures among the ruins of the ancient Indus Valley Civilization at Mohenjodaro in Sindh, Pakistan. Archaeological evidence indicates that the Great Bath was built in the 3rd Millennium BCE, just sometime after raising of the 'citadel' mound on which it is located. The Great Bath of Mohenjodaro is called the "earliest public water tank of the ancient world". The Great Bath measures 11.88 metres × 7.01 metres, and has a maximum depth of 2.43 metres. Two wide staircases, one from the north and one from the south, served as the entry to the structure. A 1 metre wide and 40 centimetres mound is present at end of these stairs.
15. (b) 16. (c)
17. (a) The correct matching pairs are—cemeteries H and R37 with Harappa, Dockyard and Lothal, Pashupati Mahadev Seal and Mohenjodaro, Daimabad with copper chariot.
18. (d) The correct matching pairs are—Harappa and workmen's quarters, Lothal and Dockyard, Kalibangan and furrowed land and Mohenjodaro and dancing girl.
19. (a) The correct matching pairs are – Lothal and Bhogao, Kalibangan and Ghaggar, Ropar and Satluj, Harappa and Ravi, Mohenjodaro and Indus.
20. (c) The correct matching pairs are – Harappa and Daya Ram Sahni, Mohenjodaro and Rakhaldas Banerji, Lothal and S. R. Rao, Kalibangan and Amalanand Ghosh.



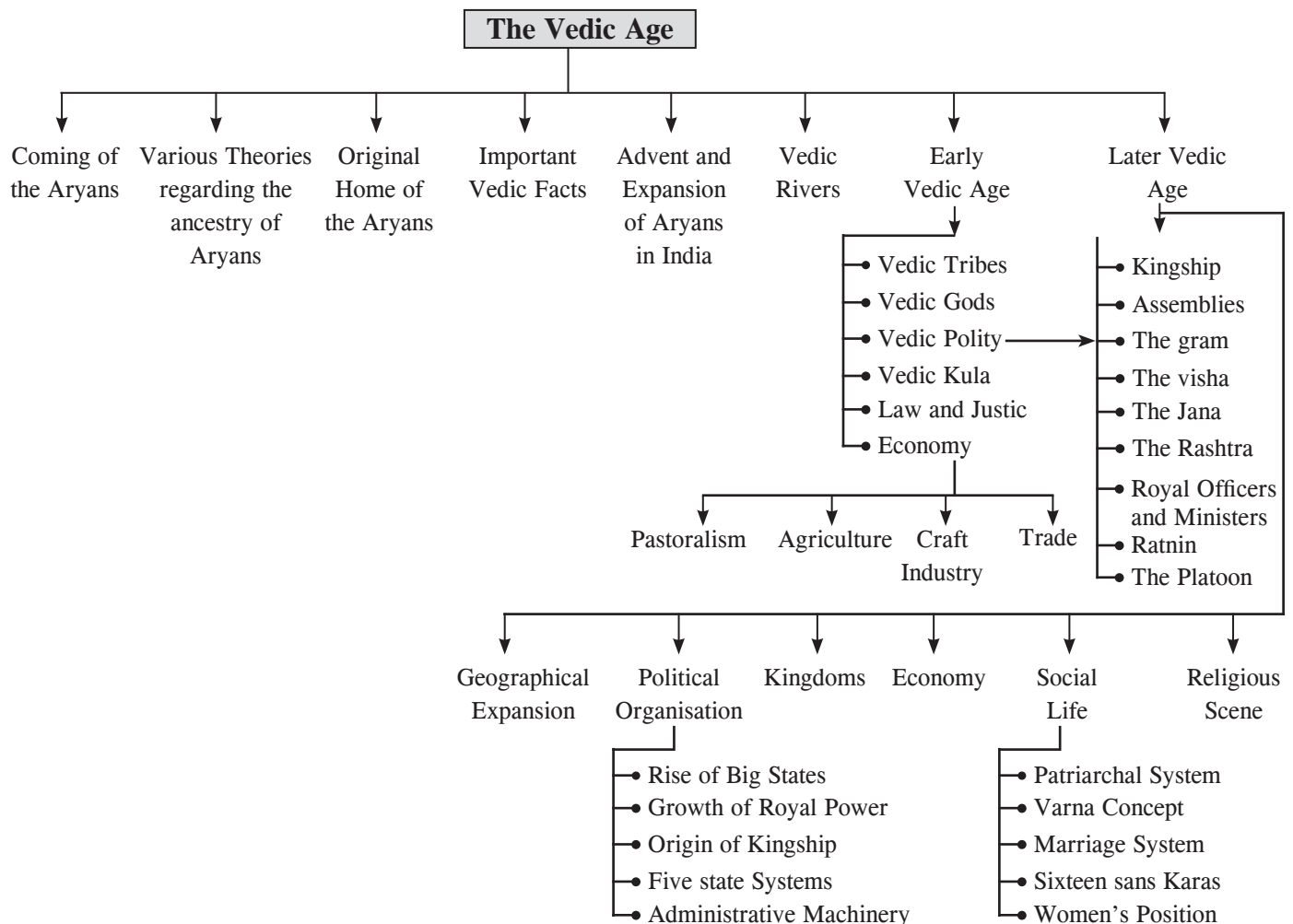
4

Chapter

THE VEDIC AGE

Introduction

After the decline or destruction of the Indus Civilization a new civilization came into existence, but between these two major events there must have been a gap of period and about which we know nothing. The Indus civilization was declined between 1750 B.C. to 1500 B.C. and so the Aryans are supposed to have migrated from Central Asia into the Indian Subcontinent in several stages during 2000 B.C. - 1500 B.C. Moreover the Aryans were the founder of Vedic culture.



COMING OF THE ARYANS

Some scholars believe that the Aryans were native to the Soil of India while others believe that the Aryans were migrated from outside, i.e. *Central Asia* (Max Muller); *Europe Arctic region* (B.G. Tilak) and so on.

- In fact, the group that came to India first settled in *Sapta Sindhu*. They lived here and gradually pushed into the valleys of the Ganges and the Yamuna.
- The earliest wave of Aryans is called the *Rig vedic people* who appeared in about 1500 B.C.
- It is believed that before the coming of the Aryans in India, the greater part of the Northern-Western India was covered by **Dravidians**. After the arrival of the Aryans they moved southwards.
- Literally 'Aryans' means - the best or *eminent*.
- In order to prove their supremacy the Aryans took this name and called themselves 'the Aryans' and they called their opponents '*Anarya*', '*Dasy*' or '*Das*'.
- The Aryans were handsome, fair and slim shape persons.
- Their minds were filled with natural imaginations.
- They were brave and laborious with highly developed attitude.
- They were farmers peasant and loved nature in the form of god.
- They linked milk and wheat bread.
- The Aryan chief was soft towards the dasas, but bitterly hostile to the dasyus. The term dasyuhatya, slaughter of the dasyus, is repeatedly mentioned in the Rig veda. *Yadu, Turvasu, Druhyu, Anupuru, Panchala, Bharata* and *Tritsu* were the chief tribes of the period.

VARIOUS THEORIES REGARDING THE ANCESTRY OF ARYANS

The subject matter of the original home of Aryans attracted many scholars to present their views but all the opinions given by them became a matter of discussions.

- Many scholars, such as Ganganath Jha, D. S. Trivedi, L. D. Kalla, etc. tried to prove that the Vedic Aryans were neither foreigners nor did they migrate into India. They were the indigenous people, who regarded **Sapta-Sindhu** as their original home.
- Some European scholars assigned the **Baltic sea** region as the original home of the Aryans.
- **B.G. Tilak** suggested the **polar region**.
- Some **inscriptions** of about 1440 B.C. found at Boghaz koi in Cilicia (Asia minor), the capital of the ancient **Hittites**, mention some Aryan deities such as Indra, Varuna, Mitra and the Nasatyas (Aswins) which proves **Central Asian** theory as their homeland.

- However the region of *Sapta-Sindhu* (the land of the seven rivers) witnessed the composition of the sacred hymns which describe the early growth and development of the vedic culture. Let us see the various interpretations in the chart.

Original Home of the Aryans	
Asia	Theorists
Central Asia	Max Muller.
Tibet	Dayanand Saraswati
Pamirs	Mayor
Steppes	Brandenstein
Turkistan	Hurz Feld
Bactria	J. C. Road.
Europe	Theorists
Germany plains	Prof. Penka Sheart
Hungary	Giles
Southern Russia	Nehring
West Baltic	Mach
Arctic Region	B. G. Tilak
Russian Steppes	Prof. Belfy
India	Theorists
Central India	Rajbali Pandey
Kashmir	L. D. Kala
Sapta Sindhu	A. C. Das
Himalayan	Pt. Laxmidhar
Foothills	Shastri

Important Vedic Facts

- Vedic literature had grown up in course of time and was passed from generation to generation by word of mouth. Hence these are called **Shruti** (to hear).
- Some historians regard the Later Vedic period as the **Period of epics (long poems)**.
- The Aryans, First of all, settled in The Sapta Saindhava (**Jambuduipta**).
- According to the Rigveda, The **Saraswati** was the most pious river.
- The most mentioned river – Sindhu.
- Mention of the Ganges – 01 time.
- Mention of the Yamuna - 03 times.
- Rigveda mentions 40 rivers.
- Sindhu and its seven tributaries are called **Sapta Sindhu**.
- The arc of Ganga-Yamuna is called **Brahmarshi Pradesh**.
- Land between the Saraswati and Drishadwati is called **Brahmavarta**.
- The Nadi sukta hymns mentions 21 rivers.
- From the Himalayas to the Vindhya mountains and between the Eastern sea and Western sea there was a special part of land which was called '*Aryavarta*'.
- '**Gandhar**' was famous for woolen articles.
- '**Bhujvant**' was famous for Somaras (wine).
- In the Dashrajan, **Vashistha** helped Sudas and **Viswamitra** helped the Union of ten kings and instigated them to fight with Sudas.

ADVENT AND EXPANSION OF ARYANS IN INDIA

Rig Veda says that there were various groups of Aryans and they came to India in search of food and habitation and later on they settled here. Some famous groups were Panchajan (the most famous group), **Bharat**, **Trissu**, **Kriva**, etc.

The Panchajan consisted of Anu, Druhalaya, Yadu, Turvas and Puru. In between 2000 BC and 1000 BC the Aryans would have arrived in India. It is supposed so.

- The Expansion of the Aryans was started from Afghanistan and were expanded up to the Western coast of Ganga river.
- The Aryans were aware of the Himalayas but they did not know Vindhya, Aravali, Satpuda, and Southern Plateaus. So, we can say that in Rig Vedic period the Aryans were expanded from Himalaya to Malva in North-South direction and from the Western coast of Ganga to Afghanistan in East-West direction.
- In Rig Veda period they had no approach in the Southern and Eastern parts of India.
- They lived in *Saptasindh* area for a long period and later on, during post-vedic era they started reaching towards the East and South.
- Gradually, they established their sovereignty in Kurukshetra, Kashi, Koshal, Videh, Panchal and the coastal area of Ganga and Yamuna.
- In the beginning of the 8th century B.C. they organised Magadh, Anga, Paundra, Kaling, Shabar-pulind and Southern India.

VEDIC RIVERS

Altogether 99 rivers are referred to in the Rig Veda of mostly from Afghanistan. The 15 principal rivers are given in the table. In Rigveda we find the descriptions of the various rivers of Afghanistan. They are **Kubha**, **Suvastu**, **Gomati** and **Kramu**. The **Saptasindhu's** rivers, i.e. Saraswati, Sindhu, Vistasha, Asibini, parushini, vapasa and shatudri are also explained in the Rigveda. In it, Ganga is named only once where as Yamuna is repeated thrice. It reflects that earlier they were expanded in the area of Saptasindhu and till then unaware of the Ganga-Yamuna's plain.

Some of the minor rivers were Rasa, Anumati, Asuniti, Raka, Gungu, Susoma, Marud-Vrdhas, etc.

Name of the rivers illustrated in the Rigveda		
Rigveda	Modern Name	Region
Sindhu	Indus	Punjab
Vitasta	Jhelum	Punjab

Asikani	Chenab	Punjab
Vipasa	Beas	Punjab
Parushni	Ravi	Punjab
Satudri	Sutlej	Punjab
Saraswati	Sarsuti	Rajasthan
Drishadvati	Ghaggar/Chitang	Rajasthan
Kubha	Kabul	Afghanistan
Suvastu	Swati	Afghanistan
Krumu	Kurram	Afghanistan
Gomal	Gomati	Afghanistan
		Punjab
Ganga	Ganga	Uttar Pradesh
Yamuna	Yamuna	Uttar Pradesh

To conclude, we can say that the Aryans were living in the east of Caspian sea in Aucus river's reign. Dr. Hormely is of the opinion that the Aryan came to India into levo, groups. The first was of **Manav** dynasty and the other was 'L' dynasty. During this vedic period they did not enter ahead from Punjab.

RIGVEDIC/EARLY VEDIC AGE (1500 B.C. - 1000 B.C.)

Aryan Civilization of Rigveda Period

The Rig Veda is the main source of the Aryan Civilization, i.e. the early vedic era. At that time Afghanistan was a part of India. It is known through the Rig Veda as the names of Afgani rivers are illustrated in Rig Veda. These rivers are Kubha, Krumu, Gomati, Suvastu, etc.

- Sindhu, Vitasta, Askini, Parushni, Vipasha, Shatudri, Saraswati, Yamuna and Ganga are clearly illustrated in the Rigveda which confirms the area of Punjab and some parts of northern India to be the livings of the Aryans.
- The illustration of cloud, lightning, torrent raining and great mountains prove that the areas of Punjab and Brahmavarta were fertile and verdant. According to the Rigveda this area was divided into many parts called **Vedic Jana**. Gandhari, Bhujvant, Anu, Druhalay, Turvas, Puru and Bharat were some famous Janas.
- The Rig Veda explains that the Puruvanshi Arya lived on the banks of the river saraswati.
- Similarly Yaduvanshi on the bank of Sindhu and Chinab, the **Sanjay Vanshi** in Panchal, Anuvanshi, Druhalay and Turvas in the various areas of Punjab. Thus, from the names of rivers, mountains [Himvant, i.e. Himalaya, Munjavant i.e.

Hindukush] and ocean we are informed about the geographical area in which Rigvedic people lived. The Nadisukta of the Rigveda mentions 21 rivers which include the Ganges in the east and the Kubha (Kabul) in the West.

The Vedic Tribes

The Vedic territories mentioned in the Rig Veda was divided into various tribal principalities, ruled by tribal kings. These are given in the table.

According to Rigveda, the famous Dasrajan Yoddha or the battle of ten kings was fought between Sudas, a Bharat King of the Tritsu family, and the confederacy of ten well-known tribes - **Puru, Yadu, Turvasa, Anu, Druhyu, Alina, Paktha, Bhalnas, Siva** and **Vishanin**. In the bloody and decisive battle on the banks of river Parushni, the Bharatas emerged victorious.

These are given in the table.

Vedic Aryan Tribes	Region
• The Bharatas	Between Saraswati-Yamuna
• The Purees	Saraswati
• The Yadu & Turvasa	Southern Punjab
• The Gandharis	North-West of India
• Matsyas & Chedis	Rajasthan & Malwa
• The Srinjaya	Punjab
• The Bhalanas	Bolan Pass
• The Paktha	Basin of Kurram
• The Vaikarnas	Kashmir
• The Krivi	The Sindhu Asikni
• The Sivas	Hydispes Acesine (Chanab)
Non-Aryan Tribes (Dasas of Dasyus)	
• Sambara	
• Kikatas	Saraswati-Yamuna
• The Panis	Rase (Syr Dariya)

Important Vedic Gods

Gods/Deities	Association with
A. Highest Position (Male)	
• Indra	War God
• Agni	Fire God, Intermediate between Gods & men
• Varuna	God of waters, clouds, Oceans & rivers regulates Sun, Dawn, day & night, ritu (seasons)
B. Others (Male) Gods	
• Sun/Surya	God of Light
• Savitri	God of Light (Gayatri Mantra)

• Pusan	Guarding roads, herds men & stray-cattles, light
• Rudra	Storm, epidemics, disasters
• Yama	Lord of the dead
• Soma	Divine drink (milk+curd+ barley)
• Vayu	Wind God
• Vishnu	Activities of the Sun
• Dyaus	God of heaven
• Pushan	God of Marriage
C. Female Divinities	
• Ushas	The Goddess of Dawn
• Prithvi	The Goddess of Earth
• Aditi	Mother of Surya & other gods
• Ratri	The spirit of the night
• Aranyani	The goddess of the forest
• Ila	The Goddess of offerings
• Dishana	The Goddess of vegetation

The Vedic Polity

- The land of the vedic Aryans was divided into several small tribal principalities. Each tribe had its own monarch. There were constant wars among these tribes.
- There were a few non-monarchical states as well. These states were called *gana*.
- The ganapati or *tyestha* (elder) was the head of a non-monarchical state.
- The area ruled by the Aryans was known as 'Aryavarta'. 'Bharat' was the most important tribe after whom this country has been named 'Bharat'.
- **Divodas** and **Sudas** were the two renowned ruler of the Bharat race.
- Divodas fought against Turuvasas, Purus and Yadus.
- Sudas had to fight the 'war of ten kings'.

Kingship

- The Kingship in the vedic period seems to be hereditary but king did not enjoy unlimited powers.
- The King was responsible for the protection of the tribe. **Aitarey Brahman** denotes that the Kingship in the vedic age originated as a result of human needs and military necessity.
- In times of peace the king dispensed justice and performed sacrifice.
- The ideal of Kingship was very high. He was called '**Mitra** in Kindness, **Varuna** in virtues and **Indra** in Valour'.
- His coronation oath before the people was "May my life and offspring be cut off if I work against your interests".
- According to Manu "King is the god of gods, May be a child king, doesn't matter, he should not be disregarded.

Popular Assemblies

- **Sabha** and **Samiti** controlled the affairs of vedic states. These two assemblies were called the two **daughters of Prajapati**.
- The **Sabha** was the body of the elders and was constituted mainly of the Brahmanas and rich patrons who controlled the vagrancy of the King and used to advise the King. Its male members were called '**Sambhay**' and female '**Sambhavati**'.
- Sabha can be compared with the *Council of States* (Rajya Sabha) of these days.
- *The Samiti* was the '*House of common people*' and its members were called '*vishah*'. Its head was called '*Ishan*' or '*pati*'.
- They were responsible to the people for their work and were elected by the common people.
- Samiti controlled the King and participated in the election of the King. It can be compared with today's Lok Sabha (House of commons).
- The Sabha was an older institution and it existed in the early vedic age. The samiti was the product of development and it emerged during the late vedic period.

Atharvaveda

- In the Atharvavedha these two assemblies are described as the **uterine sisters**, the daughters of Prajapati. Later vedas record that the Sabha functioned as a court of justice.
- Besides these two assemblies there were **Vidath** and **Gana** which also are described in the Rigveda.

The Gram (the village)

- A group of Kula formed a gram. Its chief was called 'Gramin' or 'Gramini'. In the Rigveda the word 'Gram' was used for the villagers. *Gramini* was the head of the village. The Gramini was also called '**The vrajapati**'. He worked as an important chain between the King and the subjects.

The Visha (the clan)

- Its functions are not clearly described in the Rigveda. In fact, it was an organisation larger than the Gram. Its head was called '*Vishpati*'.

The Jana (the people)

- It was also a company of people but larger than the Visha. The Rigveda reflects that the administrator of the Jana was called '**Rajan**' and the commander of the Jana was called '**Gopa**' or '**Gopta**'.

The Rashtra (the nation)

- According to the Rigveda 'Rashtra' was a term used for the whole nation or the state. Some scholars have said that 'the Rashtra' was the indication of confederate administration. The Rashtra consisted of several '**Janas**'.

The Royal officials and Ministers

- Purohit, Senani, Gramini, Doot, etc. were some important officials. The King had to maintain a Council of Ministers which included a Purohit. Purohit (the priest) advised the king in the state-

affairs and in all religious matters. He accompanied the King even to battle. We have seen it already how Vishwamitra and Vashistha had exercised their powers in the **Dasrajan war**.

The Supreme Commander of the armed forces was called **Senani**. There were spies (spasas) employed to collect information about the Kingdom and the people. In Rigveda we have a number of personalities who were laborious, Veridical (true speaking) and expert. They were Mitra, Varuna, Agni, Aditya, etc. These were called the *dutas* who acted as ambassadors between the different states.

Ratnin (the ministers and advisors)

- Suta, Rathkar, Purap, Spash, etc. which are important officials. Collectively they are called **Ratnin**. All the royal officials were responsible to the King.

The platoon (The sepyo organisation)

- The Aryans were great warriors. The King had trained a regular military forces. The cavalry with chariot was called the *Rathin* and the forces fought on foot were called '**The Padati**'. They used sword, bow and arrows, Javelin, Shield, buckle and helmet. In Rigveda the illustration of secured forts on the borders is also found. Most wars were fought from **bullock-driven** chariots.

Law and order : The protection of the people was the sacred duty of the King. In return the people paid him *bali* (tributes or tax). The *Bali* was a kind of tax paid in both by **chash** and **kind**.

Law and Justice

- Justice was based on Dharma. The King administered Justice with the assistance of legal advisors including his Purohita. Punishment was not so heavy and the main emphasis was on the satisfaction of the person wronged. Only Hard-core criminals were given the capital-punishment. General conflicts were solved by the Gramini and arbitrators of the Gram Panchayat. The criminals were subjected to fire (Agni pariksha or acid test) and water (jal pariksha) deals.
- A number of crimes such as theft, burglary, highway robbery, cheating (specially at gambling), etc. are mentioned. Cattle-lifting was the commonest of all.
- There was a system of blood-money (*vairadey*-through which enmity can be recompensed) and the punishment for murder was *shatadaya* (equal to one hundred cows or coins).
- All the above words indicate that the laws of justice and the quality or magnitude of punishment were fixed according to classes.
- Money was frequently borrowed (*rina*) and lent and often it was never repaid. The debtor had to serve as a bounded servant of the creditor for a certain period. Interest was paid in kind.
- Property was inherited by sons. Individual ownership of land (*urvara* or *kshetra*) had begun.
- The king was not the owner of all land - its ownership was with the people.

- Everything was fair in war - raid, night attacks and kidnapping. The palaces were set to fire and the winning booty was shared by the King and the soldiers.

Some Words mentioned in Rigveda	
Word	Times mentioned
Om	1028
Brahmana	14
Kshatriya	09
Vaishya	01
Shudra	01
Ashwa	315
Gau	176
Ganga	01
Samudra	01
Yamuna	03
Kulpa	01
Rajya	01
Vis	171
Jana	275

The Kula (the family)

- Social life was the basis of both social and political organisations. It was the **smallest unit** of the social and political organisations. Its head was called '*Kulap*' or '*Grihapati*'.

Early Vedic Economy

The early vedic economy was mostly based on cattle breeding and agriculture. In addition people were engaged in crafted trade.

Pastoralism

- The early Vedic Aryans were pastoralists. For milk products, wools, leather, agriculture, drawing chariots, the animals were raised. The Early Vedic people's total culture was revolved around the wealth in the form of cattle. Hence, the unit of family was called as 'Gotra'.
- Ceremonies were performed at the time of returning of cattle from pastures, called as 'Goraja Muhurta'
- A large number of words are derived from the word 'go' meaning cow. A wealthy person was known as gomati and the daughter called duhitri which means one who milks the cow.
- The word gaveshana literally means search for cows, but it also means battle since many battles were fought over cattle.

Agriculture

- The evidence for agriculture in comparison with pastoral activities in the portions is meager and mostly late insertions.
- The Vedic Aryans know basic agricultural techniques, like to add fertilizers, to cut crops with the help of sickles, to arrange water sources etc. They produced yava (modern jowar or barley), which was rather a generic word for cereals.

- Simple agricultural tools, namely the langala or sira (the plough), the wooden phala (ploughshare), the Khanitra (hoe), the datra (sickle) and the parasua (axe), were made use of, probably used for shifting cultivations.

Craft-Industry

- People were engaged in many other economic activities. Hunting, carpentry, tanning, weaving, chariot-making, metal smelting, etc. were some such activities.
- Vedic Aryans used to wear colorful cloths of cotton and wool. Such colorful cloths were embroidered by women, known as 'Peshaskari'. The weaver is called as 'Vaya', whereas the Charakha is called as 'Tasar'.
- The Goldsmith was called as 'Hiranyakar' the used to make jewellery of gold, both for human and horses.
- The smelting was related to copper only. Iron was not entirely unknown (krishna-ayas), however, the metallurgy was not known.

Trade

- The trade was on the levels of exchanges only that was of 'barter-system'.
- The people involved in trade was called as 'Pani'.
- Cows were the most favoured medium of exchange. The priests received cows, horses and gold ornaments as fees for performing sacrifices.

LATER VEDIC AGE (1000 - 600 BC)

The period that followed Rig Vedic Age is known as later Vedic Age. This age witnessed the composition of three Veda samhitas namely, the Samveda samhita, the Yajurveda samhita, the Atharvaveda samhita along with the Brahmanas and the Upanishads of all the four Vedas. This period is also marked as Iron- PGW Age because of the use of iron in agriculture and painted grey ware (PGW).

Geographical Expansion

All later vedic texts were compiled in the upper Gangetic basin during 1000-600 BC. During the later Vedic period, the Aryans moved into Eastward and southward areas. The literature of this period mentions about the Arabian sea, the Vindhyan range and the Northern plains of the Ganga-Yamuna Doab.

In the East Aryans habituated the Awadh region after that they entered into Bihar. A proof of the Eastward march was given in the Satapatha Brahmana through the story of **Agni** and **Videha**.

The Later Vedas give three broad divisions of India

- Aryavarta (Northern India)
- Madhyadesa (Central India)
- Dakshina Patha (Southern India)

Political Organisation

(1) Rise of Big States

The small tribal states of Rig Vedic period were replaced by powerful states. Many famous tribes of

Rig Vedic period like Bharatas, Parus, Tritsus and Turvasas passed into oblivion and new tribes like the Kurus and Panchalas rose into prominence. There was the transformation of the **Rigvedic Jana** (meaning, people or tribe) into the janapada (meaning the area where the tribe settled). The **rajanyas** of the Rigvedic age now became the **kshatriyas** of their territories.

(2) Growth of Royal Power

In **later Vedic** period, Rigvedic popular assemblies lost their importance and royal power increased. The **Vidhata** completely disappeared.

The sabha became more powerful than the samiti and was now dominated by the **Nobles** and the Brahmins. Now women were not allowed to attend the Sabha.

(3) Origin of Kingship

There were two theories regarding the origin of kingship. The **Aitareya Brahmana** explained the rational theory of election by common consent of origin of kingship and the Taittiriya Brahmana explained the divine origin of kingship.

(4) Five Types of State System

- i) Rajya (Central kingdom) → Ruled by the Raja
- ii) Bhojya (Southern kingdom) → Ruled by the Bhoja
- iii) Swarajya (Western kingdom) → Ruled by the Svarat
- iv) Vairajya (Northern kingdom) → Ruled by the Virat
- v) Samrajya (Eastern kingdom) → Ruled by the Samrat

(5) Administrative Machinery

In the work of administration the king was assisted by a group of officers who were known as **Ratnins** (Jewels). The king realized taxes like “bali”, “sulka” and “bhaga”.

Important **Ratnins** and other Important officials.

Purohita	- Chief priest, also called the Rastra gopa.
Senani	- Supreme Commander of the Army
Vrajapati	- Officer-in-charge of the pasture land
Jivagribha	- Police officer
Spasas/Dutas	- Spies, who sometimes worked as messengers
Gramani	- Leader of the village
Madhya masi	- Mediator of disputes
Kulapati	- Family head
Bhagadugha	- Tax collector
Sangrahitri	- Treasurers
Mahishi	- The Chief Queen
Suta	- Charioteer
Govikartana	- King's companion in games
Palogala	- Courtier and messenger
Takshan	- Carpenter
Kshatri	- Chamberlain
Akshavapa	- Accountant

Sthapati	- Chief Judge
Gramyavadin	- Village Judge
Rathakara	- Chariot marker
Adhikrita	- Village officer (lowest in the rank)

Kingdoms of the Later Vedic Period

Kingdom	Location
1. Panchal	- Bareilly, Badayun & Farrukhabad in U.P.
2. Kushinagar	- Northern region of Uttar Pradesh
3. Kashi	- Modern Varanasi
4. Koshal	- Faizabad in Uttar Pradesh
5. Southern Madra	- Near Amritsar
6. Uttara Madra	- Kashmir
7. Eastern Madra	- Near Kangra
8. Kekaya	- On the bank of Beas river east of Gandhar kingdom
9. Gandhar	- Rawalpindi & Peshawar

Later Vedic Economic Condition

- The Early Vedic Period was a Bronze (chalcolithic) Age culture where as the later vedic period was an Iron Age culture.
- The transition of vedic society from semi-nomadic life to **settled agriculture** in the later vedic age lead to an increase in trade and competition for resources.
- Rice, barley, beans, sesame and wheat were cultivated.
- Rice is called **Vrihi** in the Vedic texts.
- Now the agricultural technology was developed. The farmers started plowing lands with the help of 6 to 24 bulls.
- Various binds of lentils were also produced by the later Vedic people.
- Griha was the basic unit of agricultural production, with the **grahapati** emerging as the **defacto** owner of the land.
- Land was cultivated with the help of the **shudras** and the slaves.
- The Vaisya were the producing class and the Kshatriyas (rajanya) and the Brahmanas (priests) depended on them for their subsistence. With the growth of civilisation, the volume of trade and commerce had increased by leaps and bounds. Inland trade was carried on with the kiratas inhabiting the mountains.
- The coins which were in circulation were “Nishka”, “Satamana” and “Krishnala” The unit value of goods was a gold bar called “nishka” weighing three hundred and twenty ratis, which was also the weight of a satamana.
- A ‘Krishnala’ weighed one rati, i.e. 1.8 grams.
- ‘Pani’ was a class of merchants who controlled the trade.

- Houses were made of wood.
The **Taittiriya Aranyakas** refer about a special type of house known as 'Dhandhani' (treasure house). The **Atharvaveda** mentions about 'Patnam sadan' (women's apartment).
- '**Bipatha**' was a rough vehicle for transport goods

Social Life:

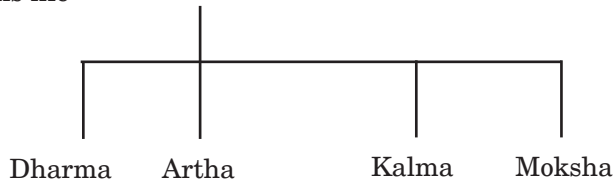
In later vedic period, the people dispersed in various parts of India. This affected social structures and made it more complex.

Patriarchal Family System

The eldest of male members of the family. Perceived as the head of family, called as 'grihapati'.

Concept of Purushartha

Every man was expected to follow four main duties in his life-



Concept of Varna

In the 10th mandala, in Purushsukta of Rig-veda clear-cut division of the society has been mentioned. According to this system various duties assigned to each varna like,

Brahman Teaching, learning, performance and hosting of sacrifice.

Kshatriya Learning, hosting sacrifice and protection of people and land.

Vaishya Trade and agriculture: the agriculturists, traders and artisans belonged to this varna.

Shudra Submission of service to upper three classes, this was the lowest of the varna-ladder and had no powers and no rights in the society.

The three (Brahmans, Kshatriya, Vaishya) in combination perceived as men of higher Varnas, i.e. traivarnikas.

Concept of Ashrama

In this system, a person's life divided into four parts and he was assigned some duties with respect to his age, like.

- Brahmacharya - ashrama (studentship)
- Grihastha - ashrama (house holds)

- Van-prastha- ashrama (partial retirement from household life)
- Sanaya-ashrama (complete retirement from social life)

The System of Marriage

- Marriage was considered as main duty of vedic people and hence it became a point of religious importance. In the **grihastasashrama** a person is expected by the canons to get married.

It is perceived that through marriage and giving birth to children one could become free from the '**rina**' (lit. loan = responsibility) of his parents.

- In this period, 'Inter-Varna' marriages were disliked, where as 'similar **gotra**/family marriages' were forbidden. There were two types of legalized structures of marriages:

- Anuloma** marriage was used to perform between bridegroom from higher Varna and bride from lower Varna.

- Pratiloma** marriage was used to perform between bridegroom from lower **varna** and bride from higher varna.

There are eight types of marriages mentioned in the writings of smriti writers, These are of marriages.

Brahma-vivaha Father gives his daughters' hand to the know ledgeable and well behaved bridegroom with proper rites and rituals.

Daiva-vivaha Father gives the bride's hand to the priest as dakshina (fees).

Prajaatya vivaha Father greets bridegroom and appeals the couple to follow religious duties.

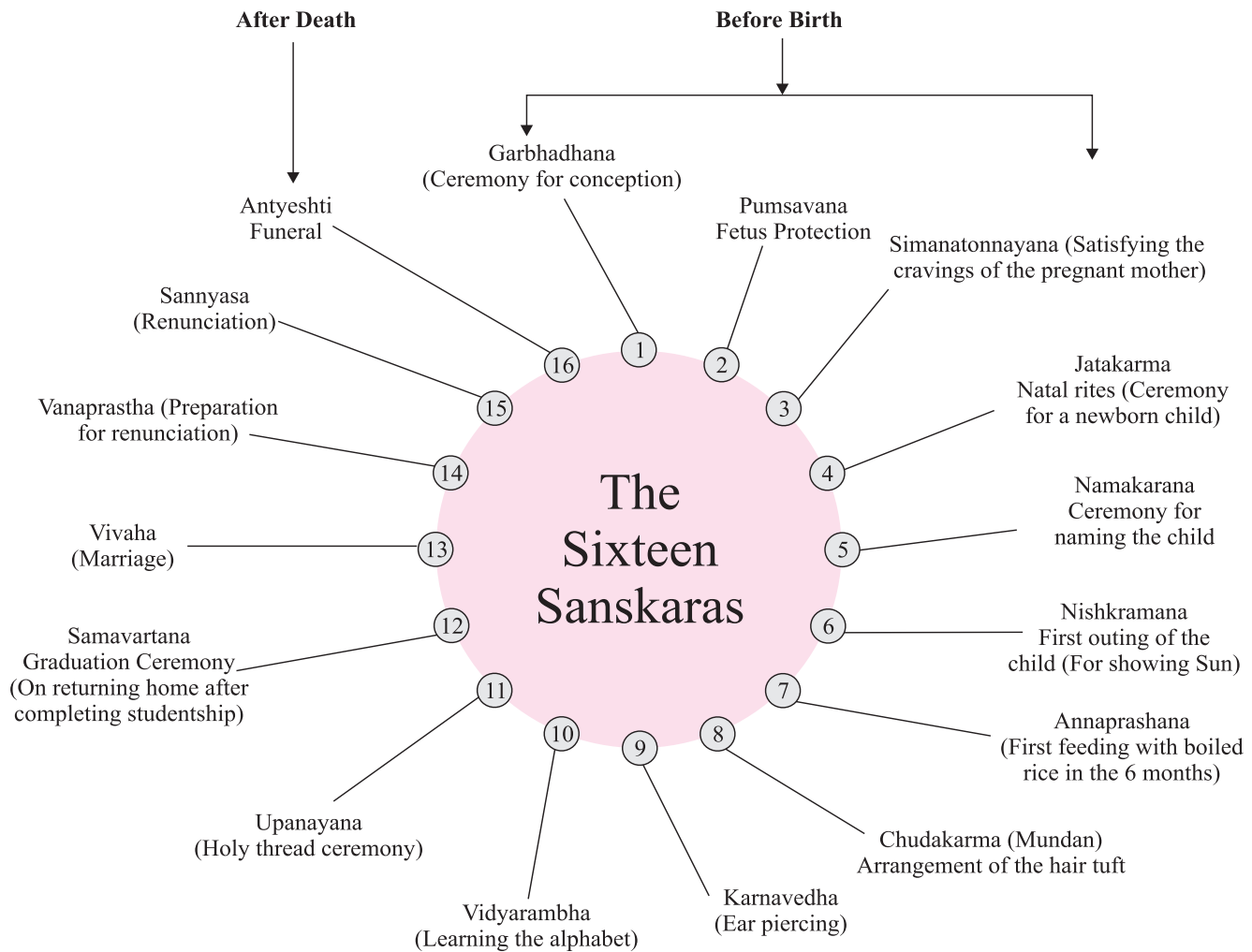
Arsha-vivaha Father gives the bride's hand to the bridegroom after receiving a pair of cattle from the groom.

Gandharva-vivaha Marriage through the consent of bridegroom and bride only, i.e., self choice or swayamvara.

Asur- vivaha Bridegroom gives money to the bride's father and purchases her for marriage.

Rakshasa-vivaha Forceful abduction of a girl and marrying her.

Paishacha-vivaha With force making the girl unconscious and violet her chastity.



During Life

The Position of women

This period onwards status of women was started deteriorating Rights which they had earlier were not enjoying in this period.

Husband received the status as a patiparmeshwar (God). women were denied to educate.

- Women were attending lectures of gurus rarely. In **Bṛhadaranyaka upanishad** tells of a learned lady Gargi Vacaknavi who attended the discussion of the sage **Yajnavalkya** mention that knowledge were only confined for male only.
- **Sati and Veil** system were become prevalent in this period. Hindu **Dharmashastra** were denied to offer prayers and sacrifices, practices of penances and undertake religious pilgrimages to women.
- **Manusmriti** laid down various restrictions regarding the traditional rights for women in his book manusmriti. **Upanayan** sanskar which was previously for both boys and girls are now for only for boys.

- According to the **Satapatha Brahmana** a wife was to eat only after the husband has finished eating.

Religious Scene

- The religion became very complex in the **Later Vedic** period.
- The Gods like Indra, Varuna and Surya became unpopular. Whereas there emerged new Gods like Vishnu, Rudra, Shiva.
- **Prajapati**, the lord of created beings, cost all the older deities into the shade.
- **Pushan**, became the God of the shudra who was the protector of cattle in the early vedic period.
- **Vishnu** occupied the place of **Varuna** as the most sublime among the celestial and his highest step became the goal of the sages.
- The sacrifices varied and codified with various types of rules and regulations, i.e. karmakanda. The right of performance of sacrifices was snatched off from **kulapati** and it was became the monopoly of the priest class.

Sacrifice Performed in the Later Vedic Period

- Asvamedha - horse sacrifice which was meant to establish king's supremacy over other kings
- Rajasuya - consecration ceremony which conferred supreme power of the kings
- Ratnahavimsi - part of Rajasuya ceremony
- Vajapeya - chariot race which was meant to re-establish a king's supremacy over his people

- The main tenets of **Hindusim** are the doctrines of karma, maya, transmigration, identification of individual soul with the universal soul and the mukti.

Triple Classification of Vedic Gods



Exercise - 1

1. In which type of marriage, payment of bride-price was a condition?
 - (a) Asura
 - (b) Brahma
 - (c) Daiva
 - (d) Gandharva
2. Which one of the following sites is not associated with Painted Grey Ware ?
 - (a) Gilaulikhera
 - (b) Noh
 - (c) Tripuri
 - (d) Satwali
3. The religion of early Vedic Aryans was primarily of
 - (a) Bhakti
 - (b) image worship and Yajnas
 - (c) worship of nature and Yajnas
 - (d) worship of nature and Bhakti
4. The people who migrated from the region of the Caspian sea were called
 - (a) Dravidians
 - (b) Aryans
 - (c) Euro Asians
 - (d) Africans
5. With regard to the position of woman during the Vedic age, which one of the following statements is not true?
 - (a) Women enjoyed an honourable position
 - (b) Women took part in religious deliberation during the early Vedic period
 - (c) The practice of 'sati' was unknown during the early Vedic period
 - (d) The birth of girl was looked down upon during the early vedic period
6. The ceremonies of rajasuya and vajpeya are mentioned in which text?
 - (a) Rig Veda
 - (b) Sama Veda
 - (c) Yajur Veda
 - (d) Atharva Veda
7. Which book of the later vedic age divides the country into five parts?
 - (a) Atharva veda
 - (b) Aitreya Brahmana
 - (c) Satapatha Brahmana
 - (d) Isa Upanishad
8. Who among the following artisan classes were entitled to wear the sacred thread in the vedic period?
 - (a) Chariot-makers
 - (b) Goldsmiths
 - (c) Blacksmiths
 - (d) Weavers
9. The concept of 'Gotra' become established in which period?
 - (a) Rig Vedic age
 - (b) Later Vedic age
 - (c) Pre Mauryan Period
 - (d) Mauryan period
10. Who is the most important God in Rigaveda?
 - (a) Agni
 - (b) Indra
 - (c) Varun
 - (d) Vishnu
11. The river Chenab was known during the Vedic period by the name :
 - (a) Askini
 - (b) Parushni
 - (c) Shutudri
 - (d) Vitasta
12. Which one of the following assemblies was also called Narishta meaning a resolution that cannot be broken?
 - (a) Gana
 - (b) Vidhata
 - (c) Sabha
 - (d) Samiti
13. Which of the following is concerned with origin of Indian medicine?
 - (a) Rigveda
 - (b) Samveda
 - (c) Yajurveda
 - (d) Atharveda
14. How many times the word 'Jana' occur in the Rigveda?
 - (a) 75 times
 - (b) 175 times
 - (c) 275 times
 - (d) 375 times
15. Which of the following Samhitas of Yajurveda contains only hymns and no prose?
 - (a) Katha
 - (b) Maitrayaviya
 - (c) Taittiriya
 - (d) Vajasaneyi
16. The game of 'dice' was part of the ritual of :
 - (a) Agnistoma
 - (b) Aswamedha
 - (c) Rajasuya
 - (d) Vajapeya
17. The Gayatri Mantra is dedicated to :
 - (a) Indra
 - (b) Aditi
 - (c) Gayatri
 - (d) Savitri
18. The flood Legend in which a divine fish has been described as rescuing Manu occurs in detail in :
 - (a) Rigveda Samhita
 - (b) Vajasaneyi Samhita
 - (c) Satapatha Brahmana
 - (d) Aitareya Brahmana
19. To which Sakha does the publised Rigveda Samhita belong?
 - (a) Sawnaka
 - (b) Asvalayan
 - (c) Sakala
 - (d) Sankhayana
20. King Asvapati of the Upanishadic Age was the ruler of :
 - (a) Kekaya
 - (b) Matsya
 - (c) Panchala
 - (d) Sursena
21. Who among the following Vedic deities bears resemblance with Avestan God 'Ahurmazda' ?
 - (a) Indra
 - (b) Varuna
 - (c) Rudra
 - (d) Vishnu
22. Who among the following was a commentator of the Manusmriti ?
 - (a) Asahaya
 - (b) Visvarupa
 - (c) Bhattasvami
 - (d) Medhatithi
23. A story of Sunahsesha, in which his father Ajigarta is stated to have sold him to Harishchandra, occurs in :
 - (a) Aitareya Brahmana
 - (b) Gopatha Brahmana
 - (c) Svetasvatara Upanishad
 - (d) Brihadaranyaka Upanishad
24. Who wrote the first textbook on Jyotish?
 - (a) Panini
 - (b) Patanjali
 - (c) Katyayan
 - (d) Bhrgu
25. The words "Satyameva Jayate" in the state emblem of India have been adopted from which one of the following?
 - (a) Mundaka Upanishad
 - (b) Katha Upanishad
 - (c) Mandukya Upanishad
 - (d) Chhandogya Upanishad
26. The great law giver of ancient time was :
 - (a) Vatsyayana
 - (b) Ashoka
 - (c) Manu
 - (d) Panini
27. During the Rigvedic period, 'Niska' was an ornament of :
 - (a) Ear
 - (b) Neck
 - (c) Arm
 - (d) Wrist
28. Sayana the famous commentator of the Vedic texts, was patronised by :
 - (a) Parmara rulers
 - (b) Satvahana rulers
 - (c) Vijaynagar rulers
 - (d) Vakataka rulers

29. The word Yava mentioned in Rigveda is used for which agricultural product?
(a) Barley (b) Gram (c) Rice (d) Wheat
30. Which of the following was the centre of Aryan activity in the later Vedic period?
(a) The Aryavarta
(b) From the Yamuna to the western border of Bengal
(c) The Punjab and Delhi region
(d) Uttarapatha
31. The Rigvedic hymns can be treated as being historically fairly authentic because
(a) They give a chronological account of the historical events
(b) The events described in them are corroborated by Avesthan Gathas.
(c) They are the earliest of the Vedic literature
(d) Their composition was contemporary with the period described
32. An inscription of 1400 B.C. which describes the Vedic Gods was found in Asia Minor at _____.
(a) Cilicia (b) Boghaz-Koi
(c) Hitti (d) Euphratide
33. Which of the following statements about the system of taxation and revenue administration in the Later Vedic period is not correct?
(a) Settled life and stable agriculture led to the production of surplus which could be collected by the king in the form of taxes
(b) The king received regular contributions from the people in the shape of bali and shulka
(c) One-sixth of the produce of the land was payable to the king
(d) An official called bhagadugha collected the royal share of the produce
34. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for the gradual weakening of the tribal assemblies in the Later Vedic Period?
(a) Increase in the royal power
(b) In large territorial states ordinary people could not travel long distances to attend their meetings
(c) The assemblies acquired an aristocratic character which took away most of their effectiveness
(d) They also surrendered some of their activities to the new officials called ratnins
35. Which of the following descriptions of the Later Vedic officials is not correct?
(a) Bhagadugha-Collector of taxes
(b) Kshtri-Chamberlain
(c) Akshavapa-Superintendent of gambling
(d) Adhikari-Suuperintendent of Police
36. Which of the following statements about the administrative system of the Early Vedic period is not correct?
(a) The king was assisted by a number of functionaries of whom the two most important were purohita and the senani
(b) Gramani was the head of the village only for civic purposes
(c) Forts and strongholds were under purapati
(d) To provide organization in society
37. The Rigvedic concept of Rita denotes the
(a) Cosmic order or law prevailing in nature
(b) Ethical and moral order
(c) Both (a) and (b) above
(d) Amalgamation of "All Gods" into "one"
38. The head of which of the following was supposed to be known as ganapati or jyeshtha?
(a) Family (b) Tribe
(c) Tribal republic (d) Sabha
39. Like the Vedic Aryans the custom of sacrificial fire was also followed by the ancient
(a) Romans (b) Greeks
(c) Iranians (d) All the above
40. The 'Wedding Hymn' describing the oldest marriage ritual is found in the
(a) Rigveda (b) Yajurveda
(c) Samveda (d) Grihyasutras
41. Which one among the following is not a characteristic of Rig-Vedic Aryans?
(a) They were acquainted with horses, chariots and the use of bronze
(b) They were acquainted with the use of iron
(c) They were acquainted with the cow, which formed the most important form of wealth
(d) They were acquainted with the use of copper and the modern ploughshare
42. Which one among the following is not true with regard to Rig Veda Samhita?
(a) There are about 300 non-Indo- European words in Rig Veda
(b) There is a reference to dasarajna (battle of ten kings) in the Rig Veda
(c) It is mentioned in the Rig Veda that the Bharata chief Sudas fought against a confederacy of ten tribes
(d) Purus sided with Bharata in the battle of ten kings

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

1. Which of the following statements regarding the hymns of the Rig veda are correct ?
1. They refer to the Himavant and the Nujavant.
 2. They mention geographical terms like Aryavarta and Dakshinatya.
 3. Most rivers mentioned in them flow in areas west of the Yamuna and the Ganga.
 4. They mention the ruling families on the Kurus, Panchalas and the Ikshvakus.
- Select the correct answer from the codes given below:
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 1 and 3
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4

2. With reference to the early vedic age, consider the following statements:
1. In Rig Veda, there are 20 mandalas of which book I to X are the oldest and relate to early Vedic Age.
 2. The total numbers of hymns is 1028.
 3. Book VIII of Rigveda ascribed to Kanvas and Angirases.
 4. Samaveda, Yajurveda and Atharvaveda are composed during the early vedic age.
- Which of the above is/are correct
- (a) 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 4
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 2, 3 and 4
3. Regarding women in the Vedic period, which of the following are correct?
1. They were allowed to study
 2. They held good positions
 3. They did not practice Purdah system
 4. They attended Sabha and Samiti
- Which of the given above statements are correct?
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 3 and 4
(c) 2 and 3 (d) All of these
4. The "Dharma" and "Rita" depict a central idea of ancient Vedic civilization of India. In this context, consider the following statements :
1. Dharma was a conception of obligations and of the discharge of one's duties to oneself and to others.
 2. Rita was the fundamental moral law governing the functioning of the universe and all it contained.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

Matching Based MCQ

5. **List-I** **List-II**
 (Rivers) **(Vedic Names)**
- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| A. Satluj | 1. Vipasha |
| B. Vyas | 2. Sutudari |
| C. Ravi | 3. Asikini |
| D. Chenab | 4. Parushni |

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	4	3
(b)	4	3	2	1
(c)	1	4	3	2
(d)	1	2	3	4

6. **List-I (Samhita)** **List-II (Upanisad)**
- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| A. Rigveda | 1. Chhandogya |
| B. Yajurveda | 2. Mundaka |
| C. Samaveda | 3. Katha |
| D. Atharvaveda | 4. Kaushitaki |

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	4	3
(b)	4	3	1	2
(c)	1	2	3	4
(d)	3	4	2	1

7. **List-I (Rigvedic name)** **List-II (Modern name)**
- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| A. Gomal | 1. Gomati |
| B. Kurmu | 2. Kurram |
| C. Suvastu | 3. Swatiu |
| D. Drishavari | 4. Ghaghar |

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	4	3	1
(b)	1	2	3	4
(c)	4	3	2	1
(d)	1	4	3	2

8. Which of the following characteristic(s) describes the nature of religion according to the Rig Veda?
1. Rig Vedic religion can be described a naturalistic polytheism.
 2. There are striking similarities between the Rig Vedic religion and the ideas in the Iranian Avesta.
 3. Vedic sacrifices were conducted in the house of the priest who was called yajaman.
 4. Vedic sacrifices were of two kind – those conducted by the household and those that required rituals specialists.

Select the correct answer using the code given below :

- (a) 3 only (b) 1 and 2 only
(c) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (d) 1, 2 and 4 only

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (a) In Asura marriage, bridegroom gave as much wealth as he could afford to the bride's relatives, not in accordance with the injunctions of the scriptures because it was like buying the bride, which was prohibited.
2. (d)
3. (c) The early Vedic Aryans indulged in Image Worship and Yajnas.
4. (b)
5. (d) The birth of girl was looked down upon during the early vedic period
6. (c) 7.(b) 8. (a) 9.(b)
10. (b) Indra was the most important divinity and was lord of war. 250 hymns have been devoted to only Indra in Rigveda, which is highest for any of the Gods. His other names are: Car-warrior (Rathस्था); A winner (Jitendra) and Soma Drinker (Somapa). Indra is mentioned as son of Dyaus. He killed a demon Vritra, so he is known as Vritrahan. He destroyed the forests so also known as Purandhar. He held the thunderbolt (Vajra) with which he destroyed the enemies.
11. (a) The river Chenab was known in the Vedic period as Chandrabhaga also Askini or Iskmati and as Acesines to the Ancient Greeks.
12. (c) The Sabha is called Narishta which meant a 'resolution of many' that cannot be broken. It performed the

- executive functions. In the later Vedic period it lost its importance due to the rise of royal power.
13. (d) Atharvaveda concerned with the origin of Indian medicine. It also consists mainly of magical spells and charms.
 14. (c) The term 'Jana' occurs 275 times in the Rigveda. But Janapada is not mentioned. The term Rajya occurs only once.
 15. (d) The Samhita of Yajurveda that contains only hymns and no prose is Vayasaneyi.
 16. (c) Dicing seems to have a special significance when connected with myths and rituals. Dicing involves uncertainty, chance, the vagaries of fortune. The dice game is representative of the challenges that a king must endure during his reign. The game of dice be a part of the rituals of Rajasuya Yagya.
 17. (d) The Gayatri Mantra is a highly revered mantra, based on a Vedic Sanskrit verse from a hymn of the Rigveda. The Gayatri mantra is dedicated to Savitr, is hence called Savitri. It is considered to be among the holiest mantras of Hinduism.
 18. (c) Hindu flood myth from the Satapatha Brahmana, the Matsya Avatar saves the pious and the first man, Manu, and advises him to build a giant boat.
 19. (c)
 20. (a) The Kekaya kingdom was situated on the bank of river Beas, east of Gandhar kingdom. King Aswapati ruled Kekaya when Janak was the king of Videha.
 21. (a) Indra was the Vedic deities bears resemblance with Avestan god Ahurmazda. In Zoroastrianism as reflected in the Avesta, Ahura Mazda is identified with the beneficent spirit and directly opposed to the destructive one. He is all-wise, liberal, undecieving and the creator of everything good.
 22. (d) Medhatithi was first Sanskrit scholar who did commentary on Manusmriti a Dhramashastra. The exact date of Medhatithi's writing is unclear, and he has been placed anywhere between about 820 and 1050 AD.
 23. (a) The story of Sunahsesha in which his father Ajigarta is stated to have sold him to Harishchandra, occurs in Aitareya Brahmana.
 24. (d) Maharishi Bhrigu was the first compiler of predictive astrology, Jyotisha. He is credited as the father of Hindu astrology and the first astrological treatise Bhrigu Samhita is attributed to his authorship. The Bhrigu Samhita is an astrological (Jyotish) classic attributed to Maharishi Bhrigu during the Vedic period.
 25. (a) 'Satyameva Jayate' is a mantra from the ancient Indian scripture Mundaka Upanishad. Upon independence of India, it was adopted as the national motto of India.
 26. (c) Manu-smriti (Laws of Manu), traditionally, the most authoritative of the books of the Hindu code (Dharmashastra) in India. It is attributed to the legendary first man and lawgiver, Manu. In its present form, it dates from the 1st century BCE.
 27. (b) In Rigvedic period, Niska was a gold necklace in the beginning but later it was also used as a coin for giving as a reward to a poet.
 28. (c)
 29. (a) It is accepted that the word 'yava' in the oldest texts, including the Rigveda, applied to any type of grain that was grounded into flour. Yet, many Indologists treat the word as meaning specifically barley.
 30. (d) 31. (c) 32. (b) 33. (c) 34. (a) 35. (c)
 36. (b) 37. (a) 38. (c) 39. (c) 40. (c)
 41. (b) Rig Vedic Aryans were not acquainted to the use of Iron.
 42. (a) Rigveda Samhita is an ancient Indian sacred collection of vedic sanskrit hymns. It is among the worlds oldest religions texts. The question of non-Indo Europeqan world being included in the original text does not arise.

EXERCISE-2

1. (c)
2. (a) Sam, yajur and Atharveda are composed during later Vedic Age, Then are ten looks or Mandals in the Rigveda.
3. (d) The Rigvedic society was a free society. The Aryans evidently preferred male child to female child. However, females were as free as their male counterparts. Education was equally open for boys and girls. Girls studied the Veda and fine arts. Women never observed Purdha in the Vedic period. They enjoyed freedom in selecting their mates. But divorce was not permissible to them. In the family, they enjoyed complete freedom and were treated as Ardhanginis.
4. (c) 5. (a)
6. (b) Some of the important Upanishads are: Aitareya, Kaushitaki (belong to Rigveda); Chhandogya, Kena (belong to the Samaveda); Katha, Svetasvatara, Brihadaranyaka, Isa (belong to the Yajurveda); Mundaka, Prasna and Mandukya (belong to the Atharvaveda). The correct matching pairs are - Rigveda and Kaushitaki, Yajurveda and Katha, Samaveda and Chhandogya, Atharvaveda and Mundaka.
7. (b) The correct pairs of Rigvedic names and modern names are:

Rig-Vedic Name	Modern Name
Sindhu	Indus
Vitase	Jhelum
Askini	Chenab
Purushni	Ravi
Vipas	Beas
Sutudari	Satluj
Gumal	Gomati
Krumu	Kurram
Drishdvati	Ghagghar
Suvastu	Swat

8. (c) Even though monotheism characterizes some of the hymns of Rig Veda, naturalistic polytheism and monism can be discerned in the religion of the hymns of Rig Veda. Like the rigvedic Aryans the ancient Iranians worshipped gods like Mitr, Vayu and Verutraghna. They also wore the scared thread and worshipped fire etc. Initially sacrifices were simple, house hold duties performed by the oldest male member of the house yajmana who acted as priest and the oldest female member. yajmana patni(wife of the householder) who assisted in the act. The agnihotra was a simple domestic sacrifice to be performed daily by the head of a Dvija household in the morning and the evening. Other involved the participation of many different ritual specialists along with their assistants.

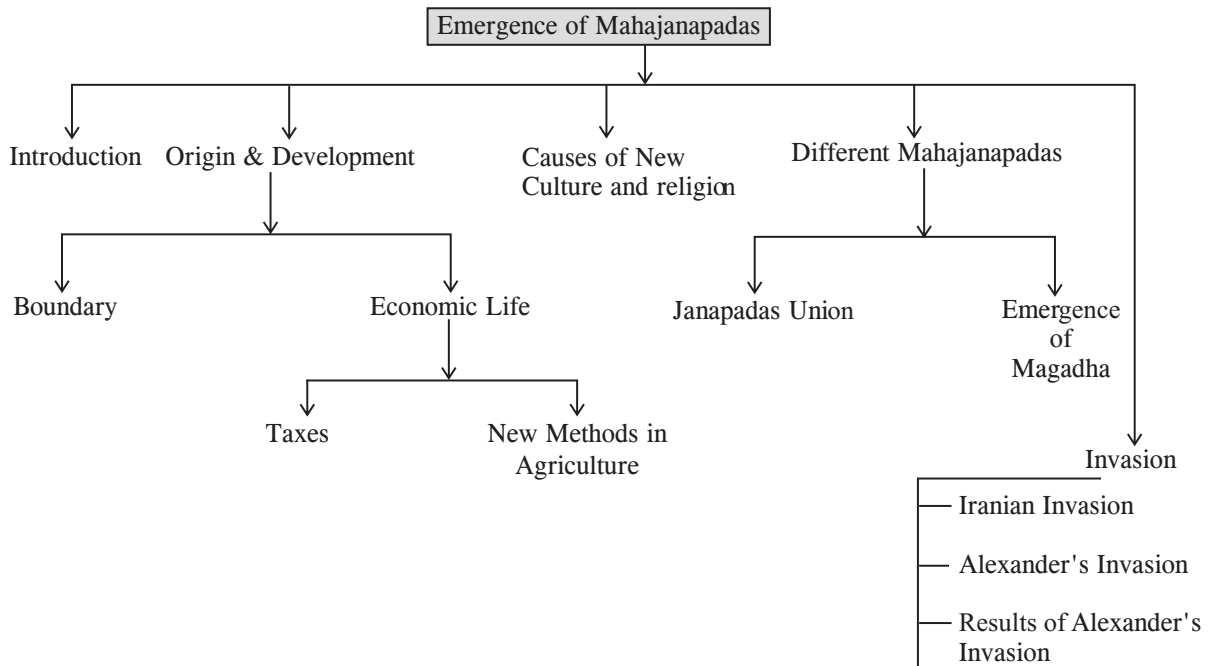


EMERGENCE OF MAHAJANAPADAS AND MAGADH

5 Chapter

Introduction

Janapada literally means the place where the people put their feet. However, these were permanent settlements of the agricultural communities of the later vedic period. The term *Mahajanapad* was used to describe a large area capable of bearing taxes and various imposition. Several Janapadas included in a Mahajanapada. There were several thousand villages in a Janapada. The Kautilyan Janapada comprised 3200 villages..



ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENTS OF MAHAJANAPADAS

Boundary and Army

- Most of Mahajanapadas had a **capital city** and were fortified.
- It means the entire areas were surrounded by huge walls of wood, brick or stones.
- The **objectives** of building forts were to protect the people and the kingdom from the attacks of other kings.
- To show how rich and powerful they were by building large, tall and impressive walls around their cities
- To control the land and the people living inside the fortified area more easily.
- The rajas maintained armies to protect the people and the fort.
- The people lived in **huts**, and kept **cattle** as well as other animals.

- They used to grow a variety of crops like rice, wheat, barley, pulses, sugarcane, sesame and mustard.
- They knew making **earthen pots**, some were in grey and red colours.
- Some painted grey pots of **geometric pattern** are found.

In transition from tribe to monarchy they lost the essential democratic pattern of the tribe but retained the idea of government through an assembly representing the tribes. These states consisted of either a single tribe such as the Shakyas, Kolia, Mallas, etc. or a confederacy of tribes such as the Vrijis, Yadavas, Panchala, etc.

The people in the lower Ganges Valley and Delta were outside the Aryan boundary were considered as *mlecchas*. There was a strong consciousness of the purity of the Aryans called *Aryavarta*. Each janapada tried to dominate and subjugate other janapadas to become Mahajanapads.

Economic Life

Taxes of Mahajanapada

The rulers needed **more resources** for building **huge forts** and maintaining **big armies**. So, they started collecting regular

taxes, instead of depending on occasional gifts brought by people which was in the case of the raja of janapadas. These taxes were collected from :

- Farmers** on their **crop** production,
- Crafts** persons in the form of labour,
- Herders** in the form of animals and **animal** produce,
- Traders** on goods that were brought and sold,
- Hunters** and gatherers on forest produce.

New Methods in Agriculture

There were two changes adopted in the practice of agriculture, that were:

- They used **iron ploughshare** at the place of wooden ploughshare. Its motive was to turn over the heavy clayey soil better to produce more grain.
- People started developing **nursery of paddy** instead of scattering seed on the ground for final cropping. In this nursery plants were sprouted, saplings were grown and then planted in the fields to increase production.

CAUSES OF RISE OF NEW CULTURE AND RELIGIONS

- The changes in economic and social events led in co-existent of religious thought.
- The creation of awakened groups of traders, industrialists and labour resulted in putting a challenge to the supremacy of the Brahmanas.
- The creation of sub-castes also did the same.
- Several of these groups were rich as well which gave them an advantageous position in the society. It led to religious awakening in the society which **caused the formation of several religious sects**.
- There is no doubt that the **rise of Jainism and Buddhism** during this period was a result of the **changed economic and social circumstances** also.
- We also find that both of these religious sects got support from the **neo-rich trading and industrial classes** which were eager to get a better social status so far denied to them.
- The same way, both Jainism and Buddhism drew large converts from new sub-castes who were interested in getting equal status for all castes thereby getting the facility of having better social status for themselves.

DIFFERENT MAHAJANAPADAS

There were about sixteen Mahajanapadas (about 2500 years ago) according to *Anguttara Nikaya* in the sixth century B.C. namely:

Magadha (including the present districts of Patna, Gaya and parts of Shahabad) with its capital at **Girivraja** or **Rajgriha**. (ii) **Anga** (including the present districts of Monghyr and Bhagalpur in Bihar) with its capital at **Champa**. (iii) **Vajji** (a confederacy of eight republican clans. To the north of the river Ganga in Bihar) with its capital, **Vaisali**. (iv) **Malla** (also a republican confederacy including the present districts of **Deoria, Basti, Gorakhpur** and **Siddharthnagar** in eastern Uttar Pradesh) with two capitals at **Kusinagar** and **Pawa**. (v) **Kasi** with its capital at **Varanasi**. (vi) **Kosala** (including the present district of **Faizabad, Gonda, Baharaich**, etc.) with its capital at **Shravasti**. (vii) **Vatsa** (including the present districts **Allahabad, Mirzapur** etc.), with Its capital at **Kausambi**. (viii) **Chedi**, (including the present Bundelkhand area) with its capital at **Shuktimati**. (ix) **Kuru** (including the present Haryana and Delhi area to the West of river Yamuna) with its capital at **Indraprastha** (modern Delhi). (x) **Panchala**

(including the area of western Uttar Pradesh upto the east of river Yamuna upto the Kosala Janapada) with its capital at **Ahichhatra**. (xi) **Surasena**, (covering Brij Mandal) with its capital at **Mathura**. (xii) **Matsya** (covering the area of Alwar, Bharatpur and Jaipur in Rajasthan). (xiii) **Avanti** (modern Malwa) with its capital at **Ujjain** and Mahishmati. (xiv) **Asmaka** (between the rivers Narmada and Godavari with its capital at **Potana**. (xv) **Gandhara** (area covering the western part of Pakistan and eastern Afghanistan) with its capitals at **Taxila** and Pushkalavati, and (xvi) **Kamboja** (identified with modern district of Hazara districts of Pakistan) with its capital at **Rajpur**.

S. No.	Mahajanapadas	Present areas	Capitals
1.	Gandhara	Western Pakistan & Afghanistan	Taxila
2.	Kamboja	Pakistan	Rajpur
3.	Asmaka	Between Narmada & Godavari	Potana

4.	Vatsa	Allahabad	Kaushambi
5.	Avanti	Malwa	Ujjain
6.	Surasena	Brij Mandal	Mathura
7.	Chedi	Bundel khand	Shuktimati
8.	Malla	Deoria, Basti	Kushinara, Pawa
9.	Kurus	Haryana, Delhi	Hastinapur/ Indraprastha (Delhi)
10.	Matsya	Alwar, Jaipur	Virat Nagari
11.	Vajjis (Vriji)	Bihar	Vaishali
12.	Anga	Monghyr	Champa
13.	Kashi		Banaras (Varanasi)
14.	Kosala	Faizabad Gonda	Shravasti
15.	Magadha	Patna, Gaya	Girivraja/ Rajgriha
16.	Panchala	Uttar Pradesh	Ahichhatra (W. Panchala) Kampilya (S. Panchala)

Important Janapadas Union (Republic)

Republican Manajanapada was ruled by a group of representatives elected by the common people. The Mahajanapadas of Vriji, Mall, Kuru, Panchal and Kamboj were republican states and so were either smaller states like Lichhavi, Shakya, Kolya, Bhagga, and Moriya. All the administrative decisions of the states were taken by the *Parisha*. The republics were basically of two types:

- The republics comprising a **single tribe** like those of the Sakyas, the Kolyas and the Mallas.
- The republics comprising a number of tribes or the republics of **confederacy** like the Vrijjis.

Emergence of Magadha

The first important king of Magadha was **Bimbisara** (542 B.C. – 493 B.C.) who belonged to the *Haryanka dynasty*. He

strengthened his position by marriage alliances. He took three wives. His first wife was the daughter of the king Kosala and the sister of Prasenajit. His second wife Chellana was a Lichhavi Princess from Vaishali, and his third wife was the daughter of the chief of the Madra clan of Punjab.

- Marriage relations with the different princely families gave enormous diplomatic prestige and paved the way for the expansion of Magadha westward and northward.
- The earliest capital of Magadha was at *Rajgir*, which was called *Girivraja* at that time. It was surrounded by **five hills**, the openings in which were closed by stone walls on all sides. This made Rajgir invincible.
- He was succeeded by his son *Ajatasatru* (492–460 B.C.)
- Ajatasatru killed his father and seized the throne for himself. Throughout his *reign*, he pursued an aggressive policy of expansion.
- Ajatasatru was succeeded by *Udayin* (460 – 444 B.C.). His reign was important because he **built the fort** upon the confluence of the Ganga and Son at Patna. This was done because Patna lay in the centre of the Magadhan kingdom.
- Udayin was succeeded by the dynasty of *Sisunagas*, who temporarily shifted the capital to *Vaishali*. Their greatest achievement was the destruction of the power of Avanti with its capital at Ujjain. This brought to an end the 100 years old rivalry between Magadha and Avanti.

Causes for the Rise of Magadha

- Advantageous **geographical location** either at Rajgir or Pataliputra situated at strategic locations.
- Advantageous **natural resources** such as **iron** enable Magadhan rulers to equip with **effective weapons**.
- The **alluvial soil** of Gangetic plains and sufficient rainfall was very conducive for **agriculture produces**.
- Rise of town and **use of metallic money** boosted trade and commerce.
- The princes could use **tools** and accumulate **wealth to pay and maintain their army**.
- Use of **elephants** on a large scale **in wars**.
- **Liberal** (Unorthodox) **character** of Magadhan society.
- Contribution of several enterprising and ambitious rulers.

VARIOUS INVASIONS

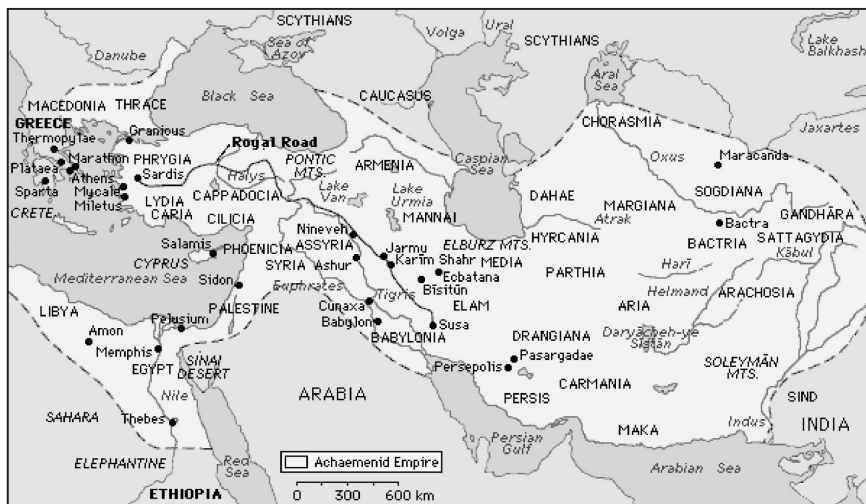
Iranian Invasion

The *Achaemenid rulers of Iran*, who spreaded their kingdom at the same time as the Magadhan princes, took advantage of the political disunity on the north-west frontier. The Iranian ruler, *Darius* penetrated into north-west India in 516 B.C. and annexed Punjab, west of the Indus, and Sindh. It gave a momentum to Indo-Iranian trade and commerce. The Iranian scribes brought into India a form of writing which came to be known as the *Kharoshi script*. It was written from right to left *like the Arabic*. Iranian coins are also found in the north-west region which points to the existence of trade with Iran. Iranian effect on the Maurya sculpture is clearly noticeable. The monuments of Ashoka's time, especially the bell shaped capitals owed something to the Iranian models.

Iranian influence may also be witnessed in the preamble of Ashoka's edicts as well as in certain words used in them.

Points to Remember

- In 516 B.C. *Darius* sent a naval expedition to explore the valley of the river Indus.
- He marked the province as *20th Straphy*, which was considered to be the richest and the most populous province of the Persian Empire.
- Its annual tribute amounted to 360 Euboic talents of gold-dust.
- The Kharoshi script was used on the north-western frontier since then until about 4th century A.D.



Alexander's Invasion

In the fourth century B.C., the Greeks and the Iranians fought for the supremacy of the world. **Alexander**, the king of **Macedonia Grece** conquered not only Asia Minor and Iraq but also Iran. From Iran, he moved on to India, obviously **attracted by its great wealth**.

Alexander defeated Indian rulers one after another. Among the rulers of these territories, two were well-known *Ambhi*, the prince of Taxila, and *Porus* whose kingdom lay between the Jhelum and the Chenab.

After the victory of Iran, Alexander reached to Kabul, from where he marched to India through the *Khyber Pass*.

Ambhi, the ruler of Taxila, readily submitted to the invader, augmented his army and replenish his treasure.

When he reached the Jhelum, Alexander met the first and the **strongest resistance** from **Porus**. Although Alexander defeated Porus, he was impressed by the bravery and courage of the Indian prince. So, he restored his kingdom to him and made him his ally.

Then, he advanced as far as the *Beas river*. He wanted to move still further eastward but his army refused to accompany him.

Alexander remained in India for 19 months (326–325 B.C.), which were full of fighting. He had barely any time to organize his conquests. Still, he made some arrangements. Most conquered states were restored to their rulers who submitted to his authority.

But his own territorial possessions were divided into three parts, which were placed under three Greek governors.

One of the most remarkable aspects of Alexander's foreign policy was his encouragement of **inter-racial marriages**.

He dreamt of **uniting the east and the west** by the natural bonds of marriage, and ruling over it.

Results of Alexander's Invasion

- Alexander's campaign opened up and reinforces a number of trade routes between north-western India, via Afghanistan and Iran to Asia Minor and to the ports along the eastern Mediterranean.
- The date of Alexander's campaign noted clearly in the chronicles left by the historians has helped establish the

chronological order of subsequent events in India. It also opened a new door for Greek art and architecture.

- Thus, Alexander paved the way for the rise of a united empire under the Mauryas.

Summary of Alexander's Invasion

- Alexander marched to India through the **Khyber Pass in 326 B.C.**
- **Ambi**, the ruler of Taxila, submitted to Alexander.
- He was bravely checked by the local chieftains despite the fact that they had no chance of success.
- He was resisted first strongest by Porus at Jhelum.
- His advance was checked on the bank of the Beas because of the mutiny of his soldiers.
- In 325 B.C., he began his homeward journey.
- In 324 B.C., he reached Susa in Persia and died the next year.
- The Greek invasion of India opened the trade route between north-west India and Western Asia.

Chronology of Foreign Invasions

- 518–486 B.C.: King Darius or Darus invaded India.
- 326 B.C. : Alexander invaded India.
- 190 B.C. : India-Greeks or Bactrians invaded India.
- 90 B.C. : Sakas invaded India.
- A.D. 1st Century : Pahlavas invaded India.
- A.D. 45 : Kushanas or Yue-chis invaded India.

Points to Remember

- Increased in prosperity and growth of towns.
- Increased in prosperity was due to foreign trade.
- **One trade route** was from Kosambi →Gangetic plain →Punjab→Taxila to Iran, Central Asia, Europe.
- **Another trade route** was from Rajagriha→Kosambi →Ujjain→Port of Baroach through sea-route to western countries.
- **Another route** from Gangetic plain to northern plains to Burma.
- Towns became centres of trade and industries.
- Indian rulers **minted coins** of different metals.
- Intellectual groups were created in towns which led the formation of several sub-castes.
- Sanskrit became the language of intellectuals and purohits.
- Regional languages were also formed like Prakrit, Pali, Magadhi, etc.

Exercise -1

- Which one of the following Janapadas was republican state in sixth century BC?
 - Kosala
 - Anga
 - Mayadha
 - Vajji
- By whom, the first republic of the world was established in Vaishali?
 - Maurya
 - Nand
 - Licchhavi
 - Gupta
- The list of sixteen Mahajanapadas is available in
 - Mahabharata
 - Chhandogya Upanishad
 - Samyukta Nikaya
 - Anguttara Nikaya
- In sixth century BC, Suktimati was the capital of
 - Panchala
 - Kuru
 - Chedi
 - Avanti
- Name of the Mahajanapada, which was a confederacy of eight republican clans?
 - Vatsa
 - Magadha
 - Vajji
 - Malla
- In the Mahayana Buddhism, the Bodhisatva Avalokitesvara was also known as:
 - Vajrapani
 - Manjusri
 - Padmapani
 - Maitreya
- The kingdom which was most powerful among the Shodasa Mahajanapadas ?
 - Anga
 - Magadha
 - Kosala
 - Vajji
- The capital of Magadha was shifted from Rajgriha to
 - Patliputra
 - Ujjaini
 - Varanasi
 - Kannauj
- The dynasties which ruled Magadha were
 - Haryanka
 - Saisunagas
 - Nandas
 - All of above
- Where did the 16 Janapadas were mentioned?
 - Buddhist Scripts
 - Brahmanas
 - Aryanakas
 - Jaina Scriptures
- Which one of the following statements about ancient Indian Mahajanapadas is correct?
 - All Mahajanapadas were oligarchies where power was exercised by a group of people
 - All Mahajanapadas were located in Eastern India
 - No army was maintained by the Mahajanapadas
 - Buddhist and Jaina texts list sixteen Mahajanapadas
- What was the period of Chandra Gupta Maurya?
 - 314-287 BC
 - 310-299 BC
 - 320-289 BC
 - 324-300 BC
- Chandra Gupta Maura defeated Nandas with the help of?
 - Chanakya
 - Aswaghosa
 - Harisena
 - Jayasimha
- Chandra Gupta Maura was the follower of?
 - Buddhism
 - Hinduism
 - Aynika
 - Jainism

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Arrange the following Mahajanapadas moving from west to east in the correct order:
 - Avanti
 - Magadha
 - Matsya
 - Kosala

Codes:

 - 1 2 3 4
 - 1 3 4 2
 - 1 3 2 4
 - 1 4 3 2
- Arrange the following Magadha dynasties in the chronological order:
 - Nandas
 - Sungas
 - Mauryas
 - Haryanks

Codes:

 - 2, 1, 4, 3
 - 3, 2, 1, 4
 - 1, 3, 4, 2
 - 4, 1, 3, 2
- Consider the following statements:
 - The list of sixteen Mahajanapadas is available in Anguttara Nikaya.
 - Asmaka Mahajanapada was situated on the bank of Godawari.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- With reference to Mahajanapad as consider the statements:
 - Anga and Magadha were located in the wheat growing area of the Gangetic Valley
 - In agricultural output, rice exceeded wheat leading to a greater density of population in the rice growing area.

Which of the above is / are not correct ?

 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2?
- Which of the following caused by success of Magadh ?
 - Magadha enjoyed a advantageous geographical position in the iron age as most of the deposits were located there.
 - The rulers of this state had very good weapon.
 - The capitals of Magadha were situated at strategic positions.
 - No other power at that time had the courage to attack it
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 4
 - 1 and 4

Matching Based MCQ

6. **List-I (King)** **List-II (Kingdom)**
- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| A. Pradyota | 1. Magadha |
| B. Udayana | 2. Vatsa |
| C. Prasenjit | 3. Avanti |
| D. Ajatshatru | 4. Kosala |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (b) 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (d) 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |

7. **List-I (Mahajanpada)** **List-II (Capital)**
- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| A. Matsya | 1. Potana |
| B. Asmaka | 2. Virat |
| C. Anga | 3. Champa |
| D. Chedi | 4. Shuktimati |
- Codes:**
- | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|
| A | B | C | D |
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

- (d) Vajji Janapada was republican state in sixth century BC. Its capital was Vaishali. The Vajji republic was ruled by a confederation of eight clans (Atthakula) of whom the Vrijis, the Lichchavis, the Jnatikass and the Videhas were the most important.
- (c) Licchavis established the first republic of the world in Vajji Mahajanapada of ancient India. They were the most famous clan amongst the ruling confederate clans of the Vajji. Vaishali was the capital of the Lichchavis,
- (d) The ancient Buddhist text Anguttara Nikaya gives the list of sixteen Mahajanapadas includes the Gandhara and the Kamboja as the only two salient Mahajanapadas in the Uttarapatha. Another Buddhist text Digha Nikaya mentions only twelve Mahajanapadas.
- (c) Chedi kingdom was one among the many kingdoms ruled during early periods by Paurava kings in the central and western India. Suktimati was the capital of Chedi.
- (c)
- (c) Avalokitesvara is a Bodhisattva who embodies the compassion of all Buddhas. He is one of the more widely revered bodhisattvas in mainstream Mahayana Buddhism. In Sanskrit, Avalokitesvara is also referred to as *Padmapâni* ("Holder of the Lotus") or *Lokeçvara* ("Lord of the World").
- (b) 8.(a) 9. (d) 10. (d)
- (d) According to Anguttara Nikaya(Budhist text) and Bhagavati sutra (jain text) there were 16 mahajanapadas in ancient India.
- (d) 13 (a) 14 (d)

EXERCISE-2

- (b) Mahajanapadas west to east are Avanti, Matsya, Kosala and Magadha. There were many states of the

Aryans in North India, around the 6th century BC. These states were called the 'Mahajanapadas'. There were sixteen of such Mahajanapadas: Kasi, Kosala, Anga, Magadha, Vajji, Malla, Chedi, Vatsa, Kuru, Panchala, Machcha, Surasena, Assaka, Avanti, Gandhara and Kamboja. Literally Mahajanapadas means 'Great Kingdoms'.

- (d) In chronological order, Magadha dynasties are Haryanks, Nandas, Mauryas and Sungas. Haryanka dynasty founded the Magadha empire in 600 BC, whose capital was Rajagriha, later Pataliputra, near the present day Patna. This dynasty lasted until 424 BC, when it was overthrown by the Shishunaga dynasty.
- (c) The list of sixteen Mahajanapadas is available in Anguttara Nikaya. Asmaka Mahajanapada was situated on the bank of river Godavari. The Anguttara Nikaya, the fourth division of the Sutta Pitaka, consists of several thousand suttas arranged in eleven books (nipatas) according to numerical content. An excellent modern print translation of the complete Anguttara Nikaya is Bhikkhu Bodhi's The Numerical Discourses of the Buddha:

- (a)
- (a)
- (b) Correctly matched pairs are:
Pradyot — Avanti
Udayana — Vatsa
Prasenjit — Kosala
Ajatshatru — Magadha
- (b) Correctly matched pairs are:
Matsya — Virat
Asmaka — Potana
Anga — Champa
Chedi — Suktimati



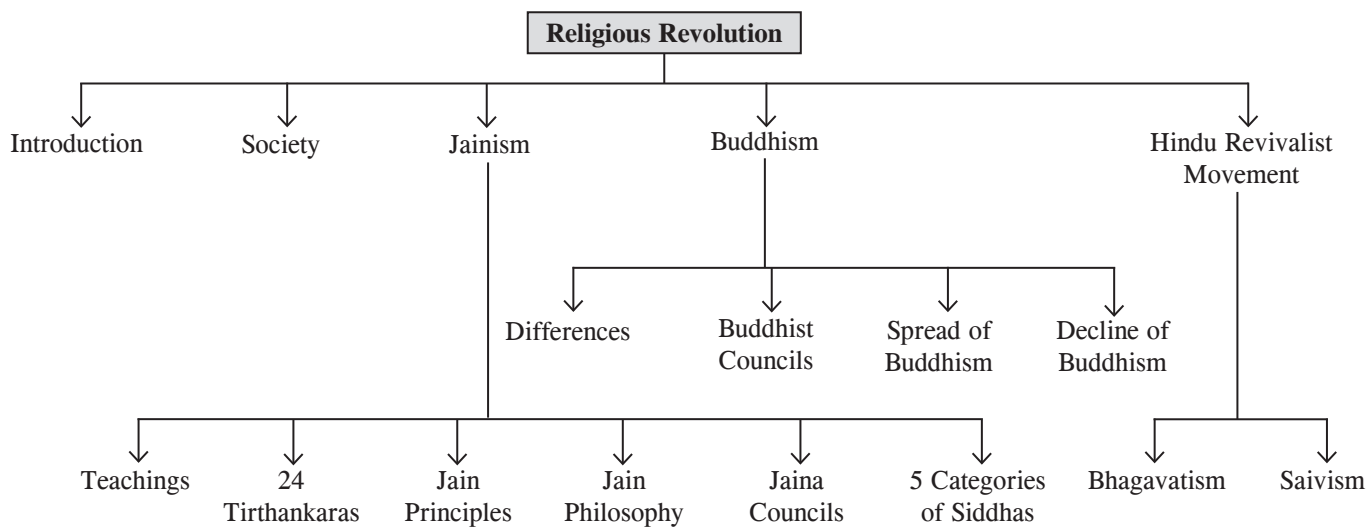
RELIGIOUS REVOLUTION

6

Chapter

Introduction

A number of religious sects came into existence in the middle Gangetic basin in the sixth century B.C. There were around 62 religious sects at that period. Out of these, Jainism and Buddhism were the most important, and they emerged as the most potent religious reform movements.



SOCIETY

The society was clearly divided into four Varnas: brahmins, kshatriyas, vaisyas and shudras, in the Vedic period. Each Varna was allowed well-defined jobs, although it was emphasized that Varna was based on birth and two higher varnas were given some privileges.

Clearly the Varna seems to have created tension in the society. The Kshatriyas, who acted as rulers, reacted against the domination of priestly class called brahmins, who enjoyed various privileges, was one of the causes of the origin of new religions. Vrdhamana Mahavira, who founded Jainism and Gautama Buddha, who founded Buddhism, belonged to the Kshatriya clan, and both disputed the authority of the Brahmins. The trade of money-lending was established in the Vedic age. The practice of interest on loans was also legal but the

trade was generally looked down upon by the brahmins. The vaisyas who practiced this trade wanted to raise their social position in the eyes of religion.

The vaisyas gave their support to both Mahavira and Gautama Buddha. The merchants, called the setthis, offered precious gifts to Gautama Buddha and his disciples.

The Vedic practice of killing cattles in sacrificial rituals was inimical to the emerging agricultural economy. Besides, the Sanskrit language was the language of a chosen few while the common masses spoke Prakrit. The elaborate Vedic rituals were heavily felt even by the rich. The interior position of women also facilitated the growth of new religions which had actually started off the reform of the Hinduism.

JAINISM

Vardhmana Mahavira is associated with Jainism. The Jains believe that Mahavira was the last of the 24 tirthankaras, or great teachers. The first was *Rishabhadev*. Their teachings constitute the core of the religion of Jainism.

Mahavira was born at *Kundagrama (near Vaishali)*, in Bihar. His father was the head of the Jnatrika clan and his mother was a Lichchavi princess.

At the age of 30, Mahavira left his home. For the next 12 years, he wandered from place to place in search of knowledge. Then one day, while meditating, he realized the truth. Through this knowledge, he conquered both misery and happiness. He came to be known as Jina the great conqueror. His followers came to be known as Jains.

Mahavira travelled from place to place preaching his message. He visited the court of Bimbisara and Ajatashatru.

Jainism in the Past

- The name of Jaina Tirthankra Rishabha is found in the Rig Veda.
- The Vishnu Purana and the Bhagavat Purana describe Rishaba as an incarnation of Narayana.
- The male nude torso discovered from the Indus Valley culture has something to do with the tirthankaras.
- There were twenty-four tirthankaras, all Kshatriyas and belonging to the royal family. Parsavnath was the 23rd tirthankara.

Teachings

Jainism was based on five doctrines: (i) *Ahinsa, non-violence*, (ii) *do not speak a lie*, (iii) *do not steal*, (iv) *do not acquire property and* (v) *observe continence (Brahmacharya)*. It is said that only the fifth doctrine was added by Mahavir, the other four being taken over by him from previous teachers.

Jainism recognized the existence of the Gods but regarded them lower than the jina. It did not condemn the Varna system. According to Mahavira, a person is born in a high or in a lower Varna in consequence of the sins or the virtues acquired by him in the previous birth. In his opinion, through pure and meritorious life, members of the lower castes can attain liberation. Full knowledge, action and liberation are considered to be the three gems or ratnas of Jainism.

24 Tirthankaras

Name	Symbol
1. Rishabha	Bull
2. Ajitnath	Elephant
3. Sambhavanath	Horse
4. Abhinandam Swamy	Monkey
5. Sumathinath	Curlew
6. Padamprabhu	Red Lotus
7. Suparaswanath	Swastik
8. Chandrajit Prabhu	Moon

9. Suivdhinath	Crocodile
10. Shitalnath	Srivatsa
11. Shreyansnath	Rhinoceros
12. Vasupujya	Buffalo
13. Vimalnath	Bear
14. Ananthnath	Falcon
15. Dharamnath	Vajra
16. Shantinath	Deer
17. Kuntunath	He-Goat
18. Aranath	Fish
19. Mallinath	Water Pot
20. Munisuvrata	Tortoise
21. Naminath	Blue Lotus
22. Neminath	Conch Shell
23. Parswanath	Serpent
24. Mahavir	Lion

According to Jainism, the tirthankaras descended on earth from time to time to guide the masses.

The Principles of Jainism as Preached by Mahavira

Rejected the authority of the Vedas and the Vedic rituals.

- **Svetambaras and Digambaras** : Although Parsva, a predecessor of Mahavira, had asked his followers to cover the upper and lower portions of their body. Mahavira asked them to discard clothes completely. On account of this, in later times Jainism was divided into two sect: svetambaras or those who put on white dress, and digambaras or those who keep themselves naked.
- **Sacred Literature** : According to svetambaras, the original doctrine taught by Mahavira was contained in 14 old texts called "*Purvas*", which was passed orally and was compiled later.
- The sacred literature of the Svetambaras is written in a form of *Prakrit* called Arghamagadhi and may be classified as follows:
 - The twelve Angas
 - The twelve Upangas
 - The ten Prakirnakas
 - The six Chhedasutras
 - The four Mulasutras
 This literature is not accepted by Digambaras.

Jaina Philosophy

- **Syadvada** : All our judgements are necessarily relative, conditional and limited. According to Syadvada (the theory of may be) seven modes of predication (saptabhangi) are possible. Absolute affirmation and absolute negation both are wrong. All judgements are conditional.
- **Anekantavada** : The Jaina metaphysics is a realistic and relativistic pluralism. It is called Anekantavada or the doctrine of the 'manyness of reality'. *Matter (Pudgala)* and *Spirit (Jiva)* are regarded as separate and independent realities.

Important Terms

Ajnanevada: Ajnanevada refers to the Jain doctrine agnosticism or scepticism. In the Jain text, there is mention of 67 kinds of Ajnanevada.

Anuvratas: Anuvratas refer to first five vows in Jainism. These are more moderate version of Mahavrate. These vows include abstinence from gross violence, gross falsehood, gross stealing, contentment with one's own wife and limitation of one's possessions.

Avasarpini: In Jainism time is divided into infinite equal time cycles or 'Kalchakras'. Every time cycle is further divided into two equal halves. The first half is the progressive cycle or ascending order, called 'Utsarpini' whereas the second half is the regressive cycle or descending order, called 'Avasarpini'.

Samavasarana: The term samavasarana refers to a place where all have a common opportunity of acquiring the wisdom. The theme of Samavasarana has been popular in Jain art.

Samayasara: Samayasara is a famous Jain text written by Acharya Kundakunda. In this text, Acharya describes about 'Ratnatraya' which includes Samyak Darshan, Samyak Gyan, Samyak Charitra.

Samachari: It refers to a part of Kalpsutra. Which deals with Jain monks.

Jaina Councils

By the end of fourth century B.C., there was a serious famine in the Ganges valley leading to a great exodus of many Jain monks to the Deccan and South India (Sravana Belgola) along with Bhadrabahu and Chandragupta Maurya. They returned to the Gangetic valley after 12 years. The leader of the group, which stayed back at Magadha, was Sthulabahu. The changes that took place in the code of conduct of the followers of Sthulabahu led to the division of the Jainas into Digambaras (sky-clad or naked) and Svetambaras (white-clad).

- **First Council** was held at *Pataliputra* by Sthulabahu in the beginning of the third century BC and resulted in the compilation of 12 Angas to replace the lost 14 Purvas.
- **Second Council** was held at *Valabhi* in the 5th century AD under the leadership of Devaradhi Kshamasramana and resulted in final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.

Ratnatraya (Three Gems of Jainism)

Right faith (Samyak Vishwas) referring to Lord Mahavira right knowledge (Samyak Gyan) knowledge of doctrines of Jainism Right conduct (Samyak Karma) fulfilment of 5 rows of Jainism.

Five Categories of Siddhas

- *Tirthankara*, who has attained salvation.
- *Arhat*, who is about to attain Nirvana.
- *Acharya*, the head of the ascetic group.
- *Upadhyaya*, teacher or saint, and
- *Sadhu*, an ordinary ascetic

Spread of Jainism : In order to propagate the teachings of Jainism, Mahavira organized an order of his followers which admitted both men and women. Since Jainism did not very

clearly mark itself out from the brahmanical religion, it failed to attract the masses. Despite this, Jainism gradually spread into south and west India. According to a late tradition, the spread of Jainism in Karnataka is attributed to Chandragupta Maurya (322– 298 B.C.). The emperor became a Jain, gave up his throne and spent the last years of his life in Karnataka as a Jain monk. But this tradition is not conditioned by any other sources.

Jainism spread to Kalinga in Orissa in the fourth century B.C. It enjoyed the patronage of the Kalinga king Kharavela who had defeated the princes of Andhra and Magadha. In the second and first centuries B.C. it also seems to have reached the southern districts of Tamil Nadu. In later centuries, Jainism penetrated Malwa, Gujarat and Rajasthan, and even now these areas have good number of Jainas, mainly engaged in trade and commerce. In the south, royal dynasties like the Gangas, Kadambas, Chalukyas and Rashtrakutas supported Jainism. In Gujarat, patronage came from wealthy, merchants. The concrete expression of Jainism's religious favour is seen all over the country in the works of art and architecture. The 57-foot high statue of *Gomateshvara at Sravana Belgola in Mysore*, erected in 983 or 984 A.D. is a marvel of its kind. The temples at Mount Abu and those at Palithana in Gujarat and Moodabidri and Karkala in the south make a rich contribution to the Indian heritage.

Decline : Several factors attributed to the declining popularity of Jainism. In India, it had to compete with both Hinduism and Buddhism. Absence of popular religious preachers after the death of Mahavira, its division into two important sects, absence of protection by later rulers and the revival of Hinduism all contributed to the decline of this religion. Besides, it also was unable to spread to any considerable extent beyond the limits of India and never reached the popularity of Buddhism. The followers of Jainism also abstracted from an active policy of conversion. It, thus, practically escaped unnoticed during the Brahmanical revival. Yet, it continues to retain its hold on a small body of follower's upto the present day.

Impact of Jainism : Jainism made the first serious attempt to reduce the evils of the Varna order and the ritualistic Vedic religion. The early Jain Sanskrit language mainly patronized by the Brahmanas. They adopted Prakrit language of the common people to preach their doctrines. Jainism contributed much to lexicography, poetry, mathematics, astronomy, astrology and political thought. The Jainas composed the earliest important works in *Apabhramsa* (common language of the masses) and its first grammar. The Jain literature contains epics, Puranas, novels and drama. A large portion of the Jain writing is still in the form of manuscripts, which have not been published and which are found in the Jain shrines of Gujarat and Rajasthan. Last but not the least; they contributed to the growth of regional languages such as Tamil, Telugu, Gujarati, Hindi, Marathi, Rajasthani and Kannada, in which they wrote extensively.

Jain architecture is remarkable. The *Hathi gumpas* of Kharvela and Khandagiri and Udaigiri caves of Orissa contain early Jain reliefs. In the Gupta period, big states of Bahubali (called Gomateshwara) at Sravana Belgola and Karkala in Karnataka were erected. Also Jain temples of Ranakpur (near Jodhpur) and *Dilwara* temples in Mount Abu are examples of excellent architecture.

BUDDHISM

Buddhism is named after Gautam Buddha. His real name was Siddhartha. He was born at Lumbini. His father was the chief of the Shakya clan. Siddhartha had a comfortable life as a prince, yet, he was not happy.

Siddhartha left home to seek knowledge and the true meaning of life. For six years, he wandered from place to place. He learnt to meditate. He sat beneath a pipal tree in Gaya and began to meditate. After many days of intense meditation, he discovered enlightenment. He understood why the world is full of suffering and what should be done to overcome it. He thus, became the 'Buddha', the enlightened or the Awakened or the Wise one. The pipal tree, under which he attained enlightenment, came to be known as the tree of wisdom or 'Bodhi Vriksha'.

From Gaya, the Buddha went to Sarnath. He gave his first sermon at the Deer Park in Sarnath. It is known as the *Dharmachakra Pravartana* (setting in motion the wheel of dharma). The Buddha spend the rest of his life travelling from one place to another, meeting people and preaching his message of love and peace. He taught in a language which the common people could understand.

The Concept of Nirvana

The concept of 'Nirvana' was originally explained by Lord Buddha. The word 'Nirvana' literally means to 'blow out' and refers to extinguishing of fires of greed, hatred and delusion.

The term 'Nirvana' has been explained as extinction of three fires- namely, passion or 'raga', aversion or 'dwesha' and ignorance 'moha'. According to Buddhist philosophy, when these fires are extinguished, one gets freedom from the cycle of birth and death and thus 'Nirvana' is attained by the individual.

Jatakas: The stories of different births of Buddha are called Jatakas. It is a collection of over 500 poems briefly outlining folk tales and stories, attributed to Buddhaghosa.

Differences in Buddhism

Like Jainism, Buddhism also faced ideological differences. It was divided into three sects:

Hinayana

- (i) The followers of Hinyana believed in the original teachings of Buddha.
- (ii) They sought individual salvation through self-disciplined meditation.
- (iii) They did not believe in idol-worship (iv) Hinayana, like Jainism, is a religion without God, **Karma** taking the place of God.
- (v) Nirvana is regarded as the annihilation of all.
- (vi) The oldest school of Hinayana Buddhism is the Sthaviravada (Theravada in Pali) or the 'doctrine of the Elders'.
- (vii) Gradually, Sarvastivada or Vaibhasika branch of another school called Sautantrika, which was more critical in outlook.

Mahayana

- (i) The followers of Mahayana believed in the heavenliness of Budha and sought the salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisattavas.
- (ii) Believes in idol-worship.
- (iii) Believes that Nirvana is not a negative cessation of misery but a positive state of bliss.
- (iv) Mahanaya had two chief philosophical schools: the Madhyamika and the Yogachara.

Vajrayana

- (i) The followers of vajrayana believed that salvation could be best attained by achieving the magical power, which they called Vajra.
- (ii) The chief divinities of this new sect were the Taras.
- (iii) It became popular in Eastern India, particularly Bengal and Bihar. It was a form of Buddhism, which appeared in eastern India in the 8th century and was finally established in Tibet in 11th century, as a result of mission sent from the great Vajranaya monastery of Vikramshila.

Buddhist Councils

According to Pali literature four councils were held to draw up the canonical texts and the creed in their pure form.

The First Council was held at *Rajgir* immediately after the Parinirvana of the Buddha. It was presided over by Molakassapa. At this council, Vinaya Pitaka and Sutra Pitaka were compiled.

The Second Council was held at *Vaishali* in 383 B.C. In it Vinaya Pitaka was revised and the daily activities of the monks were settled.

The Third Council was held in *Patliputra* in 250 B.C. during the reign of Ashoka. Moggliputta Tissa presided over it. At this council Abhidhamma Pitaka were collected.

The Fourth Council was held under *Kanishka*. The place of assembly was Kashmir. The president of this council was Vasumitra where Ashvaghosha acted as vice president of this council. The proceedings of this council were confirmed to the composition of commentaries.

Spread of Buddhism

The spread of Buddhism was due to the missionarie's activities of Emperor Ashoka. He sent missionaries to many place in central Asia to popularize Buddhism. During the reign of king Kanishka also many Indian missionaries went to Central Asia. They introduced Mahayan's Buddhism in this region. According to Mahayana, Buddha was considered a form of God on earth and his images were worshipped. The worship of Bodhi Satvas, Buddhist Saints, also became popular from Central Asia and China. Buddhism spread to Korea and Japan. The *Silk Route* also helped greatly in the spread of Buddhism to Central Asia and China. Pligrims and missionaries from India travelled to China and Central Asia through this route.

The famous Buddhist monk, Kumaraja went to China and stayed there for some time to spread Buddhism. Buddhist pilgrims from China also come to India by this Silk Route. Other countries such as Java, Sumatra, Vietnam, Thailand and Cambodia were also influenced by Buddhism. Today, Buddhism is practised in Central and South-east Asia.

Decline of Buddhism

Buddhism became extinct in India by the end of 12 century. Gradually, the Buddhist monks were cut off from the mainstream of life; they gave up Pali, the language of the people, and took to Sanskrit, the language of intellectuals. The Hinduism was internally reformed and stressing upon love and devotion, promised non-violence against cattle and raise in women's position in the society. From the first century A.D. they practised idol worship on a large scale and received numerous offerings from devotees. Some of the monasteries such as Nalanda collected revenue from as many as 200 villages. By the seventh century A.D., the Buddhist monasteries had come to be dominated by ease-loving people and became centres of corrupt practices which Gautama Buddha had strictly prohibited. The new form of Buddhism was known as Vajrayana. Entry of women into Buddhist-Sanghas and the

attacks of Huna king in the 6th century A.D. and the Turkish invaders in the 12th century A.D. brought rapid extinction of Buddhism.

Despite its extinction as an organized religion, Buddhism left its mark on the history of India. The objective of the Buddhist teachings was to secure the salvation of the individual or Nirvana. Buddhism made an important impact on society by keeping its doors open to women and sudras. Their conversions to Buddhism freed them from such mark of inferiority.

Buddhism strengthens the cattle of the country. The earliest Buddhist text *Sutra pitaka* declares the cattle to be giver of *food, beauty and happiness (annada, vannada and sukhada)*, and thus defended for their protection. Buddhism created and developed a new awareness in the field of intellect and culture. Buddhism left its mark on the art of ancient India. *The first human statues worshipped in India were probably those of the Buddha*. The faithful devotees described the various events in the life of the Buddha in stone.

For the residence of the monks, rooms were hewn carved out of the rocks, and thus, began the cave architecture in the Barabar hills in Gaya and in western India around Nasik. Under the impetus of Roman trade, Buddhist art flourished in the Krishna delta, and under that of Central Asian contacts, it thrived in Mathura and Gandhara.

HINDU REVIVALIST MOVEMENT

In face of attacks from Jainism and Buddhism, the Hindu religion sought to revive its lost glory.

(a) Bhagavatism or Vaishnavism

This sect was propagated by *Vasudeva*. The faith in the Puranas, the Ramayana, the Mahabharata, the Bhagwat Gita, theory of incarnations of God, attainment of Salvation or Nirvana by bhakti, idol-worship, chanting of prayers, etc. were popularized by him.

Teachings: In Bhagavatism, *Vishnu*, is considered as the supreme God. He is the creator of the universe, reigns in Vaikunthas and rests in the primeval ocean on the thousand-headed snake, 'Sesanaaga.' The colour of his skin is dark blue and he has four arms. His wife is Lakshmi who is the Goddess of wealth and prosperity. He rides the great eagle, Garuda.

Brahma who creates the world is born in the lotus-flower which grows from the navel of Vishnu in his sleep. The same way, all other Gods have been created and are dependent on Vishnu. Therefore, Vishnu is the Param-Brahma, the Paramatma, Narayana or Hari and therefore, worship and bhakti of Vishnu is the most essential religious duty of an individual.

Literature: *Bhagwad Gita* was the most popular religious book of Bhagavatism which is generally believed to be a work of the first or second century B.C.

The Gita delivers the most harmonious blend of three paths of salvation or Nirvana, viz. through *Gyana* (knowledge), *Karma* (action) and *Bhakti* (devotion) and declares, "All roads to Moksha (salvation) lead but unto me." Gyana is

the realization by an individual that every soul is a part of the Paramatma (Universal Soul), every person has a soul, soul never dies, nobody can touch or kill a soul, soul has neither friends, enemies nor relations and soul neither feels pleasure nor pain. If an individual does not realize this, then he or she is ignorant and cannot attain salvation. According to the Gita, *Agyana* (ignorance) is more a spiritual blindness than an intellectual weakness which can be removed by Karma-yoga. But the Gyana marg which directs an individual to the meditation of the absolute is a difficult process. Therefore, the Gita suggests Karma-marg as an easier alternative. An individual should be Karma-Yoging to attain Nirvana.

Spread of Bhagvatism: The religious ideas and practices which grew up during this time had matured by the age of the Guptas and found their permanent place in Hinduism. Of course, religious scholars and preachers like *Kumaril Bhatt* who preached *Dualism* and *Shankaracharya* who preached *Monism* tried to revive the Karma (action) and Gyana (knowledge) marg respectively to attain Nirvana but their efforts brought little results.

(b) Saivism

The other popular sect of Hinduism is *Saivism*. The origin of *Siva* can be traced to the concept of Rudra in the Rigveda. Probably, he found his place among Aryan Gods because of the influence of the Dravidians, who had a similar God among them called *Pasupati*. In the Yajurveda, he is referred to as *Sambhu* or *Shankar*. In the Athravaveda, he is regarded as the Supreme God while in the Svetasvatara

Upanishad, his spouse Uma or Parvati, is provided a similar position. Thus, Siva rose into prominence with the passage of time. However, the rise of Saivism, with a philosophy and organization of its own, cannot be traced back earlier than about the beginning of the Christian era. The sect, probably, was started by a person called *Lakulin* or *Nakulin* near about the beginning of the 2nd century A.D. Afterwards, Saivism was divided into four important schools, viz. Pasupata, Saiva, Kapalika and Kalamukha. However, Shiva is worshipped most in the form of the *Linga* (*Phallus*) because of the influence of another sect of Saivism called Lingyat. Saivism is now a part of Hinduism and the worship of Siva is most popular among the Hindus.

Points to Remember

- Jainism and Buddhism emerged as the most prominent religious reforms movements.
 - Jainism is based on five doctrines.
 - (i) Ahimsa (ii) Do not speak a lie (iii) Do not steal (iv) Do not acquire property and (v) Observe continence.
 - Jain philosophy includes-
 - ‘Syadvada’: All our judgement is necessarily relative, conditional and limited.
 - ‘Anekantavada’: Matter (Pudgala) and spirit (Jiva) are regarded as separate and independent realities.
 - Buddhism is named after Gautam Buddha. Whose real name was Siddhartha.
- Buddhism has three sects Hinayana Mahayana and Vajrayana.
 - Emperor Ashok played an important role in spread of Buddhism. He sent missionaries to many places in central Asia.
 - Hindu revivalist movement played an important role in reducing popularity of Jainism and Buddhism.
 - Bhagvatism or vaishnavism sect was propagated by Vasuadeva. “Vishnu” is considered surname God is Bhagvatism and Bhagwat Gita is considered most popular book.
 - Saivism considers siva as its supreme God. This sect was started by Lakalir or Nakulir in 2nd century AD.
 - Jainism and Buddhism emerged an the most point religious reform movements.
 - Jainism is based on five doctrines:
 - (i) Ahimsa (ii) Do not speak a lie (iii) Do not steal (iv) Do not acquire property and (v) Observe continence.
 - Jain philosophy includes –
 - ‘Syadvada’ : All our judgement is necessarily relative, conditional and limited.
 - ‘Anekantavada’: Matter (Pudgala) and spirit (Jiva) are regarded as separate and independent realities.
 - Buddhism is named after Gautam Buddha whose real name was Siddhartha.
 - Buddhism has there sects – Hinayan Mahayan and Vajrayana.
 - Emperor Ashok played an important role in spread of Buddhism. He sent missionaries to many places in central Asia.

Exercise - 1

1. The Bodhisatva Doctrine is associated with
 - (a) Mahayana Buddhism
 - (b) Hinayana Buddhism
 - (c) Vajrayana Buddhism
 - (d) Theravada Buddhism View
2. Ashoka carved out rock-cut caves at Barabar and Nagarjun hills in Bihar for one of the following:
 - (a) Hinayana
 - (b) Digambara
 - (c) Mahayana
 - (d) Ajivika
3. Who was the founder of Ajeevika sect?
 - (a) Makkali Gosala
 - (b) Mahavira
 - (c) Vasudeva Krishna
 - (d) Sudhdodana
4. Who among the following was King of Magadha, at the time of Mahaparinirvana of Gautam Buddha?
 - (a) Bimbisara
 - (b) Udayi
 - (c) Ajatshatru
 - (d) Chandragupta Maurya
5. The main difference between Jainas and Hindus in treating the ascetics is:
 - (a) To Hindus ascetic were escapists be listed to
 - (b) Jains respect them while Hindus worship them
 - (c) Hindus treat ascetics as Godmen whereas Jains don't
 - (d) An acsetic is outside the society to Hindus, while Jaina ascetic kept a relationship with the society.
6. The merchants were attracted to a sect like Buddhism because:
 - (a) Brahamanical rituals were becoming expensive for them.
 - (b) They found it suitable for their vocation.
 - (c) They felt that the new materialistic conditions were corrupting society.
 - (d) They were not granted a social status that was in resonance with economic prosperity.
7. Which of the features given below was not an aspect of Buddhism?
 - (a) Divine intervention was necessary in the process of obtaining salvation.
 - (b) It challenged the superiority of the Brahmanas.
 - (c) It denied the predominance assigned to vedic texts
 - (d) It was practical and simple
8. Which one of the following characteristics of Buddhism distinguishes it from Jainism?
 - (a) Belief in efficacy of action
 - (b) Non acceptance of the authority of the Vedas
 - (c) Attitude of non-injury towards all beings
 - (d) Rejection of both extreme pleasure and self-mortification
9. What were the 'Four Great Signs' that according to Buddhist tradition led Gautama to renounce the world?
 - (a) Love, compassion, non-injury, purity
 - (b) Old age, diseased person, dead body, an ascetic
 - (c) That the world is full of suffering, desire and carve for existence, renunciation of desire, cycle of births and re-birth
 - (d) None of the above.
10. The points of similarity between Buddhism and Hinduism is
 - (a) The missionary spirit
 - (b) The pantheon of Gods in Hinduism
 - (c) Acceptance of the laws of Karma and the Hindu theories of re-birth
 - (d) None of the above.
11. The mercantile community was most attracted to Jainism because:
 - (a) It could follow the religion without any hindrance to its economic activities
 - (b) The Vedic rituals and sacrifices were hindrances to its vocation
 - (c) The peace and non-violence of Jainism was conducive to the development of trade and commerce
 - (d) The doctrine of Kama of Jainism greatly impressed the merchants and traders
12. On the basis of which of the following traditional records have the dates of Lord Buddha's birth and death been fixed?
 - (a) Chinese tradition—Cantonese records
 - (b) Simhalese tradion—Mahavamsa and Dipavamsa
 - (c) Indian Buddhist texts—Ashokavadan and Divyvadan
 - (d) Tibetan tradition of historian Taranath
13. What was the nature of difference between Bhadrabahu and his followers, which led to the split of Jainism into two sects, namely Digambaras and Svetambaras?
 - (a) Interpretation of certain philosophical canons
 - (b) Compilation of the teachings of Mahavira
 - (c) Whether or not the monks should wear clothes
 - (d) Idol worship
14. From the point of view of places of Buddhist pilgrimage/interest, which of the following is the latest archaeological discovery?
 - (a) Discovery of the Buddha's tooth relic at Bharhut in M.P.
 - (b) Discovery of a Pillar indicating the actual birth place of the Buddha, at Lumbini
 - (c) Discovery and identification of Kapilavastu with Piprahawa, a village in Basti district of Uttar Pradesh
 - (d) Sanghol—a Kushana Buddhist site
15. The Doctrine of Karma in Buddhism means:
 - (a) predestination
 - (b) the justification for social and economic inequalities in life
 - (c) the deeds of a person determine the state of his life
 - (d) doing one's duty without bothering about the result
16. The Buddha did not talk of spiritual aspects such as God, soul, life after death, etc. because:
 - (a) He was only concerned with the ethical aspects of life
 - (b) He wanted to resolve the practical problems of life
 - (c) He considered such speculations unnecessary
 - (d) He did not intend to establish a formal religion

17. What was the occasion of the Second Buddhist Council?
 (a) To prepare a complete and authentic collection of the teachings of Lord Buddha
 (b) To settle the controversy arising from the adoption of certain practices by the Vajjian monks of Vaishali
 (c) to establish the purity of the canon which had been imperiled by the rise of different sects
 (d) To put an end to the dissensions in the Church (Sangha)
18. Which of the following works, included in Vaipulyasutras (nine canonical books of Mahayanists), is a typical Mahayana work containing all the characteristic features of that school?
 (a) Saddharmapundarika (b) Lalitavistara
 (c) Lankavatara (d) Suvarnaprabhasa
19. The admission of which of the following to the Sangha, at the instance of Ananda (the personal attendant of the Master), marked the beginning of an order of nuns in India?
 (a) Yashodhara, the wife of the Buddha
 (b) Gautami, the widowed stepmother of the Buddha
 (c) Sujata, the merchant's daughter who offered a bowl of milk to the Buddha after he had decided to give up austerities
 (d) Ghositaramma monastery at Piprahawa
20. Which of the following writers was the founder of Buddhist logic and has been called the Father of Medieval Nyaya?
 (a) Dharmakirti (b) Dignaga
 (c) Budhhapalita (d) Bhavaviveka
21. Nagarjuna is known as the Einstein of India because:
 (a) Like Einstein he had a rare insight into the nature of the universe
 (b) He was one of the greatest physicists of all time
 (c) He propounded the theory of shunyavada similar to Einstein's theory of relativity
 (d) He was a great dialectician
22. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for the popularity of Buddhism in China?
 (a) There were no rival religions at the time of introduction of Buddhism in China
 (b) The writing of such people as Mou-tseu created confidence in the minds of the educated Chinese
 (c) The life of purity followed by the immigrant Indian Buddhists and their Chinese Disciples attracted the Chinese to Buddhism
 (d) The patronage of the reigning dynasties in China (e.g. Wei dynasty) helped the cause of Buddhism
23. The so-called universities of Nalanda, Vikramshila, etc. were actually:
 (a) Buddhist monasteries
 (b) Apex bodies of Buddhist monasteries
 (c) Learning centres of Buddhist monks
 (d) Secular centres of education and learning
24. Zen Buddhism, introduced in the twelfth century A.D., found its adherents mainly among the warriors and influenced Japanese culture considerably. The key to enlightenment, according to Zen Buddhism, is:
 (a) Recollection (b) Virtuous life
 (c) Meditation (d) Piety
25. What is the greatest debt owed by the Buddhist world to Sri Lanka?
 (a) The preservation of Buddha's relics and sacred Bodhi tree
 (b) The reservation of the Pali canon in its entirety
 (c) The development of Buddhism through Sinhalese commentaries of Buddhist texts
 (d) The propagation of Buddhism in South-East Asian countries
26. The Buddhist Law of Doctrine of Karma meant:
 (a) A man reaps what he sows
 (b) Every individual is the maker of his own destiny
 (c) Prayers to a God or Gods alone cannot change the destiny of man
 (d) All of the above
27. Which of the following Buddhist Philosopher is said to have visited Nepal in the fourth century A.D. in order to propagate his own doctrine?
 (a) Acharya Atisha (b) Acharya Kamalashila
 (c) Acharya Shatarakshita (d) Acharya Vasubandhu
28. Which of the following statements correctly describe the difference between a Chaitya and a Stupa?
 (a) Chaitya is a religious term, while Stupa is an architectural term for a mound containing a relic of the Buddha and later on of leading Buddhist Saints
 (b) Chaitya is a place of prayers/worship while Stupa is a funeral monument
 (c) Chaitya were constructed by the monasteries while Stupas were constructed by the kings and the rich merchants
 (d) Chaityas represent Mahayanism and Stupas Hinayanism
29. What was the purpose of the Chaityas during the early phase of Buddhism?
 (a) They served the purpose of temples
 (b) They were meditation halls
 (c) They were used for religious assemblies and prayers
 (d) They were used for holding social functions
30. Which of the following was not one of the points of religious difference between Buddhism and Jainism?
 (a) Compared to Jainism, Buddhism was moderate in its stress on the doctrine of ahimsa
 (b) Whereas Jainism believed in rigorous asceticism, Buddhism considered rigid penance to be useless
 (c) Unlike Buddhism, Jainism did not altogether dispense with the worship of the old deities or the services of the Brahmins
 (d) While Buddhism acknowledges a permanent entity or an immortal soul, Jainism does not
31. Some hold the view that Buddhism was merely a phase of Hinduism. Which of the following was not one of the concepts and practices borrowed by Buddhism from Hinduism/Brahmanism?
 (a) The idea of monastic order
 (b) The emphasis on purity of body and right conduct
 (c) The concept of Nirvana
 (d) Belief in Samsara and Karma

32. Which of the following places can be regarded as the largest monastic establishment in Western India (containing 130 caves)?
 (a) Karle (b) Ajanta
 (c) Junnair (d) Kanheri
33. Which of the following was not a similarity between Buddhism and Jainism?
 (a) Both were agnostic and rejected the Vedic thoughts
 (b) Both had equal faith in Ahinsa
 (c) Both accepted followers without any casts distinction
 (d) Both believed in the Law of Doctrine of Karma
34. The most important event on the death centenary (parinivvana) of the Buddha was the:
 (a) Despatch of the Buddhist mission to Sri Lanka
 (b) Calling of the second Buddhist Council
 (c) Compilation of the teachings of the Buddha
 (d) Division of Buddhism into Mahayana and Hinayana sects
35. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for the rapid spread of Jainism amongst the trading community?
 (a) The trading community could observe the vow of non-injury without any difficulty
 (b) The strict limitation of private property was interpreted to mean landed property and not the wealth earned from trade and commerce
 (c) The Jain temples received generous donations from rich merchants
 (d) The encouragement of frugality in Jainism coincided with a similar sentiment in commercial activity
36. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for the gradual decline of Jainism?
 (a) The assimilative power of Hinduism
 (b) The destruction of their temples by the foreign invaders and others
 (c) The extremism of its ethical code and religious discipline
 (d) The influence and popularity of Shaiva and Vaishnava saints in the South
37. Where did the Mahasamghika school arise ?
 (a) Bodhagaya (b) Rajagriha
 (c) Sravasti (d) Vaishali
38. The earliest epigraphic evidence mentioning the birth place of Sakyamuni Buddha is obtained from
 (a) Sarnath (b) Sravasti
 (c) Kausambi (d) Rummindei
39. Which one among the following Tirthankaras was according to the Svetambar tradition, a lady?
 (a) Sumatinatha (b) Shantinatha
 (c) Mallinatha (d) Arishtanemi
40. The Jain Tirthankara Mahavira has been mentioned in the early Buddhist literature as
 (a) Nigantha Nataputta (b) Vardhamana
 (c) Vesaliya (d) Videhaputta
41. Who amongst the following is known as the Light of Asia?
 (a) Jesus Christ
 (b) Lord Buddha
 (c) Prophet Mohammad
 (d) Zarathustra
42. Which one of the following is not included in the eight-fold path of Buddhism?
 (a) Right speech (b) Right contemplation
 (c) Right desire (d) Right conduct
43. Which one of the following is not a part of early Jain literature?
 (a) Therigatha (b) Acarangasutra
 (c) Sutakritanga (d) Brihatkalpasutra
44. The concept of Anuvrata was advocated by
 (a) Mahayana Buddhism
 (b) Himayana Buddhism
 (c) Jainism
 (d) The Lokayata School
45. Who of the following was a contemporary of Gautama Buddha?
 (a) Bhadrabahu (b) Kalashok
 (c) Parsvanath (d) Vardhaman Mahavir
46. Svetambara Agama was finally edited at the Jain council of
 (a) Vaishali (b) Vallabhi
 (c) Pawa (d) Vidarbha
47. Anekantavada is a core theory and philosophy of which one of the following?
 (a) Buddhism (b) Jainism
 (c) Sikhism (d) Vaishnavism
48. Milinda Panho is in the form of a dialogue between the king Menander and Buddhist Monk
 (a) Nagasena (b) Nagarjuna
 (c) Nagabhata (d) Kumarilbhatta
49. Who is believed by the Jainas to be the first Tirthankar?
 (a) Rishabhadeva (b) Mahavira
 (c) Neminath (d) Parshvanath
50. Who was the founder of Mahayan sect of Buddhism?
 (a) Buddhadeva (b) Ghoshak
 (c) Dharmtrat (d) Asanga
51. Who founded the Lingayat Movement?
 (a) Basava (b) Lakulisha
 (c) Matsyendranath (d) Kulshekhar
52. Syadvad is a doctrine of
 (a) Buddhism (b) Jainism
 (c) Shaivism (d) Vaishnavism
53. Who became the chief of Jain Sangh after the death of Mahavira?
 (a) Indrabhuti (b) Jambu
 (c) Sthulbhadra (d) Sudharma
54. Mother of Gautam Buddha belonged to which dynasty?
 (a) Shakya dynasty (b) Maya dynasty
 (c) Lichchavi dynasty (d) Koliyan dynasty
55. Buddha is depicted on the coins of
 (a) Wima Kadphises (b) Kanishka
 (c) Nahapana (d) Budhgupta
56. Some Buddhist rock-cut caves are called Chaityas, while the others are called Viharas. What is the difference between the two?
 (a) Vihara is a place of worship, while Chaitya is the dwelling place of the monks
 (b) Chaitya is a place of worship, while Vihara is the dwelling place of the monks

- (c) Chaitya is the stupa at the far end of the cave, while Vihara is the hall axial to it
 (d) There is no material difference between the two
57. Which one of the following describes best the concept of Nirvana in Buddhism?
 (a) The extinction of the flame of desire
 (b) The complete annihilation of self
 (c) A state of bliss and rest
 (d) A mental stage beyond all comprehension.
58. The Buddha delivered his first sermon, known as 'Turning of the wheel of law' at
 (a) Sanchi (b) Sarnath
 (c) Sravasti (d) Bodh Gaya
59. In Buddhism, what does Patimokkha stand for?
 (a) A description of Mahayana Buddhism
 (b) A description of Hinayana Buddhism
 (c) The rules of the Sangha
 (d) The questions of king Menander
60. The Jainas believe that Jainism is the outcome of the teachings of 24 tirthankaras. In the light of this statement, which one among the following is correct of Vardhamana Mahavira?
 (a) He was the first tirthankara and the founder of Jainism
 (b) He was the 23rd tirthankara, the first 22 tirthankaras being considered legendary
 (c) He was the last and 24th tirthankara, who was not considered as the founder of the new faith but as a reformer of the existing religious sect
 (d) He was not one of the 24 tirthankaras
61. The Fourth Buddhist Council was held in Kashmir under the leadership of
 (a) Bindusara (b) Ashoka
 (c) Kunal (d) Kanishka
62. Gautam Buddha delivered his first sermon at which one of the following places?
 (a) Kushinagar (b) Sarnath
 (c) Bodh Gaya (d) Lumbini
63. Where did Buddha attain Parinirvana ?
 (a) Bodh Gaya (b) Kushinagara
 (c) Rajgriha (d) Vaisali
64. Where did Gautam Buddha give his first sermon?
 (a) Gaya (b) Rajgriha
 (c) Sarnath (d) Sanchi
65. Who of the following is a contemporary of Gautama Buddha?
 (a) Ashvaghosa (b) Nagarjuna
 (c) Parsvanath (d) Vardhamana Mahavira
66. Who among the following was a contemporary of Gautam Buddha?
 (a) Nagarjuna (b) Kanishka
 (c) Kautila (d) Mahavir

12. Which of the following are characteristic ascribed to Buddhism? Choose the correct answer given below:
- Theory of Prakrit and Purusha
 - Rejection of the authority of the Vedas
 - Emphasis on the role of the individual
 - Beliefs in the categories of Jiva and Ajiva
- (a) 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 1 and 3
13. Which of the following are true of Jainism?
- It has affinity with the Sankhya system of philosophy.
 - It completely rejected the concept of the soul.
 - It has affinity with the Vedanta system of philosophy.
 - According to it the world consists of two eternal categories, viz., conscious Jiva and unconscious (Ajiva).
- Choose the correct answer from the codes given below.
- (a) 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 3
(c) 3 and 4 (d) 2 and 4
14. Which of the following statements is/are applicable to Jain doctrine?
- The surest way of annihilating Karma is to practice penance.
 - Every object, even the smallest particle has a soul.
 - Karma is the bane of the soul and must be ended.
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below.
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
15. Which of the following Kingdoms were associated with the life of the Buddha?
- Avanti
 - Gandhara
 - Kosala
 - Magadha
- Select the correct answer using the code given below.
- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2 and 4.
(c) 3 and 4 only (d) 1, 3 and 4
16. With reference to Buddhist history, tradition and culture in India, consider the following pairs :
- | <i>Famous shrine</i> | <i>Location</i> |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Tabo monastery and temple complex | : Spiti Valley |
| 2. Lhotsava Lhakhang temple, Nako | : Zaskar Valley |
| 3. Alchi temple complex | : Ladakh |
- Which of the pairs given above is/are correctly matched?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
17. Consider the following Bhakti Saints:
- Dadu Dayal
 - Guru Nanak
 - Tyagaraja
- Who among the above was/were preaching when the Lodi dynasty fell and Babur took over?
- (a) 1 and 3 (b) 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 2
18. Consider the following statements regarding Greek's influence of Indian Culture.
- The Indo-Greek king, mahendra was converted to Buddhism by Buddhist monk and philosopher, nagasena.
 - Indian astrology was influenced by Greek ideas with the term Horastra used for astrology in Sanskrit.
 - Greeks introduced into Indian astronomy the methods of calculating eclipses, the notion of methods of calculating eclipses, the notion of parallax and methods of calculating it.
 - Greeks introduced the use of curtain in Indian theatre.
- Which of the above is/are correct ?
- (a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) All of above
19. Consider the following statements
- The Buddhists in Deccan excavated rock-cut Chaityas and the Vaishnavas, Shaivas and Jainas imitated these in later centuries.
 - The Vaishnavas, Shaivas and Jainas excavated temples at sites far distant from rock-cut Chaityas.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
20. Consider the following statements
- The Jains believed that Mahavira had twenty-three predecessors.
 - Parshvanatha was twenty-third Tirthankara.
 - Rishava was immediate successor of Mahavira.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) Only 2 (d) Only 3
- Directions (Q. 21): The following questions consist of two statements, Statement I and Statement II. You are to examine these two statements carefully and select the answers to these questions using the codes given below Codes
- (a) Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
(b) Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
(c) Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
(d) Statement I is false, but Statement II is true
21. **Statement I:** Mahavira initially joined a group of ascetics called Nirgranthas.
Statement II: The sect was founded 200 years earlier by Parsva.
22. Which of the following was/were not related to Buddha's life?
- Kanthaka
 - Alara Kalama
 - Channa
 - Goshala Maskariputra
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below
- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 4
(c) 1 and 2 (d) 3 and 4
23. The national motto of India, 'Satyameva Jayate' inscribed below the Emblem of India is taken from
- Katha Upanishad
 - Chandogya Upanishad
 - Aitareya Upanishad
 - Mundaka Upanishad

Matching Based MCQ

24. **List I**
 A. Second Sangam
 B. Third Sangam
 C. First Buddhist council
 D. Third Buddhist council
 (a) A - 2; B - 3; C - 1; D - 4
 (b) A - 2; B - 4; C - 3; D - 1
 (c) A - 4; B - 2; C - 3; D - 1
 (d) A - 4; B - 2; C - 1; D - 3
- List II**
 1. Abhidhamma Pitak
 2. Tolkappiyan
 3. Tripitika
 4. Silakhadikaram
25. **List-I (Characters)**
 A. Vishu
 B. Gautama Buddha
 C. Jina
 D. Bodhisattva Maiteya
- List-II (Related objects)**
 1. Katyotsarga Posture
 2. Flask and rosary
 3. Dharmachakra Pravartana Mudra
 4. Garudadhvaja
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
26. **List-I (Vedangas)**
 A. Nirukta
 B. Shiksha
 C. Kalpa
 D. Chhadas
- List-II (Their subject)**
 1. Metres
 2. Etymology
 3. Astrology
 4. Phonetic
 5. Ritual
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 5 | 1 | 3 |
| (b) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (c) | 3 | 5 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
27. **List-I**
 A. Rahul
 B. Alara Kalam
 C. Suddhodhana
 D. Devdatta
 E. Siddhartha
- List-II**
 1. Buddhas's father
 2. Buddha's cousin
 3. Buddha's son
 4. The sage who taught meditation to Buddha
 5. Buddha's original name
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D | E |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| (c) | 4 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 5 | 4 | 3 |
28. **List-I**
 A. Birth
 B. First Sermon
 C. Nirvana
 D. Parinirvana
- List-II**
 1. Stupa
 2. Lotus and bull
 3. Dharmachakra
 4. Bodhi tree
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |

29. **List-I**
 A. Ajit Kesh Kamblin
 B. Sanjay Vethalipulta
 C. Pakudh Kachayan
 D. Puran Kashyap
- List-II**
 1. Fatalism
 2. Atomist
 3. Materialism
 4. Materialism-Syncicism
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (b) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
30. **List-I (Tirthankara)**
 A. Rishabhanatha
 B. Sambhavanatha
 C. Padmanabha
 D. Parashvanath
- List-II (Birth place)**
 1. Kashi
 2. Kausambi
 3. Saravasti
 4. Ayodhya
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
31. **List-I (Jain Tirthankara)**
 A. Ajitnath
 B. Vimalnath
 C. Shantinath
 D. Parshavanath
- List-II (Birth place)**
 1. Kashi
 2. Hastinapur
 3. Kampilya
 4. Ayodhya
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
32. **List-I (Jain Tirthankars)**
 A. Santi Natha
 B. Malli Natha
 C. Parswa Natha
 D. Mahavira
- List-II (Cognizance)**
 1. Antelope
 2. Lion
 3. Serpent
 4. Water jar
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (b) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
33. Match the five major Mauryan provinces with their capitals:
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| A. Uttarapatha (Northern Province) | I. Ujjain |
| B. Avantiratha (Western Province) | II. Suvarnagiri |
| C. Dakshinapatha (Southern Province) | III. Tosali |
| D. Prachya (Eastern Province) | IV. Pataliputra |
| E. Central Province | V. Taxila |
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D | E |
|-----|-----|-----|----|-----|----|
| (a) | V | I | II | III | IV |
| (b) | I | II | I | III | V |
| (c) | II | III | I | IV | V |
| (d) | III | II | I | IV | V |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (d) 2.(d) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (d)
6. (d) 7.(a) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (c)
11. (c) 12. (a)
13. (c) There was a further split around the sixth century A.D. on the point of idol worship.
14. (d) 15. (c) 16. (d) 17. (b) 18. (a)
19. (b)
20. (b) All the four authors were logicians. The latter two at responses (c) and (d) founded two schools of logical thinking, namely, Prasangika and Svatantra school, respectively.
21. (c) Nagarjuna was the founder of Madhyamika school which teaches that the whole world is a mere illusion (Shunvavada).
22. (a) Indigenous religions like Confucianism and Taoism were there. Buddhism was, however, a much richer religion than Confucianism and it possessed a much more profound philosophy than Taoism.
23. (a) 24. (c) 25. (d) 26. (d) 27. (d)
28. (a) 29. (c)
30. (d) The fact is just the reverse of it.
31. (a) 32. (c) 33. (b) 34. (b) 35. (c)
36. (c) It was not the cause of its decline, but the cause of its limited following/appeal.
37. (d) Mahasanghika is the name of an early Buddhist school in India, during the Second Buddhist council held at Vaishali. The Mahasanghika school represents the first major schism ever recorded in Buddhism.
38. (d) Rummindei Pillar Inscription says that The Beloved of the Gods, the king Piyadassi, when he had been consecrated twenty years, came in person find referenced the place where Buddha Sakyamuni was born. He caused a stone enclosure to be made and a stone pillar to be erected. As the Lord was born here in the village of Lumbini, he has exempted it from tax, and fixed its contribution [i.e. of grain] at one-eighth.
39. (c) Svetambaras maintain that the 19th Tirthankara, Mallinath, was a woman. They also believe that women are able to obtain Moksha.
40. (a) In the Buddhist Pali Canon, Mahavira is referred as Nigantha Nataputta. Nigantha Nataputta refers to. A Nirgrantha refers to Jains. A person who has attained Kevalya can be a Nirgrantha.
41. (b) Gautam Buddha, who was prince Siddhartha of Kapilavastu in India/Asia before his enlightenment, is called "The Light of Asia".
42. (c) The eightfold Path in Buddhism, an early formulation of the path to enlightenment. The idea of the Eight fold Path appears from the first sermon of the Buddha, which delivered after his enlightenment. Right desire is not included in the Eight fold path of Buddhism.
43. (a) Therigatha is not a part of early Jains literature. The Therigatha is a Buddhist scripture, a collection of short poems supposedly recited by early members of the Buddhist Sangha in India around 600 BC.
44. (c) In Jainism, Ahinsa is the standard by which all actions are judged. For a householder observing the small vows (anuvrata), the practice of ahinsa requires that he not kill any animal life.
45. (d)
46. (b) Vallabhi has been a famous Jain centre. It was here in 453 or 466 AD, the Vallabhi council of the Jains produced in writing the religious canon under the head of the shraman Devardhigani. Svetambara Agama was finally edited at the Jain council of Vallabhi.
47. (b) Anekantavada is one of the most important and fundamental doctrines of Jainism. It refers to the notion that truth and reality are perceived differently from diverse points of view, and that no single point of view is the complete truth.
48. (a) Milinda Panha is in the form of a dialogue between the Greek King Milinda (Minander I) and the Buddhist monk Nagasena.
49. (a)
50. (d) Asanga was born as the son of a Kshatriya father and Brahmin mother in Purusapura. Current scholars place him in the fourth century CE. He was perhaps originally a member of the Mahisasaka school or the Mulasarvastivada school but later converted to Mahayana.
51. (a) The Lingayat Community was founded by Basava in the 12th century AD. The Lingayats are Virashaivites. The philosophy of the Lingayatas was influenced by the teachings of both Shankaracharya and Ramanuja. This sect was characterised by an anti-Brahmanical spirit.
52. (b) Syadvad is a doctrine of Jainism. Syadvad is the philosophy of seeing an individual or an object from various points of view; trying to understand them and acquiring the right knowledge of those things.
53. (d) After the death of Mahavira, one of his disciple Sudharma Swami is said to have took over the leadership. He was the head of Jain community till 515 BCE.
54. (d) Maya was the mother of the Buddha and was from the Koliyan clan. Maya was born in Devadaha in ancient Nepal. She was married to King Suddhodana, who ruled in the kingdom of Kapilavastu.
55. (b) Kanishka's coins portray images of Indian, Greek, Iranian and even Sumero-Elamite divinities, demonstrating the religious syncretism in his beliefs. The Buddhist coins of Kanishka are comparatively rare. Several coins show Kanishka on the obverse and the Buddha standing on the reverse, in Hellenistic style.

56. (b) Chaityas refer to the halls enclosing the stupas. Chaityas were probably constructed to hold large numbers of devotees for prayer. Viharas on the other hand are constructions built in ancient India in order to provide resting places for the wandering Buddhist monks.
57. (c) The concept of Nirvana was originally explained by Lord Buddha (566-486 BC). The word 'Nirvana' comes from the root meaning 'to blow out' and refers to the extinguishing of the fires of greed, hatred, and delusion. When these emotional and psychological defilements are destroyed by wisdom, the mind becomes free, radiant, and joyful and he who has realized the Truth (Nirvana) is the happiest being in the world. He is free from all complexes and obsessions. He does not repent the past nor does he brood over the future. He lives fully in present. He appreciates and enjoys things in life in the purest sense without self projections. He is free from the thirst of becoming and the illusion of self. Buddhism explain Nirvana as a state of bliss or peace.
58. (b) Buddha delivered his first sermon at Sarnath. Sarnath is a city located in the north-east of Varanasi near the confluence of the Ganges and the Gomati rivers in Uttar Pradesh,
59. (c) Patimokkha stands for the rules of the Sangha. Buddha Dhamma and Sangha are the three Jewels of Buddhism.
60. (c) Mahavira was a teacher of the religion of Jainism. He lived in India. His followers believed that he was the 24th in a line of great teachers. These teachers were called tirthankaras.
61. (d) The Fourth Buddhist Council was held at Kundalvana, Kashmir in 72 AD under the patronage of Kushan king Kanishka and the president of this council was Vasumitra, with A?vaghosa as his deputy. This council distinctly divided the Buddhism into 2 sects- Mahayan & Hinayan.
62. (b) After enlightened, Buddha journeyed to the Sarnath where he preached his first sermon to his five disciples.
63. (b) Buddha attained Parinirvana at Kushinagar in Uttar Pradesh.
64. (c)
65. (d) The twenty-fourth and last Tirthankara was Vardhamana Mahavira born in 540 BC. In 468 BC, he died at the age of 72. Gautam born about 566 BC and died at the age of 80 (about 487 BC).
66. (d) Both Gautam Buddha and Vardhman Mahavir were contemporary to each other and founded their respective religions better known as Buddhism and Jainism in India.

EXERCISE-2

1. (a) The Vishuddhimagga is a part of non - colonial test.
2. (b)
3. (b) In Buddhism avoidance of extremities of Penance and enjoyment stressed on which Jainism stresses on penance and extremism.
4. (a) Jainism enjoyed the patronage of Kalinga king Kharavela. Jainas never worshiped images.
5. (c) 6. (c)
7. (a) Buddha was by that time considered as one of the incarnations of Vishnu and became part of Vaishnavism.
8. (c) 9. (a) 10. (c) 11. (a) 12. (a)
13. (d)
14. (d) The surest way of annihilating Karma is to practice penance. Karma is the bane of the soul and must be ended.
"Swadhyay Paramam Tap" According to Jain doctrines Penance washes away all the blemishes and purges the soul of all karmic matter.
Also, according to Jainism, Karma is the bane of the soul. Karma not only encompasses the causality of transmigration but it is also conceived as an extremely subtle matter which infiltrates the soul, obscuring its natural, transparent, pure qualities. Karma is thought of as a kind of pollution that taints the soul with various colors. Based on its karma, a soul undergoes transmigration and reincarnation in various states of existence like heavens or hells or as humans or animals.
15. (c) Buddh born in Lumbini, in Kosala kingdom. Buddh died in Kusinara, in Magadha kingdom. Avanti lay outside the area visited by Buddha, and was converted to his teaching by his disciple Mahakaccana. Gandhara is western part of Pakistan & Afghanistan and Buddha never went to Pakistan.
16. (c) Tabo monastery and temple complex is in Spiti Valley and Alchi temple complex is in Ladakh. Lhotsava Lhakhang, Nako is in Himachal Pradesh. Zanskar Valley is in Jammu and Kashmir.
17. (b) Guru Nanak Dev was born in 1469. Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi in 1526. When Babur took over and established the Mughal dynasty, Nanak was travelling to different parts of India and preaching Sikhism. Babur once met Guru Nanak during one of his travel.
18. (d)
19. (a) A Chaitya is a Buddhist shrine including a stupa.
20. (a) Rishabha- 1st Tirthankara out of 24. Parshvanatha- 23rd tirthankara. Mahavira 24th tirthankara
21. (b) Mahavira was not the founder and author of Jain religion but simply a reformer. This sect of the Nigranthas was an important sect at the rise of Buddhism. This may be inferred from the fact

that they are frequently mentioned in the pitakas as opponents of Buddha and his disciples. This conclusion is further supported by another fact. Mankkhali Gosala, a contemporary of Buddha and Mahavira divided mankind into six classes, of these the third class contained the Nigranthas. Hence, statement II is not the correct explanation of statement I.

22. (b) Goshala Maskariputra was the founder of Ajivika Sect. He was the contemporary of Mahavir.
 23. (d) The words Satyameva Jayate came from Mundaka Upanishad, meaning 'Truth Alone Triumphs'.
 24. (b) 25. (c) 26. (a) 27. (b)
 28. (b) Symbol of 5 great events of Buddha's life

Event	Symbol
Buddha's birth	Lotus & bull
The great departure (Mahabhinishkramana)	Horse
Enlightment (Nirvana)	Bodhi tree
First sermon (Dhammachakraparivartan)	Wheel
Death (Parinirvana)	Stupa

29. (a) Early Buddhist texts speak of six foremost opponents of Lord Buddha who were:
1. Ajit Kesh Kamblin—Believed in Materialism
 2. Maskari Gosal—Founder of Ajivaka sect
 3. Puran Kasyap—Atomist
 4. Pakudh Katyayam—Believed in Fatalism
 5. Sanjay Vethaliputta—Believed in materialism syncicism
 6. Niggantha Nathputta—He was Bhagvan Mahavir

30. (d) **List of 24 Tirthankars and their birth places**

Name	Birth place
1. Rishabha (Adinath)	Ayodhya
2. Ajitnath	Ayodhya
3. Sambhavanath	Sravasti
4. Abhinandannath	Ayodhya
5. Sumatinath	Ayodhya
6. Padmabrabha	Kausambhi
7. Suparshvanath	Kasi (Banaras)
8. Chandraprabha	Chandrapuri
9. Pushpadanta (Suvidhinatha)	Kakandi
10. Shiatnath	Bhadrikapuri
11. Shreyansanath	Simhapuri
12. Vasupujya	Champapuri
13. Vimalnath	Kampilya
14. Anantnath	Ayodhya
15. Dharmanath	Ratnapuri
16. Shantinath	Hastinapura
17. Kunthunath	Hastinapura
18. Aranath	Hastinapura
19. Malinath	Mithilapuri
20. Munisuvrata	Kusagranagara (Rajgrih)
21. Naminatha	Mithilapuri (Mathura)
22. Neminatha	Sauripura (Dwarka)
23. Parsvanatha	Kasi (Banaras)
24. Mahavira (Vardhamana)	Kundapura

31. (d) 32. (d) 33. (a)



THE MAURYAN EMPIRE

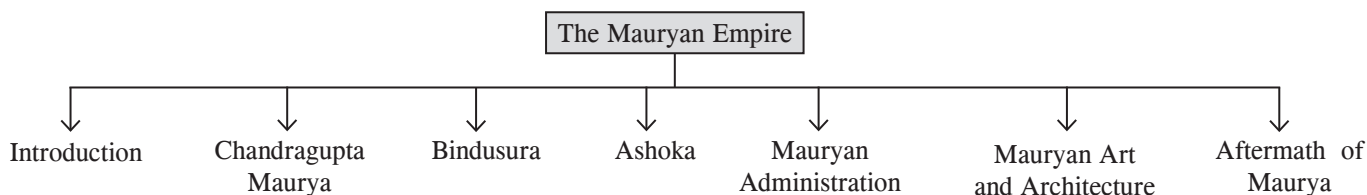
7 Chapter

Introduction

There are two important sources of Mauryan history. One is the '**Arthashastra**', written by Kautilya also known as Chanakya, the Prime Minister of Chandragupta Maurya, which describes how a good government should be organized. The other source is '**Indica**' written in Greek by Megasthenes, the ambassador of Seleucus Nicator at the court of Chandragupta. Megasthenes wrote not only about the capital city of Pataliputra but also about the Maurya Empire as a whole and about the society. The history of Ashoka's reign can be framed on the basis of his edicts.

Other source is the '**Mudrarakshasa**' written by Vishakhadatta in 5th century A.D. gives an interesting account of how Chandragupta with the help of Kautilya and a Paurava prince defeated the Nandas. Jain and Buddhist traditions also throw light on the history of the Mauryas. Jain scriptures refer to Chandragupta's death and the Buddhist work, '**Mahavamsa**', relates an account of the life and work of the king Ashoka. '**Malvikagnimitram**' written by Kalidasa throws enough light on the last years of the Mauryan rule and the ascendance of Pushyamitra Sunga.

Apart from the above sources, inscription of *Junagarh* and other inscriptions of Ashoka on rocks and pillars help us much in building the story of this age. The monuments belonging to the Mauryan period speak of the culture and civilization of this period. The stupas, viharas, and caves tell us about the development of art and architecture of this period. Let's see a glimpse of mauryan empire in the chart.



CHANDRAGUPTA MAURYA (322-297 B.C.)

Chandragupta Maurya was the founder of Mauryan dynasty. He took advantage of the growing weakness and unpopularity of the Nandas in the last days of their rule. With the help of Chanakya, he defeated the Nandas and established the rule of the Maurya dynasty.

Chandragupta erected a big empire which was not limited in Bihar but also extended to western and north-western India, and the Deccan. The Mauryas ruled over the whole of the subcontinent. In the north-west they penetrated over certain areas which were not included even in the British rule.

Chandragupta was a just king. He himself attended the court and gave justice. He appointed all the high officials of the states such as, the 'Sachivas' or 'Amatyas' 'Mantrins' or the High Ministers, the 'Purohita' or the High Priest, Spies,

'Adhayakshas', Who maintained correspondence with the Mantri parishad.

The administration of Patliputra was carried by six committees entrusted with sanitation care of foreigners, registration of birth and death, regulation of weights and measures and similar other functions. Chandragupta's government was divided into two parts, the **Central** and the **Provincial Governments**. The empire was divided into a number of provinces which were subdivided into districts. But the exact number of provinces are not known.

According to the Jaina literature, in his last days **Chandragupta converted into Jainism** and giving up his throne in favour of his son Bindusara and became a monk.

BINDUSARA (297-273 B.C.)

Chandragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusara. He defeated the rulers of 16 kingdoms and added their lands to his empire. Under him, the Mauryan Empire spread across the whole of Indian subcontinent. Except for Kalinga (Orissa) and a few kingdoms in the south.

ASHOKA (273-232 B.C.)

Ashoka was the most famous Mauryan king and one of the greatest rulers. The British historian *H.G Wells* had this to say about Ashoka—Amidst the tens of thousands names of monarchs that crowd the columns of history... the name of Ashoka shines and shines almost alone, like a star.

Ashoka governed his kingdom well. His numerous rock and pillar edicts, spread over a large part of India, give a lot of information about this great ruler.

Kalinga War (261 B.C.): When Ashoka became the king, Kalinga was the only kingdom which was not under Mauryan control. Kalinga was important as it controlled the land and sea routes to south India and south-east Asia. Ashoka attacked Kalinga and conquered it after a fierce battle.

The war with Kalinga was a turning point in the life of Ashoka. The death, destruction and suffering that he saw in the war made him very sad. He realized the futility of fighting a war and vowed not to fight any more wars. He devoted the rest of his life to serve his people.

Like his predecessors, Ashoka assumed the title of **Priyadarshi** (pleasing to look at) and **Devanampriya** (beloved of Gods). In the Sarnath inscription, he adopted the third title, i.e. **Dharmshoka**.

Ashoka's Rock Edicts

- Major rock edicts (a set of 14 inscriptions) found at following 8 places: Dhauri, Givnav, Jauguda, Kalsi, Mansehra, Shahbazgarhi, Sopara and Yenagrdi.
- Minor rock edicts found at 13 places: Bairat, Brahmagiri, Gavimath Gajarra, Jatinga-Rameshwar, Maski, Palkigunda, Meadagiri, Rupanath, Sasaram, Siddhapur, Suvarnagiri and Verragudi.

Contents of Rock Edicts

- 1st Major Rock Edict- Prohibition of animal sacrifice.
- 2nd Major Rock Edict- Related to measures of social welfare.
- 3rd Major Rock Edict- Respecting one's parents.
- 4th Major Rock Edict- Impact of Dhamma, Non-violence towards animals.
- 5th Major Rock Edict- Appointment of Dhamma Mahamantras to spread Dhamma.
- 6th Major Rock Edict- Welfare measures of efficient administration.
- 7th Major Rock Edict- Peace, balance of mind and faith, tolerance.
- 8th Major Rock Edict- Details of Bodhi tree, Dhammasutras.
- 9th Major Rock Edict- Ceremony of Dhamma.
- 10th Major Rock Edict- Ashoka's desire to Popularise Dhamma.
- 11th Major Rock Edict- Appraisal of Dhamma, Religious tolerance.
- 12th Major Rock Edict- Promoting religion of different faith.
- 13th Major Rock Edict- Kalinga's destruction, mention of Greek rulers.
- 14th Major Rock Edict- Nature of all other rock edicts.

Ashoka's Dhamma

Dhamma is the Prakrit word form of the Sanskrit term 'Dharma' which means religious duty. Ashoka gave up the policy of conquest through war (dig-vijaya) and began to follow a policy of conquest through dharma (dharma-vijaya). Ashoka's Dhamma was related to norms of social behaviour and activities. Its norms are mentioned in Ashoka's edicts. Due to this policy, his name shines with unique brilliance.

Ashoka's Contemporaries

Anitochus II Theos	-	Syria
Ptolemy II Philadelphus	-	Egypt
Magas	-	Cyme
Antigonos Gonatas	-	Macedonia
Alexander	-	Epirus

Post Ashoka period

According to Buddhist texts, Ashoka ruled for twenty-seven years. The subsequent history of the Mauryas under his successors is very inadequately known. This is because a state of disintegration seemed to have set in immediately after Ashoka's death. The post-Ashokan period is a dark chapter in Indian history and no first-rate source-material is available on the period. Pillar Edict VII mentions Tivara as a son of Ashoka. Three other sons—Junala, Jaluka and Mahendra are known to literature. It appears on the evidence of the Vayu Purana that Junala ruled for eight years, but the extent of his dominions is not indicated therein. Moreover, Jain and Buddhist writers tell us that Samprati, the son of Junal, who was incapable of ruling because of blindness, immediately succeeded Ashoka to the throne of Patliputra.

The tenth and the last of the Mauryas was **Brihadratha** who, according to the testimony of **Banabhatta**, was murdered by his general **Pushyamitra** and who ascended the throne in 187 B.C. The empire founded by him is known as **Sunga Dynasty**. With Brihadratha's death (185 B.C.) this historic rule of the Mauryas came to an end within less than half a century of Ashoka's death and 137 years since its foundation by Chandragupta Maurya.

Decline of Mauryan Empire

- Harprasad Shastri holds that Brahmanical reaction was responsible for the downfall of the Mauryan empire.
- D.D. Koshambi says that heavy economic pressure was the chief cause for the downfall of the Mauryan empire.
- Ghosal says that propagation of Buddhism during Ashoka's period disturbed brahmanical social and religious order, which weakened the state.
- Romila Thapar says that nature of organisation or administration and the faulty conception of state ultimately caused the downfall of the empire.

MAURYAN ADMINISTRATION

The Mauryan administration can be divided into four divisions—central, provincial, district and village. The administration of the city of Pataliputra was separate.

Central

The king was the supreme authority. He took all important decisions concerning the empire. He was assisted by a council of ministers. They acted as the king's advisors.

Provincial

The empire was divided into many provinces each headed by a prince. He ruled the province as the representative of the king and was assisted by many officers.

District

Provinces were further divided into districts. The 'Pradishikas' was the head of the district. He was assisted by the 'Yuktas' and the 'Rajukas'. He measured the land, collected tax and maintained law and order.

Village

A number of villages made up a district. Villagers assisted government official in making the village boundaries, maintaining land records and collecting taxes. Each village had a headman who was chosen by the villagers themselves.

Mauryan Mantriparishad

Mantrin	- Chief Minister
Purohita	- High Priest
Senapati	- Commander-in-charge
Yuvaraj	- Crowned Prince
Samaharta	- Collector of Revenue
Yukta	- Subordinate Officer-in-charge of Revenue of the king
Prashasti	- Head of Prisons
Sannidata	- Head of Treasury
Nayaka	- Head of City Security
Paur	- City Police
Byabharika	- Chief Judge
Karmantika	- Head of Industries and Factories
Dandapala	- Head of Police
Durgapala	- Head of Royal Fort
Annapala	- Head of the Food Grains Department
Rajjukas	- Officers responsible for land measurement and fixing its boundary.
Pradesika	- Head of District Administration

Judicial Administration

Justice was provided by the king, Pradeshika and Rajukas; at lowest level was the village headman. There were two types of courts:

- (i) The **civil courts** redressing cases of marriage, contracts etc. were called '*Dharmasthas*',
- (ii) **Kantakasodhana**: the criminal courts which tried criminal cases and tax evasion.

Army

Mauryas owned a big army. According to Pliny, Chandragupta maintained 6,00,000 foot soldiers, 30, 000 cavalry and 900 elephants. According to Megasthenese, the army was administered by six committees consisting of five members each, taken from a board of 30 officers.

Espionage

It was important part of the Maurya administration; and was of two types—**Santha** and **Sanchar**, the former worked by remaining stationed at a public place and the latter by moving from place to place. The spies were the ears and eyes of the king. They were also called '*Cudhapurshas*'.

Revenue Administration

There were various sources of state revenues: cities (durga), rural areas (rashtra), mines (khan), road and traffic (vanikpatha), pastures (Vraja), Plantations (setu) and forests (vana).

Import Duties

Prabeshya or import duties were fixed at 20 per cent of the cost price. *Panyadhyaksha* and *Pattanadhyaksha* was respectively responsible to verify every import to the state. They were also responsible for the export of each article from the state and collected the revenue known as nishkramya.

Sales Tax: Taxes were imposed on every article before it was sold or purchased by Sulkadhyaksha. 9.5 per cent on items sold on the basis of calculation, 5 per cent on the items sold on the basis of measurement, and 6.5 per cent on the goods sold on the basis of weight.

Besides these, there were many other taxes collected by the state such as taxes on artisans and artist, taxes on animal slaughter-houses, taxes on manufacturing houses, taxes on gambling houses, on prostitutes, on the income of temples and on the additional incomes of the wage earners.

Social, Religious and Economic, Conditions Under The Mauryas

Kautilya's Arthashastra and Megasthenes' Indica give a detailed view about the society and social condition of the people. Varna or the caste-system and stages of religious discipline took a definite shape, which corresponds to Hindu caste-system. Slavery was an established institution. **Women** were placed in high esteem. Yet, **prostitution** was an established institution. Festivals and merry gatherings were common. The people led simple and peaceful life and were inspired by the sense of morality and idealism.

The Jainism and Buddhism were the main religions. In addition, several minor religions including Ajivikas were also in existence. The Mauryan rulers took much pain to spread education and to set up literary standard of their subjects as well. The universities of Taxila and Banaras earned world fame for teaching Brahmanical and Buddhist literature.

Economic Conditions under the Mauryas

It was mainly based on agriculture as cultivators formed a majority of population, though trade was also important.

Agriculture

- Some lands were owned by state called Sita Lands which were either cultivated by labourers or leased out to cultivators.

- Private Land owners required to pay taxes in the form of **bali, bhaga, shulka, kara**, etc.
- Trade was also internal and to foreign countries.
- State was also big traders.
- It exported spices, pearls, diamonds, cotton textiles, ivory works to Greece and Verma.
- It also collected tolls through officials.
- It imported horses, gold, glass, linen, etc. from other countries.
- Balance of trade was very much in favour of India.

MAURYAN ART AND ARCHITECTURE

The period of Mauryas contributed significantly in the field of arts including architecture, sculpture, engineering, polishing, etc. The palace of Chandragupta was made of wood. Ashoka during his long reign further improved the wooden walls and buildings of the capital and added many attractive edifices, which could be traced from the site at Kumrahar. Ashoka constructed as good as 84,000 stupas. These buildings were solid and domic, made of rock or bricks. The art of sculpture or rock cutting also reached its zenith during Ashoka's time. Seven rock-cuts sanctuaries lying about 25 miles north of Gaya, Bihar, four on the Barabar hills and three on the Nagarjuna hills belong to the time of Ashoka and his successors. The caves are fine example of Mauryan art. The caves were used for religious ceremonies and also as assembly halls.

- The Mauryans introduced stone masonry on large scale.
- Fragments of stone pillars and stumps indicating the existence of an 80 pillared hall have been discovered at Kumrahar on outskirts of Patna.
- The pillars represent the masterpiece of Mauryan sculpture. Each pillar is made of single piece of sandstone, only their capitals which are beautiful pieces of sculpture in the form of lion or bulls are joined with pillar on the top.
- **Single lion** capital at Rampurva at **Lauriya Nandangarh**.
- **Single bull** capital at Rupurva.
- **Four lion** capital at Sarnath and Sanchi.
- A carved elephant at Dhauli and engraved elephant at Kalsi.
- The Mauryan artisans also started the practice of hewing out caves from rocks for monks to live in. The earliest example is Barabar caves in Gaya.

- Stupas were built throughout the empire to enshrine the relics of Buddha. Of these, the most famous are at Sanchi and Barhut.

Categories of Ashoka's Inscription

- **Bhabru-** Conversion to Buddhism.
- **Barabar Hills** – Enjoins toleration.
- **Tarai Pillars** – Respect to Buddhism.
- **14 Rock Edicts** – Administration and ethics. Minor Rock Edict IV declares Dhammaghosh and not the Bherighosh to be ideal of human beings.
- **Minor Rock Edicts** – Personal history of Ashoka and summary of Dhamma.
- **7 Pillar Rock Edicts** – Appendix to Rock Edicts.

Another remarkable feature was the art of polishing monuments, pillars, caves made of hard rocks, etc. Art of engineering equally flourished. Civil Engineering was in highly advanced state and, therefore, so many spectacular buildings, stupas, pillars could be constructed with perfection and efficiency. Also the art of jewellery attained a remarkable progress.

The **punched marked silver coins** of the Mauryas which carry the symbols of the **peacock**, and the hill and crescent were also a part of Court Art.

The other type of arts included the folk tradition of arts represented by figures of Yaksha and Yakshinis found from Besnagar, Daidrganj, etc. The abundance of beautiful pottery called **Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW)** and terracotta figurines were another item of popular art.

AFTERMATH OF MAURYAS

The period which started in about 200 B.C. did not have any large empire like that of the Mauryas. In eastern India, central India and the Deccan, the Mauryas were succeeded by a number of native rulers such as the Sungas, the Kanvas and the Satavahanas. In north-western India they were succeeded by a number of ruling dynasties from Central Asia.

Sunga Dynasty (185 – 71 B.C.)

The Sunga dynasty was founded by *Pushyamitra* who ruled for 36 years and his reign ended in 149 or 148 B.C. Pushyamitra was succeeded by his son, Agnimitra who was the governor of Vidisha during his father's reign. He ruled for eight years. Agnimitra was succeeded by Jyeshtha. The next important king of this dynasty was *Vasumitra*, who was the son of Agnimitra. Another important king of this dynasty was *Bhagabhadra*. The ninth important king of this dynasty was Bhagvata who ruled for 32 years. The last king of this dynasty was *Devabhuti* or *Devabhumi*. He was put to death by his minister or amatya called Vasudeva Kanva. Thus, the kingdom of Magadha passed from the Sungas to Kanvas.

The Sunga dynasty occupies a very important place in the history of India. Their greatest achievement was the safeguarding of India from the invasion of Hunas. The Sunga Kings greatly encouraged the Brahman religion and literature.

Hunas

Hunas were one of the fierce tribes from Central Asia. They have been periodically invading India since the Sunga period. They were resisted by the rulers until the second half of the 5th century A.D. But the weakness of Gupta empire provided them with a chance and by A.D. 485 they were able to occupy eastern Malwa and a good portion of central India.

Kanva Dynasty (72 B.C. – 27 B.C.)

The rule of the Kanvas lasted for about 45 years. Four kings ruled during this period. Vasudeva ruled for a period of nine years and Bhumimitra for 14 years. Narayana held the reigns of administration for almost 12 years— *Shusarma* was the last of the Kanvas. During the Kanva dynasty, the Brahmanical reaction persisted.

Cheta (Chetis) Dynasty Of Kalinga

The history of Kalinga is not known with any degree of certainty till the first century B.C. The veil of obscurity is lifted by the far famed but damaged *Hatigumpha* (in the Udaygiri hill near Bhubaneswar) inscription. It records the exploits of Kharavela belonging to the Cheta or Cheti line of kings, founded by Maha Meghavahana. According to the testimony of the inscription of Kharavela, aged 24, ascended the throne of Kalinga probably in 25 B.C. after having served apprenticeship as Yuvaraja for eight years. The inscription which accounts for the 13 years of Kharavela's rule, describes in detail the digvijaya of the Kalinga prince.

Age of Satvahanas (235 B.C. – 100 B.C.)

The most important of the native successors of the Mauryas in the Deccan and in central India were the Satavahanas. The Satvahanas also known as Andhras ruled the Deccan for 300 years. *Pratisthana* was their capital. Some powerful rulers were *Sri Sata-karni*, *Vasishthaputra Palimahi*, *Yajunasri Sata-Karni* and *Gautmiputra Sri Sata-karni*. The most powerful among them all was satavahanas. He fought against the other kingdoms and expanded his empire.

The Satavahanas established a powerful empire. Continuous military conflicts, especially against the Shakas, however, gradually weakened them. Eventually, the empire broke up into many smaller kingdoms.

The Satavahana kingdom had three grades of feudatories. The highest grade was formed by the king who was called raja who had the right to strike coins. The second grade was formed by the mahabhoja and the third grade by the senapati. It seems that these feudatories and landed beneficiaries enjoyed some authority in their respective localities.

Increasing craft and commerce in this period brought many merchants and artisans to the forefront. Both artisans and merchants made generous donations to the Buddhist cause. They set up small memorial tablets. Among the artisans, the ganghikas or the perfumers are repeatedly mentioned as donor. At a later stage the term gandhika became so general as to denote all kinds of shopkeepers.

Many temples and monasteries were cut out of the solid rock in the north-western Deccan or Maharashtra with great skill and patience. The two common structures were the temple which was called **chaitya vihara**. The chaitya was a large hall with a number of columns, and the vihara consisted of a central hall entered by a doorway from a verandah in front.

Invasions from The Central Asia

The Indo-Greek (190 B.C.)

The first invaders were the Greeks, who are called the Indo-Greeks or **Bactrian Greeks**. In the Beginning of the second century B.C., the Indo-Greeks occupied a large part of north-western India, much larger than that conquered by Alexander. Two Greek dynasties ruled north-western India on parallel lines at one and the same time. The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was *Menander* (165- 145 B.C.) with his capital of **Sakala** in Punjab. We know this, from the famous treatise '*Milinda Panha*' written by Nagasena.

The Indo-Greeks were the first rulers in India to issue coins which can be definitely attributed to the kings. The earlier

punch marked coins were though in gold definitely attributed to the kings. The earlier coins were not easy to be assigned with any dynasty. **The Indo-Greeks were the first to issue gold coins in India**, which increased in number under the Kushans. The Greek rule is also memorable on account of the introduction of Hellenistic features in the north-west frontier of India, giving rise to the Gandhara art.

The Sakas (90 B.C. – 1st A.D.)

The most famous Saka ruler in India was Rudradaman-I (A.D. 130-150). *Rudradaman* was a great lover of Sanskrit. Although a foreigner settled in India, he issued the first-ever long inscription in chaste Sanskrit.

The Parthians (19-45 A.D.)

The Saka kingdom in north-western India was followed by that of the Parthians, and in many ancient Indian Sanskrit texts the two peoples are together mentioned as Saka-Pahlavas.

In fact, they ruled over this country on parallel lines for some time. The most famous Parthian king was *Gondopernes*.

The Kushanas (45 A.D. – 73 A.D.)

The Parthians were succeeded by the Kushans. The Kushans established a powerful empire in north India. They defeated the Indo-Greeks, the Pahlavas and the Shakas and established themselves in the region around Takshashila and Peshawar. Later, they occupied Kashmir, Punjab and parts of present day Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh.

The greatest of the Kushana rulers was *Kanishka*. He established a vast empire which included parts of central Asia. *Purashapura* (modern Peshawar) was the capital of his empire. Mathura was another important city in his empire.

There were two successive dynasties of the Kushans. The first dynasty was founded by a house of chiefs who were called *Kadphises* and who ruled for 28 years from about A.D. 50. It had two kings. The first was **Kadphises I**, who issued coins in the south of the Hindukush.

The house of Kadphises was bigger by that of Kanishka. Its kingdom extended the Kushan power over upper India and the lower Indus basin. The early Kushan kings issued numerous gold coins with higher gold content than is found in the Gupta coins.

Impact of Central Asian Contacts

The impact of Saka-Kushana period can be witnessed in various fields such as pottery, trade and technology, polity, religion, art, science and technology, literature and learning. Buddhist missionaries followed the merchants and due to this, the communication and trade with China improved.

The foreign rulers established relationship between Central Asia and India. The Central Asian conquerors implemented their rule on various petty native princes. This led to the development of a feudatory organization. The Sakas and the Kushans strengthened the idea of the divine origin of kingship. Gradually, the Greeks, the Sakas, the Parthians and the Kushans lost their own identity and became completely Indianized. Some of the foreign rulers were converted to Vaishnavism and a few other adopted Buddhism. There were also some changes in Indian religions, i.e. Buddhism which developed a new form called the Mahayana and Hinayana, Kanishka, an important Kushan ruler became a Buddhist convert and held the fourth Buddhist Council.

Indian craftsmen came into contact with the Greeks and the Romans, which gave rise to a new art called *Gandhara School of Art*. The *Mathura Schools of Art* flourished in the early centuries of the Christian era, and its products made of red sandstone are found even outside Mathura. In the south, *Amravati Art* became famous.

The foreign rulers patronised and cultivated Sanskrit literature. *Asvaghosha* wrote the '*Buddhacharita*', a biography of Buddha and composed '*Saundarananda*' in Sanskrit *kavya* form. The progress of 'Mahayana' Buddhism led to the composition of several 'avadanas'. Some of the important books of this genre were the '*Mahavastu*' and the '*Divyavadana*'.

These foreigners introduced turban, tunic, trousers and heavy long coat, along with cap, helmets and boots used by the warriors.

Indian astronomy and astrology were more flourished due to the contact with the Greeks. Indian astrology in Sanskrit derived the term '*horasastra*' from the Greek term '*horoscope*'. We also find that the Kushan copper coins in India were imitation of the Roman coins. Working on glass during this period was especially influenced by foreign ideas and practices.

Art and Architecture

The art and architecture were closely associated with religion.

Temple

As the society was predominantly Buddhist, the building of temples was least done. However, we find many important temples of the period, such as at Jhandial, Taxila, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, and Andhra Pradesh. The *Sankarshan temple* at Nagari, *Apsita temple* at Nagarjunakonda and the *Besnagar temple* are worth mentioning.

Rock Cut Architecture : According to British historian V.A. Smith—“*The art of polishing hard stone was carried out with such perfection that it is said to have become a lost art beyond modern powers.*”

Udayagiri caves are the most famous Jain cave temples situated in the hills of Khandagiri and Udaygiri and built by Kharavela, the Jain ruler of Kalinga. Out of 17 caves, the four most important Udaygiri caves are **Rani Gumph**a, **Hathi Gumph**a, **Bag Gumph**a and **Machipuri Gumph**a. The most important and distinct features of the Kalinga Rock cut architecture is the complete absence of Chaityas or a shrine cell with a stupa in the centre.

Stupas

Stupas were normally built to enshrine the sacred relics of the Buddha or Bodhisattvas. The railings and gateway of Sanchi stupa was later enlarged by Sunga rulers. Other important stupas of the period are Bodh Gaya, Taxila, Amravati, Nagarjunakonda, etc.

Schools of Art

Kishana (Mathura) School of Art

From the beginning of the Christian era, Mathura became an important centre of artistic activity. The five centuries of indigenous art traditions were preserved and improved upon by the Mathura sculptors. Artist at Mathura used a purely indigenous style. They used spotted red sandstone. Apart from Buddhism, the artists also made statues of Hindu and Jain deities. The images produced at Mathura became models for succeeding generations of artists.

Gandhara School of Art

Besides Mathura arts, an important art was associated with

Gandhara in the north-west. After the Greek invasion and during the period of the Kushanas, many artists from west Asia migrated to north-west India. This distinctive style which grew in the region of Gandhara is known as the **Gandhara School of Art**. Since Mahayana, Buddhism encouraged image worship, artists created sculptures adopting themes from Buddha's life and the Jataka stories. The school produced several pieces of fine sculpture in which this distinct style is clearly visible.

Evidence of Gandhara art has been found in **Taxila** and in ancient cities of Afghanistan.

Amravati School of Art

Apart from these arts there was the Amravati school of Buddhist art which flourished in western Andhra Pradesh under the patronages of Satavahana rulers.

Crafts, Trade and Towns In The Post-Maurya Age

In ancient India, the age of the Sakas, Kushans, Satavahans (200 B.C.-A.D. 200) and the first Tamil states was the most flourishing period in the history of crafts and commerce. Technological knowledge about the work of iron had made great progress. Cloth-making, silk-weaving and the making of arms and luxury articles also made progress.

The development in the field of crafts and commerce and the increasing use of money promoted the prosperity of numerous towns during this period. The important towns in north India such as Vaishali, Pataliputra, Varanasi, Kaushambi, Shravasti, Hastinapur, Mathura, Indraprastha are all mentioned in literary texts. Tagar (Ter), Paithan, Dhanyakataka, Amravati, Nagarjunakonda, Broach, Sopara, Arikamedu, Kaveripattanam were prosperous towns in the Satvahana period in western and south India.

Points to remember

- “Arthashastra” written by Kautilya and “Indica” by Megasthenes are two important sources of Mauryan history.
- Mauryan dynasty was founded by Chandra Gupta Maurya, who with the help of Chanakya defeated Nandas and established Mauryan empire.
- Mauryan empire was a vast empire which was extended to western and north-western India, and Deccan.
- Bindusara (293-273 BC) and Ashoka (273-232 BC) are among famous Mauryan Kings.
- Mauryan empire weakened gradually after Ashoka and came to an end within less than half a century after Ashoka death.
- Mauryan administration was divided into four division: central, provincial, district and village.
- Mauryan administration include king, Pradeshika and Rajukas.
- Mauryan owned a big army which consisted 6,00,000 foot soldiers, 30,000 cavalry and 700 elephants.
- Espionage was an important part of Mauryan administration and was of two types –Santha and Sanchar.
- Other important rulers after the Mauryas were– the Sungas (185-71 BC), the Hunas, the Kanvas, the Chetas, the Satvahanas.
- Many invaders from central Asia also ruled India—the Indo-Greek (190 BC), the Saka, (90 BC - 1st AD). The Parthians (19-45 AD), the Kushanas (45 B.C. - 73 AD)
- There has been a considerable impact of centre Asian contact in various fields e.g.–pottery, trade, technology, polity, art, religion, painting, architecture, etc.

Exercise - 1

- Kumara Gupta I was succeeded by
 - Chandra gupta II
 - Budha gupta
 - Samundra gupta
 - Skanda gupta
- For the first time in Indian History, the description of the State Administration was found for which among the following periods?
 - Gupta Period
 - Maurya Period
 - Shunga Period
 - Saatvahana Period
- What was the function of Samaharta in Mauryan Administration?
 - To Collect Revenue
 - To Work as a Judge
 - Leadership of Army
 - Delivering Justice
- Which among the following was the first investigated pillar of Ashoka?
 - Delhi Meerut Pillar
 - Barabar cave
 - Dhauli
 - Sarnath
- Pushyamitra Shunga, who was originally a Senapati of the Mauryan empire and assassinated the last Mauryan Emperor Brihadra in 185 BC was a _____.
 - Brahman
 - Kshatriya
 - Vaishya
 - Shudra
- There is only one edict, in which Ashoka refers himself as King of Magadha (Laja Magadhe.) Identify the edict from the following:
 - Minor Rock Edict of Maski
 - The Queens Edict
 - Bhabhru Edict
 - Dhauli Pillar Inscription
- At which among the following places, Chandragupta Maurya spent his last days ?
 - Nalanda
 - Ujjain
 - Shravana Belgola
 - Kashi
- Ceylon became a stronghold of which among the following branches of Buddhism?
 - Mahayan
 - Hinayan
 - Mahendra
 - Theravada
- Ashvaghosha, who has written the marvelous work "Buddhacharita" was a court poet of which among the following kings?
 - Ashoka
 - Kanishka
 - Samudragupta
 - Ajatshatru
- Who among the following kings was a contemporary of both Mahavira and Buddha ?
 - Ajatshatru
 - Nandivardhana
 - Bimbisara
 - Ashoka
- The followers of which of the following sects worshipped the Ashoka Tree as God and carried in their hands a bunch of peacock feathers?
 - Shakta
 - Pashupata
 - Ajivika
 - Digambar Jain
- Which of the following is known as the Turning of the Wheel of Law (Dharma- Chakrapavartana)?
 - The first sermon preached by the Buddha at the Deer Park at Sarnath
 - The practice of setting the wheel in motion everyday in the morning in the sanghas
 - The extinction of karma leading to the achievement of nirvana
 - The continuous existence of human beings like the wheel of causes and effects
- The reign of the Kushana monarch Kanishka was a turning point in the history of Buddhism, because:
 - It witnessed the rise of Mahayanism
 - Buddhism was introduced in China and Central Asia in his time
 - Both (a) and (b)
 - The images of Buddha and Bodhisattvas began to be carved out during this period
- Which of the following is not one of the common points of significance of both Rajagriha and Vaishali?
 - Both places are associated with the miracles performed by the Buddha
 - At both places one of the Buddhist councils was held
 - At both places a stupa was built with the mortal remains of the Buddha enshrined in them
 - Both places were important centres of Buddhist art
- The majority of the Buddhist vases in India are found in Western Maharashtra because:
 - The Sahyadri mountain in western Maharashtra with its hard trap was best suited for rock-cut architecture
 - There was a long-standing tradition in this region of royal patronage to rock-cut architecture
 - The caves in this region provided a safe sanctuary away from foreign invaders
 - Many of the royal dynasties of Western India were patrons of Buddhism
- The Allahabad Pillar inscription is associated with which one of the following?
 - Mahapadma Nanda
 - Chandragupta Maurya
 - Ashoka
 - Samudragupta
- Which one of the following is the correct chronological order of the given rulers of ancient India?
 - Ashoka—Kanishka—Milinda
 - Milinda—Ashoka—Kanishka
 - Ashoka—Milinda—Kanishka
 - Milinda—Kanishka—Ashoka
- Which of the following languages was used in Ashoka's Edicts?
 - Vasudeva
 - Pali
 - Brahmi
 - Sanskrit
- After the Kalinga war, Ashoka :
 - restored all the kingdoms he had conquered
 - abandoned the policy of physical conquests in favour of cultural conquests.
 - renounced his kingdom and became a sadhu
 - followed the policy of physical occupation more rigorously

20. Which of the following metals were mostly used for minting coins during the Mauryan period?
 (a) Bronze and gold (b) Gold and lead
 (c) Silver and copper (d) Lead and silver
21. Ring wells are identified for the first time in?
 (a) Later Vedic age (b) Pre-mauryan age
 (c) Mauryan period (d) Post-Mauryan
22. Which of the following books serves as a source for the Mauryan period?
 (a) Historica (b) Indica
 (c) Suttapitaka (d) Jain Purvas
23. The governor under Chandragupta Maurya who constructed the Sudarshana Lake is?
 (a) Parnadatta (b) Tusaspa
 (c) Pushagupta (d) Chakrapalita
24. Who patronized the third Buddhist council held at Pataliputra?
 (a) Kanishka (b) Ashoka
 (c) Kalasoka (d) Ajatashatru
25. The most informative source about Mauryan administration is?
 (a) Indica (b) Arthashastra
 (c) Ashokan Inscriptions (d) Buddhist Chronicles
26. The Mauryan state had monopoly over which of the following sectors?
 (a) Mining and Metallurgy
 (b) Coins and currency
 (c) Armaments and ship building
 (d) All the above
27. Which of the following dynasties had a role in the construction and maintenance of the Sanchi Stupa?
 (a) Mauryas (b) Sungas
 (c) Kanvas (d) Satavahanas
28. Which of the following pairs is correctly matched?
 (a) Jatakas - Mauryan chronology and genealogy
 (b) Puranas - Ashoka's efforts to spread Buddhism to Sri Lanka
 (c) Dipavamsa - Socio-economic conditions of the Mauryan period
 (d) Digha nikaya - Influence of Buddhist ideas on Mauryan polity
29. The lowest order in the social scale of Mauryan society was not a slave but the outcaste. Which of the following statements about the outcastes is not correct?
 (a) Their caste names referred directly to their profession or work
 (b) They accepted the position of social ostracism
 (c) They lived together with their families outside the towns
 (d) They were not allowed to perform any rituals
30. Which of the following was not a state monopoly during the Mauryan period?
 (a) Mines and forests
 (b) Pearl and fisheries
 (c) Ferries and bridges
 (d) Slaughter houses and gambling houses
31. Which of the following public health measures was not punishable under the Mauryan public health laws?
 (a) Throwing dirt, mud or dead bodies on public thoroughfares
 (b) Polluting the water tanks or sources of water
 (c) Taking the dead bodies for cremation or burial along paths not meant for the purpose
 (d) Treating patients and selling herbs and drugs without securing registration
32. Who of the following officers were charged with superintendence of women?
 (a) Dhamma-mahamattas
 (b) Ithihakha-mahamattas
 (c) Anta-mahamattas
 (d) Antahpur-adhyakshas
33. One of the following Mauryan provinces, which had a foreign (Yavana-Greek) Governor, was:
 (a) Southern province — Suvarngiri
 (b) Eastern province — Tosali
 (c) Western province — Ujjain
 (d) Saurashtra — Junagarh
34. Which of the following statements about the officers designated as mahamattas in Mauryan administration is correct?
 (a) These officers were charged with the responsibility of propagating Buddhism
 (b) They were appointed as viceroys of various provinces
 (c) The term was used for any senior official irrespective of the duties assigned to him
 (d) It is a Prakrit expression for the Sanskrit word amatya
35. Four major provinces of the Mauryan empire were the Northern, Eastern, Western and Southern provinces, each under the vice-royalty of a prince or a member of the royal family. Which of the following provincial capitals of the Mauryan empire was the capital of the Northern province?
 (a) Suvarnagiri (b) Tosali
 (c) Ujjain (d) Taxila
36. From which of the following months did the Mauryan fiscal year use to begin?
 (a) Phalgun (March)
 (b) Asadha (July)
 (c) Jyestha (June)
 (d) Pausa-Magha (January-February)
37. Which of the following was not one of the checks on the powers of the Mauryan kings?
 (a) Customs of the land (b) Guilds
 (c) Brahmins (d) Mantri-parishad
38. Which of the following would be the most accurate description of the Mauryan monarchy under Ashoka?
 (a) Enlightened despotism
 (b) Centralised autocracy
 (c) Paternal despotism
 (d) Guided democracy
39. Which of the following statements about the Mauryan kings is not correct?
 (a) They had extensive powers encompassing administrative, judicial, and legislative functions
 (b) They laid claim to divinity
 (c) Appointments to the most important offices were made by the ruler himself
 (d) The kings often laid down codes of regulation for the guidance of their officers and the people

40. Pushyamitra Sunga, who killed the last Mauryan ruler Brihadratha and founded the Sunga dynasty, was a:
- Prime Minister of the Mauryas
 - General of the Mauryas
 - Both (a) and (b) above
 - Feudatory ruler
41. The officer of the Central Government, who was in-charge of collection of revenue, was:
- Adhyaksha or Superintendent of Departments
 - Sannidhata or High Treasurer
 - Samaharta or Collector General
 - Karmika or Clerk
42. Which of the following statements about the Mauryan Council of Ministers (mantri-parishad) is not correct?
- The members of the council were personally selected by the king
 - The number of members of the council was fixed and it consisted of three councillors and a Chief Minister
 - It was specially consulted in times of emergency
 - It may have acted as a political check on the king
43. Who of the following was not one of the later Mauryas who succeeded Ashoka?
- Dasharatha
 - Samprati
 - Shalishuka
 - Shubhagasena
44. Which of the following was not one of Hellenic kings to whom diplomatic missions were sent by Ashoka?
- Xerxes of Macedonia
 - Antiochus II Theos of Syria
 - Ptolemy II Philadelphos of Egypt
 - Antigonos Gonatas of Macedonia
45. The most striking example of the architectural closeness between Achaemenid Iran and Mauryan India was:
- The stone elephant at Dhauri
 - The lion-capital at Sarnath
 - The royal palace at Pataliputra
 - Terracotta objects found at various Mauryan sites
46. Towards health care, the most important measures taken by Ashoka was/were:
- He opened dispensaries for the treatment of both human beings and animals
 - He got the herbs and plants, needed for medical purposes, cultivated
 - Both (a) and (b) above
 - He made arrangements for safe drinking water in the whole of his empire
47. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for gradual weakening of the Mauryan finances?
- Need for vast revenues to maintain a huge but inactive army
 - Need for finances to maintain a very large bureaucracy
 - Unfavourable balance of trade with foreign countries
 - The strain on the exchequer of Ashoka's charitable public works
48. Who of the following was the last of the Mauryas, assassinated by his commander-in-chief, Pushyamitra, the founder of the Shunga dynasty?
- Samprati
 - Devavarman
 - Shatadhanvan
 - Brihadratha
49. Which of the following supposed causes of decline and disintegration of the Mauryan Empire is the least likely?
- Succession of weak kings after Ashoka and the partition of the empire after Ashoka
 - Military inactivity on account of Ashoka's pacifist policies
 - Brahmanical revolt against the pro-Buddhist policy of Ashoka
 - Absence of national consciousness and representative institutions
50. Who of the following dedicated the caves in Nagarjuni Hills to the Ajivikas?
- Kunala
 - Dasharatha
 - Samprati
 - Indrapalit
51. How long did the entire Mauryan dynasty last according to the Puranas?
- 218 years
 - 137 years
 - 85 years
 - 182 years
52. Which of the following was a measure adopted by the later Mauryas to meet the needs of a depleted treasury?
- Increase in taxes
 - Imposition of new taxes
 - debasement of currency
 - Increase of exports
53. According to which of the following sources is Ashoka said to have built the city of Srinagar?
- Buddhist tradition
 - Jain tradition
 - Tibetan tradition
 - Kalhana's Rajatarangini
54. Which of the following states of India did not form part of the Mauryan empire?
- Kerala
 - Tamil Nadu
 - Both (a) and (b) above
 - Kashmir
55. Which of the following was not one of the reasons why the conquest of Kalinga was of strategic and economic importance to the Mauryan empire?
- It stood in the way of the southern routes from the Ganges valley
 - It was also a powerful maritime state and, therefore a convenient source of income
 - Its rich and fertile land could contribute to the economic prosperity of the empire
 - It provided congruity to the Mauryan territories of Andhra and Bengal
56. According to which of the following sources, did Ashoka in his old age abdicate the throne in favour of his grandson Samprati?
- Ashokavadana
 - Divyavadana
 - Mahavamsa
 - Gargi-Samhita
57. Which of the following is not one of the sources for determining the geographical extent of the Mauryan empire during the reign of Ashoka?
- The distribution of his rock and pillar edicts
 - The contents of his inscriptions
 - The literary and religious traditions
 - Numismatic evidence

58. The Mauryan king who issued the Nagarjuni Hill Cave Inscriptions and assumed the royal title of Devanampriya was:
- (a) Ashoka (b) Dasharatha
(c) Bindusara (d) Brihadratha
59. Which of the following was the contribution of the Mauryas to the Tamil culture?
- (a) Brahmi script
(b) Art of engraving stone inscriptions
(c) Prakrit language
(d) The art of stone-cutting and sculpture
60. On what basis is it held that on the east the province of Vanga (part of modern Bengal) formed part of the Mauryan empire?
- (a) Discovery of Ashokan edicts in this part of Bengal
(b) Tamralipti, the principal port of the area, was one of the most important maritime centres during the Mauryan period
(c) Megasthenes' Indica mentions Chandragupta's conquest of the region
(d) Buddhist traditions associate Ashoka with propagation of Buddhism in Bengal
61. Which of the following statements about the Mauryan relations with Sri Lanka is not correct?
- (a) The coming of Mahendra and Sanghmitra to Sri Lanka was the First official contact between the two countries
(b) The king of Sri Lanka, Tissa, adopted the title of Devanampriya and appears to have modelled himself on Ashoka
(c) There were frequent exchanges of gifts and envoys
(d) Tisas, the Sinhalese king, accepted Buddhism and appears to have made it the state religion
62. Rock Edict XIII (also known as Separate Rock Edict, because it is not found elsewhere) is regarded as one of the most important documents of Ashokan history, because:
- (a) It expresses his regret and remorse at the suffering caused by the Kalinga War
(b) It expresses a new idea of conquest that of dhamma-vijaya instead of victory by war and violence
(c) It is the longest of the fourteen major Rock Edicts and is recorded in a tone of recapitulation
(d) All the above
63. In which of the following Major Rock Edicts does Ashoka introduce the institution of dhamma-mahamatta for the first time?
- (a) Rock Edict II (b) Rock Edict III
(c) Rock Edict IV (d) Rock Edict V
64. Which edict of Ashoka contains the famous pronouncement: "at all times, whether I am eating, or I am in the women's apartments, or in my inner apartments, or at the cattleshed, or in my carriage, or in my gardens—wherever I may be—my mahamatta should keep me in touch with public business"?
- (a) Rock Edict II (b) Rock Edict IV
(c) Rock Edict VI (d) Rock Edict VIII
65. What was the subject of Rock Edict I issued by Ashoka?
- (a) Prohibition of animal sacrifice and festive meetings (samaja)
(b) Measures of social welfare undertaken for the benefit of the people
(c) Liberality to Brahmins and Sramanas
(d) Visit to Bodh-Gaya
66. Which of the following was not the result of the Kalinga War?
- (a) The number of casualties of combatants and non-combatants is stated to have been around four lakhs
(b) The cruel consequences of war revolutionized the personality and public policies of Ashoka
(c) He wages no wars after the Kalinga War
(d) The strength of the Mauryan army was curtailed
67. Which of the following statements about the conversion of Ashoka to Buddhism is generally believed to be correct?
- (a) It took place as a dramatic event soon after the Kalinga War
(b) Ashoka was never converted to Buddhism; he only borrowed some of its ideas to propound his doctrine of dhamma
(c) His conversion to Buddhism was a gradual process
(d) He became a convert to Buddhism under the influence of Upagupta
68. One of the strongest arguments in support of the view that Ashoka's dhamma was not a religious policy but a secular concept is the:
- (a) Appointment of dhamma-mahamattas
(b) Emphasis laid by him on respect for the elders
(c) Stress laid on the importance of the family
(d) Stress on the maintenance of concord with all sects
69. The dhamma mahamattas (dharma mahamatras) appointed by Ashoka were entrusted with the job of:
- (a) Checking the abuses in the administration of justice
(b) The moral uplift of the people through propagation of dhamma
(c) Management of the welfare activities of the state
(d) All the above
70. Which of the following was not one of the reasons for the failure of dhamma?
- (a) Ashoka's excessive enthusiasm produced a reaction against it
(b) It failed to provide a solution to the problems which it set out to solve
(c) It was too vague a solution, because the problems lay at the very roots of the system
(d) It was too idealistic a concept, which could not break the social and sectarian barriers
71. Ashoka himself considered his policy of dhamma as:
- (a) The essence of original Buddhism as preached by the Buddha
(b) A way of life which was both practical and convenient as well as highly moral
(c) The ideal of virtuous life based on moral teachings of various thinkers
(d) The essence of all religions or the common religion of mankind

72. In social matters Ashoka's most revolutionary concept was:
- Proper behavior to slaves, servants, elders etc.
 - His opposition to wasteful social rituals and ceremonies at marriages, births, journeys etc.
 - His opposition to social entertainments, such as the samajas
 - All the above
73. To promote communal harmony Ashoka asked the people:
- To attend to the essential elements of their religions rather than the non-essential ones
 - Not to glorify their own sect and be little another's sect
 - To maintain concord (samvaya) with all creeds
 - All the above
74. The edicts of Ashoka which reveal his inner sorrow on account of war and violence are:
- Dhauhi and Jaugada
 - Shahbazgarhi and Sopara
 - Maski and Bhabra
 - Mansehra and Girnar
75. Which of the following was not one of the contributions of Ashoka to India polity and culture?
- Political and cultural unification of the country
 - Religious toleration and promotion of communal harmony
 - A non-aggressive foreign policy based on equality between the big and small states
 - Reform in criminal justice and revolutionary changes in the social system
76. In spite of his conversion to Buddhism and the concept of dhamma-vijaya, Ashoka was not a total pacifist. Which of the following does not confirm this view?
- He felt sorry for the suffering caused by Kalinga War, but did not give up the conquered territory
 - After the conquest of Kalinga, Ashoka consolidated his southern conquests
 - In dealing with the troublesome forest tribes he clearly recognized the possibility of the use of force
 - He did not abolish capital punishment and granted only a brief reprieve to the condemned prisoners
77. Which of the following edicts/inscriptions does not belong to the category directed to the sangha?
- Kandahar Inscription
 - Bhabra Edict
 - Schism Edict
 - Nigalisagar Inscription
78. Which of the following is not one of the broad categories into which the edicts issued by Ashoka can be divided?
- Public pronouncements meant for his subjects
 - Personal epistles directed to the Sangha
 - Pronouncement explaining the philosophy of Buddhism and its relevance in day-to-day life
 - Edicts issued for the propagation of dhamma
79. Which of the following steps was not taken by Ashoka to promote and patronise Buddhism?
- He erected a commemorative pillar at the place where the Buddha was said to have been born
 - Lumbini was made free of religious cess and revenue was reduced to only one-eighth share (of the produce)
 - He got thousands of dissenter monks expelled from the Ashokarama monastery
 - He took a great deal of personal interest in the welfare of the monks and the nuns
80. The family member of Ashoka mentioned in his edicts, is:
- His second wife Karuvaki
 - His son Tivara
 - His wife Asandhamitra
 - His daughter Sanghamitra
81. The major contribution of the Third Buddhist Council convened by Ashoka was:
- It purged the Buddhist sangha of its dissenters
 - At this conference kathavatthu was compiled by its President Moggaliputta Tissa
 - It decided to dispatch Buddhist missions to various parts of India and foreign countries
 - All the above
82. In which of the following edicts did Ashoka order that "whosoever monk or nun breaks up the Sangha, after being clothed in white garments, shall take up abode in a place other than a monastery"?
- Sarnath Edict
 - Kausambi Edict
 - Sanchi Edict
 - The Queen's Edict
83. Which of the following administrative measures was not undertaken by Ashoka?
- The monarch started the practice of royal tours and instituted quinquennial circuits of officers
 - He issued a code of conduct to his officials
 - He tried to save people from miscarriage of justice
 - Release of the convicts on the mercy petition moved by his ministers
84. What is the most significant difference in the message of the pillar Edicts as compared to the Rock Edicts?
- The main stress in the Pillar Edicts is on social welfare measure
 - There is a hint of fanaticism about dhamma and of megalomania in the Pillar Edicts
 - The Pillar Edicts are mainly devoted to the moral aspects of dhamma and Ashoka's attachment to Buddhism
 - Rock Edicts are addressed to common people and Pillar Edicts to the Buddhist order
85. In which of the following respect do the Ashokan epigraphs not help us to draw historical inferences?
- In delineating the boundary of the Mauryan empire
 - In inferring Ashoka's relations with his border countries
 - In inferring the impact of Kalinga War on the non-combatants
 - In deriving conclusions regarding his relations with the members of his family

86. Which of the following contains the pronouncement: "All men are my children"?
- Rock Edict V
 - Pillar Edict VI
 - Separate Rock Edict I
 - Separate Rock Edict II
87. In which of the following edicts/inscriptions does Ashoka express his faith in the Buddhist creed?
- Schism Edict
 - Bhabru Edict
 - Kandahar Inscription
 - Rummindei Inscription
88. Information in respect of which of the following cannot be obtained from the edicts and inscriptions of Ashoka?
- The sectarian and communal conflict of the period
 - Working of the inner mind of Ashoka
 - Administrative reforms introduced by Ashoka
 - The social, religious and economic life of the people of his time
89. The head of a district (Ahara), the principal coordinator of the revenue and the officer incharge of general and military functions in his jurisdiction during Mauryan empire was known as
- Krori
 - Rajuka
 - Foujdar
 - Chirastadar
90. Which one among the following statements about Ashokan edicts is correct?
- The Pillar edicts were located in all parts of the empire
 - The edicts give details of his personal concerns but are silent on events of the empire
 - The subject of inscribed matter on Rock edicts differs completely with that of the Pillar edicts
 - The Greek or Aramaic edicts are versions or translations of the texts used in other edicts
91. Ashokan inscriptions of Mansehra and Shahbazgadhi are written in
- Prakrit language, Kharoshthi script
 - Prakrit language, Brahmi script
 - Prakrit-Aramaic language, Brahmi script
 - Aramaic language, Kharoshthi script
92. The Dhamma propagated by Ashoka was
- the tenets of Buddhism
 - a mixture of the philosophies of Ajivikas and Charvakas
 - a system of morals consistent with the tenets of most of the sects of the time
 - the religious policy of the state
93. The first Indian ruler to be shown in images as wearing a dress akin to trousers is
- Chandragupta
 - Ashoka
 - Kanishka
 - Samudragupta
94. Which among the following materials were used for minting coins during the rule of the Mauryas?
- Gold and Silver
 - Silver and Copper
 - Copper and Bronze
 - Gold and Copper
95. The highly polished monolithic Ashokan Pillars were carved out of single pieces of a buff-coloured sandstone, usually mined from the quarries of
- Chunar near Mirzapur
 - Lauriya in Nandangarh
 - Sarnath near Varanasi
 - Udayagiri near Bhubaneswar
96. The only inscribed stone portrait of Emperor Ashoka has been found at
- Sanchi
 - Amaravati
 - Kanaganahalli
 - Ajanta
97. Which one of the following dynasties was associated with Gandhara School of Art ?
- Chalukyas
 - Guptas
 - Kushanas
 - Mauryas
98. Which one of the following chronological orders of the given dynasties of India is correct ?
- Maurya-Nanda-Kanva-Sunga
 - Nanda-Maurya-Sunga-Kanva
 - Nanda-Maurya-Kanva-Sunga
 - Maurya-Nanda-Sunga-Kanva
99. Who of the following was a contemporary of Alexander, the Great?
- Bimbisara
 - Chandragupta Maurya
 - Ashoka
 - Pushyamitra Sunga
100. Which one of the following is the correct chronological order of the given rulers of ancient India?
- Ashoka—Kanishka—Milinda
 - Milinda—Ashoka—Kanishka
 - Ashoka—Milinda—Kanishka
 - Milinda—Kanishka—Ashoka
101. Which one of the following statements about Chandragupta II is not correct ?
- Kalidas and Amarsingh were famous scholars in his court
 - He expanded his empire both through matrimonial alliances and conquests
 - He married a Naga princess, named Kubera Naga
 - He married his daughter Prabhawati to an Ahom prince
102. Which one among the following statements is not correct?
- Gandhara School of Arts owed its origin to the Indo-Greek rulers but the real patrons of the school were the Kushans, especially Kanishka
 - Rich carving, elaborate ornamentations and complex symbolism were not the main features of the Gandhara sculpture
 - The Graeco-Roman architectural impact modified the structure of the Buddhist Stupas
 - The artists of the Amravati School of Arts mainly used white marble

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Consider the following statements regarding Ashoka's Dhamma is not correct ?
 - Major Rock Edict XIII is of paramount importance in understanding the Ashokan policy of Dhamma.
 - The Policy of Dhamma was an attempt at founding a new religion.
 - Major Rock Edict III relates to social welfare measures like medical centres for animals as well as men, road construction and planting of medicinal herbs.
 - Pillar Edict I states that through the king's care and love of Dhamma it had grown and that it was the king's principle to administer affairs.

(a) 1 and 4 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 2 and 4 (d) None of these
- Consider the following statements
 - The last Mauryan ruler, Brihadratha was assassinated by his commander-in-chief Pushyamitra Sunga.
 - The last Sunga king, Devabhuti was assassinated by his Brahman minister Vasudeva Kanva who usurped the throne.

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Which of the following statements is not true with reference to the production of commercial goods in the post Mauryan period?
 - Considerable technological advancement was reached in the production of commercial goods.
 - Production and distribution of commercial goods was organised effectively through guilds.
 - The producers worked under rigid state control.
 - The guilds used hired labour for production

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 3 and 4
- The Kushana kings assumed title of Devaputra Kushana Kanishka's predecessors also were assuming titles like Sarvaloka Isvara Mahisvara. This shows that Kushana Kings-
 - assumed high sounding titles implying power and fame.
 - assumed divine Kingship

Which of the above statements are correct?
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Which one is the correct chronological order in which the given rulers ruled over Magadha?
 - Brihadratha - Bimbisara - Sisunaga - Bindusara
 - Sisunaga - Bindusara - Brihadratha - Bimbisara
 - Brihadratha - Bindusara - Sisunaga - Bimbisara
 - Sisunaga - Bimbisara - Brihadratha - Bindusara

(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 3 only
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) 4 only
- What were the impacts of Kautilya's Arthashastra in Mauryan empire ?
 - The Arthashastra provided the state management of large scale trade and industry and exercise of effective control over every occupation.
 - It laid emphasis on education and moral training to the future king.
 - The Arthashastra maintained the state council to formulate the policy of the state

Which of the above statements is/are correct.
(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) 3 only (d) All of them
- Consider the following with reference to the disintegration and decline of the Mauryan Empire:
 - Brahmanical revolt
 - King Ashoka's pacifist policies
 - Invasions from outside
 - Weakness of Ashoka's successors

Which of the above reasons led to the disintegration and decline of the Mauryan Empire?
(a) 1, 2 and 4 (b) 2 and 4
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
- Arrange the following dynasties in chronological order in terms of their arrival in India
 - Sakas 2. Indo-Greeks
 - Parthians 4. Kushanas

Choose the correct answer from the codes given below :
(a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1, 3, 4 and 2
(c) 2, 1, 3 and 4 (d) 2, 3, 1 and 4
- Who among the following performed Asvamedha sacrifice?
 - Pushyamitra sunga 2. Samudragupta
 - Pravarsena I 4. Pulakesin I

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:
Codes:
(a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
- With reference to the history of Indian rock-cut architecture, consider the following statements:
 - The caves at Badami are the oldest surviving rock-cut caves in India.

2. The Barabar rock-cut caves were originally made for Ajivikas by Emperor Chandragupta Maurya.
3. At Ellora, caves were made for different faiths.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

Directions (Qs. 11): The following questions consist of two statements, **Statement I** and **Statement II**. You are to examine these two statements carefully and select the answers to these questions using the codes given below Codes

- (a) Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
(b) Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
(c) Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
(d) Statement I is false, but Statement II is true
11. **Statement I:** There was great exodus of Jaina monks under the leadership of Bhadrabahu to the Deccan following severe famine in the Ganga valley towards the end of Chandragupta's reign.

Statement II: Chandragupta Maurya joined the Jaina

Matching Based MCQ

12. **List-I** **List-II**
- (A) Shunga dynasty (1) Narayan, Susharma Vasudev
(B) Kanva dynasty (2) Siemukh, Shatkarni, Krishna
(C) Satvahan dynasty (3) Kaniskha
(D) Shaka dynasty (4) Pushyamitra, Sujesthasak

- (a) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2
(b) A - 2, B - 4, C - 3, D - 1
(c) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3
(d) A - 1, B - 3, C - 4, D - 2

13. **List-I** **List-II**
- (Ashoka's contemporary rulers) (Countries where they ruled)
- A. Antiyoka 1. Cyrena
B. Autkina 2. Egypt
C. Maka 3. Macedonia
D. Turmaya 4. Syria

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |

14. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Uttarapatha 1. Suvarnagiri
B. Dakshinapatha 2. Takshashila
C. Prashi 3. Tosali
D. Kalinga 4. Patliputra

Select the correct answer from the codes given below :

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |

15. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Chandragupta Maurya 1. Amitrochates
B. Bindusar 2. Sandrocotts
C. Ashok 3. Devanampriya
D. Dasharatha 4. Buddha shakya

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |

16. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Indo-Greek 1. Rudradaman
B. Shaka 2. Minandar
C. Parthiyau 3. Vim Kadfises
D. Kushan 4. Gondofarnis

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (b) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

17. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Shunga 1. Prawarsen-I
B. Kanva 2. Kharvela
C. Chedi 3. Vasudeva
D. Vakataka 4. Bhaghadra

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 4 | 2 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (a) 5. (a)
6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (b) 10. (c)
11. (c) 12. (a) 13. (c) 14. (d) 15. (a)
16. (d) It was written by Samudragupta's court poet Harisena.
17. (c)
18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (c) 21. (c) 22. (b)
23. (c) 24. (b) 25. (b) 26. (d) 27. (c)
28. (d) 29. (d) 30. (d) 31. (d) 32. (b)
33. (d) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (b) 37. (c)
38. (c) 39. (b) 40. (b) 41. (c) 42. (b)
43. (d) 44. (a) 45. (c) 46. (c) 47. (c)
48. (d) 49. (d) 50. (b) 51. (b) 52. (d)
53. (d) 54. (c) 55. (c) 56. (b) 57. (d)
58. (a) 59. (a) 60. (b) 61. (a) 62. (d)
63. (d) 64. (c) 65. (a) 66. (d) 67. (c)
68. (a) 69. (d) 70. (d) 71. (b) 72. (b)
73. (c) 74. (a) 75. (d) 76. (b) 77. (a)
78. (c) 79. (d) 80. (a) 81. (d) 82. (d)
83. (d) 84. (b) 85. (d) 86. (c) 87. (d)
88. (a)
89. (b) In District administration each district was administered by 3 officers viz. Pradeshika, Rajuka, & Yukta. Pradeshika was senior and Rajuka was subordinate. Yukta was subordinate to both of them. The district administration was under the charge of Rajukas, whose position and functions are similar to modern collectors. He was assisted by Yuktas or subordinate officials. The rajuka was responsible for surveying and assessing the land, fixing its rent and record keeping besides judicial functions.
90. (b) The edicts focus on social and moral precepts rather than religious practices or the philosophical dimension of Buddhism. Major themes are Ashoka's conversion to Buddhism, the description of his efforts to spread Buddhism, his moral and religious precepts, and his social and animal welfare programs.
91. (d) Mansehra and Shahbazgadhi inscriptions of ashoka are written in Aramaic language, Kharoshthi script. Shahbaz Garhi is an historic site located in Mardan District in the North West Frontier Province of Pakistan. Mansehra is located in Mansehra District, Khyber-Pakhtunkhwa province of Pakistan.
92. (a) The word Dhamma is the Prakrit version of the Sanskrit word Dharma. Ashoka's Dhamma is a philosophical entity that emphasizes on the high ideals in order to lead a successful life. He wanted everyone to live peacefully and co-exist in a harmonious environment.
93. (c) Kanishka was the first Indian ruler who has been shown in images as wearing a dress akin to trousers.
94. (b) During the rule of Maurya Dynasty Silver and Copper were used for minting coins.
95. (a) The highly polished monolithic Ashoka pillar usually with small black spots were quarried from the Chunar near Mirzapur.
96. (c) Ashoka's only inscribed stone portrait was found at Kanaganahalli, near Bhima river In Gulbarg district, Karnataka.
97. (c) Gandhara sculpture art is associated to Kushanas and it was developed during the period of Kanishka. This style is also called as Greek Buddh style. Its main centre is Bamian Swats Afghanistan.
98. (b) Ruling period of given dynasties is as follows :
Nanda (344 BC-323 BC); Maurya (323 BC-184 BC); Sunga (184 BC- 75 BC) and Kanva (75 BC-30BC)
99. (b) Chandra Gupta Maurya was the founder of Maurya dynasty. Megosthenes, the Greek ambaseddor lived in her court.
100. (c)
101. (b) Chandragupta Maurya-II expanded his kingdom/ empire through matrimonial relationship and conquests.
102. (c)

EXERCISE-2

1. (b)
2. (c) Pushyamitra founded the Sunga dynasty by killing the last Mauryan ruler Brihadrath and the last Sunga ruler Devabhuti was killed by his minister Vasudeva Kanva.
3. (a) 4.(b) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (d)
8. (c)
9. (d) Pusyamitra Sunga is said to have performed the Ashvamedha rite after he toppled Mauryan rule in 185 BC. A historically documented performance of the Ashvamedha is during the reign of Samudragupta I (died 380), the father of Chandragupta II. Special coins were minted to commemorate the Ashvamedha and the king took on the title of Maharajadhiraja after successful completion of the sacrifice.
Vakataka Dynasty 3rd (Century -5th Century AD) was founded by Vindhyashakti. Pravarasena I was the real founder of Vakataka empire. He performed four Asvamedha Yajnas.
Pulakesin I was a monarch from the Chalukya dynasty in the western Deccan region. Pulakesin performed sacrifices like Asvamedha, Hiranyagarbha, Agnistoma, Vajapeya, Bahusuvarna

and Paundarika. These details are provided by his Badami Cliff inscription dated Saka 565 (543 CE).

10. (b) The Barabar rock cut caves are the oldest rock cut caves. They were originally made for the Ajivikas during the Mauryan period (322-185 BCE). The Ellora caves were built between 5th century and 10th century. There were 34 caves out of which 12 were Buddhist caves, 17 were Hindu caves and 5 were Jain caves. The proximity of the caves clearly demonstrates the religious harmony prevalent at that period of time.
11. (a) The important occasion of Chandragupta Maurya's reign was the forecast of a twelve years famine. At that time Acharya Bhadrabahu was the head of the Jain church. According to the Jain text Rajvaliya Katha, the king saw sixteen dreams. He requested Bhadrabahu to interpret the dreams. The latter explained all the dreams and according to the last one, he predicted a famine of twelve years. Chandragupta, who was a follower of Bhadrabahu, gave up his throne. He finally ended his life following the Jain fashion.
12. (c)
13. (d) The correct match list is :

Rulers	Country
Antiyoka	Syria
Antikini	Macedonia
Maka	Cyrena
Turmaya	Egypt

In his thirteenth inscription Ashoka mentions five Greek contemporary kings-Antiyoka (Syria 261-246 B. C.) Turamaya (Egypt, upto 247 B.C.), Kairina Kamar (300-250 B.C.) Alike Sundara (Apiran, 272-258 B.C.), Autkina (Macedonia 278—339 B.C.).

Historians find that all these rulers were thus before 258 B. C. The ruler of Apiran died in 258 B. C. but it finds mention in Ashoka's inscription.

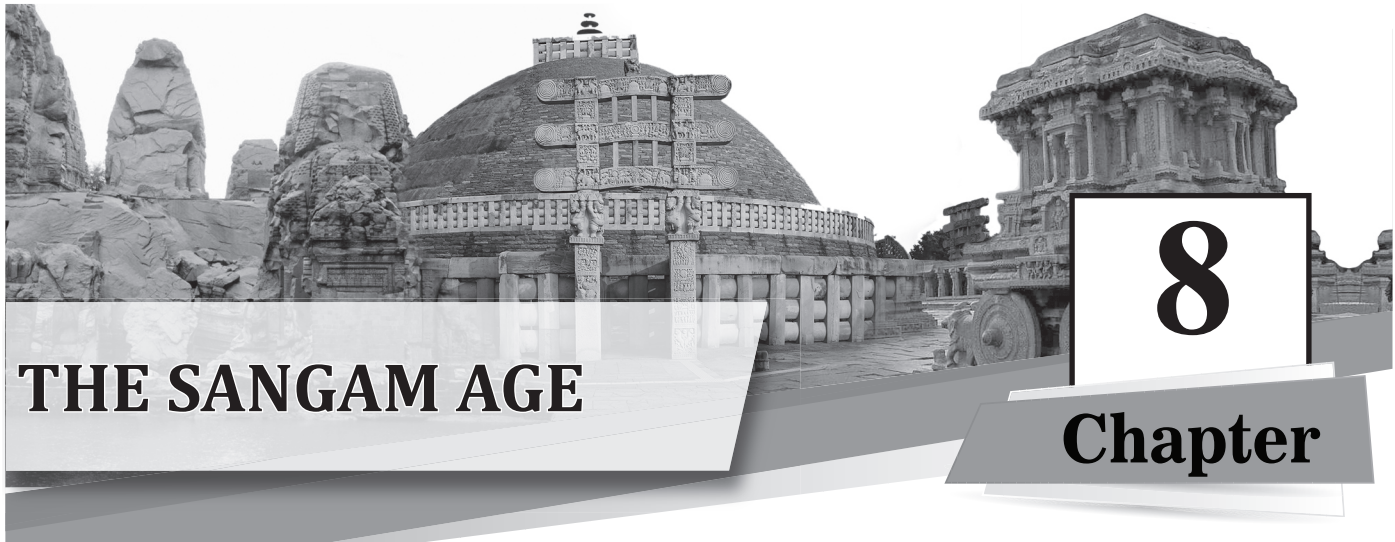
14. (b) The Mauryan empire was divided into provinces and the provinces divided into districts. Provinces during the Mauryan age with their capital were: Uttarapatha-Taxila; Dakshinapatha-Suvarnagiri; Prachya-Pataliputra; Kalinga-Tosali; Avantiratha-Ujjain. Ashoka appointed a representative in each province. The representatives were chosen for their ability and not on the basis of birth or high connections. They enjoyed considerable freedom in the administration of their provinces.
15. (b) In foreign Greek and Latin accounts, Chandragupta is known as Sandrocottos and Androcottus. He became well known in the Hellenistic world for conquering Alexander the Great's easternmost satrapies, and for defeating the most powerful of Alexander's successors, Seleucus I Nicator, in battle.

Bindusara Maurya (c. 320 BC - 272 BC) was emperor of the Maurya Empire from 298 BC - 272 BC. During his reign, the empire expanded southwards. The Greeks called him Amitrochates or Allitrochades - the Greek transliteration for the Sanskrit word 'Amitraghata' (Slayer of enemies).

In the third century B.C.E., King Ashoka of the Maurya dynasty supported and protected Buddhism and erected stupas and stone pillars at sites associated with Shakyamuni Buddha.

Dasaratha is known to have dedicated three caves in the Nagarjuni Hills to the Ajivikas. Three inscriptions at the cave refer to him as 'Devanampiya Dasaratha'

16. (c) 17. (d)



THE SANGAM AGE

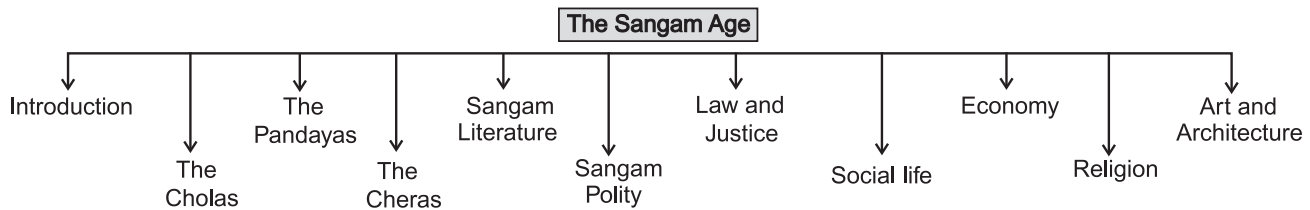
8

Chapter

Introduction

Sanskrit word ‘Sangha’ means a group of persons or an association. The Tamil Sangam was an academy of poets and bards, who flourished in three different periods and in different places under the patronage of the Pandyan kings. The Sangam literature speaks highly of three south Indian Kingdoms—Chola, Pandya and Chera. The earliest reference that we find about this era is preserved in three forms: Ashokan inscriptions, Sangam literature and Megasthenese accounts.

The three important kingdoms of the Cholas, the Pandyas and the Cheras, combinedly was known as **Tamilakam**. The Aryan influence did not penetrate to this distant region till the fourth century B.C., but our knowledge of ‘the country and its people belonging to the pre-Christian era is meager and indirect. The ancient literature of Tamils, known as the **Sangam literature**, is very massive, but it hardly fulfils the demands of history and chronology.



THE CHOLAS

The kingdom of the Cholas with its capital at *Kaveripattanam* was started from Kavery delta to the adjoining region of modern Tanjore and Trichinopoly. One of their early kings, *Karikala* (A.D. 190), who figures very prominently in ancient literature, is credited with victories over the rulers of the neighbouring Pandya and Chera kingdoms and is believed to have even extended his authority over **Ceylon**. Towards the beginning of the fourth century A.D., the power of the Cholas began to decline mainly because of the rise of Pallavas on one hand and the continuous wars waged by the Pandyas and the Cheras on the other.

THE PANDAYAS

The kingdom of the Pandyas with its capital at *Madurai* extended to the modern districts of Madura, Ramnad, Tinnevely and the southern parts of Travancore. References to the Pandyas occur in ancient literary works like the **Mahabharata** and the **Jatakas** as well as in Indica of Megasthenes. According to Ashokan edicts, the Pandyas were independent people living

beyond the southern border of the Maurya empire. A Pandya king is also known to have sent an embassy to the court of the Roman emperor **Augustus** and Trojan.

The Three Southern Kingdoms

Kingdoms	Capital	Emblems	Famous port
Cholas	Uraiyur, late Puhar	Tiger	Puhar (Kaveripattanam)
Cheras	Vanji or Karur	Bow	Muzris, Tondi, Bandar
Pandayas	Madurai	Carp	Korkai, Saliyur

THE CHERAS

The earliest reference to the Chera (Keralaputra) kingdom can be traced in the Ashokan inscriptions. It comprised the modern districts of Malabar, Cochin and Northern Travancore. Its capital was *Vanji*, which is identified by some with a site of Periyar River, by others with Karur or Karuvur located in the western most Taluq of the Trichinopoly district.

The people of Chera Kingdoms were a sea-faring people who, established close commercial relationship with Egypt and the Roman Empire. Tondi, Musiri, Kaveripathanam and Korkai were among the well-known trade centres of Peninsular India.

SANGAM LITERATURE

Sangam was an association or assembly of Tamil poets held probably under chiefly or royal patronage. But we do not know the number of Sangams or the period for which they were held. The Sangam literature was compiled in circa A.D. 300-600. But parts of this literature look back to at least the second century A.D. The Sangam literature can roughly be divided into two groups, **narrative** and **didactic**. The narrative texts are considered works of **heroic poetry** in which heroes are glorified and perpetual wars and cattle raids frequently mentioned. The didactic texts cover the early centuries of the Christian era and prescribe a code of conduct not only for the king and his court but also for various social groups and occupations. All this could have been possible only after the fourth century A.D. when Brahmanas appeared in good numbers under the Pallavas.

Sangam literature consists of the earliest Tamil works (such as **Tolkappiyam**), the **Ettutogai** (Eight Anthologies) the **Pattuppattu** (Ten Idylls), the **Padenenkilkanakku** (Eighteen Minor works) and the three epics.

Earliest Tamil Works were the **Agattiyam** (a work on grammar of letters and life) by Rishi Agastya, Pannirupadalam (a grammatical work on puram literature) by 12 disciples of Agastya the Kakkipadiyam (a work on prosody) and Tolkappiyam (a treatise on grammar and poetry). It is divided into three sections each consisting of nine sub chapters and has a total of 1,612 sutras by Talkappiya (.)

The three epics were **Silappadikaram**, **Mianimekalai** and **Sivaga Sidamanai**.

The last epic shows the dominance of Sanskrit style over the indigenous style of the previous epics.

Apart from Sangam texts we have a text called **Tolkappiyam**, written by *Tolkappiar* which deals with grammar and poetics. It is the only work which has survived from the second Sangam. Another important Tamil text deals with philosophy and wise maxims; this text is called **Tirukkural**. Addition to this we have the twin Tamil epics of **Silappadikaram** and **Mainmekalai**. The first deals with a love story in which a dignitary called Kovalan prefers a courtesan called Madhavi of Kaveripattanam to his noble wedded wife Kannagi. The author apparently seems to be a Jaina and tries to locate the scenes of the story in all the kingdoms of the Tamil country. The other epic Manimekalai deals with the adventures of the daughter born of the union of Kovalan and Madhavi though this epic is of more religious than literary interest. Though the epics cannot be dated so early, they throw light on the social and economic life of the Tamils upto about the sixth century A.D.

Sangam Terms

Enadi	-	Captain of army
Vallalas	-	Rich peasants
Arasar	-	Ruling class
Orrar	-	Spies
Avai	-	Small village assembly
Irai/Karai	-	Land tax
Ulgu/sungam	-	Tolls and custom duties
Nagar	-	Temple
Perundaram	-	Higher officials
Sirutaram	-	Lower officials
Avanam	-	Market place
Panar	-	Birds
Vedars	-	Hunters
Marakkhdi	-	Warrior class
Kuravar	-	Hill tribes
Varalis	-	Dancing girls
Lamaram	-	Missile
Kalavu	-	Sacred marriage
Umanar	-	Salt maker
Korravai	-	Goddess of victory
Kadurai	-	Diety of forest
Eripatti	-	Tank

SANGAM POLITY

The Tamils during the Sangam period were ruled by powerful kings. The kings were regarded as **Vendar** while the local chieftains were called **Mannar**.

The form of government was hereditary monarchy. The eldest son usually succeeded the father.

The crowned king held impressive courts to which the subjects were allowed. There was conspicuous absence of Privy Council or a Council Chamber. **The king was regarded as God**. The theory of divine right of kingship was accepted. But he was always assisted and guided by wise men whether a minister, or a poet or a purohitar. These wise men were divided into two categories—**Aimperukulu** consisting of Purohita, the army chief, the ambassador, the spies and the ministers; and **Enperayam** consisting of accountants, executive officials, treasury officials, palace guards, and the leading men among his subjects. Wars occurred on the pretext of cattle-lifting.

Aimperukku Officials

Purohitar	-	Priest
Senapatiyar	-	Army Chief
Amaichhar	-	Minister
Dutar	-	Ambassador
Orrar	-	Spy
Enadi	-	Captain of the army
Umanchatha	-	Collector of merchandise from different regions
Makamattor	-	Members of a guild
Veellalar	-	Rich peasants

Enperayam Officials

Karanattiyalavar	-	Accountant
Karumakarar	-	Executive officials
Kanasassurram	-	Treasury Officials
Kdaikappalar	-	Palace guards

Nagaramandar	– Leading men among the king’s subjects
Padaittalaivar	– Chiefs of the infantry
Yanai Virar	– Chiefs of elephantry
Ivuli	– Chiefs of cavalry

LAW AND JUSTICE

Sangam literature does not describe any posts of Judge disputes were settled by learned men of high character, and the judgement was based on integrity and impartiality. The Cholas have gained great respect because of this. The king was the supreme magistrate. The town court was called ‘*Avai*’ and the village court was known as ‘*Manrams*’ which might have been pachayats, were distributed across *Mandalam* (kingdom) in *Nadu* (districts) and *Ur* (town).

SOCIAL LIFE

The Sangam society was based on binary fission, i.e.

1. Vyarntoc (high born people),
2. Ilipirappalar (low born people)

However, Tholkappian mentions, about four categories of castes–

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| (i) Andanar (Brahmanas) | (ii) Arasar (kings) |
| (iii) Vaisiyar (Traders) | (iv) Velalar (Farmers) |

Moreover, these were communities, called *parciyas* experienced untouchability among higher classes.

Position of Women

Women took part in various fields like–

- They contributed in literature, evidence is from their poetry.
- Women were allowed to choose their life-partners, i.e. *love-marriage* was permitted.
- *Widows* lived a miserable life and *sati* system was practiced in higher classes of society.
- The kings and nobles patronised dancers for their entertainment.

ECONOMY

The Sangam economy was most prosperous. The common people were included agriculturists or cow-herders, hunters and fisherman. Indigenous industries such as textile, weapon making, ship-building, carpentry, metal smelting, etc. There were also a large number of merchants who indulged in comprehensive trade with foreign countries particularly with Rome. Roman coins of **Augustus Caesar’s** period have been found in a large number in South India.

But, South Indians did not have a system of coinage and they bartered their goods. Examples of honey and roots exchanged for fish-oil and of sugarcane and cornflakes for venison and toddy find its mention.

Economic Groups of people

Group	Work
(i) Kuravar	– Practicing shifting agriculture
(ii) Idaiyar	– rearing and keeping cattles
(iii) Vetar	– hunting and gathering foods
(iv) Ulavar	– ploughing land for crops
(v) Kallar	– plundering i.e., cattle lifting
(vi) Panar	– wandering bards
(vii) Paratavar	– fishing
(viii) Umnar	– salt-manufacturing

RELIGION

Sangam religion is based on the synthesis of the non-Aryan Tamils and the Aryan vedic deities. The people of Sangam Tamil generally worshiped stones, water, stars and planets. The Sangam religious worship is classified into three categories–

- (i) Worship of indigenous Gods,
- (ii) Worship of exotic Hindu Gods
- (iii) Worship or faith in the exotic non-Hindu rituals.

The people worshipped *Murugan*, *Tirumal*, *Balram* and *Indra* in the temple known as Nagar, Koil, Kottam, Purai or Devalayam. The worship of Vedic deities was also not uncommon. The Vedic practice of Yagna (Velvi) Sradha and Panda were practised by the Sangam people. Varna-system took roots even in the South. The influence of Buddhism, Jainism and Ajivikas was paramount.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

The temples of South India had a distinct Dravidian style which is different from the Nagara style of the North Indian temples. The Kailash Temple at Ellora, Hoysala temple at Belur and Halebid, Chennakesava temple at Belur, the Hoysaleswara temple at Halebid, Ratha and **Shore** temple at **Mahabalipuram**, Brihadeshwara temple at Tanjavur, Vithala temple at Hampi, and Meenakshi Temple at Madurai are fine examples of architecture.

Points to Remember

- The Sangam literature speaks highly of three South Indian Kingdoms – Chola, Pandaya and Chera.
- The kingdom of Chola started from Kavery delta to adjoining areas of modern Tanjore and **Trichinopoly Kaveripattanam** was its capital.
- **Karikala** (AD 190) was an important Chola ruler who extended his authority over Ceylon.
- The Pandayas were independent people living beyond the southern border of Mauryan empire.
- The **Kingdom of Pandayas** was extended to modern districts of Madura, Ramnad, Tinnevely and parts of Travancore. **Madurai** was its capital.
- The **Chera kingdom** comprised modern districts of Malabar, Cochin and northern Travancore. Its capital was Vanji. This kingdom had a close commercial relationship with Egypt and Roman empire.
- Sangam literature was compiled in AD 300-600.
- Sangam literature can be divided into two groups – narrative and didactic.
- The Tamils during the Sangam period were ruled by powerful kings. The form of government was hereditary monarchy.
- Sangam literature does not describe any post of Judge. The king was the supreme magistrate.
- The Sangam economy was prosperous. The common people were engaged in agriculture, cow-herding, hunting, fishing, textiles, weapon making etc.
- The Sangam people worshipped *Murugan*, *Tirumal*, and *Balram*. The worship of Vedic deities was also not uncommon.

Exercise - 1

1. Consider the following passage and identify the three tribal principalities referred to therein using the code given below. In the early history of the far South in India, three tribal principalities are mentioned in Ashokan inscriptions of the third century BC and in Kharavela inscription of the third century BC and in Kharavela inscription of the first century BC.
 - (a) Vakatakas, Cholas and Satvahanas
 - (b) Cholas, Pandyas and Cheras
 - (c) Ikshvakus, Vakatakas and Pandyas
 - (d) Pallavas, Cholas and Pandyas
2. Which of the following statement about the institution of kingship during this period is not correct?
 - (a) The form of government was hereditary monarchy
 - (b) The king, whose conquering expedition (march of Digvijaya) was led by a mysterious wheel of gold and gem, was called Chakravartin
 - (c) The crown prince was called Komahan
 - (d) In the Sangam literature we come across numerous instances of women rulers
3. The last anthology or group of Sangam literature, known as 'Ten Idylls', is :
 - (a) Tolkappiyam
 - (b) Kural
 - (c) Manimekalai
 - (d) Pattupattu
4. The word 'Sangam' is associated in Tamil history with:
 - (a) The literature produced during the reign of the great Pallava dynasty of Kanchi
 - (b) The poems written in praise of the Pandyan kings of the early Christian era
 - (c) The court poetry of Chola kings who were famous for patronizing artists
 - (d) A college or assembly (literary academy) of Tamil scholars held under the royal patronage of Pandyan kings at Madurai.
5. Which of the following was not one of the ideas of Sanskrit literature incorporated into Sangam literature?
 - (a) Worship of Indra as the principal deity
 - (b) Arundhati as the ideal of chastity
 - (c) The concept of three-fold debt (rinatraya) of man
 - (d) Uttar-Kuru (northern country) as a land of perpetual enjoyment
6. Which of the following dynasties were constantly at war with the Cheras during the later Sangam Age?
 - (a) Chola
 - (b) Pandaya
 - (c) Ikshvaku
 - (d) Pallava
7. Which of the following does not testify to the impact of Aryan culture on the Sangam Age?
 - (a) Incorporation of Sanskrit ideas into Sangam literature
 - (b) The anxiety to connect the local dynasties with the events of Mahabharata
 - (c) The worship of the forest tree and animal deities
 - (d) The concept of marriage as a sacrament attended with rituals
8. To which of the following dynasties did Karikala, the famous king of this period, belong?
 - (a) Chera
 - (b) Chola
 - (c) Pandya
 - (d) Pallava
9. Which of the following was not one of the royal dynasties of the Tamil country during the Sangam Age?
 - (a) Pandya
 - (b) Pallava
 - (c) Chera
 - (d) Chola
10. The Greco-Roman merchants visiting South India during the Sangam Age were referred to in the Tamil literature as:
 - (a) Yavanas
 - (b) Pahalvlas
 - (c) Yauvanas
 - (d) Ayyavanas
11. Which of the following products of the Sangam Age is considered to be the greatest monument of ancient Tamil literature?
 - (a) Tolkappiyam
 - (b) Padienenkilkanakku
 - (c) Ettutogai
 - (d) Pattupattu
12. The basis, on which the chronology or period of the Sangam literature is fixed between the first to third century A.D., is:
 - (a) King Gajabahu I of Sri Lanka was contemporary of the Chera monarch Senaguttuvan
 - (b) Striking similarity between the Sangam poems and the Greco-Roman accounts on trade
 - (c) Both (a) and (b)
 - (d) Reference to the Chola-Chera-Pandya' kingdoms in Ashokan edicts
13. The centre of Sangam literature and the patrons of Sangam poets were:
 - (a) The Cheras of Vanji
 - (b) The Cholas of Uraiyur
 - (c) The Pandyas of Madurai
 - (d) All of the above
14. The current Tamil designation of the ministers during the Sangam Age was:
 - (a) Amaichchan or Amaichchar
 - (b) Mantri
 - (c) Amatya
 - (d) Surram
15. The term 'Variyam' during the Sangam Age signified the:
 - (a) Revenue-free villages granted to Brahmanas
 - (b) Unit of revenue yielding territory
 - (c) Officer-incharge collecting the land revenue
 - (d) Managing committee of the village assemblies
16. The spies during the Sangam Age were known as:
 - (a) Spasas
 - (b) Dutas
 - (c) Orrars
 - (d) Sanjayans
17. Which of the following works provides a beautiful account of Madurai during the Sangam Age?
 - (a) Manimekalai
 - (b) Silappadikaram
 - (c) Kural or Tirukural
 - (d) Pattupattu
18. Small village Assemblies during the Sangam Age were known as:
 - (a) Manaram
 - (b) Ambalam
 - (c) Avai
 - (d) Podiyil
19. Which of the following was not one of the conventional checks on a king's power?
 - (a) Customs
 - (b) Maxims of the wise
 - (c) Occasional intercessions of the ministers
 - (d) Dictates of the priests
20. The provinces during the Sangam Age were known as Mandalams and Mandalams were further subdivided into:
 - (a) Nadu
 - (b) Kurram
 - (c) Kottam
 - (d) Ur

21. During the Sangam Age, war was usually declared or provoked by:
- Cutting the tutelary tree of the enemy
 - Lifting the cattle of the enemy
 - Besieging the enemy's fort
 - Crushing the crops of the enemy's territory under the feet of elephants
22. Which of the following statements about the manaram, the Sabha of this period, is not correct?
- It was the common meeting place in the village
 - It was the highest court of justice
 - It also served the purpose of a political gathering
 - It was a general assembly dealing with all affairs
23. Which of the following statements about the army of the king is not correct?
- The army traditionally had four arms, namely, chariots drawn by oxen, elephants, cavalry and infantry
 - The captains of the army were invested with the title of Enadi
 - The soldiers wounded in battle were well attended
 - Death on the battlefield was considered to lead to heaven
24. During the Sangam Age a tutelary tree called Kadimaram or Kavalmararam was planted by the rulers at a central place in the town and they took great care to protect the tree because:
- It was believed that the tree had power to protect the town
 - The destruction of the tree was symbolic of the defeat of the ruler
 - Both (a) and (b)
 - The tree was symbolic dynastic growth
25. Which of the following is not one of the sources from which evidence of Indo-Roman trade during the Sangam Age is derived?
- Sangam literature
 - The Roman coins of silver and gold found on the South Indian coast
 - Discovery of a Roman hoard at Arikamedu, near Pondicherry
 - The accounts of Chinese and Roman travellers
26. Which of the following was the most important factor responsible for the extensive growth of foreign trade?
- Surplus production of several commodities which were in great demand in foreign markets
 - Tamils had a great reputation as seafarers
 - There was a direct trade route between Tamil land and Arabia, Egypt and Rome
 - Because the Yavanas (i.e. the Romans, The Greeks and The Egyptians) had colonized certain parts of South India
27. Writing about the volume of Indo-Roman trade, who bitterly remarked "not a year passed without the (Roman) Empire paying out 100 million sesterces (nearly one and a half-crore rupees) to India, to the Chera land and Arabia"?
- Ptolemy
 - Pliny
 - Author of Periplus
 - Caldwell
28. A good contemporary account of the trade between the Tamil States of the Sangam Age and Greece and Rome has been given in :
- Das Wurfelspiel in alten Indien
 - The Sangam work Pattinapalai
 - Periplus of the Erythrean Sea
 - Ptolemy's Geography
29. The chief centre or meeting point of the Indo-Roman trade was:
- Arikamedu
 - Alexandria
 - Madurai
 - Muziris
30. The richest and biggest land-owning class during the Sangam Age were:
- Brahmanas
 - Velas
 - Nayaks
 - Ulavar
31. Which of the following statements regarding the collections of revenue is not correct?
- The leading members of the cowherds community paid revenue in the form of milk and milk products
 - Orrar was incharge of the Revenue Department
 - Ayakkarar was the revenue accountant who collected trade and transit duties
 - The royal seal was fixed on the packet of imported and exported goods after realizing the custom duties
32. Karikala, the Chola king, made a grand anicut on the Kaveri, the water of which nowadays drawn off through a new channel called Vennar. Which of the following regions of Tamil Nadu does it irrigate?
- West Madurai
 - South Arcot
 - South Thanjavur
 - Chingleput
33. Which of the following was not one of the better known agricultural products of the Sangam Age?
- Wheat
 - Rice
 - Sugar-cane
 - Turmeric
34. It is said that in Chola territory, watered by Kaveri, the space in which an elephant could lie down produced enough to feed seven persons. What does this statement imply?
- The elephants were rated very highly among the domesticated animals
 - The lands were very fertile with enough irrigation facilities
 - The economy was mainly agricultural
 - There was a large agricultural surplus
35. Which of the following was not one of the methods of disposal of the dead practiced in the Sangam Age?
- Cremation
 - Simple burial
 - Urn burial
 - Giving watery grave to the dead
36. Which of the following was a great customs port with an artificial harbour?
- Musiri or Muziris
 - Tondi
 - Puhar (Kaveripumpattinam)
 - Uraiyur
37. Which of the following non-Aryan social beliefs has been continuing in Tamil Nadu since the Sangam Age?
- Children wearing an ornament on which the five weapons of Tirumala are punched
 - Wearing of Tali by bride or married woman
 - Shaving the head of the widows
 - Offering a ball of cooked rice to the departed soul
38. Which of the following was great centre of cotton trade?
- Uraiyur
 - Korkai
 - Tondi
 - Musiri or Muziris
39. The Chera king who is said to have gone to North India to get a Himalayan stone to make the image of Goddess Kannagi was:
- Imayavaramban
 - Senaguttuvan
 - Kuttvancheral
 - Nedumcheral Adan

40. Which of the following institutions did not exist during the Sangam Age?
 (a) Slavery (b) Sati
 (c) Ritualistic marriage (d) Courtesans
41. After the death of which one of the following Roman kings was the trade conducted more by barter than by coins on account of the financial difficulties of the Roman Empire?
 (a) Augustus (b) Claudius
 (c) Pius (d) Nero
42. Which of the following was not one of the important articles of export?
 (a) Spice and perfumes (b) Jewels
 (c) Fine textiles (d) Sugar
43. Which of the following was not one of the reasons why India had a favourable balance of trade with the West?
 (a) Great demand for Indian luxury goods
 (b) Import of gold by India in return for her exports
 (c) Imports of coins by India
 (d) Better business sense of Indian traders
44. A Tamil king who is said to have sent the earliest embassy to Augustus at Athens about 20 BC was a _____ king:
 (a) Pandyan (b) Chola
 (c) Chera (d) Pallava
45. Which of the following was the main article of import?
 (a) Gold and silver (b) Pottery and glassware
 (c) Wine and slave girls (d) Horses
46. Which of the following was the wonderful discovery made by Hippalus in A.D. 45, leading to increasing of trade with Rome?
 (a) Fitting of sails to the ships
 (b) Propelling of ship with mechanical aid
 (c) The existence of the monsoon winds, blowing across the Indian Ocean
 (d) A shorter route for Rome to the eastern coast of India
47. The sea borne trade between India and Rome received great impetus during the first-second century A.D. on account of the discovery of:
 (a) Direct sea-route between India and Italy
 (b) Monsoon winds blowing regularly across the Indian Ocean
 (c) Large gold mines in the Roman Empire
 (d) New navigational techniques
48. Which of the following was not one of the popular deities of the Sangam Age?
 (a) Indra and Murugan (b) Siva and Vishnu
 (c) Krishna and Balaram (d) Ganesha
49. Monuments (Herostones) for the dead soldiers bearing their names, which were erected and worshiped during the Sangam Age, were known as:
 (a) Nadukul (b) Virakkal
 (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) Mahavirakkal
50. One of the religious beliefs of the Sangam people, which was primitive in nature, was:
 (a) Worship of totemic symbols
 (b) Ancestor worship
 (c) Worship of stars and planets
 (d) Worship of the Gods and Goddess of the hill-side
51. Which of the following statements about the social structure of the Sangam Age is not correct?
 (a) The difference in the status and economic conditions was well accepted and rarely challenged by the people
 (b) Sangam literature mentions three regular varnas, namely, Brahmins, Kshatriyas and Vaisyas
 (c) There were four castes, namely, Tudiyan, Panan, Paraiyan and Kadamban
 (d) People were organized in professional social groups living apart from one-another
52. At Puhar or Kaveripumpattinam a great festival, described vividly by the Sangam Epic, was held in honour of Lord:
 (a) Venkateswara (b) Murugan
 (c) Indra (d) Svamimalai
53. Which of the following was not one of the popular beliefs and customs prevalent during the Sangam Age?
 (a) There was much faith in omens and astrology
 (b) A woman with dishevelled hair was a bad omen
 (c) Rites were performed to avert the mischief of demons
 (d) Eclipses were believed to be the result of Rahu and Ketu eating up the sun and the moon
54. The most favourite God of the Tamils during the Sangam Age was:
 (a) Indra (b) Murugan
 (c) Tirumal (d) Varuna
55. Which of the following statements about the position of women in the Sangam Age is not correct?
 (a) Higher class women officiated as priests
 (b) Women were employed as guards to attend on the king in the military camps
 (c) The women performing sati used to earn fame
 (d) Women do not seem to have owned property
56. A righteous government to the Sangam Tamils meant one which:
 (a) Promoted agriculture and trade
 (b) Maintained social solidarity
 (c) Provided correct, quick and straight justice
 (d) Pursued social and ethical values
57. Which of the following Sangam works tries to expound the excellence of Buddhism?
 (a) Manimekalai (b) Silappadikaram
 (c) Kurla (d) Tokappiyam
58. The increased commercial intercourse between India and Rome led to the writing of large number of books by the western authors on India and on Indian _____.
 (a) Economy (b) Social life
 (c) Geography (d) All of the above
59. The Ramaka Sidhanta and Paulisa Siddhanta, freely alluded to by the great Indian astronomer Varahmihira, indicate:
 (a) Roman influence on Indian astronomy
 (b) Knowledge of Roman geography
 (c) Adoption of western astronomical terms by the Indian astronomers
 (d) Close interaction between Roman and Indian astronomers
60. In which of the following respects did the Romans not profoundly influenced Indian life and culture?
 (a) Coinage (b) Art
 (c) Astronomy (d) Fashions
61. The Goddess Kannagi, whose many temples were erected during the Sangam Age, was the Goddess of:
 (a) Wisdom (b) Learning
 (c) Chastity (d) Prowess
62. Sangam literature formed a very important source for the reconstruction of the history of South India. It was written in
 (a) Tamil (b) Kannada
 (c) Telugu (d) Malayalam

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Consider the following statements
 - The three literary academics of Sangam literature were at Madurai
 - The akam genre of Tamil poetics dealt with the praise of kings.
 - The poems of the Puran genre had their own tinai and turais.
 - Each akam poem had to follow the nation of turai which had its own deity, biological organisms, subsistence pattern, musical instruments and songs.

Which of these statements is/are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 3 and 4
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 2 and 4

- Consider the following statements
 - Naval expeditions of Rajaraja I occupied parts of Burma, Malaya and Sumatra.
 - Rajendra I conquered Ceylon.
 - The Cholas held northern Ceylon until they were expelled by Vijayabahu I.
 - The Cholas fell in the 13th century when their territory was shared by the Hoysalas and Pandyas.

Which of the above statements is/ are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 3 and 4
(c) 2, 3 and 4 (d) 4 only

- Consider the following statements about the temples built by cholas -
 - The earliest chola temple dating from 10th century is the one at Dadapuram in South Arcot.
 - The huge chola temples of Tanjore and Gangaikonda - Cholapuram are marked by their lofty towers.
 - The later chola temples have mighty gopurans or gateways

Which of the above is/are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) None

- Arrange the following into sequential order and select the correct answer using the codes given below.
 - Rajaraja Chola I
 - Aditya Chola
 - Rajendra Chola
 - Parantaka Chola I

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 (b) 2, 4, 1, 3
(c) 1, 2, 4, 3 (d) 2, 1, 3, 4

- Given below are the two statements one labelled as Assertion (A) and the other labelled as Reason (R) :
Assertion (A) : Advanced farming during the Sangam Age remained absolutely confined to small pockets of wet-land in the valleys of Kaveri, Vaigai, Tamraparni and periyar without any remarkable progress till the 7th-8th centuries.
Reason (R) : Setting fire to standing crops and destruction of settlements (ceri) was common during the Sangam Age :
In the context of the above two statements which one of the following is correct?
(a) Both A and R are true but R is the correct explanation of A
(b) both A and R are true but R is not a correct explanation of A
(c) A is false but R is true
(d) A is true but R is false

Matching Based MCQ

- Match List 'A' with 'B' and choose the correct answer from the options given below:

A	B
(1) Bull flag	(a) Shivan
(2) Peacock flag	(b) Murugan
(3) Garuda flag	(c) Tirumal
(4) The mace	(d) Kurram

(a) 1-a, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d
(b) 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-a
(c) 1-a, 2-b, 3-c, 4-d
(d) 1-d, 2-c, 3-b, 4-a
- Match List 'I' with 'II' and select the correct answer from the options given below the lists:

A	B
(A) Pon-vanikan	(1) Textile merchant
(B) Aruvai-vanikan	(2) Toddy merchant
(C) Kolu-vanikan	(3) Salt merchant
(D) Uppu-vanikan	(4) Gold merchant
(E) Panita-vanikan	(5) Ploughshare merchant

Codes :

A	B	C	D	E
(a) 1	2	3	4	5
(b) 4	5	3	2	1
(c) 4	1	2	3	5
(d) 4	1	5	3	2

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

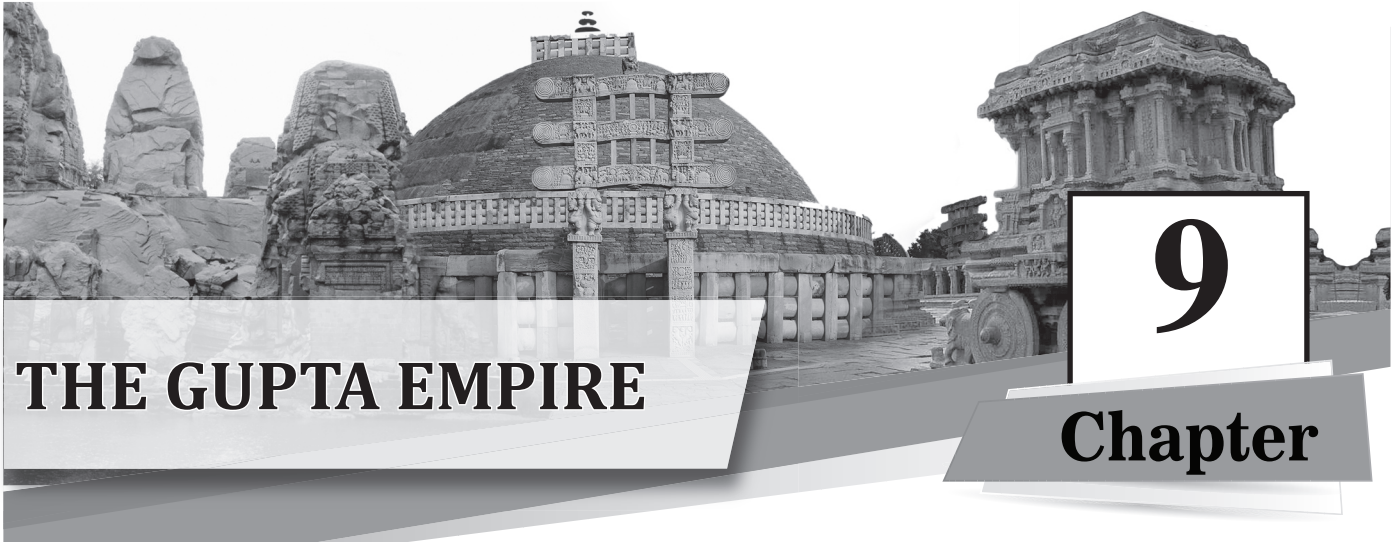
1. (b) The Edicts of Ashoka (Ashokan inscription) are a collection of 33 inscriptions on the Pillars of Ashoka, as boulders and cave walls, made by the Emperor Ashoka of the Maurayan dynasty during his reign 269 BC to 231 BC. These inscriptions are dispersed throughout the areas of modern day Bangladesh, India, Nepal and Pakistan. In the Ashoka inscriptions there were three south Indian states cholas, Pandayas and cheras was in existence.

2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (b)
 7. (c) 8. (b) 9. (b) 10. (a) 11. (c)
 12. (c) 13. (c) 14. (a) 15. (b) 16. (c)
 17. (a) 18. (c) 19. (d) 20. (c) 21. (b)
 22. (c) 23. (c) 24. (c) 25. (d) 26. (a)
 27. (b) 28. (c) 29. (b) 30. (b) 31. (b)
 32. (c) 33. (a) 34. (b) 35. (d) 36. (c)

37. (b) 38. (a) 39. (b) 40. (a) 41. (d)
 42. (d) 43. (d) 44. (a) 45. (a) 46. (c)
 47. (b) 48. (d) 49. (c) 50. (a) 51. (b)
 52. (c) 53. (d) 54. (b) 55. (a) 56. (c)
 57. (a) 58. (c) 59. (a) 60. (d) 61. (c)
 62. (a) The poems belonging to the Sangam literature were composed by Tamil poets.

EXERCISE-2

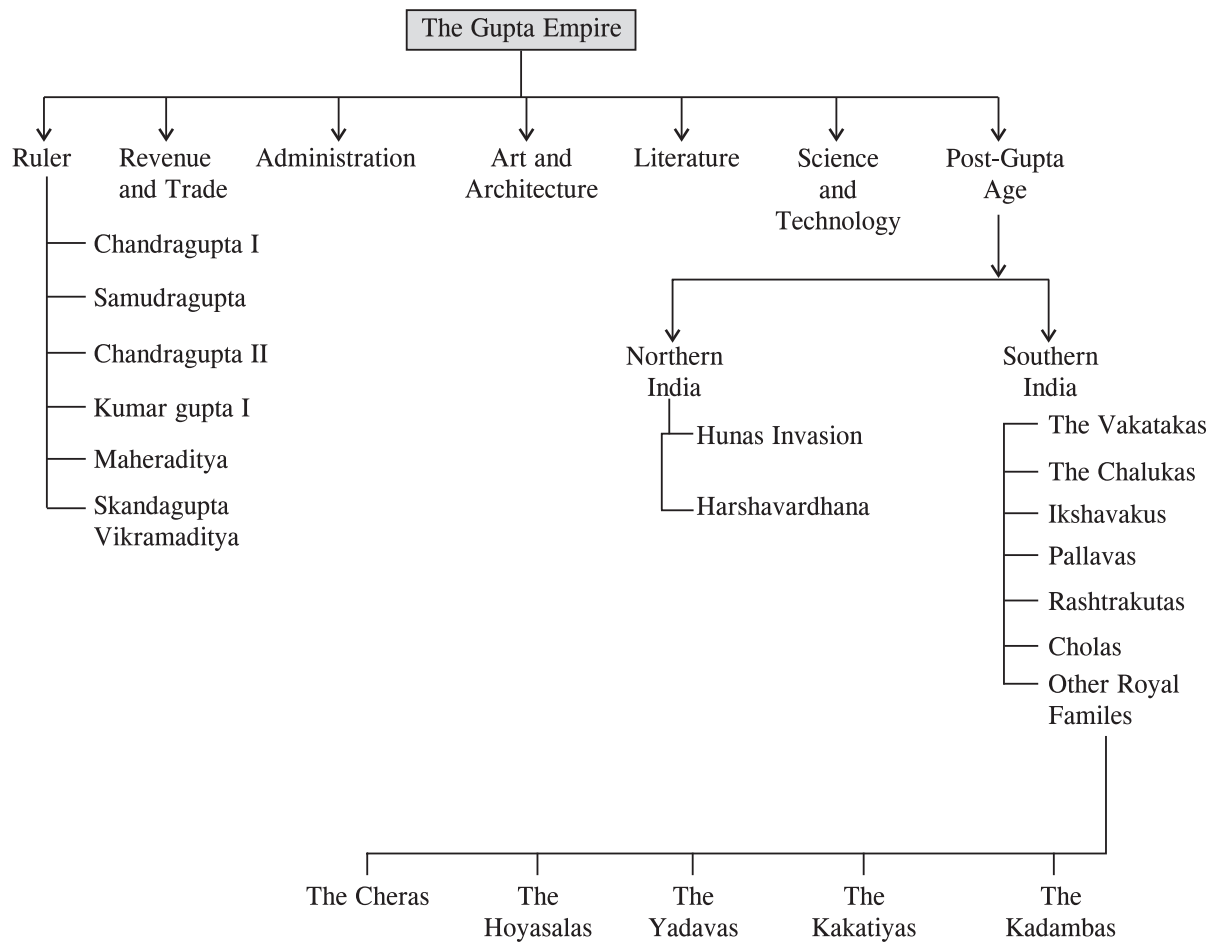
1. (c) The Aham and Puran are called post sangam works because they are compiled later than Sangam period
 2. (c) 3. (a)
 4. (b) Chola kingdom rose in 9th century. It was Vijaypal who established it. Other rulers were Aditya-I, Parantaka Chola-I, Rajaraja Chola-I and Rajendra Chola.
 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (d)



Introduction

By the end of third century A.D. the powerful empires established by the Kushanas in the north and Satvahanas in the Deccan had come to end. It was against this background that the Guptas emerged to dominate the history of India for the next four centuries.

Information about the Gupta period is available from both archaeological and literary sources. The most important archaeological source is in the Allahabad Pillar inscription. Temples, Paintings and Coins are some other archaeological sources. The main literary sources include the works of *Kalidasa* and these accounts of *Fa-Hien* and *It-sing*.



RULERS OF GUPTA EMPIRE

Chandragupta I (A.D. 320-335)

Chandragupta I, grand son of Sri Gupta and son of Ghototkacha was the most powerful ruler of the line. He increased power and prestige of the empire to a great extent by matrimonial alliance and conquests. He married *Kumaradevi*, the Lichhavi princess. His empire extended from Magadh, modern Bihar, Oudh, Prayag (Allahabad), Tirhent, in addition to Magatha he adopted the title if *Maharajadhiraj*.

Samudragutpa (A.D. 335-375)

Samudragupta, son of Chandragupta I ascended the throne in A.D. 335 He was the greatest ruler of Gupta dynasty. An inscription engraved on a pillar at Allahabad popularly called *Allahabad Pillar* inscription or the *Prayag Prashasti* is the main source of information on his reign. The *Prashasti* was composed by Samudragupta's court poet *Harisena* which gives a detailed account of the conquests of Samudragupta. This account contains a long list of states king and tribes which were conquered and brought under various degrees of subjugations. Harisensa also described Samudragupta as the '*Hero of a Hundred Battles*'.

Chandragupta II (380-414 A.D.)

Samundragupta was succeeded by his son Chandragupta. He was also known as Vikramaditya. Chandragupta married his daughter Prabhavati with a Vakataka prince who belonged to the Brahmana caste and ruled in central India. The prince died and was succeeded by his young son, So, *Prabhavati* became the ritual ruler. Chandragupta exercised indirect control over the Vakataka Kingdom in central India. This offered a great advantage to him. With his great influence in this area, Chandragupta II conquered western Malwa and Gujarat, which had been under the rule of the Saka Kshatrapas for about four centuries by that time. The conquest gave Chandragupta the eastern sea coast, famous for trade and commerce. This contributed to the prosperity of Malwa, and its chief city Ujjain. *Ujjain* seems to have been made the second capital by *Chandragupta II*.

Kumaragupta I Maheraditya (415-455 A.D.)

Kumaragupta, son of Chandragupta I ascended the throne in 415. Nothing is known about his political career, but numismatic and epigraphic evidence indicate that the strength, unity, and prestige of the empire remained unshaken in his reign. Towards the end of his reign, the Gupta power was seriously menaced by the hostility of the Pushyamitra, a tribe of uncertain identity.

Skandagupta Vikramaditya (455-467 A.D.)

Skandagupta, the last powerful king of the Gupta dynasty came to the throne when the war with Pushyamitra was still going on. His victory saved the Gupta empire; but it was invaded by the *Hunas*. He succeeded in defeating the Hunas and in maintaining the integrity of his ancestral empire. Success in repelling the Hunas seems to have been celebrated by the assumption of the title *Vikramaditya*. The decline of the empire began soon after his death. The Hunas later became the rulers of Punjab and Kashmir.

Decline of the Gupta Empire

Though their rule lasted till the middle of the sixth century A.D. the imperial glory had ended a century earlier.

The reasons were:

- (i) invasion by the Hunas,
- (ii) rise in feudalism,
- (iii) weak successors,
- (iv) financial difficulties,
- (v) decline of foreign trade, and
- (vi) absence of large professional army to maintain vast empire.

REVENUE AND TRADE

From the inscriptions of the Gupta period we come to know that taxes were levied at that time were of eighteen types. Land revenue and so called *Bhaga* were the chief source of income. It is known from the inscription of Pallavas and Vakatakas that taxes were enforced on buffalo milk, curd and also on fruits and flowers. The forests, meadows and salt mines, added to the income of the state.

During this period, the ship-building industry was at peak. *Tamralipti*, a port in Bengal, was an important trade centre and from there trade was carried on with the eastern countries like China, Ceylon, Java and Sumatra. In Andhra, there were many ports on the banks of the rivers, Godavari and Krishna; *Tondai* was a famous port of Chola state. Kalyana, Chol, Broach and Cambay were the important ports of the South.

GUPTA ADMINISTRATION

Opposite to the Mauryas, the Gupta kings adopted pompous title such as parameshavara, maharajadhiraja and paramabhataraka which signify that they ruled over kings in their empire. Kingship was hereditary, but royal power was limited by absence of a firm practice of primogeniture. The throne did not always go to the eldest son.

The Gupta bureaucracy was not as efficient as that of the Mauryas. The most important officers in the Gupta empire were the *kumaramatyas*. The Guptas organized a system of provincial and local administration. The empire was divided into divisions (*bhuktis*) and each bhukti was placed under the charge of an *uparika*. The bhuktis were divided into districts

(*vishayas*), which were placed under the charge of *vishyapati*. In eastern India, the *vishyas* were divided into *vithis*, which again were divided into villages. The village headman became more important in Gupta times.

Land taxes increased while those on trade and commerce decreased; land tax was between 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.

Visthi (Forced labour) prevailed. Religious functionaries were granted land called *Agrahara*.

Important Officials at the Central Level

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| (i) Mahabaladhikrita | – Commander-in-Chief |
| (ii) Mahadanayak | – Chief justice |
| (iii) Mahapratihar | – An official to maintain the royal palace. |
| (iv) Mahasandhivigrahak | – An official for post-war conciliation |
| Or Sandhivigrahak | |

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| (v) Dandapashika | – Head of the police department |
| (vi) Bhandagaradhikreta | – Head of the royal treasury |
| (vii) Mahapaksha-Patalik | – Head of the account department |
| (viii) Vinaysthitisansathapak | – Head of the education department |
| (ix) Sarvadhyaksha | – Inspector for the all central departments |
| (x) Mahashwapati | – Controller of cavalry. |
| (xi) Mahamahipilapati | – Controller and executor of elephantry. |
| (xii) Vinayapura | – Official to present different guests at king's court |
| (xiii) Yuktapurusha | – Office to keep account of war booty |
| (xiv) Khadyatpakika | – Inspector of royal kitchen |
| (xv) Ranabhandagarika | – Officer-in-charge of army stores |
| (xvi) Mahanarpati | – Head of foot soldiers (infantry) |

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

The Gupta period witnessed exceptional growth in the field of architecture, sculpture, painting and terra cotta. That is why the period is also known as the '*Golden Age of Ancient India*'. In architectural types it gave entrance to a new age which is particularly noticed in the architectural style of the temples. In fact, it initiated a creative and formative period for the foundation of a typical Indian temple architecture.

Apart from temple architecture rock-cut architecture also reached their zenith. The most remarkable of these are to be found in Ajanta, Ellora, Aurangabad (Hyderabad) and Bagh (Central India). Bragnabucak rock-cut shrines although lesser in number than those of the Buddhist, were not rare either. Reference may be made in this connection to the Udaygiri series of shrines near Bhilsa in Bhopal state. The shrines are both rock-cut Brahmanical shrines and are also to be found at Badami in the Bijapur district. Jaina caves are to be found at Badami as also at *Aihole*.

The art of painting, including *terra-cotta* and clay modelling, considered a secular character during this period and became more popular than stone sculpture. The best specimens of painting of the period are to be found on the walls of the *Ajanta caves*, *Bagh cave in Gwalior*, *Settannavasal temple at Puddukkottai* and at *Badami*. Incidents of life of Buddha were the main theme of the Gupta painters. The Painting '*Dying Princess*' in one Ajanta cave has earned the admiration of Burgess, Fergusson, Griffiths and many others. The Gupta art of painting has been praised by art critics for its brilliance of colour, richness of expression and delicacy of execution.

The artists of the Gupta age were also superb in casting metals and making of copper statues. The iron pillar at Delhi made at time of Samudragupta is a marvel of metallurgical skill of the Gupta period artists.

LITERATURE

During the period of Gupta dynasty, Sanskrit literature greatly flourished. It would not be unfair to say that there was never such a literary outburst in India especially in the sphere of Sanskrit language.

Prose and poetry both were written during this period. The Allahabad Pillar Inscription shows that Harisena was a poet of great eminence. The manner in which, he has described the achievement of Samudragupta by Chandragupta signifies he was a poet of great calibre.

Important Literary works during the Gupta period

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Raghuwansa, Ritusamhara, Meghaduta | – Kalidasa |
| Ravanabodha | – Batsabhathi |
| Kavyadarshana and Dasakumarcharita | – Dandin |
| Kirtarjunyam | – Bharavi |
| Nitishataka | – Bhartahari |

Dramas

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| Vikramovarshiya, Malvikagnimitra and Abhijnanasakuntalam | – Kalidasa |
| Mrichchakatika | – Sudaraka |
| Swapnavasavadatta, Charudatta and Pratignayaugandharayana | – Bhasa |
| Mudrarakshasa and Devichandraguptam | – Visakhadatta |

Eulogy

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| Pryag-Prasasti | – Harisena |
|----------------|------------|

Philosophy

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| Sankhyakarika (base on Sankhya philosophy) | – Ishwar Krishna |
| Padartha Dharmasangraha (based on Vaisheshika Philosophy) | – Acharya Prashastipada |
| Vyasa Bhasya (based on Yoga philosophy) | – Acharya Vyasa |
| Nyaya Bhasya (on Nyaya philosophy) | – Vatsyayana |

Religious Works

The two great epics, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata, were given final shape during the period.

Grammar

Amarakosha	- Amarsimha
Chandrvyakarana	- Chandragomin
Kavyadarsha	- Dandin

Narrative Story

Panchatantra and Hitopadesha	- Vishnu Sharma
------------------------------	-----------------

Smritis

Vaynavalkyasmriti, Parasharsmriti, Brihaspatismriti, Naradasmriti and Katyayanasmriti

Mathematics and Astronomy

Aryabhattyaya, Dashjitikasutra and	- Aryabhata
Aryashtashata	- Varahmihira
Brahmsamhita and Panchasidhantika	- Brahmagupta
Brahmasidhanata	

Miscellaneous Works

Nitisastra	- Kamandaka
Kamsutra	- Vatsayana
Kavyalankara	- Bhamah

Poetry, verse and drama of a very high class were composed and written in this age. The name of Kalidasa shines like a glittering star in the period. It is very difficult to say which of his work is the best but *Shakuntalam* is the most popular of his plays. Before the *Shakuntalam*, Kalidasa had already composed two plays, the *Malavikagnimitra* and the *Vikramorvasiya*. His two Mahakavyas, *Raghuvamsa* and *Kamarasambhava* and the lyrical poem *Meghaduta* are universally regarded as *gems of Sanskrit poetry*.

Philosophical literature was also written during this period. The Hindus, Buddhists and Jains all wrote on the principles of their respective religions. A commentary was written on Sankhya philosophy and also on Mimamsa Sutra. In this period Vatsayana wrote a commentary on the philosophy of law, although his views were contradicted, later on, by Dingnaga Chandra, a great intellect, wrote a book called '*Dashpadarthastra*'.

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**Mathematics**

In the field of mathematics, we come across during this period a work called *Aryabhattyaya* written by *Aryabhata*, who belonged to Pataliputra. It seems that this mathematician was well versed in various kinds of calculations. A Gupta inscription of Allahabad suggests that the decimal system was known in India at the beginning of the fifth century A.D. In the field of astronomy a book called *Romaka Sidhanta* was compiled. It was influenced by Greek ideas, as can be inferred from its name.

Aryabhata was the first to use the *decimal system*. He formulated the rule for finding out the area of triangle which led to the origin of *trigonometry* and calculated the value of **pie** (π). He laid the foundation of algebra in his *aryabhattyaya*. The most famous work of this time was *Suryasidhanta*. Brahmagupta in 7th century A.D. began to apply algebra to astronomical problems. The three major contributions in the field of mathematics are the notational system, the decimal system and the use of zero.

Metallurgy

The Gupta craftsmen distinguished themselves by their work in iron and bronze. We know of several bronze images of the Buddha, which began to be produced on a considerable scale because of the knowledge of advanced metal technology. In the case of iron objects the best example is the iron pillar

found at Mehrauli in Delhi. Manufactured in the fourth century A.D. believed to be erected by *Kumaragupta*, the pillar has not gathered any rust in the subsequent 15 centuries, which is a great tribute to the technological skill of the craftsmen. It was impossible to produce such a pillar in any iron foundry in the west until about a century ago. It is a pity that the later craftsmen could not develop this knowledge further.

Astronomy

In the field of astronomy, this period also witnessed excellent work. *Aryabhata* and *Varahmihir* were prominent astronomers. The former found out the causes of lunar and solar eclipses; calculated the circumference of earth; was first to reveal that the sun is stationary and the earth revolved round the sun. *Varahmihir's* well known works are *Brihatsamhita* and *Panch Sidhantika*. Brahmagupta wrote the *Brahma Sphutic Siddhanta* in verse and laid the foundation of the law of gravitation.

Medicine

Sushruta and *Charak* were the two great physicians of this period. The *Sushruta Samhita* describes the methods of operating cataracts, stone diseases and various other ailments. *Charaka* is considered to be the father of Indian Medicine. *Vrihad Vagabhatta*, a well-known physician, guided by the work of *Charaka*, wrote *Astanghridaya*.

THE POST GUPTA AGE**Northern India**

By the end of fifth century the vast Gupta empire broke up into several independent states. It was due to the repeated invasions of the Hunas, the nomadic tribesman of central Asia and internal disruption of provincial governments, who established independent-states in different parts of the northern part of India. With the decline of the imperial Gupta, Magadha

and its capital Pataliputra, which since the sixth century B.C. had been the centre of political activity in North India, lost their importance when Harsha united his ancestral kingdom of Thaneswar with the Maukhari kingdom of Kannauj and shifted his capital to Karnnuj. From now (A.D. 606) onwards till the Turkish conquests at the close of the twelfth century, Kanauj remained the centre of political activity in North India.

Hunas Invasion (A.D. 454)

There was a barbarous race which came to India from Central Asia. Hunas invaded India for the first time during the reign of Kumaragupta but their further progress was checked by the Gupta king who inflicted a crushing defeat upon them in about 460 A.D. After fourteen years of this invasion, Hunas defeated Firoz, king of Persia, and became the masters of Persia. This success boosted their power and by the end of fifth century A.D., they ruled over a vast empire. From this time onwards the invasions of Hunas over India became more frequent.

Harshavardhana (A.D. 606-647)

The break-up of the Gupta Empire was followed by a period of disorder. Small kingdoms fought against one-another. Finally, Harshavardhana conquered these kingdoms and established a powerful empire.

Source Materials

We come to know about Harsha and the developments during his reign from two main sources. One is *Harshacharita*, the biography of the king written in Sanskrit by his court poet *Banabhatta*. The book lists military and cultural achievements of Harsha. The other is the account of *Hiuen Tsang*, who visited India during Harsha's reign. He spent eight years in the court of Harsha. He has written in detail about the developments during these years. Besides these sources, inscriptions and coins of this period also tell us about Harsha.

Kannauj - As Capital

Harshavardhan shifted his capital from *Thanesvar to Kannauj* which was situated on the bank of Ganga. He converted it into a magnificent, wealthy and well-fortified city, nearly four miles long and a mile broad, furnished with numerous lofty buildings, and adorned with many tanks and gardens.

Generally, he is regarded as the last powerful Hindu emperor of India, but he was neither a staunch Hindu nor the ruler of the whole country. His authority was limited to the north India except Kashmir. Rajasthan, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Orissa were under his direct control, but his sphere of influence spread over a much wider area. Mostly, the feudatories seem to have accepted his suzerainty.

Administration Under Harsha

Harsha ruled his kingdom on the same lines as the Guptas did, except that his administration had become more feudal and decentralised. It is stated that Harsha had soldiers numbering over one lakh and 60,000 cavalry and 9,000 elephants. Harsha could mobilize that support of all his feudatories at the time of war. Evidently every feudatory contributed his quota of foot soldiers and horse, and thus made the army vast in numbers. Land grants continued to be made to priests for special services rendered to the state. In addition, Harsha is credited with the grant of land to the officers by charters. These grants allowed more concessions to priests and officers than those by the earlier grants. Thus, the feudal practice of rewarding and paying officers with grants of land on a large scale seems to have begun under Harsha.

Harsha-A Patron of Arts

Harsha was a patron of arts and learning. He himself was a good writer. He wrote three plays in Sanskrit-*Ratnavali*, *Priyadarshika* and *Nagananda*. Scholars like Banabhatta, Subandhu and Dandian lived in his court. In his early years, Harsha was a worshipper of Shiva but later he became a Buddhist. He was tolerant of other religions. He organized a grand assembly at Kannauj. He also gave money to the University of Nalanda. This university prospered and became a famous centre of learning. Hiuen Tsang spent many years studying Buddhist text at this Nalanda University.

Harsha ruled for about forty-one years till his death in A.D. 647. His death facilitated the growth of petty territories to become states. He also does not seem to have left any heir to the throne of Kanauj which was usurped after his death by his minister.

Southern India

The period during A.D. 300 to A.D. 750 witnesses the second historical phase in the regions south of the Vindhayas. By the beginning of the seventh century, the Pallavas of Kanchi, the Chalukyas of Badami and the Pandyas of Madurai appeared to be the three major states.

The Vakatakas (A.D. 225-510)

The Satvahanas were succeeded by the Vakatakas, a local power in northern Maharashtra and Vidarbha (Berar). The Vakatakas, who were Brahmanas themselves, are known from a large number of copper-plate and grants issued to the Brahmanas. They were great champions of the Brahmanical religion and performed several Vedic sacrifices. Their political history is of more importance to north India than to south India. Culturally, the Vakataka kingdom became a channel for transmitting brahmanical ideas and social institutions to the south.

The founder of this dynasty was *Vidya Shakti* but his son Pravarsena could be its real founder in western and central India. Chandragupta II realised the importance of this empire and formed alliance through marriage of his daughter into Vakataka family.

In 5th century A.D., Vakatakas extended their power in Malwa. Harisena was the last important monarch controlling all the central Deccan.

The Vakatakas contributed towards the arts and architecture. Several caves of Ajanta are credited to the royal patronage of the Vakatakas.

They were uprooted by the growing power of Chalukyas of Badami, Pallavas of Kanchipuram and Pandyas of Madurai. The Vakatakas had been in power for about two centuries.

The Chalukyas (543-753 A.D.)

(a) Chalukyas of Badami

The most notable of the early medieval dynasties of the Deccan was that of the Chalukyas. *Jayasimha* was the first Chalukyan king. But Pulakeshin I is generally attributed to be the first Chalukyan king. He was succeeded by Maharaja Kirtivarman in 566 A.D. Pulakeshin II was the most prominent ruler of the dynasty who ruled from A.D. 608 and was a contemporary of Harshavardhan.

His fame was far extended even upto Persia, with whom he exchanged embassies. He was defeated and killed by the Pallava ruler Narsimvarman. 32 years later in 674, one of Pulakeshin's son avenged his father's death and captured Kanchi.

(b) Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi

Pulkeshin II's brother, *Kubja Vishnu Vardhan* established a new dynasty with its capital at the ancient city of Vengi. But soon its power was declined and in about 10th century they allied the Cholas but the Chola king did not maintain the alliance and annexed the kingdom in A.D. 1076

(c) Western Chalukyas of Kalyani

The kingdom founded by Taila II in 973, after defeating Amoghavarsha IV, the last Rashtrakuta ruler. He extended his kingdom upto southern part of Pormera kingdom of Malwa. Vikramaditya II Tribhuvanmall (1076-1126) was the greatest ruler of this dynasty and he was regarded as the hero of Bilhana's *Vikramankadevacharita*. He is the founder of the Vikarm Samvat Era. Jagadekamall II, was the last ruler after whose death his Kalachuri minister Vijjala usurped his throne.

Art and Architecture

Art made great progress under their patronage. The temple architecture was a blend of Dravida and Nagara styles. They built about 70 temples at Aihole which is rightly regarded as the 'cradle of Indian temple architecture'. Other famous temples include the Virupaksha temple at Pattadakal, the Vishnu temple of Badami, the Shiva temple of Maguti and the Kasi Vishvesvara temple of Lakhundi. They gave patronage to Hinduism and Jainism. Their empire came to an end by A.D. 753 when their feudatory Rastrakutas defeated Kirtivarman.

Ikshvakus

On the decline of the Satvahana power in the eastern part of the peninsula there arose the Ikshvakus in the *Krishna Guntur* region. They seem to have been a local tribe who adopted the dignified name of the Ikshvakus in order to show the antiquity of their lineage. They are mostly recalled for monuments like *Nagarjunakonda* and *Dharanikota*. They were overthrown by the Pallavas.

Pallavas (600-757 A.D.)

During the 6th century to late 8th century, the Pallavas were the dominant power in the Deccan, who were the indigenous subordinates of the Satavahanas. They marched to Andhra and then to Kanchi where they established the mighty Pallava Empire. Pallavas were religious tolerant and supported Buddhism, Jainism and the Brahminical faith and were patrons of music, paintings and literature. Their greatest monuments are at Mahabalipuram. The clash between the Pallavas and the Chalukyas continued for many centuries. The last Pallava ruler Aparajitavarma was defeated by the Cholas.

Struggle Between The Pallavas and the Chalukyas

The main cause of the struggle between Pallavas and Chalukyas was the supremacy. The Pandyas, who were in control of Madurai and Tinnevely district of Tamil Nadu, joined this conflict as a poor third. Although both the Pallavas and the

Chalukyas supported Brahmanism, performed Vedic sacrifices and made grants to the Brahmanas, the two quarreled with each-other for prestige and territorial resources. Both tried to establish supremacy over the land lying between the Krishna and the Tungabhadra.

The first important event in this long struggle took place in the reign of *Pulakeshin-II* (609-642), the most prominent Chalukya king. He overthrew the Kadamba capital at *Banavasi* and compelled the Ganges of Mysore to accept his suzerainty. He also defeated Harsha's army on the Narmada and checked his march towards the Deccan. In his conflict with the Pallavas, he almost reached the Pallava capital, but the Pallavas purchased peace by ceding their northern-provinces to Pulakeshin II.

Pulakeshin's second invasion of the Pallava territory ended in failure. The Pallava king *Narasimhavarman* (A.D. 630-668) occupied the Chalukya capital at *Vatapi* in about A.D. 642, when Pulakeshin II was probably killed in fight against the Pallavas. Narsimhavarman adopted the title of *Vatapikonda* or the conqueror of *Vatapi*. He is also said to have defeated the Cholas, the Cheras, the Pandyas and the Kalabhras.

By the end of the seventh century, the conflict was subsided but it was again resumed in the first half of the eighth century A.D. The Chalukya king *Vikramaditya II* (A.D. 733-745) is said to have overrun Kanchi three times. In 740 A.D., he completely overthrew the Pallavas. His victory ended the Pallava supremacy in the far south although the ruling house continued for more than a century afterwards. However, the Chalukyas could not enjoy the fruits of their victory over the Pallavas for long for their own hegemony was brought to an end in A.D. 757 by the Rashtrakutas.

Rashtrakutas (A.D. 753-973)

The term Rashtrakutas means officers-in-charge of territorial divisions called *rashtr*. The Rashtrakutas originally belonged to *Lattalura*, modern Latur of Maharashtra. They were of Kannada origin and Kannada was their mother tongue.

The founder of the Rashtrakuta was *Dantidurga*. He was contemporary of Chalukya king Pulkeshin II. Dantidurga was succeeded by his uncle Krishnaraja (768-772). He defeated the territories that were still under the Chalukyas and thereby completed conquest of the Chalukya territories. Chalukyaraj Vishnuvardhana IV of Vengi and the Ganga king of Mysore were overthrown by the Rashtrakuta King Krishnaraja. *Krishnaraja* built the *Kailash temple of Ellora* which was superb example of the Rashtrakuta art and architecture. Krishnaraja's eventful period came to an end within a very short time and he was succeeded by his son Govindraj who ruled for sometime as Govinda II. His worthlessness as a ruler and his lack of interest in administration led to his deposition by his brother Dhruva who ascended the throne himself. Dhruva was succeeded by Govinda III, his son and with almost equal vigour as of his father.

The Rashtrakutas kept on the best of terms with the Arabas of Sindh and enriched their subjects by encouraging commerce.

They encouraged Hinduism, and Dighambara Jainism.

Their capital was at Manyakheta.

Literature was encouraged. The king Amoghavarsha I himself authored a part of *Kavirajamarga*, the earliest known Kannada poem.

The powerful king of the Rashtrakuta dynasty was *Amoghavarsha* who succeeded in defeating the East-Chalukya kings. It was Amoghavarsha who had successfully checked the progress of the Gurjara King Bhoja I towards South India. He set up a new capital at Malkhed or Manyakheta and during his reign Broach became the best port of his kingdom.

Amoghavarsha ruled for 63 years and he was succeeded by his son Krishna II who in his turn was succeeded by Indra III. Indra III was a powerful king. He defeated and deposed Mahipala. The Rastrkuta King Amoghavarsha II, Govinda IV and Amoghavarsha III were weak and worthless kings. The last powerful and efficient king of the Rastrakutas was Krishna III.

Cholas

The founder of the Chola dynasty was *Vijayala*, a feudatory of the Pallavas. His dynasty rose to high eminence and lasted for more than two centuries. Vijayala rose to power near *Uraiyar*, the capital of the Cholas of the Sangam Age. An inscription at Tiruchirapalli district records a gift of land in accordance with the orders of the Parakesari Vijayala Chladeva. The titles of Parakesari and Rajakesari were alternately assumed by the Chola sovereigns from the time of Vijayala.

The ascendancy of *Rajraja* gave Cholas, the supreme power in India, Rajraja was the most famous and important among the Cholas. He very efficiently and successfully carried on the administration of his country from A.D. 985 to 1014 A successful conqueror, he had defeated the Cheras and the Pandyas. He had annexed Mysore and Travancore and had defeated the Chalukyas of Vengi. The inscriptions reveal that he had conquered the Simhaldip. His conquests established his authority in the Deccan.

Rajraja was succeeded by his son, *Rajendra*. He was also a brave warrior and a successful ruler. He ruled from A.D. 1015-1035. After his death, his son, *Rajadhiraja*, became the ruler. He was the last among the Cholas. In 1052, he was killed while fighting with the Chalukyas.

Chola Administration

The most striking feature of the administrative system of the Cholas was their autonomous village and town administration. there was no significant difference between the central and provincial administration of the Cholas and that of any other dynasty of early medieval India. But, the administration of Cholas was more centralized than that of the Rashtrakutas or the Chalukyas.

Central Administration: The emperor or king was at the apex of the administration. He had an *udankuttam*, immediate attendants, a group of ministers representing all the chief departments of administration to advise him on the disposal of business, besides a chancery (*olai*). Worship at deceased rulers, and construction of temples as tributes to dead kings was a special feature of the Chola period.

There was an elaborate and complicated administrative machinery or bureaucracy for the Cholas, comprising officials of various grades. The officials tended to form a separate class in society, organized in two ranks, an *upper perundanam* and a *lower sirudanam*. Higher officers were known by the title of *adigarigal*, while officers of all ranks were usually referred to

by the general titles of *Karumigal* and *Panimakkal*. They were usually remunerated by assignments of land (*jivitas*) suited to their position. Titles of honour and shares in booty taken in war formed other rewards of public service.

Provincial Administration: The empire was divided into principalities (under vassal chiefs) and mandalams (provinces under viceroys who were mostly royal princes) with further division of the provinces into Valanadus (divisions), Nadus (districts) and Kurrams (villages).

Achievement of Cholas: The Chola empire during Rajaraja I included Tamil Nadu, Goorg, Srilanka and many islands including Laskswadeep and Maldives.

Rajendra Chola assumed the title of Gangaikonda, after consolidating his territories right upto river Ganga.

Chola art and Literature: The Cholas greatly encouraged sculpture, architercute and painting. The Cholas established new cities and constructed many palatial buildings. They beautifully erected temples served as the conference houses for the assemblies. The Shiva temple of *Rajrajeshwar* at Tanjore is a perfect example of Chola art which is 197 feet high and has thirteen storeys. The Brihadesvara temple at Thanjore is the finest specimen of Chola architecture.

Literature and culture too witnessed a great progress under the Cholas. Culture had reached the height of glory and peak of power. Sanskrit and Tamil languages developed to a great extent. The Chola kings greatly encouraged the scholarly and the literary minds.

Arab Influence

On the west coast, the initiative in the trade with the west was gradually passing into the hands of the Arabs. Indian Traders were becoming suppliers of goods rather than carriers and communication with the West became indirect, via the Arabs, and limited to trade alone. Maritime trade with South East Asia continued. There were now three major kingdoms. Kambuja (Cambodia), Champa (Annan) and Shrivijaya (the southern Malay Peninsula and Sumatra), with whom cultural contact increased. Pallava architectural styles and the Tamil script were extensively used amongst the local royalty.

Other Royal Families of the Deccan

The Cheras

In ancient time *Kerala* was known as *Cheras*. The kingdom extended to the districts of Malabar, Travancore, Cochin, etc. The Cheras had trade relations with Rome in the first century A.D. the description of the Cheras of early times is found in the edicts of Ashoka, in which they have been called by the name of Kerala Putras. Enough historical material about the history of Kerala is not available. Some of the important rulers of this dynasty were *Perunar*, *Adan II*, and *Senaguttavam*, etc. who in their reigns fought many battles with other dynasties of the Deccan like the Cholas, the Pandyas, and the Hoyasalas, etc. They remained dominant till the 13th century A.D.

The Hoyasalas

The kingdom of Hoyasalas situated between the kingdom of the Chalukyas on the North-West and that of the Cholas on

south-east. They ruled over modern Mysore and Madras. Their capital was *Dwarasamudra*. The credit of bringing this dynasty into eminence goes to *Vishnu Vardhan*. He improved political position of his kingdom by his victories. With the help of his commander-in-chief, Ganga Raja, he defeated the Cheras, the Cholas and the Pandyas. He defeated the Gurjaras at Talkad. The *Chennakesava* temple built by Vishnuvardhan at Belur in A.D. 1117 and the *Hoyasaleswar* temple built in A.D. 1150 at Halesbid are examples of Hoyasala architecture. The kingdom of the Hoyasalas made all the progress under *Vir Balla II*. He defeated the Chalukyas and the Yadavas too. The last king of this dynasty was *Vir Balla III*, who was defeated by *Malik Kafur*, the chief general of *Alauddin Khilji* in 1311. He deposed him from the throne and this, dynasty came to its end.

The Yadavas

The Yadavas were, at first, under the supremacy of the Chalukyas, became independent and began to gain power. They ruled over the region that extended from *Nasik to Devagiri*. Thus, Khandesh territory was under their sway. These people acknowledged being chandravansi (Moon race). Their great rulers were Bhillama; Simhana Ramachandra, etc. *Bhillama* was the first important king of this dynasty. He reigned from 1187 to 1191. He conquered the Hoyasalas and made *Devagiri* his capital. The most prominent king of this dynasty was *Simhana* who defeated several dynasties, such as, the Hoyasalas, the Andhras, etc. He also defeated Arjun Varman, the ruler of Malwa. In addition to this, he invaded Gujarat several times and tried to defeat it. The last king of this dynasty was Ramachandra who ruled the whole of the region upto the river Narmada.

The Kakatiyas

The Kakatiyas were under the control of the Chalukya dynasty and after the downfall of Chalukyan they asserted their independent in the territories of *Telingana* and *Warrangal*, where they founded their own kingdom. Some of the powerful and important kings of this dynasty were *Prolaraja*, *Ganpati Pratap Rudra Deo*, etc. Prolaraja defeated the Chalukyas and fought many other battles. After him *Ganpati* was another important king of this dynasty. He defeated the Cholas, the

Yadavas and several other rulers of various families. He reaped the full advantage of the disorder and disturbance in the political condition of those regions and extended his rule in all the four corners of his kingdom. The fact is that he was the most important king of the *Kakatiya dynasty*. In his reign, the Kakatiya rule was at the height of its power and progress. After his reign, the decline and decay of this dynasty started and finally in the reign of Pratapa Rudra Deo, Malik Kafur invaded their kingdom in A.D 1309.

The Kadambas

This dynasty was established by *Brahman Mayurasarma* in north Karnataka with his capital at *Banavasi* after defeating Satvahana. *Mayurasaraman* was a champion of Vedic sacrifices and is believed to have performed 18 Ashvamedha sacrifices. The kingdom was annexed to the Chalukya kingdom by Pulkesin II.

Points to Remember

- Information about the Gupta empire are available from Allahabad pillar inscription, temples, paintings and coins.
- Prominent rulers of Gupta empire Chandragupta I (320-335 AD), Samudragupta (335-375 AD), Chandragupta II (380-414 AD), Kumaragupta I, Maheraditya (415-455 AD), Skandagupta Vikramaditya (455-467 AD).
- In Gupta period, eighteen types of taxes were levied. Land tax was between 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.
- Gupta period witnessed exceptional growth in field of architecture, sculpture, painting and terracotta. This period is also known as "*Golden Age of Ancient India*".
- In Gupta period, Sanskrit literature greatly flourished. Kalidasa was prominent poet from this period. Philosophical literature was also written during this period.
- This period marks notable advancement in field of Mathematics, Metallurgy, Astronomy and medicine. Aryabhatta, Varahmihir are prominent names in this period.

Exercise - 1

- Which among the following dynasties is known to have given the largest grant of villages to the temples and Brahamans?
 - Pratihara
 - Gupta
 - Pala
 - Saatvahana
- The finest specimens of Buddhist paintings are found in the caves at Bagh and Ajanta. How do the Buddhist paintings at Bagh differ from those found at Ajanta?
 - They are mostly depictions of Jataka stories
 - They contain representations of scenes from the Buddha's life from conception to the attainment of Nirvana
 - They are basically secular in character, and significantly reflect contemporary life
 - The style of the paintings reveals great delicacy and depth of feeling
- The silver coins issued by the Guptas were called:
 - Rupaka
 - Karshapana
 - Dinara
 - Pana
- Which one of the following ports handled the North Indian trade during the Gupta period?
 - Tamralipti
 - Broach
 - Kalyan
 - Cambay
- There are only two known examples of cave paintings of the Gupta period in ancient India. One of these is paintings of Ajanta caves. Where is the other surviving example of Gupta paintings?
 - Bagh caves
 - Ellora caves
 - Lomas Rishi cave
 - Nasik caves
- During the period of which of the following was 'Panchtantra' written?
 - Nandas
 - Mauryas
 - Guptas
 - Sungas
- The decimal numeral system, including the concept of zero was invented in India during which one of the following dynasty?
 - Saka
 - Gupta
 - Pala
 - Chola
- Which Gupta ruler repaired the Sudarshana lake constructed by Chandragupta Maurya?
 - Kumaragupta I
 - Samudragupta
 - Bhangupta
 - Sakandagupta
- Sarnath inscription highlights the achievements of which Kushana ruler?
 - Kajula Kadphises
 - Huvushka
 - Kanishka
 - Kadphises II
- Which book is considered as the Gupta equivalent of Kautilya's Arthashastra?
 - Nitisara
 - Amarakosa
 - Mudrarakshasa
 - Malavikagnimitra
- Which Gupta emperor's inscription at Eran dated 510 AD gives the first inscriptional evidence of Sati?
 - Kumaragupta
 - Skandagupta
 - Narasimhagupta
 - Bhanugupta
- Who among the Gupta emperors in his Bhitari and Junagarh inscriptions claimed victory over the Hunas?
 - Kumaragupta
 - Skandagupta
 - Bhanugupta
 - Narasimhagupta
- Which of the following Gupta emperors is represented on his coins as playing the flute or Veena?
 - Chandragupta I
 - Chandragupta II
 - Samudragupta
 - Skandagupta
- Which Gupta emperor is said to have founded Nalanda University?
 - Skandagupta
 - Buddhagupta
 - Purugupta
 - Kumaragupta I
- The Gupta ruler who finally defeated the Shakas of Ujjain is?
 - Samudragupta
 - Chandragupta I
 - Kumaragupta I
 - Skandagupta
- During whose reign did the Hunas start posing a threat to the Gupta empire?
 - Kumaragupta I
 - Skandagupta
 - Bhanugupta
 - Vishnugupta
- Pick out the incorrect statement?
 - In ancient India, Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins.
 - After the conquest of Gujarat, Guptas issued a good number of silver coins.
 - Guptas issued more copper coins than the Kushanas.
 - Guptas had good trade contacts with Eastern Roman (Byzantine) empire.
- Alvars who were Vaishnavite saints were popular in which part of India?
 - South India
 - Kashmir
 - Bengal
 - Gujarat
- Which of the Republican states in the Post-Mauryan period patronised Shaivism?
 - Audumburas
 - Kunindas
 - Yaudehyas
 - All the above
- Who is considered to be the greatest Pallava ruler?
 - Simhavishnu
 - Narasimhavarman I
 - Paramesvarvarman I
 - Nandivarmana II
- Which of the Pallava rulers founded the city of Mahabalipuram?
 - Mahendavarman I
 - Narasimhavarman I
 - Nandivarman II
 - Nripatunga
- Which Chalukyan ruler is said to have received an embassy from the Persian king Khusrau II?
 - Pulkesin II
 - Vikramaditya I
 - Vinayaditya
 - Vijayaditya

23. The royal seal of the Guptas bore the emblem of
 (a) Nandi (b) Garuda
 (c) Lion (d) Tiger
24. Which among the following was not the cause of continuous war between Cholas and Chalukyas of Kalyan?
 (a) The economic factors
 (b) Rivalry between the Chalukyas of Kalyan and Chalukyas of Vengi
 (c) The geo-political factors
 (d) Rivalry to capture south India's foreign trade with China and South-eastern Asia.
25. Which one of the following is not related to the feudal formation in the Gupta and post-Gupta times.
 (a) Emergence of landed intermediaries.
 (b) Growth of a class of subject peasantry.
 (c) Localised village economy developed with little scope for functioning of the market system.
 (d) Emergence of strong centralised political authority.
26. Who among the following Gupta kings ascended the throne in the year 56 of Gupta era?
 (a) Samudragupta (b) Chandragupta II
 (c) Kumargupta (d) Skandgupta
27. The guild organization described in the Mandsores inscription of Kumaragupta was known as
 (a) Tantuvaya (b) Dantakara
 (c) Kulika (d) Tailika
28. Who among the following was the ruler of Kanchi during the time of Samudragupta?
 (a) Hastivarman (b) Mantaraya
 (c) Nilaraja (d) Vishnugopa
29. Which inscription of the Gupta period gives details regarding the sale of land?
 (a) Junagarh inscription
 (b) Bhitari pillar inscription
 (c) Begram copper plate
 (d) Damodarpur copper plate
30. In the Gupta inscription who has been called "Lichchhavi Dauhitra" ?
 (a) Chandragupta I (b) Samudragupta
 (c) Chandragupta II (d) Skandgupta
31. The officer responsible for the safe custody of land records during the Gupta period was known as
 (a) Dhruvadhikarana (b) Karanika
 (c) Samaharta (d) Shaulkika
32. Who among the following was the mother of Prabhavati Gupta?
 (a) Kumaradevi (b) Kuberanaga
 (c) Dhruvadevi (d) None of these
33. The travel account of Fa-hien is known as
 (a) Si-yu-ki (b) Yen-tu
 (c) Fo-kwo-ki (d) Fa-chien
34. Who has complimented Samudragupta as the 'Indian Napoleon' ?
 (a) Radhakumud Mukherji
 (b) V.A. Smith
 (c) R.N. Dandekar
 (d) R.C. Majumdar
35. The word Vishti means
 (a) Forced labour (b) Irrigation tax
 (c) Rights of slaves (d) Property of women
36. Expansion of agricultural land took place on the largest scale in which period ?
 (a) Pre-Mauryan age (b) Mauryan age
 (c) Post-Mauryan age (d) Gupta age
37. Which of the following literary works did not belong to the Gupta period?
 (a) Amarakosa
 (b) Abhigyanashakuntalam
 (c) Charaka Samhita
 (d) Mrichhakatikam
38. Who was the court poet of Samudragupta?
 (a) Nagarjuna (b) Aryabhata
 (c) Virasena (d) Harisena
39. Who was the author of Mandasore inscription?
 (a) Veersena (b) Harisena
 (c) Vatsabhata (d) Banabhata
40. Who of the following Gupta kings granted permission to Meghverma, the ruler of Sri Lanka to build a Buddhist temple at Gaya?
 (a) Chandragupta I (b) Chandragupta II
 (c) Samudragupta (d) Skandgupta
41. In the Gupta administration, who was Purpala?
 (a) Administrator of village
 (b) Administrator of town
 (c) Administrator of capital
 (d) Administrator of conquered territories
42. In which century, did the famous Chinese pilgrim Fa-hien visit India?
 (a) 4th century AD (b) 5th century AD
 (c) 6th century AD (d) 7th century AD
43. The six district school of Indian philosophy Sankhya, Yoga, Nyaya, Vaishasika, Mimansa, Vedanta became fully articulated during the
 (a) Vedic period (b) Maurya period
 (c) Buddha period (d) Gupta period
44. Who was the author of famous Ayurvedic text Ashtanghriday?
 (a) Vagbhatta (b) Charaka
 (c) Dhanvantari (d) Nagarjuna
45. Who was the author of Amarkosha?
 (a) Chandragomina (b) Amarsingh
 (c) Amar Kanta (d) Kalidasa
46. During which period, the great epics of Ramayan and Mahabharat were given the final form?
 (a) Nanda period (b) Maurya period
 (c) Post Maurya period (d) Gupta period
47. Who was Dhanavantri?
 (a) A Chemist (b) A Physician
 (c) A Philosopher (d) A Surgeon
48. How many students were studying in the Nalanda University as mentioned by Hiuen Tsang?
 (a) 8,000 (b) 10,000
 (c) 12,000 (d) 15,000

49. Who among the following had the title 'Amoghavarsha' ?
 (a) Munja Paramara
 (b) Rajendra Chola
 (c) Govinda Chandra Gahadavala
 (d) None of these
50. Who destroyed the Nalanda University in 1202 AD ?
 (a) Moizuddin Muhammad Ghori
 (b) Bakhtiyar Khilji
 (c) Mahmud of Ghazni
 (d) Qutbuddin Aibak
51. Which of the following temples was a well known centre of higher education?
 (a) Dasavatar Temple at Devogarh
 (b) Sasbahu Temple at Gwalior
 (c) Shore Temple at Mamallapuram
 (d) Trayipurusha Temple at Salotgi
52. The Jain text which describes that Chandragupta embraced Jainism towards the end of his life, is:
 (a) Ratnamalika (b) Jayadhavala
 (c) Parishthaparvan (d) Dravya-samgraha
53. Which of the following is regarded to be a controversial part of the treaty of 303 (BC) between Chandragupta and Seleucus?
 (a) Seleucus surrendered his large territories to Chandragupta
 (b) Chandragupta made a gift of 500 elephants to Seleucus
 (c) Seleucus gave his daughter in marriage to Chandragupta
 (d) A Greek envoy (Megasthenes) was accredited to the Mauryan court at Pataliputra
54. The greatest royal patron of the University of Nalanda was/were:
 (a) King Harsha of Kannauj
 (b) King Balaputradeva of Sumatra
 (c) Pala kings Dharmapala and Devapala
 (d) The Gupta king Chandragupta II, Vikramaditya
55. Which of the following port handled North Indian trade during the Gupta period?
 (a) Sopara (b) Broach
 (c) Tamralipti (d) Cambay
56. Samudragupta ascended the throne in
 (a) 400 (b) 390
 (c) 380 (d) 330
57. The book Navanitakam of the Gupta period belongs to
 (a) Medicine (b) Astronomy
 (c) Administration (d) Agriculture
58. The Gupta ruler who repaired Sudarsana Lake for the second time
 (a) Skanda Gupta (b) Rama Gupta
 (c) Samudra Gupta (d) Vishnu Gupta
59. How many inscriptions are available for Guptas period?
 (a) 40 (b) 38
 (c) 42 (d) 48
60. Gupta kings ruled North India for a period of
 (a) 230 (b) 130
 (c) 330 (d) 430
61. Who was the author of Allahabad pillar inscription?
 (a) Aswaghosha (b) Harisena
 (c) Ravekeerthi (d) Veerasena
62. Nitisara was written by
 (a) Vishaka Datta (b) Kamandaka
 (c) Sudraka (d) Vajjika
63. Majority of the Gupta emperors patronised
 (a) Buddhism (b) Jainism
 (c) Vaishnavism (d) Shaivism
64. Ajanta Cave paintings belongs to the period of
 (a) Nandas (b) Mauryas
 (c) Guptas-Vakatakas (d) Haryanks
65. Kaumudi Mahotsava was written by
 (a) Vajjika (b) Sudraka
 (c) Kamandaka (d) Vishaka Dutta
66. Brihath Samhita was written by
 (a) Vatsyayana (b) Varahamihira
 (c) Shudraka (d) Aryabhata
67. The Sultan Ganj Buddha Statue in Bronze belongs to
 (a) Guptas (b) Mauryas
 (c) Kanishka (d) Harsha
68. Harivamsa Purana was written by
 (a) Vishaka Datta (b) Kamandaka
 (c) Sudraka (d) Jinasena Suri
69. Who wrote 'Aryabhattiyam' Suryasiddhanta'?
 (a) Varahamihira (b) Aryabhata
 (c) Brahma Gupta (d) Baskara
70. Who wrote 'Siddhanta Siromani'?
 (a) Bhaskaracharya (b) Varahamihira
 (c) Brahma Gupta (d) Aryabhata
71. Kamasutra was written by
 (a) Vatsyayana (b) Vajjika
 (c) Kalhana (d) Vishakadatta I
72. Who wrote Khanda-Khadyaka?
 (a) Varahamihira (b) Baskara
 (c) Brahma Gupta (d) Aryabhata
73. Who was the founder of Gupta dynasty?
 (a) SamudraGupta (b) ChandraGupta I
 (c) RamaGupta (d) Vikramaditya
74. What was the Period of rule of SamudraGupta?
 (a) 375-396 A. D. (b) 370-380 A. D.
 (c) 380-398 A. D. (d) 330-375 A. D.
75. The Gupta king who was good player of Veena?
 (a) Chandra Gupta (b) Vikramaditya
 (c) Samudra Gupta (d) Kumara Gupta
76. The Vengi king who was defeated by Samudra Gupta
 (a) Hastivarma (b) Danarnava
 (c) Vimaladitya (d) Gunaga Vijayaditya
77. The Gupta king who destroyed Sakas?
 (a) SamudraGupta (b) ChandraGupta I
 (c) KumaraGupta (d) ChandraGupta II
78. The gold coins during Gupta Period were called
 (a) Rupaka (b) Niska
 (c) Tanka (d) Pana

79. The Gupta king who has the title of 'Mahendraditya'?
- (a) VishnuGupta (b) RamaGupta
(c) BudhaGupta (d) KumaraGupta
80. The court poet of SamudraGupta was
- (a) Mahasena (b) Harisena
(c) Ravikeerthi (d) Veerasena
81. Who has the title of 'Kaviraja'?
- (a) SamudraGupta (b) ChandraGupta II
(c) KumaraGupta (d) ChandraGupta I
82. Gupta Era was started in
- (a) 330 A. D. (b) 340 A. D.
(c) 350 A. D. (d) 320 A. D.
83. Who was son of SamudraGupta?
- (a) ChandraGupta II Vikramaditya
(b) KumaraGupta
(c) VishnuGupta
(d) Skanda Gupta
84. The Kosala king who was defeated by SamudraGupta
- (a) Udayan (b) Mahendra
(c) Kalashoka (d) All the above
85. Which of the following was the inscription of Guptas about sati
- (a) Junagarh Inscription
(b) Allahabad Inscription
(c) Bhitari Inscription
(d) Eran Inscription
86. The language patronised by Guptas was
- (a) Sanskrit (b) Prakrit
(c) Arabic (d) Hindi
87. The officers of the village during the Guptas period were
- (a) Uparika (b) Gramika and Bhojak
(c) Kotwal (d) Vishaypati
88. Who was son of Chandra Gupta II?
- (a) BudhaGupta (b) VishnuGupta
(c) KumaraGupta (d) SkandaGupta
89. Who was the first Gupta ruler?
- (a) SamudraGupta (b) SkandaGupta
(c) ChandraGupta I (d) SriGupta
90. Who started Gupta Era?
- (a) ChandraGupta II (b) ChandraGupta I
(c) SkandaGupta (d) SamudraGupta
91. Who among the following was an expert musician?
- (a) SamudraGupta (b) VishnuGupta
(c) SriGupta (d) ChandraGupta I
92. What was the Normal rate of interest on loans during the Guptas period
- (a) 20% (b) 25%
(c) 10% (d) 15%
93. Who wrote 'Devi Chandra Guptam'?
- (a) Sudraka (b) Visakha Datta
(c) Kamandaka (d) Vajjika
94. What was the language of Allahabad Parasasti?
- (a) Parkrit (b) Hindi
(c) Sanskrit (d) Aramic
95. The religion patronised and propagated by Guptas
- (a) Buddhism (b) Bhagavata
(c) Jainism (d) Hinduism
96. Who wrote 'Amarakosha'?
- (a) Vatsyayana (b) Vishakha Dutta
(c) Amar Singh (d) Bhasa
97. The last ruler of Gupta dynasty was
- (a) Budhagupta (b) Kumaragupta
(c) Vishnugupta (d) Srigupta
98. Which of the following inscription was found on iron pillar?
- (a) Saranath (b) Mehrauli
(c) Babru (d) Sanchi
99. The poet who is called as Indian Shakespeare
- (a) Rajasekhara (b) Bana
(c) Dhandi (d) Kalidas
100. The capital of Gupta Empire was
- (a) Pataliputra (b) Kannauj
(c) Peshawar (d) Dhanyakatakam
101. Kalidas wrote (dramas)
- (a) Vikramorvasiyam (b) Abhijnana Sakuntalam
(c) Malavikagnimitram (d) All the above
102. Which of the following is Kalidasa's work (poetical works)
- (a) Meghasandesam (b) Kumara Sambhavam
(c) Raghuvamsam (d) All the above
103. The Pallava king who was defeated by Samudra Gupta?
- (a) Simhavishnu (b) Vishnugopa
(c) Karikala (d) Simhavarma
104. Guptas period was a high water mark for
- (a) Religion (b) Agriculture
(c) Administration (d) Sculpture
105. The ruler of provinces in Guptas period are called as
- (a) Bhandagars (b) Kotwals
(c) Uparikas (d) Bhuktis
106. Fa-Hien's mission to India was to
- (a) learn about the administrative system of the Gupta kings
(b) understand the social position of women during the Gupta period
(c) visit the Buddhist institutions and to collect copies of Buddhist manuscripts
(d) get full knowledge about the condition of peasants during the period of Gupta kings
107. Which one of the following inscriptions mentions Pulakesin II's military success against Harshavardhana?
- (a) Allahabad Pillar inscription
(b) Aihole inscription
(c) Damodarpur Copperplate inscription
(d) Bilsad inscription
108. Which two of the following plays did Kalidasa wrote before writing Abhigyanashakuntalam?
1. Vikramorvasiyam
 2. Malavikagnimitram
 3. Swapnavasavadattam
 4. Kadambari

- Select the correct answer using the codes given below
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 1 and 3
(c) 1 and 4 (d) 3 and 4
109. In the Gupta age, Varahamihira wrote the famous book, 'Brihat Samhita'. It was a treatise on
- (a) astronomy
(b) statecraft
(c) ayurvedic system of medicine.
(d) economics
110. Among the precious stones, the most extensive foreign trade during the Gupta age was that of
- (a) diamonds (b) ruby
(c) pearl (d) sapphire
111. The University of Nalanda was set-up by which Gupta ruler?
- (a) Kumaragupta II (b) Kumaragupta I
(c) Chandragupta II (d) Samudragupta
112. Who among the following Chinese travellers visited the Kingdoms of Harshavardhana and Kumar Bhaskar Varma?
- (a) I-Tsing (b) Fa-Hien
(c) Hiuen Tsang (d) Sun Shuyun
113. Which of the following rulers checked Harshavardhana's expedition in South India?
- (a) Pulakesin I (b) Pulakesin II
(c) Vikramaditya I (d) Vikramaditya II
114. The king Pulakesin II belonged to which Dynasty ?
- (a) Cholas (b) Cheras
(c) Chalukyas (d) Chedis
115. Which one of the following was the official language of Gupta period ?
- (a) Pali (b) Magadhi
(c) Prakrit (d) Sanskrit
116. The notion of saptanga that was introduced in Arthashastra includes
- (a) kings, territory, administration and treasury
(b) music, dance, ragas and wrestling
(c) ministers, civil servants, subalterns and those involved in espionage
(d) aristocrats, acharyas, traders and monks .
117. Which one among the following cities was the best producer of silk cloth under Gupta reign ?
- (a) Pataliputra (b) Murshidabad
(c) Ghazipur (d) Varanasi
118. Which one among the following is not correct about the cave paintings at Ajanta ?
- (a) Scenes have no dividing frame and blend into each other
(b) Scenes are both religious and secular in nature
(c) The influence of the Gandhara art is seen
(d) Scenes mostly depict tales from Jatakas

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- The eulogies or “prashasti” among the following inscriptions : I. Aihole Inscription of Pulakesin II. II. Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudra Gupta. III. Junagarh Inscription of Rudradaman. IV. Hathigumpha Inscription of Kharavela.
 - I, II and III are correct.
 - I and II are only correct.
 - II and III are only correct.
 - I, III and IV are correct.
- Which of the following statements are true with regard to Rajendra Chola I ?
 - He assumed the title of Gangaikondachola after his victory over the Gangetic valley.
 - He conquered the islands of Andaman and Nicobar.
 - He commemorated his victories by constructing temples.
 - He is regarded as the real founder of the Chola empire.

Which of the above statements are correct?

 - 1 and 2
 - 3 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 3
- Which of the following is false statement regarding Gupta’s administration?
 - The king did not impose any restrictions on the movement of his subjects.
 - The governors of the provinces were independent.
 - The lowest unit of administration was the village.
 - The Gupta kings had direct control over military.

Correct answer:

 - 4 only
 - 2 only
 - 1 and 3
 - 2 and 4
- The Gupta period is considered as the ‘Golden Age of India’ which of the following statement is true regarding this-
 - The Gupta age was progressive in foreign trade.
 - There was peace and prosperity.
 - There was tremendous development in the field of science.

Which of the above is/are correct?

 - 1 and 3
 - 2 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - All of above
- Which of the following are true with regard to Pulakesin II?
 - His brother Kubja-Vishnuvardhana founded the kingdom of Chalukyas of Vengi.
 - The Aihole inscription in sanskrit is a eulogy written for him by the poet Ravikirti.

Which of the above is/are correct?

 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Which of the following are marked by the agrarian structure in the Post - Gupta period?
 - Large scale grants of land in different parts of India.
 - Undermining of communal rights over land
 - Subjection of peasants
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 3
 - 1 and 3
 - 1, 2 and 3
- With reference to Chandragupta I, consider the following statement-
 - He married a Licchavi princess and ascended the throne in about 320 A.D.
 - Chandragupta I ruled over Saketa, Prayag and Magadha.

Which of the above is/are correct?

 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Which of the following statements are true about Gupta coinage?
 - The Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins in the Gupta period.
 - Chandragupta I issued Kaumaradevi type of coins
 - Chandragupta II issued silver coins for the first time among the Gupta
 - Samudragupta coins are known for their purity.

Select the correct answer from the codes given below :

 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 2, 3 and 4
 - 1, 2, 3 and 4
 - 1 and 2
- Arrange the following astronomers in their correct chronological order:
 - Aryabhatta
 - Brahmagupta
 - Lagadh
 - Varahamihira

Choose your answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

 - 1 2 3 4
 - 2 1 4 3
 - 3 1 4 2
 - 4 3 2 1
- Which of the following are true about Samudragupta?
 - He is also known as ‘Kaviraja’
 - He is known as “Lichchhavi Dauhitra’
 - He built most extensive empire after Ashoka.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

 - 1 and 2
 - 3 only
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 1 and 3
- Which of the following is correctly matched?
 - Kshetra : Cultivated land
 - Khila : Waste land
 - Aprahta : Forest land
 - Vasti : Pasture land

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

 - 1, 2 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 1, 2, 3 and 4
 - 2, 3 and 4
- Arrange the following Gupta emperors in the chronological order
 - Samudragupta
 - Chandragupta-I
 - Skandagupta
 - Chandragupta-II

Select the correct answer from the code given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1 2 3 4 (b) 2 1 4 3
(c) 4 3 1 2 (d) 3 2 1 4

13. Which of the following pair(s) are/is correctly matched?

1. Charasada — Pushkalavati
2. Sirkap — Takshila
3. Nagarjunakonda — Vijaypuri
4. Ter — Tamralipti

Choose the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2 and 4 (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2 and 4 (d) 2, 3 and 4

14. Consider the following historical places:

1. Ajanta Caves 2. Lepakshi Temple
3. Sanchi Stupa

Which of the above places is/are also known for mural paintings?

- (a) 1 only (b) 1 and 2 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) None

15. The themes of the murals of the Ajanta Caves are

1. Decorative designs which include a variety of animals, trees and flowers.
2. Portraits of various Buddhas and Bodhiysattvas.
3. Narrative scenes portraying Jataka stories.

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1 and 2 only

Matching Based MCQ

16. **List-I** **List-II**
(A) Chandragupta Maurya (1) 232 - 185 BC.
(B) Bindusaar (2) 269 - 232 BC.
(C) Ashoka (3) 321 - 297 BC.
(D) Brahmrath (4) 297 - 272 BC.
(a) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 4
(b) A - 2, B - 3, C - 1, D - 4
(c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 2, D - 1
(d) A - 4, B - 2, C - 3, D - 1

17. **List-I** **List-II**
A. Vikramaditya II 1. 633 - 34 A.D.
B. Pulakesin II 2. 606 - 647 A.D.
C. Harshavardhana 3. 335 A.D.
D. Samudragupta 4. 733 - 744 A.D.
(a) A - 4 ; B - 1 ; C - 3 ; D - 2
(b) A - 2 ; B - 1 ; C - 4 ; D - 3
(c) A - 4 ; B - 1 ; C - 2 ; D - 3
(d) A - 3 ; B - 4 ; C - 1 ; D - 2

18. **Kings** **Queens**
1. Chandragupta-I Kumaradevi
2. Samudragupta Dattadevi
3. Chandragupta-II Dhruvadevi
4. Kumargupta-I Kuberanaga

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2 and 4 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 2 and 4

19.

List-I

(Dynasty)

- A Chalukya of Gujarat
B Kalachuris of Chedi
C Parmaras of Malva
D Chahmans of Sakambhari

List-II

(Capital)

1. Tripuri
2. Anhilvad
3. Ajmer
4. Dhara

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |

20.

List-I

(Dynasty)

- A. Kadamba
B. Kharvela
C. Chalukya
D. Pala

List-II

(State)

1. Odisha
2. Karnataka
3. Bengal
4. Gujarat

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (b) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

21. With reference to the Indian history of art and culture, consider the following pairs :

- | | | |
|-----|--|----------------|
| | Famous work of Sculpture | Site |
| 1. | A grand image of Buddha's Mahaparinirvana with numerous celestial musicians above and the sorrowful figures of his followers below | : Ajanta |
| 2.. | A huge image of Varaha Avatar (boar incarnation) of Vishnu, as he rescues Goddess Earth from the deep and chaotic waters, sculpted on rock | : Mount Abu |
| 3. | "Arjuna's Penance"/ "Descent of Ganga" sculpted on the surface of huge boulders | : Mamallapuram |

Which of the pairs given above is/are correctly matched?

- (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (b) 2.(c) 3. (a)
4. (a) Tamralipta or Tamralipti was the name of an ancient city on the Bay of Bengal corresponding with Tamruk in modern-day India. Tamralipta may have been one of the most important urban centres of trade and commerce of early historic India, trading along the Silk Road with China, by Uttarapatha, the northern high road, the main trade route into the Middle East and Europe; and by seafaring routes to Bali, Java and the Far East.
5. (a) A copper plate inscription of Maharaja Subandhu, recording his donation for the repair of the vihara was found at the site of Cave 2. Though, the date of the Bagh inscription is missing, the Badwani copper plate inscription is dated in the year (Gupta era) 167 (487).
6. (c) Panchtantra was composed by Vishnu Sharma in Gupta period. Gupta period is golden age of Indian history.
7. (b) In the Gupta period, a dynasty of ancient India, that rules around AD 240 to 550, the decimal numeral system, including the concept of zero was invented.
8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (a) 11. (d) 12. (b)
13. (c) 14. (d) 15. (b) 16. (a) 17. (c)
18. (a) 19. (d) 20. (b) 21. (b) 22. (a)
23. (b) 24. (d) 25. (d)
26. (b) Chandragupta II ascended the throne in the year 56 of Gupta era. In 319, Chandragupta created for himself the title King of Kings (Maharajadhiraja), and he extended his rule westward to Prayaga, in north-central India. Ten years into his rule, Chandragupta lay dying, and he told his son, Samudragupta, to rule the whole world. His son tried. Samudragupta's forty-five years of rule would be described as one vast military campaign. He waged war along the Ganges plain, overwhelming nine kings and incorporating their subjects and lands into the Gupta empire.
27. (a) The guild organization described in the Mandsores inscription of Kumargupta was known as Tantuvaya. This inscription informs us that he was a feudatory of the Gupta emperor Kumargupta I. It was during his reign, a temple dedicated to Surya was constructed by the guild of silk-weavers at Dashapura in the Malava Samvat 493 (436 CE). This temple was renovated in 473 CE by the same guild.
28. (d) Vishnugopa was the ruler of Kanchi during the time of Samudragupta. In the southern Pallava kingdom of Kanchipuram, he defeated king Vishnugopa, then restored him and other defeated southern kings to their thrones on payment of tribute. Several northern kings were uprooted, however, and their territories added to the Gupta empire. At the height of Samudragupta's power, he controlled nearly all of the valley of the Ganges (Ganga) river and received homage from rulers of parts of east Bengal, Assam, Nepal, the eastern part of the Punjab, and various tribes of Rajasthan.
29. (d) Damodarpur copper plate inscription of the Gupta period gives details regarding the sale of land. Damodarpur (in Dinajpur District) Copper Plate No.1 of Kumargupta I (443–444AD) is probably the most important for a knowledge of local administrative pattern and is the most popular source for historians. It refers to Visayapati Kumaramatyia Vetravarman, who was appointed by (Tanniyukta) the Uparika Ciratadatta, Governor of Pundravardhana Bhukti. Vetravarman being in-charge of Kotivarsa Visaya (dist.) administered the government of the locality in the Administrative Board in company of Dhrtipala, the Nagaraśresthi, Bandhumitra, the Sarthavaha, Dhrtimitra – the Prathamakulika and Śambapala – the Prathama Kayastha. They were seen to come together and consult on the sales of land.
30. (b) In the Gupta inscription, Samudragupta has been called 'Lichchhavi Dauhitra'. There is also evidence of relationship between the early Guptas and the Lichchhavis. Chandragupta I married the Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi, for which reason their son Samudragupta has been called Lichchhavi – duhitra. It is further indicated by some gold coins which, on the obverse, bear their figures and names and, on the reverse, the name of the Lichchhavis.
31. (b) The officer responsible for the safe custody of land records during the Gupta period was known as Karanika. This is the Dhruvadhī-Karanika (otherwise called Dhruvasthanadhikaranika) the officer in-charge of the Dhruvas,' the last term being applied till recent times in Kathiawar and Cutch to denote persons who superintended the collection of land-revenue by the farmers on the king's behalf.
32. (b) Kuberanaga was the mother of Prabhavati Gupta. Chandragupta II married the Naga Princess Kuberanaga and gave his own daughter, Prabhavati, in marriage to Vakataka king, Rudra Sena II. The Vakataka alliance was master stroke of diplomacy as it secured the subordinate alliance of the Vakataka king who occupied a strategic geographical position. It is noteworthy that Rudra Sena died young and his widow reigned until her sons came of age.
33. (c) The travel account of Fa-hien is known as Fo-kwo-ki. Fa-hien or Faxian (AD 399 – 413): Fa-hien was the first Chinese monk to travel to India in search of great Buddhist scriptures. At the age of

- sixty-five, he travelled, mostly on foot, from Central China taking the southern route through Shenshen, Dunhuang, Khotan, and then over the Himalayas, to Gandhara and Peshawar.
34. (b) VA Smith complimented Samudragupta as the Indian Napoleon. Samudragupta embarked upon a policy of conquest. In fact, Digvijay became the ultimate call of his life. For his military achievements, he has been aptly complemented by the historian VA Smith as the Indian Napoleon. He has described Samudragupta as the Hero of Hundred Battles.
35. (a) The word Vishti means Forced labour. While the Kshatriyas acquired their share of the social surplus through the force of arms in the form of taxes (Kar, Shulka, Bali, etc.), forced labour (Vishti, Balutam, etc.), tithes and other privileges. The Brahmin clergy enforced its claim to the social surplus through a moral deterrent which was based on strength of the tribal morality of distribution.
36. (d) Expansion of agricultural land took place on the largest scale in Gupta age. The degeneration of the Vaisya's (the third, or trader caste), which had begun earlier, intensified during this period. Because of advanced agricultural techniques and developments in handicrafts, the condition of the Sudra's (the fourth, or menial caste) improved and there was no great difference between a poor Vaisya and a prosperous Sudra.
37. (d) Mrichhakatikam literary works did not belong to the Gupta period. Of all the Sanskrit dramas, Mrichhakatika remains one of the most widely celebrated and oft-performed in the West, in part because its plot structure more closely resembles that of Western classics than other Hindu plays. The work played a significant role in generating interest in Indian theatre among European audiences following several successful nineteenth century translations and stage productions.
38. (d) Harisena was the court poet of Samudragupta. Samudragupta was brilliant commander and a great conqueror is proved by Harisena's description of his conquests. He mentions that Samudragupta exterminated nine north Indian states, Subdued eithteen Atavika kingdoms near Bajalpur and Chhota Nagpur, and in his blitz - like campaign humbled the pride of twelve South Indian Kings, Nine borderstribes, and five frontier states of Smatata, Devaka, Karupa, Nepal and Krtripur.
39. (a) Veersena was the author of Mandasore inscription. There is an inscription about Bandhuverma at Mandasore. The silk workers had constructed a Sun temple here which was repaired by Bandhuverma in Samvat 493. This indicates that he was present there till 436 CE. The Risthal stone slab inscription discovered in 1983 has brought to light another Aulikara dynasty, which comprised the following kings in the order of succession: Drumavardhana, Jayavardhana Ajitavardhana, Vibhishanavardhana, Rajyavardhana and Prakashadharna.
40. (c) Samudragupta granted permission to Meghverma the ruler of Sri Lanka to build a Buddhist temple in Gaya. Kittisirimegha of Sri Lanka, a contemporary of Samudragupta, erected with the permission of Samudragupta, a Sangharama near the Mahabodhi Vihara, chiefly for the use of the Singhalese monks who went to worship the Bodhi tree.
41. (d) In the Gupta administration, purpala was the administrator of conquered territories. The person was mostly from the authority who reign in that region itself but sometime the faithful of king also takes the control of these territories.
42. (b) In 5th century AD, the famous Chinese pilgrim Fa-hien visit India. Travelling through central Asia and northwest India, Fa-hien reached northern India and then visited the holy Buddhist sites located in the Ganges valley: Kapilavastu, the birthplace of Buddha; Bodhgaya, the site of Buddha's enlightenment; Sarnath, where Buddha preached his first sermon, and Kushinagara, the place of Buddha's nirvana.
43. (d) The six district school of Indian philosophy Sankhya, Yoga, Nyaya, Vaishasika, Mimansa, Vedanta became fully articulated during the Gupta period.
44. (a) Vagbhatta was the author of a famous Ayurvedic text Ashtanghriday. The science of chemistry, due to its Vedic antiquity might have been first recognized in India, as a separate discipline. Alchemy and the science of medicine gave rise to the study of chemistry in India. The ancient masters as mentioned in connection with chemistry are: Patanjali, Bhavya Dattadeva, Vyadi, Svacchanda, Damodara, Vasudeva, Charaka, Sushruta, Harita and Vagbhata. Ancient Sanskrit documents about the advanced chemical science find the expression in activities like distillation of perfumes and fragrant ointments. It is also found in activities like manufacturing of dyes and chemical preparation of pigments and colours and polishing of mirrors.
45. (b) Amarsingh was the author of Amarkosha. Amara seems to have been a Buddhist, and most of his work was destroyed, with the exception of what is the celebrated Amara-Kosha (Treasury of Amara), a vocabulary of Sanskrit roots, in three books, and hence sometimes called Trikanada or the "Tripartite". It is also known as "Namalinganushasana". It contains 10,000 words, and is arranged, like other works of its class, in metre, to aid the memory. The first chapter of the Kosha was printed at Rome in Tamil character in 1798.
46. (d) During the Gupta period, the great epics of Ramayan and Mahabharat were given the final form. Traditionally, the authorship of the Mahabharata is attributed to Vyasa. There have been many attempts

- to unravel its historical growth and compositional layers. The oldest preserved parts of the text are thought to be not much older than around 400 BCE, though the origins of the epic probably fall between the 8th and 9th centuries BCE.
47. (b) Dhanavantri was a physician. Dhanvantari is depicted as Vishnu with four hands, holding medical herbs in one hand and a pot containing rejuvenating nectar called amrita in another. He is often shown with a leech in his hand rather than the scriptures. The Puranas state that Dhanavantari emerged from the 'Ocean of Milk' and appeared with the pot of nectar during the story of the Samudra or Sagar Manthan whilst the ocean was being churned by the Devas and Asuras, using the Mandara mountain and the serpent Vasuki.
48. (b) As mentioned by Hiuen Tsang, 10,000 students were studying in the Nalanda University. Founded in the 5th Century AD, Nalanda University is known as the ancient seat of learning. 2,000 teachers and 10,000 students from all over the Buddhist world lived and studied at Nalanda, the first Residential International University of the World. A walk in the ruins of the university, takes you to an era, that saw India leading in imparting knowledge, to the world – the era when India was a coveted place for studies. The University flourished during the 5th and 12th century.
49. (d) None of the above had the title 'Amoghavarsha'. The Arab traveller Sulaiman described Amoghavarsha as one of the four great kings of the world. Sulaiman also wrote that Amoghavarsha respected Muslims and that he allowed the construction of mosques in his cities. Because of his religious temperament, his interest in the arts and literature and his peace-loving nature, historian Panchamukhi has compared him to the emperor Ashoka and given him the honorific title "Ashoka of the South"
50. (b) Bakhtiyar Khalji destroyed the Nalanda University in 1202 AD. The prince of perverts – Muhammad Bakhtiyar Khalji – is a blot on the human race. And yet the town of Bakhtiyarpur in Bihar, close to the site of his cruel depredations, bears his name. Bakhtiyar Khalji holds a pride of place because, unlike the other Muslim marauders, he was not content with destroying the areas he traversed.
51. (d) Trayipurusha temple at Salotgi was a well known centre of higher education. Shri Narayan, minister to the Rastrakulta king of South India, constructed a temple in Salotgi (Bijapur) which in the twelfth century became a centre for Vedic education. Many buildings were built there for students to stay in. A description of this says that five hundred acres of land were donated (Epigraphia India) for classrooms, lodging and boarding.
52. (c) 53. (c) 54. (b) 55. (c) 56. (d)
57. (a) 58. (a) 59. (c) 60. (c) 61. (b)
62. (b) 63. (c) 64. (c) 65. (a) 66. (b)
67. (a) 68. (d) 69. (b) 70. (a) 71. (a)
72. (c) 73. (b) 74. (d) 75. (c) 76. (a)
77. (d) 78. (a) 79. (d) 80. (b) 81. (a)
82. (d) 83. (a) 84. (b) 85. (d) 86. (a)
87. (b) 88. (c) 89. (d) 90. (b) 91. (a)
92. (d) 93. (b) 94. (c) 95. (d) 96. (c)
97. (c) 98. (b) 99. (d) 100. (a) 101. (d)
102. (d) 103. (b) 104. (d) 105. (c)
106. (c) Fa-hien was a Chinese monk who travelled India during the age of Chandra Gupta Vikramaditya. He travelled during C 399-414. Fa-hien wanted to go to India to search for the treatises of the Vinaya Pitaka, the monastic rules of BUDDHISM. Travelling through Central Asia and Northwest India, Fa-hien reached northern India and then visited the holy Buddhist sites located in the Ganges valley: Kapilavastu, the birthplace of Buddha; Bodhgaya, the site of Buddha's enlightenment; Sarnath, where Buddha preached his first sermon, and Kushinagara, the place of Buddha's nirvana.
107. (b) Pulikeshn II (610-642 CE) is the most famous ruler of the Chalukya dynasty. The Aihole inscription describes how the mighty Harsha lost his harsha (joy) when he suffered the ignominy of defeat. Pulikeshi entered into a treaty with Harsha, with the Narmada River designated as the border between the Chalukya Empire and that of Harshavardhana.
108. (a)
109. (a) Varahamihira was an Indian astronomer, mathematician, and astrologer who lived in Ujjain. He wrote Brihat Samhita which covers astrology, planetary movements, eclipses, rainfall, clouds, architecture, growth of crops, manufacture of perfume, matrimony, domestic relations, gems, pearls, and rituals.
110. (d) Sapphire was the most precious stone in terms of foreign trade in Gupta period.
111. (b) University of Nalanda was set up by Gupta king Kumargupta I in 415 A.D.
112. (c) Hieun Tsang was a Chinese Buddhist monk who visited the kingdom of Harshvardhan and Kumar Bhaskar Varma.
113. (b) Chalukya ruler Pulkesin II checked Emperor Harshavardhan's expedition in South India. Pulkesin II had not let Harshavardhan come across Narmada according to its Ahole inscription.
114. (c) Pulkesin II was the greatest Chalukya king. He defeated Harsh on bank of Narmada.
115. (c) During Gupta period, Sanskrit was the official language.
116. (a) Kautilya wrote Arthashastra in which the notion of saptanga is mentioned including kings, territory, administration and treasury.
117. (b) The Gupta Empire was ruled by members of the Gupta dynasty from around 320 to 550 AD and covered most of North-central India, Gupta Empire (never included Pakistan); and what is now western India and Bangladesh. The time of the Gupta Empire is referred to as Golden Age

of India in science, mathematics, astronomy, religion and philosophy.

118. (a) The Ajanta Caves in Aurangabad district of Maharashtra, India are about 30 rock-cut Buddhist cave monuments which date from the 2nd century BCE to about 480 or 650 CE.

EXERCISE-2

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (d)
5. (c) Pulakesin was the contemporary ruler of Harshavardhana and was the most famous Chalukya king. He ruled from 609 to 642 A.D.
6. (d) 7. (c) 8. (a)
9. (c) The correct chronological order is:
Lagadh, Aryabhata, Varahamihira, Brahmagupta
The author of the treatise “Dzhetisha-Vedanga” (“Jyotisavedanga”), written between 450 and 350 BC. This work is a guide to determine the time for execution of the Vedic sacrificial. “Dzhetisha-Vedanga” preserved in the revised and corrected, which used Rigvediyya-Brahmins Aryabhata the Elder to distinguish him from a 10th-century Indian mathematician of the same name, he flourished in Kusumapura—near Pataliputra (Patna), then the capital of the Gupta dynasty. Varahamihira, also called Varahamira or simply Varaha, was one of the most celebrated scientists in South Asian history, having made substantial contributions to virtually all branches of the arts and sciences. Brahmagupta was the foremost Indian mathematician of his time. He made advances in astronomy and most importantly in number systems including algorithms for square roots and the solution of quadratic equations.
10. (c) Samudragupta is also known as ‘Kaviraja-Lichchhavi Dauhitra’. ‘Samudragupta was man of many sided genius, who put to shame the preceptor of the Lord Gods and Tumburu and Narada and others by his sharp and polished intellect and Chorla-skill and musical accomplishment. The Allahabad inscription, composed by the court poet Harisena in praise of Samudragupta’s spectacular victories, lists the names of kings and countries defeated by the Gupta ruler. During Samudragupta’s reign, the Gupta empire became one of the largest in the East. Its fluence spread and close ties were established with many other stages. This assessment made by the court poet of old has considerable influence on many modern scholars who tend to idealise Samudragupta and described him as did Vincent A. Smith as (as the Indian Napoleon) an outstanding individual possessed of remarkable qualities.
11. (b) The correct matched pairs are:
Kshetra — Cultivated land
Khila — Waste land
Aprahata— Forest land
These are the types of land available in the country at

that time. Despite these, there is one more class called Charagah land, which is used as a Pasture land.

12. (b) The correct chronological order is:
Chandragupta-I, Samudragupta, Chandragupta-II, Skandagupta
Ghatotkacha (C. 280–319) CE, had a son named Chandragupta. In a breakthrough deal, Chandragupta was married to Kumaradevi, a Lichchhavi—the main power in Magadha. With a dowry of the kingdom of Magadha (capital Pataliputra) and an alliance with the Lichchhavis, Chandragupta set about expanding his power, conquering much of Magadha, Prayaga and Saketa. Samudragupta was not only a warrior but also a great patron of art and literature. The important scholars present in his court were Harishena, Vasubandhu and Asanga. Chandragupta II, the Sun of Power (Vikramaditya), ruled until 413. He married his daughter Prabhavatigupta to Rudrasena II, the Vakataka king of Deccan, and gained a valuable ally. Skandagupta is generally considered the last of the great rulers. He defeated the Pushyamitra threat, but then was faced with invading Hephthalites or “White Huns”, known in India as Indo-Hephthalites or Hunas, from the northwest. He repulsed a Huna attack C. 455. But the expense of the wars drained the empire’s resources and contributed to its decline. Skandagupta died in 467 and was succeeded by his son Narasimhagupta Baladitya.
13. (b) The correctly matched pairs are:
Charasadda — Pushkalavati
Sirkap — Takshila
Nagarjunakonda — Vijaypuri
Pushkalavati (modern-day Charasadda) is an ancient site situated in Peshawar valley in the Khyber Pakhtunkhwa province (formerly NWFP) of Pakistan. It is located on the banks of Swat river, near its junction with Kabul river. Sirkap is the name of an archaeological site on the bank opposite to the city of Takshila, Punjab, Pakistan. The city of Sirkap was built by the Greco-Bactrian king Demetrius after he invaded India around 180 BCE. A city flourished around 1,800 years ago at Nagarjunakonda, the Hill of Nagarjuna. A great religious and educational centre of Brahmanism and Buddhism, one of the names it had then was Vijayapuri, after king Vijaya Satakarni of the Satavahana dynasty. Thereafter a capital of the Ikshvaku dynasty (225 – 325 CE), it fell into terminal decline after the demise of the last Ikshvaku king. A teacher, S Venkataramayya, discovered the ruins of the ancient city in 1926.
14. (b) Ajanta Caves have mural paintings in caves 1, 2, 16 and 17. Some of the paintings were commissioned by Harisena of Vakataka dynasty. The theme of the paintings was Jataka tales. Lepakshi Temple is renowned for being one of the best repositories of mural paintings of the Vijaynagar kings. Sanchi

Stupa has many beautiful sculptures but not mural paintings.

15. (a) Ajanta caves are 29 rock cut cave monuments which date from 2nd century B.C. They have Buddhist religious art and depict Jataka tales. In 1819, John Smith a British army officer rediscovered the cave while on a hunting expedition. Paintings cover every surface except the floor.

16. (c) 17. (c)

18. (c) The correctly matched pairs are:

Chandragupta-I Kumaradevi

Samudragupta Dattadevi

Chandragupta-II Dhruvadevi

In a breakthrough deal, Chandragupta was married to Kumaradevi, a Lichchhavi princess the main power in Magadha. With a dowry of the kingdom of Magadha (capital Pataliputra) and an alliance with the Lichchhavis. Samudragupta's chief queen was named Dattadevi; and he seems to have had a number of sons by her and others; for we are told that he specially chose one of them, the later Chandragupta II, to succeed him. This seems to indicate that this prince was not the eldest son. Unfortunately, we have no details. Dhruvadevi was a queen of the Gupta dynasty. She reigned as the wife of Chandragupta II (380–415 AD) and mother of Kumaragupta (415–455 AD). Previously she had been married to Chandragupta's brother Ramagupta. She was a great patron of poets and gave shelter to many scholars in the Gupta court. Famed for her beauty and intellect, she was first married to the weak and cowardly son of Samudragupta, Ramagupta. Sometime later the mighty Shaka demanded of the Guptas that they hand over Dhruvadevi as a condition for peace.

19. (b) The correct match list is:

Dynasty	Capital
Chalukya of Gujarat	Anhilvad
Kalachuris of Chedi	Tripuri
Parmaras of Malwa	Dhara
Chahmans of Sakambhari	Ajmer

The Chalukya dynasty was an Indian royal dynasty that ruled large parts of southern and central India between the 6th and the 12th centuries. During this period, they ruled as three related yet individual dynasties. The Kalachuris, also known as the Haihayas, were an ancient people known from the Epics and Puranas from 249 or 250 AD. Several branches of the Kalachuris were settled in different parts of northern India. In the later half of sixth century AD, they ruled over a powerful kingdom comprising Gujarat,

northern Maharashtra, and later then some parts of Malwa. The Paramara. Their ancient capital was Chandrawati, situated 4 miles away from Abu station. This Vansha evolves out from the Agni Kunda of Yagya on the Abu mountain."ParajanMarithiParmar" means "Vansha which defeats the enemy" hence it is called Parmar. In 973–1192, Chahmans of Sakambhari (Ajmer – Rajasthan)

20. (d) The correct match list of dynasty and states is:

Dynasty	State
Kadamba	Karnataka
Kharvela	Odisha
Chalukya	Gujarat
Pala	Bengal

The Kadamba dynasty (345 – 525 CE) was a primeval majestic dynasty of Karnataka that ruled from Vijayanti or Banavasi in present day Uttara Kannada district. The decline of the Satavahana power in the Deccan was followed by the rule of many lesser dynasties like the Chutus, the Abhiras and the Ikshvakus. During the third century AD the Karnataka area, however, emerged out of this political confusion in the following century. Kharavela (193 BCE – after 170 BCE) was the third and greatest emperor of the Mahameghavahana dynasty of Kalinga (present-day Odisha). The main source of information about Kharavela is his famous seventeen line rock-cut Hatigumpha inscription in a cave in the Udayagiri hills near Bhubaneswar, Odisha. The Chalukya dynasty was a powerful Indian royal dynasty that ruled large parts of southern and central India between the 6th and the 12th century CE. Pala dynasty, ruling dynasty in Bihar and Bengal, India, from the 8th to the 12th centuries. Its founder, Gopala, was a local chieftain who rose to power in the mid-8th century during a period of anarchy.

21. (c) 1 is correctly matched because Parinirvana of the Buddha in Cave 17 of Ajanta, with numerous celestial musicians above and the sorrowful figures of his followers below, is one of the grandest and yet most delicately expressive scenes ever made in stone. 2 is wrong because huge image of Varaha Avatar of Vishnu, as herescues Goddess Earth from the deepand chaotic waters, sculpted on rock is found in Mamallapuram. 3 is right because Arjuna's Penance "Descent of Ganga" sculpted on the surface of huge boulders is found in Mamallapuram.



INDIA AFTER HARSHA

10

Chapter

Introduction

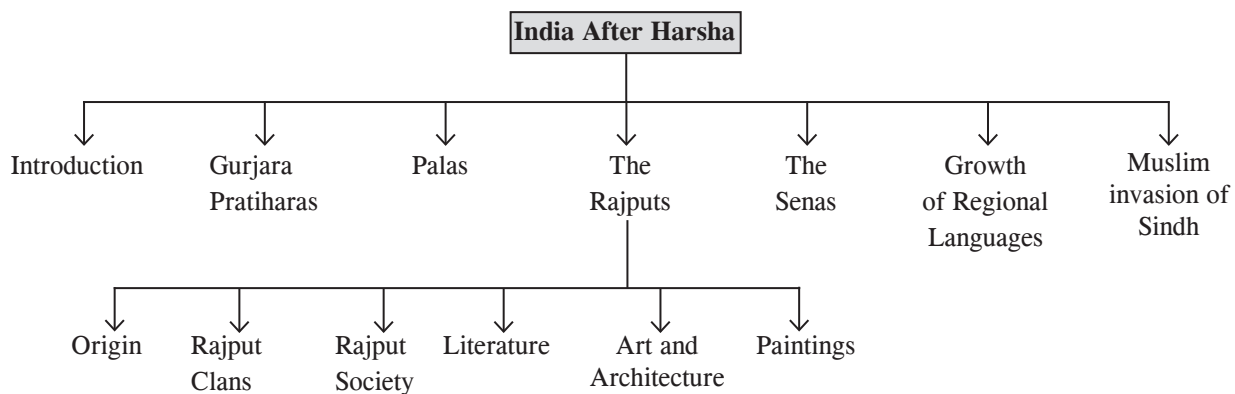
After the death of Harshavardhan, the unity fabricated by him in the north India, disintegrated. There opened several centres of power and resulted in the emergence of the multi-state system or as **Prof. Ishwari Prasad** says, “*India was nations within the nation.*”

But soon, the political disturbance and chaos gave chance to the Arabs to invade India (712 A.D.). The series of foreign invasions ruined India and at the same time forced the small petty feudatories to become strong and face the situation.

Thus, the period is marked with important developments such as:

- (i) Rise of important kingdoms in eastern, central, southern and northern India. However, these acted as a bridge between different regions because the cultural traditions of these kingdoms remained stable even though they often fought among themselves.
- (ii) There remained continuity in the field of economy, social structure, ideas and beliefs. This was perhaps because the changes in these areas took place more gradually than the changes in political spheres. The close interaction among various regions resulted in the formation of definite forms of some common cultural trends which can be seen in the literature, education, art and architecture of the period.

In the northern part of India and Deccan, three dynasties came into existence. These were Gurjara-Pratiharas, Palas and Rashtrakutas.



INDIA AFTER HARSHA

Gurjara-Pratiharas

The Gurjara-Pratiharas were the early Rajputs who started their rule from Gujarat and south western Rajasthan. Later they ruled from Kannauj. *Nagabhata* I was the first great ruler of the dynasty. He defeated the Muslim forces of Arab. *Bhoja* I (A.D. 836-885) was another prominent ruler of this dynasty. He succeeded in restoring the territories of the kingdom which

was lost for a short time to the Palas of Bengal. He was a devotee of Vishnu and adopted the title of *Adivarahi*, which has been incorporated as legend on some of his coins. During the reign of *Mahendrapala* I, son and successor of *Bhoja* I, the Pratihara emperor extended almost from the Himalayas in the north to the Vindhyas in the south and from Bengal in the east to Gujarat in the west.

The Pratiharas ruled over north India for more than three hundred years. The *Arab* travelers such as *Sulaiman* and *Al Masudi*, who visited India in the ninth and tenth centuries A.D., wrote about the power and prestige of the Pratihara rulers and the vastness of their empire.

The Pratiharas were patrons of arts, crafts, learning and literature. The great Sanskrit poet *Rajashekhara* adorned the court of *Mahendrapala I*. His famous work is *Kavyamimansa*. The Pratiharas embellished Kanauj with fine buildings and temples.

Palas

The founder of Palas dynasty was *Gopala I* who was elected as the king by the people. He was able to consolidate his kingdom and established a powerful empire of Pala dynasty.

Dharmapala and *Devapala* were the most powerful rulers of this dynasty. They extended and consolidated the Pala Empire. The Palas ruled over Bihar, Bengal and parts of Orissa and Assam with many ups and downs in their fortune for over four centuries.

The Pala rulers were great supporter of learning and religions. *Dharmapala* founded the famous Buddhist monastery at *Vikramshila*, which became second only to Nalanda in fame as a centre for higher learning. During Palas' reign, the fame of *Nalanda University* spread all over the world.

During Devapala's reign the king of Suvarnadvipa (South East Asia) Balaputradeva built a monastery in Nalanda and requested Devapala to endow the income of five villages for the maintenance of the monastery.

Tripartite Struggle

The most important event of post-Harsha-period was tripartite conflict among the *Gurjara-Pratiharas*, *Rashtrakutas* and *Palas* for the supremacy of the north. This conflict started during the reign of *Vatsaraja-Pratihara*. He ascended the throne in A.D. 778. In order to give practical shape to his imperialist designs, *Vatsaraja* with the help of his feudatory chiefs attacked *Dharmapala*, the Pala king of Bengal, and carried away his state umbrella.

While the conflict between *Batsaraja* and *Dharmapala* was going on to establish supremacy in the north, *Dhruva*, the *Rashtrakuta* king of south, launched an attack on *Vatsaraja* and inflicted a crushing defeat upon him. *Dhruva* next turned against *Dharmapala* and defeated him somewhere between the Ganges and the Yamuna. Thus, began the tripartite struggle between the Pratiharas, Palas and *Rashtrakutas* for the supremacy in northern India. The city of Kannauj, which was elevated to an important position by *Harshavardhana*, seems to have been the coveted prize won by each. Though *Vatsaraja* defeated *Dharmapala* and both suffered a defeat at the hands of *Dhruva*, the *Rashtrakuta* king, yet it so appears that the condition of *Vatsaraja* had worsened as *Dharmapala* continued enjoying his hold over Kannauj even after suffering a defeat from him, *Dharmapala* also convened an assembly at Kannauj which was attended by the rulers of various states.

Vatsaraja was succeeded by his son and successor, *Nagabhatta*, who too was ambitious and an imperialist. He made efforts to restore the lost prestige of his empire. His efforts were crowned with tremendous success. From the Gwalior plates, we learn that *Nagabhatta* defeated *Dharmapala* and advanced as far as Monghyr. *Nagabhatta's* victory over *Dharmapala*

proved temporary and short-lived. Once again the *Rashtrakuta* king, *Govinda III*, upset the schemes of the Pratihara king.

Nagabhatta was succeeded by *Ramabhadra*, who ruled for a very short period. He was a weak ruler and during his times, the country was frequently invaded. *Ramabhadra* was succeeded by his son, *Bhoja*. He was probably the greatest and most illustrious king of Pratihara dynasty. *Bhoja* restored the lost glory and prestige of Pratihara Empire. In order to regain the lost power, he had to wage war against the Palas. The Pala king at that time was *Devapala*. *Bhoja* led an expedition towards the south. The chief attraction in south was the tottering condition of *Rashtrakuta* dynasty. From *Rashtrakuta* inscriptions, we learn that here too *Raja Bhoja* suffered a defeat.

In spite of these resistances *Bhoja* did not lose heart. From an inscription we learn that he resolved to "conquer all the three worlds", and so he renewed his aggressive career. By that time *Devapala*, the powerful king of Pala dynasty had expired and his successors were weak and peace-loving. Moreover his contemporary *Rashtrakuta* king at this time was *Amoghavarsha*. *Amoghavarsha* came into conflict with the rulers of Pala dynasty in which he scored some success.

Bhoja also tried to take advantage of the weak position of the Pala kings and attacked Bengal. The Pala king *Narayana Pala* suffered a crushing defeat and *Bhoja* annexed the western parts of his empire. *Bhoja* also had to wage a protracted war against the *Rashtrakutas* who had already dealt a crushing defeat on him. *Bhoja* made Kannauj as the capital of Pratihara Empire.

Raja Bhoja was succeeded by *Mahendrapala*. He defeated Bengal, the home territory of his hereditary enemies, the Palas. He was succeeded by *Mahipala*. He invaded *Rashtrakutas*. Even during the reign of *Mahipala's* successors, the *Rashtrakuta* invasions continued. After *Devapala* the glory of Palas came to an end and *Devapala's* successors could not resist the *Rashtrakuta* and Pratihara invasions. The *Sena* dynasty succeeded the Palas in Bengal.

The Rajputs

The smaller states in northern India were ruled by people known as Rajputs. The period between A.D. 647 and A.D. 1192 i.e. 500 years is known as the Rajput period in the history of India. With the downfall of Pratihara Empire, a number of Rajput states came into existence in north India.

Origin

There are different theories regarding the origin of the Rajputs. One theory suggests that the Rajputs are descendents of the ancient *Kshatriyas* belonging to either Sun family (*Suryavansha*) or Moon family (*Chandravansha*). There is a theory of the foreign origin also. But there were four clans which claimed that they had not descended from either of these two families but from the fire family (*agni-kula*). These four clans were the most important in the history of this period. They were the Pratiharas (or *Pariharas*) not to be confused with the main Pratiharas- the *Chauhans*, *Solankis*, and *Pawars* (or *Paramars*). The four ("agni-kula") clan established their power in Western India and over parts of Central India and Rajasthan. The foreign origin of some of the Rajput clans is definitely proved by the epigraphic evidence. On the whole, the diversity of the cults and beliefs, manners and customs prevalent among the Rajputs seems to indicate diversity of origin.

Gahadvalsa, Parmars and Chauhans

The most powerful Rajputs were the Gahadvalas of Kannauj, the Paramaras of Malwa, and the Chauhans of Ajmer. There were other smaller dynasties in different parts of the country, like the **Kalachuris** in the area around modern Jabalpur, the **Chandellas** in Bundelkhand, the **Chalukyas** of Gujarat, and the **Tomars** of Delhi, etc. the **Gahadvalas** of Kannauj gradually squeezed the Palas out of Bihar, and made Banaras a second capital. Meanwhile, the Chauhans who had established themselves at Ajmer were gradually extending their empire towards Gujarat, as well as towards Delhi and the Punjab. On the periphery of what had been the three major kingdoms, there had arisen a number of small states. These were Nepal, Kamarupa (Asaam), Kashmir, and Utkala (Orissa). Many of the hill states of the Punjab came into being at this time, including Champaka (Chamba), Durgara (Jammu) and Kuluta (Kulu). The obsession with local affairs and infighting among the states made them weak.

The Four Agnikula Rajput Clans

- (i) **The Parihara** - also known as Pratihara based in southern Rajasthan.

- (ii) **The Chauhans** - helped Pratihara against Arabs, based in eastern Rajasthan.
- (iii) **The Solankis** - also called Chalukyas of Gujarat, based in Kathiawara.
- (iv) **The Pawars of Parmars** - established their control in Malwa with their capital at Dhar near Indore.

The four clans dominated early Rajput activities.

Rajput Society

The Feudal order was strongly established among the Rajputs. The Rajput rulers divided the Kingdoms among landed units called **Jairs** and distributed them among faithful nobles. The Rajputs were Hindus and were known as Kshatriyas, being a warrior class. They celebrated the major Hindu festivals and invoked Goddesses like Durga or Bhavani for strength and valour. Rajput women were respected in society but did not enjoy the same position as men.

Rajput Contribution to Literature

The period under the Rajputs also witnessed the blossoming of literature. Munja of the Paramar dynasty of Malwa was a great scholar and poet. Another king, King Bhoj was well-known for his wisdom and learning and assumed the title of Raviraja.

Important Literary Work

Subject area	Name of the author	Name of the work	Remarks
Poetry	1. Jaideva 2. Bharavi 3. Bharatrhari 4. Damodar Gupta 5. Magha	Gita Govinda Kiatarjuneya Ravana Vadha Kuttanimata Sishupala Vadha Shri Harsha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jaideva was the court poet of Lakshmanasena of Bengal.
Drama	1. Raja Sekhara 2. Bhavabhuti	Bal Ramayana Mahavir Charita	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raja Sekhara was the court poet of Mahendrapal, the Pratihara ruler. Bhavabhuti wrote in Prakrit Malati Madhav, Uttara Ramcharita
Historic Work	1. Vakra Narain 2. Kalhana 3. Jayaniak 4. Hemchandra	Veni Sanhara Rajatarangini Prithviraj Vijay Kumarpal Charita	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Veni Sanhar is full of heroic tales. Rajatarangini narrates the history of Kashmir Prithviraj Vijay and Kumarpal Charit are Great sources of contemporary history.
Biography	1. Bilhana 2. Chand Bardai 3. Ballala	Vikramadeva Charita Prithviraj Raso Bhoja Prabandhu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is the biography of a Chalukya King. It deals with the exploits of Prithviraj Chauhan. It shows light on the life of king Bhoja.
Stories	1. Somadeva	Kathasarita Sagar Hitopadesha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hitopadesha is a collection of short stories based on Panchtantra.
Medicine and Science	1. Baghbhatta 2. Chakrapani Dutta 3. Bhaskaracharya 4. Saridhari	Astanghriday Ayurveda Siddhanta Siromani Tarisati	
Grammar	1. Jayaditya 2. Bharatrhari	Kasikvitri Commentary on Panini's Mahabhasya.	

Rajput Art and Architecture

The palaces of Jaipur and Udaipur and the forts of Chittor, Mandu, Jodhpur and Gwalior are fine examples of Rajput architecture. *Dilwara* temples at *Mount Abu*, the *Vimala Vasahi* and the *Luna Vasahi* were built by Soalankis of Gujarat.

Rajput Paintings

The Rajput paintings are classified into the *Rajasthani School of Art* and the *Pahari School of Art*. The Rajasthani School flourished in Mewar, Bikaner, Jaipur, Jodhpur, Jaisalmer and Bundi and specialized in depicting scenes from Krishna lila, Mayika Veda and Ritu Charita. The Pahari School was patronized by the rulers of Himalayan states especially in the regions of Basoli, Mandi, Jammu, Kangra, Garhwal. Sansar Chand, the ruler of Kangra encourages this school of paintings dealing with Radha and Krishna, Baramasa (12 months) and Ragas (Melodies). The best examples of Paharei school are the Nal Damayanti and Goghara, the Govardhan Dharan and the seize of Lanka.

The Senas

After the downfall of the Palas, the Senas under *Samanta Sena* formed an empire in Bengal. *Vijay Sena*, his grandson can be attributed to be the real founder of the empire as he united the whole of Bengal under his rule and ruled for about 70 years. A Saivite, he also gave patronage to art. Deopara Prasesti was composed by Umapatidhar during his time. The Empire came into decline during the reign of Lakshmansena. The Sultanate ruler *Muhammed Bakhtiyar Khilji's* attack led to its quick decay.

Apart from these, there were Ahoms in Assam, in Orissa Kesaries and Gangas from Bhubaneswar and Kalinganagar respectively ruled.

Kashmir was ruled by three dynasties- the Karkota, Utpala and Loharas. Lalitaditya was the most famous ruler of Kashmir during this period.

These rulers were at regular fights with each other for supremacy which made them weak. The contact between these small kingdoms and outside world was very limited. Even contacts between these kingdoms were limited to war. So, they could neither defend themselves individually nor unite against the Muslim invasions.

Growth of Regional Languages

A remarkable feature of the period was the growth of regional languages. Prakrit, the language of the masses played an important role in the development of local languages, such as Hindi, Marathi, Gujarati, Bengali and Oriya.

Muslim Invasion of Sindh

In A.D. 712 *Al Hajjaj* led an expedition against Sindh's ruler *Dahir*, under his nephew and son-in-law, *Muhammad-bin-Qasim*. This expedition put Sindh under the Arabs for about 200 years.

The cause of this invasion was neither the wish for territorial expansion nor religious. The king of Ceylon had sent some gifts to the king of Turkey which were looted at Debal in Sindh by the pirates. The ruler of the Sindh, *Dahir* refused to compensate the loss by showing his ignorance to the incident. But this could not satisfy the ego of the provincial governor of *Basra*, *Al Hajjaj*, who immediately sent an army expedition in 637. But, he was unsuccessful. Another military expedition met with the same fate.

The Arabs assault paved the way for further wrath of the attacker into India. It was against this background that *Mahmud of Ghazni* invaded the country in A.D. 1000 for her wealth. He wanted to make Ghazni, a principality of Afghanistan, into a region wielding formidable power in the politics of Central Asia. In a short period of 25 years, he made 17 raids. He destroyed many temples, e.g. Somnath temples in Gujarat as they were depositories of vast quantities of wealth.

Second attack from north-west was made by *Muhammed Ghori* at the end of 12th century, for which India was not prepared. His first invasion was against *Multan* in A.D.1175, which was successful.

He attacked from *Gomal pass* in 1182, and conquered *Sindh*. In 1182, he conquered *Lahore* and soon after, an attack was commenced on the Rajput kingdoms controlling the Ganges plain. *Prithviraj Chauhan* led the Rajputs against Muhammed Ghori at the *first battle of Tarain* in 1191 and the Rajputs became victorious. At the second battle in 1192 at the same place, Prithviraj was defeated and the kingdom of Delhi fell to Muhammed Ghori. Before his assassination in 1206, Turks had conquered the Ganga-Yamuna doab and its neighbouring areas, and Bihar and Bengal were also overrun. He started a new era in Indian history.

Points to Remember

- Mahmud of Ghazni ascended the throne in A.D. 998
- He invaded India to plunder the big towns and rich temples.
- He annexed Punjab and Multan to his empire.
- The famous historian Alberuni came in and wrote the famous *Tahrik-Hind*.
- In 1175 A.D. another wave of attack came from Shahabuddin Muhammed Ghori.
- He belonged to the ruling family in Afghanistan.
- His aim of invasion of India was to lay the foundations of the Muslim Empire here.
- He was a contemporary of Prithviraj Chauhan, who had ascended the throne at the age of 14.
- Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated by Muhammed Ghori at the second battle of Tarain in A.D. 1192

Exercise - 1

- Which of the following is not true about Rajputs?
 - Their rise was an important social phenomenon of the early medieval period.
 - They comprised the ruling and warrior chiefs
 - They were a landed aristocracy
 - The medas were denied entry to their ranks
- Gold coins attributed to Harsha depict on the reverse
 - Avalokitesvara
 - Tara
 - Surya
 - Shiva-Parvati
- The famous commentator of Vedic literature, associated with the Paramaras was
 - Apararka
 - Kshirasvamin
 - Soyana
 - Uvata
- Who among the following exposed evils of the contemporary society by his satirical writings?
 - Vishakhadatta
 - Banabhatta
 - Kalhana
 - Kshemendra
- Who among the following was the patron of the Kota school of painting?
 - Balawant Singh
 - Govardhan Singh
 - Savant Singh
 - Umed Singh
- Rajashekara, the author of 'Karpurmanjari', was the teacher of
 - Mahendrapala I
 - Narsimhavarma II
 - Bhoja parmara
 - Yuvarajadeva II
- Who among the following has been criticized by Kalhana for confiscating the temple treasure?
 - Avantivarman
 - Didida
 - Harsha
 - Lalitaditya
- Who among the following levied Turushka-danda?
 - Gahadavalas
 - Chandellas
 - Chahamanas
 - Shahis
- Which of the following sources provides a vivid description of Sindh?
 - Khazainul Futuh
 - Tarikh-i-Firoz-Shahi
 - Insha-i-mehru
 - Chachnamah
- Kumardevi, the Queen of Govindachandra Gahadavala, constructed Dharmachakra-jina-vihar at
 - Bodhgaya
 - Kusinagar
 - Kanauj
 - Sarnath
- Harsha had assumed the title
 - Parama-Bhagavata
 - Parama-Mahesvara
 - Parama-Saugata
 - Parama-Adityabhah
- The Chola rulers were generally
 - Saivites
 - Vaisnavites
 - Worshippers of Mother-goddess
 - Worshippers of Kartikeya
- The Turkish brought with them musical instruments
 - Rabab and Sarangi
 - Sitar and Flute
 - Veena and Tabla
 - Tanpura and Mridang
- Harsha's military expansion in the Deccan was checked by
 - Mahendrarvarman
 - Dantidurga
 - Rajendra
 - Pulkesin II
- Who of the following adopted Garuda' as dynasty emblem after the imperial Guptas?
 - Rashtrakutas
 - Western Chalukyas
 - Shilaharas
 - Chedis
- The north Indian dynasties that confronted the Rashtrakutas were
 - The Pratiharas and the Paramaras
 - The Palas and the Chandelas
 - The Pratiharas and the Palas
 - The Chalukyas and the Chahamanas
- The Vikramshila Mahavihara, the renowned educational centre of Pala period at
 - Antichak
 - Aphasad
 - Basarh
 - Chandimau
- Which one of the following Chola rulers had persecuted Ramanuja and ousted him from his Kingdom?
 - Kulothunga I
 - Kulothunga II
 - Adhirajendra
 - Rajaraja I
- Which one of the following was the primary assembly in the Chola village administration?
 - Nadu
 - Sabha
 - Ur
 - Mahasabha
- A Chalukya inscription is dated in the year 556 of the Saka era. Its equivalent is to
 - 478 AD
 - 499 AD
 - 613 AD
 - 634 AD
- Vikramshila Mahavihar was established by the ruler of
 - Pushyabhuti dynasty
 - Barman dynasty
 - Sen dynasty
 - Pala dynasty
- In which court was a Chinese embassy sent by T'ang emperor?
 - Rajaraja I
 - Rajendra I
 - Harshavardhana
 - Prantaka I
- Who founded the four Mathas in the four corners of India?
 - Shankaracharya
 - Ramanujacharya
 - Bhaskaracharya
 - Madhvacharya
- The presiding deity of Bhojsala Temple is
 - Goddess Durga
 - Goddess Laxmi
 - Goddess Saraswati
 - Goddess Parvati
- Rath Temples at Mahabalipuram were built in the reign of which Pallava ruler?
 - Mahendrarvarman
 - Narasinghvarman I
 - Parameshwarvarman
 - Nandivarman I
- 'Ramayan am' the Tamil version of the great epic Ramayana was made by
 - Kamban
 - Avvaiyar
 - Ilango Vadigal
 - None of these
- Which one of the following is not a work on architecture?
 - Manasare
 - Samarangana Sutradhara
 - Mahavastu
 - Mayamata
- Sugandhadevi who issued coins with the figure of seated Lakshmi was a Queen of

- (a) Karnataka (b) Kashmir
(c) Orissa (d) Saurashtra
29. Who among the following believed in the theory of Bheda-bhed?
(a) Vallabhacharya (b) Nimbarakacharya
(c) Madhvacharya (d) Ramanujacharya
30. What was the main objective of Sultan Mahmud's Indian conquests?
(a) Propagation of Religion
(b) Extension of Empire
(c) Acquisition of Wealth
(d) None of these
31. In the context of cultural history of India, a pose in dance and dramatics called 'Tribhanga' has been a favourite of Indian artists from ancient times till today. Which one of the following statements best describes this pose?
(a) One leg is bent and the body is slightly but oppositely curved at waist and neck
(b) Facial expressions, hand gestures and make-up are combined to symbolize certain epic or historic characters
(c) Movements of body, face and hands are used to express oneself or to tell a story
(d) A little smile, slightly curved waist and certain hand gestures are emphasized to express the feelings of love or eroticism.
32. Rajputas are mentioned as Agnikula Kshatriyas in
(a) Prithviraj Raso
(b) Rajataragini
(c) Vikramakadeva Charita
(d) Dasakumara Charita
33. Who wrote Prithviraj Raso?
(a) Kalhana (b) Vishakadatta
(c) Rajasekara (d) Chandbaradai
34. Who was the Shahi ruler of Punjab defeated by Muhammad Ghazni?
(a) Nagabhatta (b) Prithviraj
(c) Jayapala (d) Mahipala
35. Rajatarangini was written by
(a) Devadatta (b) Kalhana
(c) Dhandi (d) Bharavi
36. The Rajput dynasty that ruled Kannauj was
(a) Gurjara Pratiharas (b) Chandelas
(c) Gahadvalas (d) a and c
37. What was the capital of Gurjara Pratiharas?
(a) Bhinmal (b) Rangapur
(c) Manda (d) Khajuraho
38. Who may be the founder of Pratihara dynasty?
(a) Dharmapala (b) Gopala
(c) Bhoja (d) Pratihara
39. Who was the first prominent ruler of Pratihara dynasty?
(a) Bhoja I (b) Nagabhatta
(c) Jayapala (d) Chandradeva
40. The Pratihara ruler who occupied Kannauj?
(a) Jayachandra (b) Prithviraj
(c) Nagabhatta (d) Rajyapala
41. The Pala ruler who was defeated by the Pratihara ruler Nagabhatta?
(a) Govindapala (b) Mahipala
(c) Dharmapala (d) Gopala
42. The prominent ruler of Pratihara dynasty Bhoja I ruled from
(a) 840-890 A.D (b) 850-860 A.D
(c) 860-870 A.D (d) 870-880 A.D
43. Who was the last ruler of Pratihara dynasty?
(a) Nagabhatta (b) Vijayalaya
(c) Simhavishnu (d) Rajyapala
44. Why did the Gurjara Pratihara dynasty declined?
(a) invasions of Muhammad Bin Quasim
(b) invasions of Muhammad Ghori
(c) invasions of Muhammad Ghazini
(d) invasions of Hunas
45. Pratihara dynasty came to end in
(a) 1001 A.D (b) 1018 A.D
(c) 1213 A.D (d) 1214 A.D
46. The Rajput Clan that ruled Bundelkhand was
(a) Gahadvalas (b) Chandelas
(c) Pratiharas (d) Paramaras
47. What was the capital of Chandelas?
(a) Bhinmal (b) Kannauj
(c) Khajuraho (d) Ajmer
48. Who was the founder of Chandela dynasty?
(a) Jayasakti (b) Narasimha
(c) Chandradeva (d) Nagabhatta
49. Who was the most prominent ruler of the Chandela dynasty?
(a) Krishna (b) Bhoja
(c) Dhanga (d) Jayachandra
50. Who built the famous temples at Khajuraho?
(a) Chandelas (b) Gahadvalas
(c) Palas (d) Senas
51. The Chandela ruler who built famous temple at Khajurao?
(a) Dhanga (b) Chandradeva
(c) Jayadeva (d) Bhimadeva
52. The son of Dhanga who gave resistance to Muhammad Ghazni
(a) Jayapala (b) Anandapala
(c) Rajyapala (d) Ganda
53. The Muslim ruler who conquered the kingdom of Bundelkhand in 1203 A.D?
(a) Muhammad Ghazni
(b) Muhammad Bin Quasim
(c) Qutb-ud-din Aibak
(d) Iltutmish
54. Who was the founder of Paramara dynasty?
(a) Siyaka (b) Krishna Raja
(c) Mahadeva (d) Nagabhatta
55. Who established independent Paramara dynasty?
(a) Rajasekara (b) Vishaladeva
(c) Prithviraj (d) Siyaka II
56. Paramara dynasty ruled
(a) Bundelkhand (b) Kannauj
(c) Malwa (d) Bengal
57. What was the capital of Paramaras?
(a) Dhara (b) Kannauj
(c) Manda (d) Khajuraho
58. Who was the most important ruler of Paramara dynasty?
(a) Dhanga (b) Bhoja
(c) Dhruva (d) Krishna
59. Kaviraja Malavachakravartin was the title of
(a) Jayachandra (b) Chandradeva
(c) Vishaladeva (d) Bhoja
60. The Paramara ruler who established a university at Dhara?
(a) Bhoja (b) Nagabhatta
(c) Simhavishnu (d) Mahadeva
61. The first Muslims invaded India were
(a) Arabs (b) Turks
(c) Afghans (d) Persians

62. Who was the last Hindu king ruled North India?
 (a) Pulakesi (b) Kanishka
 (c) Chandradeva (d) Harsha
63. The first Muslim expedition on India took place in
 (a) 716 A.D. (b) 718 A.D.
 (c) 712 A.D. (d) 720 A.D.
64. Who was the Hindu king at the time of invasion of Muhammad-Bin Quasim on Sind?
 (a) Dahir (b) Hala
 (c) Krishna (d) Ananda Pala
65. Who established first Islamic empire in India?
 (a) Hizzaz
 (b) Muhammad-Bin-Quasim
 (c) Muhammad Ghazni
 (d) Muhammad Ghor
66. Muhammad Ghazni invaded India 17 times between
 (a) 900-950 A.D. (b) 950-1000 A.D.
 (c) 1000-1026 A.D. (d) 1025-1046 A.D.
67. Muhammad Ghazni plundered Somnath temple in Kathiawar in
 (a) 1020 A.D. (b) 1025 A.D.
 (c) 1030 A.D. (d) 1029 A.D.
68. The first Tarian war took place in
 (a) 1191 A.D. (b) 1193 A.D.
 (c) 1195 A.D. (d) 1197 A.D.
69. The second Tarian war took place in
 (a) 1193 A.D. (b) 1198 A.D.
 (c) 1199 A.D. (d) 1192 A.D.
70. The Rajput king who was defeated and killed in second Tarain war?
 (a) Nagabhata (b) Prithviraj Chauhan
 (c) Rana Pratap (d) Jaya Chandra

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

1. Consider the following statements-
- The supremacy over Kannauj was a major source of struggle between Pratiharas, the Palas, the Rashtrakutas
 - The theory that Rajputs were descendants of Agnikula was first put forward by colonel Todd.
 - It is after Yanasakti that the chandella kingdom was called Tejabhukti.
 - During the Arab rule over sindh in the 6th and 7th centuries A.D., Zimmis were those exempted from Jaziya payment.
- Which of the above is/are not correct?
 (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1, 3 and 4
 (c) 1 and 3 (d) 2 and 4
2. Consider the following statements-
- Nagabhata I was the first great ruler of Gurjara Pratihara dynasty.
 - Bhoja I was another prominent ruler of this dynasty.
 - Mahendrapala I was the son of Boja I
- which of the above is/are correct?
 (a) Only 1 (b) Only 1 and 2
 (c) Only 2 and 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3
3. Consider the following statements
- Rajputas came into existence before the downfall of pratihara empire.
 - The Rajput rulers divided the kingdoms among landed units called Jars.
 - Rajput women enjoyed the same position as men.
- Which of the above is/are not correct?
 (a) Only 1 (b) Only 1 and 3
 (c) Only 2 (d) Only 2 and 3

Matching Based MCQ

4. **List-I** (Authors) **List-II** (Historical Kavyas)
- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| A. Hemachandra | 1. Dvyasraya Kavya |
| B. Jayanka | 2. Navasahshan Charita |
| C. Padmagupta | 3. Prithviraja Vijaya |
| D. Sandhyakar Nandi | 4. Rama Charita |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (d) | 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 |
5. **List-I** (Clans' Name) **List-II** (Clans)
- | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| A. Parihara | 1. Kathiwarra |
| B. Chauhans | 2. Indore |
| C. Solankis | 3. Southern Rajasthan |
| D. Pawaras | 4. Eastern Rajasthan |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) | 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (d)
2. (d) Gold coins attributed to Harsha depict on the reverse Shiva-Parvati. The Gupta period is considered the “Golden Age” of classical India. This was a time when great universities flourished in Nalanda and Takshashila, and great writers, such as the playwright Kalidasa, and great scientists, such as the mathematician and astronomer Aryabhata, who is credited with the concept of zero among his many achievements, helped create an atmosphere of tremendous creative impulse.
3. (d) The famous commentator of Vedic literature, associated with the Parmaras was Uvata. The Parmar dynasty was an early medieval Indian royal house that ruled over the Malwa region in central India. This dynasty was founded by Upendra in c. 800; the most significant ruler was Bhoja I. The seat of the Parmar kingdom was Dhangraja, the present day Dhar city in Madhya Pradesh.
4. (a) Vishakhadatta exposed evils of the contemporary society by his satirical writings. There is no unanimity among the authorities on the date of Mudrarakshasa. However, majority of them are in favour of assigning the composition of this Sanskrit work to 4th–5th centuries AD. The Minister Signet’s Ring centres around the schemes of the wily Chankya to frustrate the plots of Raksasa, the minister of Dhanananda, the last ruler of the Nanda dynasty.
5. (d) Umed Singh was the patron of the Kota School of Painting. The Kota school of painting is one of the finest examples of this technique. Kota paintings are known for their depiction of nature and hunting scenes. Painting comprises a very integral part of Rajasthani culture. Woven into these splendid visuals are images of everyday life of the olden times. The development of miniature paintings has been one of the most important contributions of Rajasthan to Indian art.
6. (a) Rajashekhara, the author of ‘Karpurmanjri’ was the teacher of Mahendrapala I. Rajashekhara was an eminent Sanskrit poet, dramatist and critic. He was court poet of the Gurjara Pratiharas. He wrote Kavyamimamsa between 880 and 920 CE. The work is essentially a practical guide for poets that explains the elements and composition of a good poem. The fame of Rajashekhara rests firmly on his play Karpuramanjari, written in Sauraseni Prakrit.
7. (c) Harsha has been criticised by Kalhana for confiscating the temple. Harsha (r.1089-1111) started out as a capable and noble king. Then ran into financial trouble because of his spending habits, and became an evil person. For the gold, he started raiding temples and started destroying statues. Harsha never felt himself as a “Hindu” king per se as there was no people who felt themselves to be “Hindus” in those days.
8. (a) Gahadavalas levied Turushka-danda. Gahadavala dynasty rule of the district is proved by the discovery at Kudarkot of a copper plate grant dated in the reign of Chandradeva. Chandradeva founded the Gahadavala dynasty at Kanyakubja after defeating a chief named Gopala of Tuar clan. His jurisdiction extended over nearly all of what is modern Uttar Pradesh including this district.
9. (d) Chachnamah provides a vivid description of Sindh. The Chachnamah was written by Kazi Ismail. Kazi Ismail was appointed the first Kazi of Alor by Muhammad Kasim after the conquest of the Sindh. It was translated into Persian by Muhammad Ali bin Hamid bin Abu Bakr Kufi in 1216 CE from an earlier Arabic text. At one time, it was considered to be a romance until Mountstuart Elphinstone’s observations of its historical veracity. The original work in Arabic is believed to have been composed by the Sakifi family, the kinsmen of Muhammad bin Qasim.
10. (d) Kumaradevi, the queen of Govindachandra Gahadavala, constructed Dharmachakrajnavihar at Sarnath. Kumaradevi, the Buddhist queen of the great Gahadavala king Govindrachandra of Kashi (CE 1114-1154). All the halls and apartments of the monks have disappeared. This monastery had two gateways towards the east, there being a distance of 88.45 m between the two. At the western most edge of the site, a distinct covered passage leads to a small medieval shrine.
11. (b) Harsha had assumed the title Parama-Maheswara. An early copper plate grant of king Dantidurga (753) shows an image of god Shiva and the coins of his successor, king Krishna I (768), bear the legend Parama-Maheshwara (another name for Shiva). The kings’ titles such as Veeranarayana showed their Vaishnava leanings. Their flag had the sign of the Ganges and Yamuna rivers, perhaps copied from the Badami Chalukyas.
12. (a) The Chola rulers were generally Saivites. Among the existing specimens in museums around the world and in the temples of South India may be seen many fine figures of Shiva in various forms, such as Vishnu and

- his consort Lakshmi, and the Saivaite saints. Though conforming generally to the iconographic conventions established by long tradition, the sculptors worked with great freedom in the 11th and the 12th centuries to achieve a classic grace and grandeur. The best example of this can be seen in the form of Nataraja the Divine Dancer.
13. (a) The Turkish brought with them musical instruments Rabab and Sarangi. During this time, the music of North India began to acquire and adapt to the presence of Persian language, music, and musical instruments, such as the Setar, from which the Sitar got its name; the Kemaneh and Santur, which became popular in Kashmir; and the Rabab [alternately known as Rebab and Rubab], which preceded the Sarod. New instruments were introduced, including the Tabla and Sitar.
 14. (d) Harsha's military expansion in the Deccan was checked by Pulkesin II. When Pulkesin II pushed forth up to the Narmada, he came face to face with Harshavardhana of Kanauj who already had the title Uttarapatheshvara (Lord of the north). In a decisive battle fought on the banks of the river Narmada, Harsha lost a major part of his elephant force and had to retreat. The Aihole inscription describes how the mighty Harsha lost his *harsha* (joy) when he suffered the ignominy of defeat.
 15. (a) Rashtrakutas adopted Garuda as dynastic emblem after the imperial Gupta. Silver coins of the Gupta kings Chandragupta II and his son Kumargupta I adopted the Western Satrap design (itself derived from the Indo-Greeks) with bust of the ruler and pseudo-Greek inscription on the obverse, and a royal eagle (Garuda, the dynastic symbol of the Guptas) replacing the Chaitya hill with star and crescent on the reverse.
 16. (c) The North Indian dynasties that confronted the Rashtrakutas were the Pratiharas and the Palas. The Pratiharas are believed to be the clan of Rajputs. The greatest ruler of the Pratihara dynasty was Mihir Bhoja. He recovered Kanauj (Kanyakubja) by 836, and it remained the capital of the Pratiharas for almost a century. The Pratihara dynasty started well under the ruler Nagabhata-I. Though initially he had hiccups with the Rashtrakutas, he was able to leave behind a strong State comprising Malwa, parts of Rajputana and Gujarat
 17. (a) The Vikramshila Mahavihara, the renowned educational centre of Pala period at Antichak. Vikramshila Mahavihara was one of the two most important centres of Buddhist learning in India during the Pala dynasty. Established by King Dharmapala (783 to 820 CE), it is located about 50 km east of Bhagalpur and about 13 km north-east of Kahalgaon railway station on Bhagalpur-Sahebganj section of eastern railway. The area is under the protected jurisdiction of Archaeological Survey of India (ASI).
 18. (a) Kulothunga I Chola ruler had persecuted Ramanuja and ousted him from his kingdom. Ramanuja was the contemporary of Kulothunga II. It is Kulothunga II who banished Ramanuja from Tamil country and the latter had to seek refuge in Melkote, Karnataka. Hence even bringing Ramanuja into Athirajendra's death would cause more confusion. Till Kulothunga II, all the Chola kings and emperors supported all the religions equally although they were staunch Saivaites.
 19. (c) Ur was the primary village assembly in the Chola village administration. Every village was a self-governing unit. A number of such villages constituted a Korram in different parts of the country. Taniyur was a large village big enough to be a Kurram by itself. A number of Kurrams constituted a Valanadu. Several Valanadus made up one Mandalam, a province. At the height of the Chola empire, there were eight or nine of these provinces including Sri Lanka. These divisions and names underwent constant changes throughout the Chola period.
 20. (a) A Chalukya inscription is dated in the year 556 of the Saka era. It's equivalent to 478 AD. This undated inscription belongs to the reign of the Chalukya king Vijayaditya Satyasraya. It registers the grant of 20 mattars of red soil, a mattar of wet land and 2 mattars of garden land to Talereyar by Vikramaditya, the uncle of Banarja, when the latter was ruling Turamara-vishaya as the king's feudatory. It also states that Vikramaditya had the birudas Taruna-Vasantan and Samanta-kesari and that he was ruling Ayiradi. The inscription was written by Singutti.
 21. (d) Vikramshila Mahavihar was established by the ruler of pala dynasty. Pala Dynasty was the ruling dynasty in Bihar and Bengal in India, from the 8th to the 12th century. Called the Palas because all their names ended in Pala, "protector". The Palas rescued Bengal from the Chaos into which it had fallen after the death of Shashanka, a rival of Harsha of Kanauj. The founder of the dynasty was Gopala.
 22. (c) In Harshavardhana court, a Chinese embassy was sent by T'ang emperor. The T'ang dynasty was formed in 618 due to the failed exhibitions to Korea by the Sui, which had led to conflicts in the north of China. The T'ang's founder, Li Yuan was a rebel from an aristocratic family (traced from the Han) that was influential under the Northern Zhou. The T'ang took some time to become established, in part due to a rebellion in 617 that took several years to succeed with the help of the Turks.

23. (a) Sankaracharya founded the four Mathas in the four corners of India. Shankara was born at Kaladi in Kerala as a result of austerities and earnest prayers of his childless parents to Lord Shiva. Shankara's father Shivaguru and mother Aryambal were Namboodiri Brahmin couples who led a holy life performing Vedic rituals ordained for a householder. However, they were childless.
24. (c) The presiding deity of Bhojsala temple is goddess Saraswati. Bhojsala is one of the most significant monuments of Madhya Pradesh as a whole as it spots the land of Dhar. It is an ancient monument that had been dedicated to goddess Saraswati. This was the only temple in that was dedicated to this deity of the Hindu cult.
25. (b) Rath temples of Mahabalipuram were built in the reign of Narasinghvarman I. There are about nine monolithic temples at Mahabalipuram. They are the unique contribution of the Pallavas to Indian art. The monolithic temples are called locally as Ratha (chariot) as they resemble the processional chariots of a temple. The five Rathas, the best of all monolithic temples, are hewn out of a huge boulder.
26. (a) 'Ramayanam' the Tamil version of the great epic Ramayana was made by Kamban. Ramavataram, popularly referred to as Kamba Ramayanam, is a Tamil epic that was written by Kamban during the 12th century. Based on Valmiki's Ramayana in Sanskrit, the story describes the life of king Rama of Ayodhya. However, Ramavataram is different from the Sanskrit original in many aspects – both in spiritual concepts and in the specifics of the story line.
27. (c) Mahavastu is not a work on architecture. Mahavastu is more refined version of Vastu Shastra. Vastu Shastra being a very old subject didn't have a proper procedure to apply the beneficial wisdom in modern lifestyle. Due to lack of proper research and documentation of results, it has never been possible to give it a scientific working procedure.
28. (b) Sugandhadevi who issued coins with the figure of seated Lakshmi was a queen of Kashmir. The auspicious markings on Srimati Radharani's lotus feet include the signs of the conchshell, moon, elephant, barleycorn, rod for controlling elephants, chariot flag, small drum, svastika and fish.
29. (b) Nimbarakacharya believed in the theory of Bheda-abheda. Sri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu amalgamated the views of all the previous Acaryas in his thesis of Acintya-bhedabheda Tattva explicitly explained by Sri Baladeva Vidyabhusana in his Govinda Bhasya of the Vedanta-sutra.
30. (c) Acquisition of wealth was the main objective of Sultan Mahmud's Indian conquests. In 1001, Mahmud of Ghazni had first invaded India. Mahmud defeated, captured and later released Shahi ruler Jaya Pala who had moved his capital to Peshawar. Jaya Pala killed himself and was succeeded by his son Ananda Pala. In 1005, Mahmud of Ghazni invaded Bhatia (probably Bhera) and in 1006 he invaded Multan at which time Ananda Pala's army attacked him.
31. (a) The pose 'Tribhanga' is the favourite posture of Lord Krishna. We have often seen Lord Krishna standing in tribhanga posture before his cow 'Kamdhenu' or whenever he is playing his flute. He is often called Tribhanga Murari.
32. (a) 33. (d) 34. (c) 35. (b) 36. (d)
37. (a) 38. (d) 39. (b) 40. (c) 41. (c)
42. (a) 43. (d) 44. (c) 45. (b) 46. (b)
47. (c) 48. (a) 49. (c) 50. (a) 51. (a)
52. (d) 53. (c) 54. (b) 55. (d) 56. (c)
57. (a) 58. (b) 59. (d) 60. (a) 61. (a)
62. (d) 63. (c) 64. (a) 65. (d) 66. (c)
67. (b) 68. (a) 69. (d) 70. (d)

EXERCISE-2

1. (d)
2. (d) 3. (b)
4. (a) The correct matchlist of authors and Kavyas is:

Authors	Kavyas
Hemachandra	Duyasraya Kavya
Jayanka	Prithviraja Vijaya
Padmagupta	Navasahshank Charita
Sandhyakara Nandi	Ramacharita

Samrat Hemachandra Vikramaditya (also known as Hemu Vikramaditya, Raja Vikrama-ditya or simply Hemu) (1501 – 5 November 1556) was a Hindu emperor of north India during the sixteenth century AD. The Prithviraj Vijay is a contemporary account of the 12th century Kingdom of Ajmer ruled by the Chauhan clan. In 1192, outlying portions of the kingdom fell to invading Turks, and the capital Ajmer later in 1195, but other parts under the Chauhan Rajaputras continued to resist the invaders for more than a century. The text helps to dispel many myths from that period, that have developed in later writings, for example the establishment of a Sufi shrine in Ajmer. He was the grandson of Pinaka Nandi and the son of Prajapati Nandi, the Sandhi-Vigrahika (minister of peace and war) of the Pala emperor Ramapala. He wrote the epic poem Ramacharitam.

5. (a)

UNIT-II : MEDIEVAL HISTORY OF INDIA



MEDIEVAL PERIOD

11

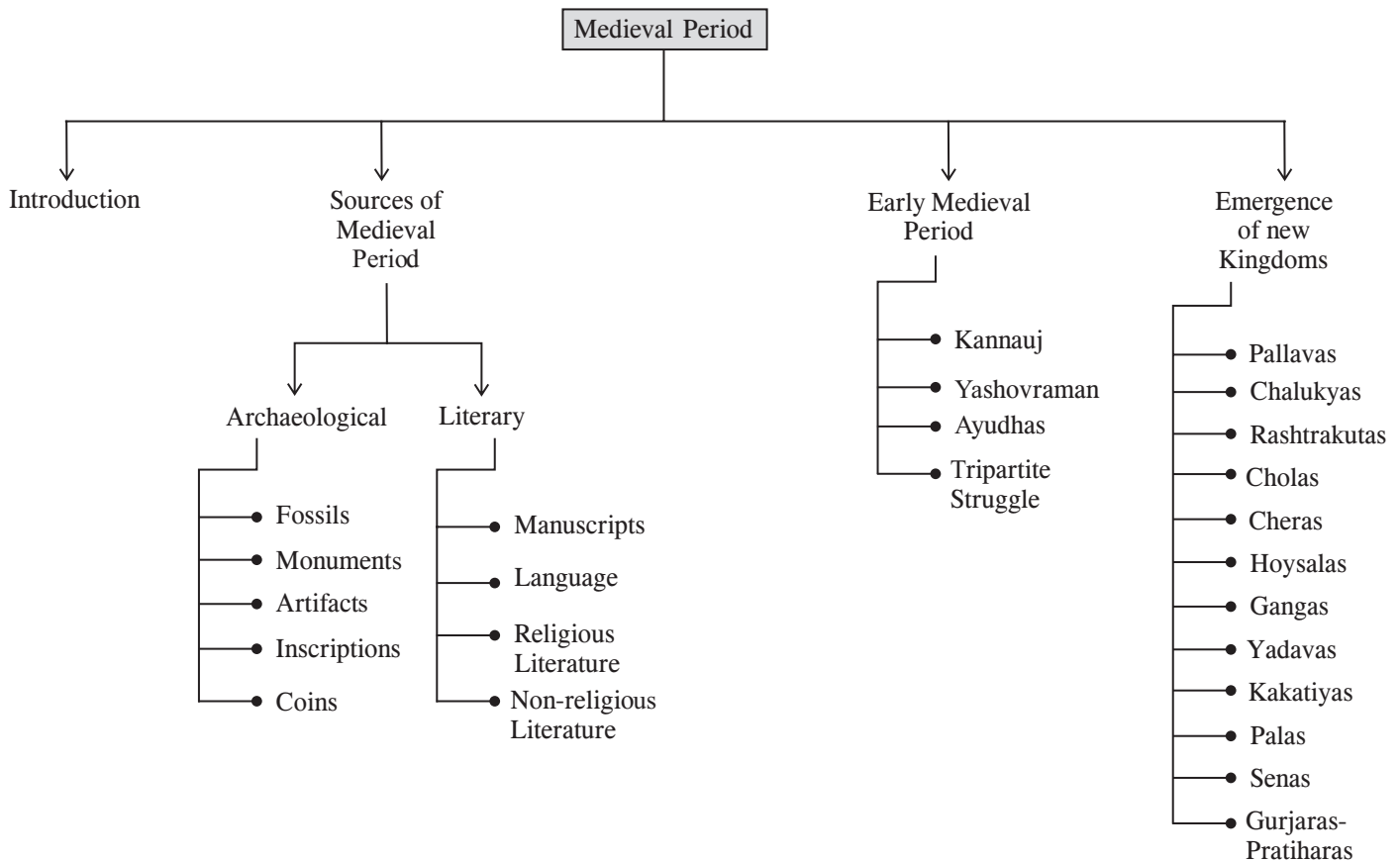
Chapter

Introduction

During the medieval times in India, there have been developed important milestones in the field of religion, folk art and language. The medieval period of Indian history comprises a long period, spanning from 8th century, *i.e.* after the fall of the Gupta Empire to the 18th century, *i.e.* the beginning of colonial domination. Modern historians, divided the medieval period into *Early Medieval Period* and *Late Medieval Period*.

Early Medieval period refers to the phase of Indian history that stretches from the fall of the Gupta Empire to the beginning of the Sultanate period in the 13th century.

Late Medieval period comprises mainly that of the reigns of the Sultanate and the Mughal period.



SOURCES OF THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD

Historians depend on a variety of sources such as inscriptions, buildings, coins, and non-religious literature. The medieval period also has the first good example of written records of history which give us a better insight into the period.

Broadly we can divide the sources of history into two groups:

1. Archaeological
2. Literary

1. Archaeological Sources

- The archaeological sources are of immense value in the reconstruction of the socio - cultural and political history of medieval India.
- The archaeological sources include *fossil remains, artifacts, tools and implements, edicts and inscriptions, monuments, coins*.
- Archaeologists use them to reconstruct the past.

Let us briefly understand about each of the archaeological sources.

Fossil Remains

- Fossils are basically imprints of plants, animals or humans preserved in rocks.
- These have been buried for millions of years.
- These imprints are usually made from hard body parts such as bones or skulls, which leave a permanent mark on the rock.
- Fossils are the main source of information on the species that have become extinct, for example, dinosaurs.

Monuments

- Monuments are ancient buildings and structures such as temples, mosques, tombs, palaces and forts.
- They throw light on the social, religious and cultural life of the people of the age when they were built, rebuilt, repaired or altered.
- *Sanchi Stupa* in *Madhya Pradesh* is an important *Buddhist* monument. The stupa provides information of historical significance. It was originally built of bricks during Ashoka's time. It was expanded and remade of stones during the *Sunga Period*.
- An inscription on the southern gate was donated by *King Satakarni*. The northern gate and the panels depict stories from the *Jatakas*.

Artifacts

- Artifacts such as tools and implements, ornaments, and pottery have been found in various archaeological findings.
- They tell us about the kind of life people lived, their occupation and their social condition.

Inscriptions

- Inscriptions are the written records engraved on stones, pillars, clay or copper tablets, caves, and walls of the temples and monuments.
- They are reliable sources of information about the history of any period.

- They provide us names of the kings, the administration of the kingdom, some important events, the extent of the kingdom, etc.
- The *Ashoka inscriptions* and the *Allahabad pillar inscriptions* tell us a great deal about the reign of *Ashoka and Samudragupta*.

The inscriptions of the Mauryan king *Ashoka* are the earliest inscriptions in India.

Coins

- Coins belonging to this period are a valuable source for reconstructing dates of historical events.
- They also give us an idea of the economic conditions of that period.
- They help us to ascertain the territorial extent and reign of the rulers.
- They also provide valuable personal information about rulers, such as their religion. For example, *Samudragupta's* coins tell us that he was a good veena player.
- Monuments and paintings are also important archaeological sources of the period.

2. Literary Sources

- One of distinct features of the sources of the medieval period is that the number and variety of literary or textual records increased noticeably during this period.
 - Literates and chroniclers wrote chronicles of rulers, petitions, judicial records, accounts and taxes.
 - The teachings of saints and traders transaction were also recorded on these papers.
 - The medieval chronicles were written by contemporary authors who were either court historians or freelancers.
- There are three types of literary sources.
- (i) Manuscript
 - (ii) Language
 - (iii) Religious and non-religious literature.

Manuscripts

- The early literary records were handwritten. They are called manuscripts.
- Manuscripts were written on palm leaves, the bark of birch trees, and later on paper.
- Over the years, many of these manuscripts got destroyed, some of them are still preserved in temples, monasteries and archives.
- They throw light on the social and economic life, religious beliefs, practices and cultures of the past.

Language

- The language of ancient Indian literature depends on the region where it was written.
- Some of the languages included *Prakrit, Pali, Sanskrit or Tamil*.

- For example, the *Mahabharata* and the *Ramayana* were written in *Sanskrit* because they were authored in the northern part of India where Sanskrit happened to be the main language.
- On the other hand, *Silappadikaram* and *Manimekalai* were written in *Tamil* since they were written in Tamil speaking areas of south India.

Religious Literature

- The *Vedas* and the *Puranas* contain details of rituals, prayers and religious practices of the Ancient past.
- They are classified as sacred or religious literary sources.

Non-Religious Literature

- The historical accounts and biographies written by poets and foreign travellers form part of Non-religious or regular literature.
- They were written to record events, rules of the contemporary society and administrative regulations.
- *Kautilya's Arthashastra*, accounts of the foreign travellers such as India written by the Greek ambassador *Megasthenes* in the court of *Chandragupta Maurya*, and the writings of Chinese travellers *Fa-Hien* and *Huuen - Tsang* are considered as secular literature.
- They describe the political, social and economic life of a certain period.

EARLY MEDIEVAL INDIA (AD 750-1200)

- Early medieval period is marked by the presence of a large number of regional and local powers in the absence of a paramount power in the country.
- This period has been characterized by certain historians as 'regional imperial kingdoms'.
- The essential points of early-medieval India may be highlighted as :
 1. Political Decentralization
 2. Emergence of landed Intermediaries
 3. Naturalisation of Economy
 4. Subjection of the Peasantry
 5. Proliferation of castes
 6. Formation of Regional cultural units
 7. Feudal Dimension of the Ideology and Culture.

Kannauj

In the post-Gupta period, **Kannauj** became the centre of political activities in North India. The political unity crumbled on Harsha's death and was followed by a period of anarchy and confusion in Northern India. A number of petty principalities and independent kingdoms rose on the ruins of the empire of Harsha.

Chachnama a work of rather late period, mentions four kings ruling at Kannauj during a period of seventy years following the death of Harsha. These four kings were *Rasil Rai*, *Sayar*, *Sahiras* and *Rai Harachander*.

Yashovarman

A famous monarch named Yashovarman defeated many kings, which included the king of the *Magadha*, *Vanga*, *Parasika*,

Shrikantha and *Harishchandra*. He is supposed to have founded the city named **Yashovarmapura**.

Yashovarman could not enjoy the rule of his vast empire, extending from north Bengal to N-W frontier province, for long. **Lalithadithya**, the king of Kashmir (about 750 AD) grew jealous of Yashovarman's power and attacked Kannauj (Gadhipura) and finally uprooted Yashovarman.

The **Rajatarangini** mentions that the poets *Vakpatiraja*, *Bhavabhuti* and others adorned the court of Yashovarman. **Malatimadhava**, **Mahaviracharita** and **Uttararamacharita**, three well-known Sanskrit plays were written by Bhavabhuti.

Ayudhas-Three rulers of Kannauj

After Yashovarman's dynasty, the last three rulers **Ama**, **Dunduka** and **Bhoja**. (belonging to the same lineage-Ayudhas) ruled for a very short period. During this period the struggle for Kannauj seems to have begun.

Vajrayudha was the first king who was defeated by **Jayapida Vinayaditya** of Kashmir. **Dhruva Rashtrakita** invaded the **Doab** and defeated the **Kannauj king Indrayudha**. Indrayudha was also defeated by **Dharmapala** of Bengal.

Kannauj and the Tripartite struggle

The tripartite struggle had started between *the Palas*, *the Pratiharas* and *the Rashtrakutas* for the control of Kannauj and North India.

The tripartite struggle continued for nearly a century and ended in favour of the Gurjara-Pratihara ruler **Nagabhata II** who founded the Gurjara-Pratihara kingdom at Kannauj.

EMERGENCE OF NEW KINGDOM [AD 700-1200]

During the period AD 700 - 1200, denoted as the early medieval period, a number of powerful regional kingdoms arose in north India, the Deccan and South India. All these kingdoms had the desire to build an empire and, therefore, continually fought with each other to gain control over their neighbouring territories.

The Palas were dominant in eastern India, whereas the Gurjara - Pratiharas dominated western India and the upper Gangetic

Valley. The third major kingdom was that of the Rashtrakutas who controlled the Deccan and also the territories in Northern and Southern India at different times. A number of Rajput kingdoms also emerged during this period and among them the *Chahamanas* or *Chauhans* were the most prominent. In the south, *the Cholas* surfaced as the most powerful kingdom and became known for a distinct administrative structure and agrarian expansion.

The Pallavas

During the period of Pallavas, the Pallavas and the Chalukyas had established powerful empires in South India. The Pallavas are mentioned in *Samudragupta's pillar*, where he is said to have defeated a Pallava king, *Vishnugopa*. The Pallavas were powerful between 330 and 550 AD. Their main area of dominance was *Kanchipuram*, their capital, up to the *Kaveri Delta*. After Vishnugopa's defeat by Samudragupta, the Pallavas became weaker and the *Cholas and the Kalabhras* repeatedly attacked the Pallava kingdom and robbed it of its wealth and territories. It was *Simhavishnu* son of *Simhavarma II*, who eventually crushed the dominance of the Kalabhras in AD 575 and re-established his kingdom. Although both the Pallava and Pandya kingdoms were enemies, the real struggle for political domination was between the *Pallavas and Chalukyas*. The Pallavas' history between 600 and 900 AD is full of accounts of wars between the Pallavas and the Chalukyas.

The Chalukyas

The incidence of grants to state officials varies from one region to another. The dynasty had two branches - *Vatapi* and *Kalyani*. The earlier rulers of this dynasty were *Jayasingha* and *Rameraja*. The Chalukyan kings were great patrons of art and letters. Most of the *Ajanta and Ellora paintings* were completed during this period. The famous scholars of their times include *Bilhana* a Sanskrit writer of works such as *Vikramaskadeva Charita* and the poem *Chaurapanchesika and Vijnanesvara* who wrote the *Mitaksara*.

The Chalukyas were largely influential in the area around *Raichur Doab* between *Krishna and Tungabhadra rivers*. Their capital was *Aihole* which was also an important trading centre. The famous ruler of this dynasty was *Pulakesin I*, who was the first independent ruler of Badami with *Vatapi in Bijapur* as its capital. He was succeeded by *Kirthivaraman I* and *Pulakesin II*. *Pulakesin II*, the grandson of Pulakesin I, was a contemporary of *Harshvardhana* and the most famous of the Chalukyan kings. He expanded his kingdom by annexing the entire Andhra Kingdom. His reign is remembered as the greatest period in the history of Karnataka. He defeated Harshvardhana on the banks of the river Narmada. *Ravikriti* was the court poet of Pulakesin II, who composed the *Aihole Inscription*.

This inscription gives a vivid account of the Chalukyan rule.

The Rashtrakutas

The term '*Rashtrakutas*' means designated officers - in charge of territorial divisions called '*Rashtra*'. They were feudatories under the *Chalukyas of Badami*. The founder of the Rashtrakuta kingdom was *Dantivarman or Dantidurga*, who after defeating the Chalukyas king *Kirti Varman* in the early eight century wrested from him the greater portion of the Deccan.

Dantivarman was succeeded in A.D. 750 by his uncle *Krishna I*, Who gave the final blow to the power of the Chalukyas of Badami, attacked the *Gangas of Mysore* and forced the *Chalukyas of Vengi* to acknowledge his supremacy. His son *Govinda II* was dethroned by his younger brother *Dhruva* in A.D. 779.

Their Cultural Contribution

- The ascendancy of the Rashtrakutas in the Deccan constitutes one of the most brilliant chapters in the history of the Deccan.
- They were tolerant in religious matters and patronised not only Shaivism and Vaishnavism, but Jainism as well.
- The Rashtrakutas were even tolerant of Islam. They permitted the Muslim merchants to settle, build their mosques and preach their religion in the Rashtrakutas.
- Their tolerant policies gave great impetus to trade and commerce.
- In the field of literature also their tolerant spirit is visible.
- They equally patronised Sanskrit, Prakrit, Apabhramsa, forerunner of many modern Indian languages, and Kannada.
- They patronised the arts liberally.
- The rock-cut cave temples at Ellora are the symbols of their religious toleration and are one of the splendours of Indian art.
- *The Kailash Temple*, built by the Rashtrakuta king Krishna I, is an unrivalled and stupendous piece of art. The ancient Indian rock - cut architecture reached its zenith under the Rashtrakutas.

The Cholas

The Cholas or Chodas, as rulers, are known to have existed from remote antiquity. According to II and XIII *Rock Edicts of Ashoka*, the earliest historical documents to refer to the Cholas, they were a friendly power in the south beyond the pale of Mauryan Suzerainty. The Chola dynasty ruled over *Tamil Nadu and parts of Karnataka*. *Tanjore* was its capital city. The Cholas disappeared only to resurface in 850AD when *Vijayalaya* captured *Tanjore* and made it his capital. However, during the rule of *Rajaraja I* and his son *Rajendra I* the Cholas entered their most glorious phase. They expanded the kingdom beyond south India to *Sri Lanka, Java and Sumatra*.

By his ability, prowess and military skill, *Rajaraja I* defeated the *Cheras* and seized *Madurai*. He invaded *Sri Lanka* and annexed its northern part which became a Chola Province under the name *Mummadi Cholaman Dalam*. *Rajaraja I* then overran the eastern Chalukyas who eventually accepted his authority. *Rajaraja I* constructed the beautiful *Shiva temple* at *Thanjavur*, called *Rajarajesvara temple*. An account of *Rajaraja I's* exploits is engraved on the walls of the temple.

His son *Rajendra I*, by his military valour and administrative talents, raised the Chola empire to a pinnacle of glory. He annexed the whole of *Sri Lanka* and reasserted the Chola supremacy over *Kerala* and the *Pandhyan* country. His army marched triumphantly up to river *Ganga* and the dominions of the *Pala* king, *Mahipala*.

He adopted the title of *Gangaikonda* and founded a new capital called *Gangaikonda Cholapuram* in *Tiruchirapalli* district. The Chola monarch's achievements were not limited to land only. He had a powerful naval fleet which gained successes across the *Bay of Bengal*. It is said that he also sent expeditions to *Java and Sumatra*, presumably to further commercial relations between the *Malaya Peninsula and south India*.

The Chola Administration

King and The Ministers

- The king was the head of the state. He discharged his duties and responsibilities with the help of ministers and other high officers.
- The inscriptions of the Cholas prove that their system of administration was highly organised and efficient.
- Apart from the ruler (**Tiruvakya - Kelvi**) there was a ministerial council and an organised administrative staff.
- The ruler maintained close contact with the council of ministers and royal tours contributed to the efficiency of the administration.
- The officers were paid by land assignments. They were honoured and encouraged by conferring titles.
- The higher officials enjoyed the title of *Penundaram*, and the lower ones *Sirutaram*.
- The Cholas also constructed roads which helped in trade, commerce and communication.

Revenue

Revenue was derived mainly from land and collected in kind, or in cash, or in both, by village assemblies. Land was possessed by individuals and communities. The state's share of land revenue was fixed at $1/3^{rd}$ of the produce after an elaborate land survey in the time of *Rajaraja I*. There were periodical revisions of the classifications of land and of the assessment of land revenue. Other sources of public income were *customs and tolls*, taxes on various kinds of professions, *mines, forests, salt pans*, etc. Failure to pay the land revenue involved sale of the land in question, including temple lands.

Irrigation

Agricultural property was ensured by the special attention given to irrigation by the government as well as local authorities. Village assemblies were responsible for maintaining tanks in good condition and for reclaiming forest and wastelands. The Cholas spent huge amounts on buildings canals, tanks, dams and wells. **Rajendra I** dug an artificial lake near his new capital, **Gangaikonda Cholapuram**.

Army

The army consisted of elephants, cavalry and infantry. Attention was given to training and discipline of the cantonments. It was composed chiefly of *Kaikkolas* or *Sengundar*.

The commanders enjoyed the rank of *nayaka senapati*, or *mahadandanayaka*. The Cholas under *Rajaraja* controlled the *Coromandel and Malabar* coast and the *Bay of Bengal*.

Village Administration

- The village was the primary unit of society and polity. The village assemblies held the society together through its unique feature of autonomy and self-sufficiency.
- From the *Uttaramerur inscriptions* we find reference to at least three types of assemblies which played a regular part in local administration, namely the *Ur*, *Sabha* or *Mahasabha* and *Nagaram*.

- The *Ur* was an assembly of common villages where the land was held by all classes of people who were, therefore, entitled to membership in the local assembly.
- The *Sabha* was an exclusively Brahmin assembly of the *Brahamadeya* villages where all the land belonged to the Brahmins.
- The *Nagaram* was an assembly of merchants and belonged to localities where traders and merchants were in a dominant position.
- The *Sabha*, generally comprised the elite or learned in the community, commanded the respect of all the other assemblies in settling crucial matters of common concern.
- *The Uttaramerur inscription belonged to the reign of the Chola monarch Parantaka I (10th century)*

Chola Temples

Under the Chola, temples became the centre of life. They were not only places of worship but also emerged as the *hub of economic, political and cultural activities*. The village assembly held its meetings in the temple mandapa or hall. Temples also grew as centres of craft especially the creation of bronze images which was the most distinctive. Many cultural activities like music and dance also prepared in the temples. The Chola records frequently refer to *Devadana gifts of land*. Temple architecture, particularly the *Dravida or south Indian style of architecture*, reached its peak under the Cholas. The chief feature of a Chola temple is the *Vimana or the tower*, which was later eclipsed by the richly ornamented *gopuram or gateway*. In the *Brihadeswara* or *Rajarajesvara* temple dedicated to Siva, the *Vimana* or tower is about 57 metres high upon a square, comprising thirteen successive stories. It is crowned by a single block of granite, 7.5 metres high and about 80 tonnes in weight. Similarly, *Rajendra I* erected a splendid temple at his new capital, *Gangaikonda Cholapuram*.

Some Chola temples at *Thanjavur* and *Kalohasti* contain beautiful royal portraits. The metal and stone images cast during the period are exquisite. The masterpiece of Chola sculpture is the famous *Nataraja or the Dancing Siva* image at the great temple of *Chidambaram*. This *Nataraja* has been described as the 'cultural epitome' of the Chola period. The Cholas also patronised paintings. The most important Chola paintings are those in the *Pradakshinapath* of the *Rajarajesvara temple*.

The Cheras

The **Chera** Dynasty was one of the important dynasties in India. The Cheras were able to establish their rule before the **Sangam Age** and they ruled till the twelfth century. During the Sangam Age, the Chera rulers were known by many titles including *Malaiyar*, *Villavar* and *Vanavar*. There were two important lines of the Cheras – first initiated from **Uthiyar Cheralathan** while the second line starts from **Irumporai**.

Based on historical evidences, it is believed that the Cheras developed friendly relations with the Cholas and concluded matrimonial alliances with them, but soon supported the Pandya rulers against Cholas. However, their allied forces were defeated by the army of the Chola king in the Battle of Venni. After this defeat, the Chera ruler **Uthiyar Cheralathan** committed suicide.

The Cheras were successful in developing trade relations with Rome. **Muziris**, a famous sea-port in the ancient India, was an essential part of their kingdom. Through this sea-port, *spices, timber, pearls, ivory and gems* were exported from India to the Middle East and southern Europe. Many historical evidences suggest extensive foreign trade from the coasts of *Karur, Malabar and Coimbatore*. There are also legends that the Romans constructed a temple of Augustus at the port city of Muziris.

The Cheras were tolerant to all religions and faiths. In their reign, immigrants belonging to *Jewish, Christian and Muslim* faiths established their communities as the **Juda Mappila**, the **Nasrani Mappila** and the **Muslim Mappila** respectively. The Chera king, **Nedunjeral Adan**, attacked Yavana ships and captured Yavana traders for ransom. Nedunjeral Adan was succeeded by his son, **Senguttuvan**, who is remembered for his great conquests. Senguttuvan was successful in defeating his enemies. **Gajabahu**, a famous emperor from Sri Lanka, also mentioned about the conquests of Senguttuvan.

The second Chera Dynasty, known as the **Kulasekharas**, ruled from the outskirts of Muziris, situated on the bank of river **Periyar**. During their rule, they were in constant conflict with their neighbours and fought many battles against them. Finally, in twelfth century AD, continuous Chola invasions marked an end to their dynasty.

The Hoysalas

Founded by 'Sala', Hoysala dynasty existed between 1110 A.D. and 1326 A.D. **Vinayaditya** (1047-98) ruled the area centered on **Dorasamudra** (modern Halebid) – the capital city. His grandson **Bittiga**, later called **Vishnuvardhana** (reigned 1110-42) made extensive conquests and built magnificent temples at **Dorasamudra** that were noted for their intricate and elaborate sculpture. Bittiga's grandson, **Vira Ballala II** (reigned 1173-1220) extended Hoysala control North of Mysore and made the dynasty the most powerful in South India. The Hoysalas later came into conflict with the empire of Vijayanagar and the Muslim sultans of Delhi. The last Hoysala ruler was overthrown in 1346. At its peak, the dynasty ruled over parts of the modern states of *Mysore, Andhra Pradesh, Kerala, and Tamil Nadu*.

Some of the most magnificent temples are attributed to the Hoysala dynasty. Developed on the architectural style of the Chalukyas, these structures have intricate details. **The Belur temple**, built in 1117 A.D. to commemorate a victory against the Cholas, has a single star shaped structure, whereas **the Halebid temple** (1121 A.D.) has a double sanctum like a twin temple, one beside the other, with the side wings joined to allow access to each other. In *Halebid* the temples are dedicated to *Vishnuvardhana* and his consort *Santaleswara*. **The Somnathapura temple**, built in 1268, has three star shaped sanctums each placed at three angles.

The Gangas

The Western Ganga Dynasty (350 – 1000 A.D.) was an important dynasty of India – known as *Western Gangas* to distinguish them from the *Eastern Gangas* who in later centuries

ruled over modern Orissa. The Western Ganga initially ruled from **Kolar** and later moved their capital to **Talakad** on the banks of the *Kaveri* river in modern *Mysore* district.

After the rise of the imperial *Chalukyas of Badami*, the Gangas accepted Chalukya overlordship and fought for the cause of their overlords against the *Pallavas of Kanchi*. The **Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta** replaced the Chalukyas in 753 A.D. as the dominant power in the Deccan. After a century of struggle for autonomy, the Western Gangas finally accepted Rashtrakuta overlordship and successfully fought alongside them against their foes, the *Cholas of Tanjavur*. The defeat of the Western Gangas by Cholas around AD 1000 resulted in the end of the Ganga influence over the region.

The Western Gangas made an important contribution to polity, culture and literature of the modern south Karnataka region. The Western Ganga kings showed their patronage towards Jainism resulting in the construction of monuments in places such as **Shravanabelagola** and **Kambadahalli**. The kings of that dynasty encouraged the fine arts due to which literature in Kannada and Sanskrit flourished.

The Yadavas

The **Yadava** dynasty, also known as the *Seuna Maratha dynasty*, was founded by **Seunachandra** in AD 850. The son of *Dridhaprahara*, at his zenith he ruled a vast kingdom stretching from the River Tungabhadra to the River Narmada, including modern Maharashtra, the north of Karnataka, and parts of Madhya Pradesh, with capital at **Devagiri** (now *Daulatabad*) in Maharashtra.

Originally a feudatory of the *Eastern Chalukyas of Kalyani*, the dynasty became paramount in the *Deccan* under **Bhillama** (A.D. 1187–91). Under Bhillama's grandson **Singhana** (A.D. 1210–47) the dynasty reached its height, as the Yadava campaigned against the *Hoysalas in the south*, the *Kakatiyas in the east*, and the *Paramaras and Chalukyas in the north*.

During the reign of the last Yadava king, **Ramachandra** (A.D. 1271–1309), a Muslim army commanded by the Delhi sultan Ala- al-Din Khalji invaded the kingdom in 1294 and imposed tributary status. In a further attempt, his son and successor died in battle, and the kingdom was annexed by the *Khalji empire* in 1317.

The Kakatiyas

The *Kakatiyas* ruled in Andhra Pradesh in India from A.D. 1083 to AD 1323. They were the first feudatories of the *Western Chalukyas of Kalyana*, ruling over a small territory near **Warangal**. Their rule is considered the most promising period of history of Telugu & Andhra Pradesh.

Rudra was a renowned ruler in Kakatiya Dynasty who ruled during AD 1158 to 1195. He stretched his empire till the *Godavari Delta*. To serve as a second capital, he constructed the fort at Warangal. **Ganapati** was the supreme king among all the rulers of Kakatiya dynasty. He played an important role in consolidation of *Telugu region* under one rule. He established a huge kingdom and promoted the trade practices in the kingdom. Ganapati did not have any son so his daughter

Rudramba ascended the throne. Some of the generals who did not want to be dominated by Rudramba formed a different rebellion. She suppressed all kind of criticisms and moved with great courage to blow *the Cholas and Yadavas* tremendously. The successor of *Rudramba* was **Prataparuda**. He ruled in the period AD 1295-1323. He divided his army into seventy five 'Nayakships'. Later the *Rayas of Vijayanagara* took over the Nayakships and made growth in great extent. During this period only the Muslims invaded the empire of Kakatiya Dynasty in Andhra Pradesh for the first time. The king of Delhi Sultanate **Ala-ud-din Khilji** sent his army in AD 1303. Another major invasion of Muslims took place in order to capture 'Tilling', **Ghiaz-ud-din Tughlaq** the ruler of Tughlaq Dynasty sent his huge army under the leadership of *Ulguh Khan* during AD 1321. **Prataparuda** was defeated and was taken as a prisoner. This marked an end to the Kakatiya Dynasty.

Pala Empire

8th century - 12th century-

The Pala Empire was a Buddhist imperial power in classical India during the 8th to 12th century CE. The empire is named after its ruling dynasty. All of whose rulers bore names ending with the suffix - Pala ("Protector"). The palas were often described by opponents as the *Lords of Gauda*. Their empire centered around the Present - day Bengal - Bihar region, and at times, included what are now Assam, Orissa and Parts of North India.

The Palas in comparison with other contemporary empires:-

Capital	Multiple
	Patliputra Gauer (I) Monghyr (Devapala) Somapura (Dharampala) Mahipal in Present day Murshidabad District
Languages	Sanskrit, Prakrit (including pali), Proto - Bengali.
Religion	Buddhism
Government	Monarchy
King - 8th Century	Gopala
- 12th Century	Govindapala
Historical era	Medieval India
- Established	8th Century
- Disestablished	12th century

Today part of	Bangladesh India Nepal
---------------	------------------------------

Sena Empire : AD 1070 - AD 1230

Capital	Nabadwip
Languages	Sanskrit, Bengali
Religion	Hinduism, Buddhism
Government	Monarchy
King	
- 1070 - 1096 AD	Hemanta Sen
- 1159 - 1179 AD	Ballal Sen
- 1225 - 1230 AD	Keshab Sen
Historical Era	Classical India
- Established	AD 1070
- Disestablished	AD 1230

The history of Bengal includes modern day Bangladesh and West Bengal, dates back four millennia. To some extent. The *Ganges* and the *Brahmaputra* rivers separated it from the mainland of India, though at times Bengal has played an important role in the history of India.

Gurjar Pratihara Dynasty

The *Pratiharas* are believed to be the clan of *Rajputs*. They set foot in India during the *Huns invasion* and settle around *Punjab Rajputana Region*. Soon they advanced to *Aravali* and *Ujjain*. The branch of the Pratiharas who ruled in the Gujarat were the *Gurjaras*. The inscription of the Pratiharas trace their origin to *Lakshmana*, the Anuja of Rama, who acted as Rama's door keeper or the Pratiharas. But in fact, when *Danti-Durga*, the Rashtrakuta king defeated the Gurjara king *Nagabhata -I*, the latter was made a Pratihara while Dantidurga performed the *Hiranyagarbha Dana ceremony at Ujjain*.

Points to remember

- During the period AD 700 - 1200 the *Gurjara - Pratiharas, Palas, Rashtrakutas and Chahamanas* came up in north India and the *Chola* kingdom in south India.
- The three kingdoms - *Gurjaras, Palas and Rashtrakutas* were in constant struggle to acquire control over Kannauj. This struggle was termed as *tripartite struggle*.
- *Mahmud Ghazni* was the earliest Turkish invader in India.
- In south India, the *Cholas* emerged as the most powerful kingdom where the king was the head of the state.
- The Chola village assemblies - *Ur, Sabha and Nagaram* played an important role in village administration deciding upon its crucial matters.

Exercise - 1

1. The Sun Temple of Konark was built by Narasimhadeva I. To which dynasty did he belong to?
 - (a) Somavamsi dynasty
 - (b) Imperial Ganga dynasty
 - (c) Suryavansi Gajapati dynasty
 - (d) Bhoi dynasty
2. Which of the following is the earliest works in Tamil?
 - (a) Pali
 - (b) Mahabharata
 - (c) Sangam Literature
 - (d) Rama Sundaram
3. Whose court was poet Ravikriti associated with?
 - (a) Kumara Devi
 - (b) Harshavardhana
 - (c) Pulakeshin II
 - (d) Xuan Zang
4. Sangam literature is :
 - (a) Pali literature dealing with the history of the Buddhist Samghas
 - (b) Classical Sanskrit literature patronised by the Guptas
 - (c) Sanskrit works of Puranic nature dealing with the sanctity of the place where there is confluence of rivers in Prayaga
 - (d) Early Tamil literature attributed to the first three centuries of the Christian Era
5. Who established an independent Rashtrakutas dynasty?
 - (a) Danti-durg
 - (b) Prithviraja
 - (c) Rajendra Chola
 - (d) None of these
6. Which changes did take place in early medieval period?
 - (a) Extension of agriculture
 - (b) Migration of forest dwellers
 - (c) Emergence of peasants
 - (d) All of the above
7. Which of the following statements about the Chalukyas is incorrect?
 - (a) The Chalukyas were brahmanical hindus.
 - (b) The army of the Chalukyas consisted of a small standing army, but helped by feudal lords.
 - (c) The Chalukyas developed the Deccan or Vesara style in the building of structural temples
 - (d) The Buddhists and Jains were not allowed to build temples.
8. The Palas, Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas fought for control over which citizenship?
 - (a) Ujjain
 - (b) Pataliputra
 - (c) Kannauj
 - (d) Kaushambi
9. Who is considered as the greatest ruler of the Pratiharas?
 - (a) Mahipala
 - (b) Mahendrapala
 - (c) Mihirabhoja
 - (d) Nagbhata II
10. Which Pratihara King patronized the well known poet Rajasekhara?
 - (a) Mihirabhoja
 - (b) Vatsaraja
 - (c) Mahipala
 - (d) Nagabhata II
11. Which Rashtrakuta king composed the works 'Kavirajamarga', 'Ratnamalika' and 'Passanotaramalika'?
 - (a) Amoghavarsa I
 - (b) Krishna I
 - (c) Indra III
 - (d) Krishna III
12. The Palas patronized which form of Buddhism?
 - (a) Hinayana
 - (b) Mahayana
 - (c) Sarvastavadin
 - (d) All of these
13. Lingayats are,
 - (a) Worshipers of Shiva
 - (b) Opposed to caste system
 - (c) Opposed to social evils as child marriage
 - (d) All the above
14. Which dynasty initiated the dravidian style of architecture?
 - (a) Pallavas
 - (b) Cholas
 - (c) Vijayanagar
 - (d) Chalukyas of Kalyani
15. Which chola ruler completed the conquest of Sri Lanka?
 - (a) Vijayalaya I
 - (b) Raja Raja I
 - (c) Rajendra I
 - (d) Parantaka I
16. The chola who launched and expedition into Bengal upto the Ganga river was,
 - (a) Raja Raja I
 - (b) Kulottanga I
 - (c) Rajendra III
 - (d) Rajendra I
17. Who was the 'Mandala mudali' in the Chola administrative set up?
 - (a) Provincial governor
 - (b) District head
 - (c) Head of Judiciary
 - (d) Intelligence head
18. Which of the following is true about Chola Society?
 - (a) Four fold varna system was absent
 - (b) Untouchability existed
 - (c) Slavery was Prevalent
 - (d) All of the above
19. An enormous Nandi, the second largest in India is a feature of which Chola temple?
 - (a) Nataraja temple at Chidambaram
 - (b) Gangaikonda cholapuram temple
 - (c) Lepakshi temple
 - (d) Raja Rajeswara temple at Tanjore
20. Which of the following characterised by the Rajputs?
 - (a) They formed the intellectual elite of the Hindus.
 - (b) Their institutions resembled the feudal system of medieval Europe and had all its defects.
 - (c) They were divided into several classes, each under a hereditary chief, but had no hostility among themselves.
 - (d) All the above
21. Which of the following statement is false?
 - (a) Rashtrakuta king who never invaded India Amoghavarsha.
 - (b) Rashtrakuta king who constructed the Kailasha temple - Krishan I
 - (c) Rashtrakuta king who defeated the Pratihara ruler Nagabhata - Govinda III
 - (d) Kavirajamarga was written by Indra III is Kannada.
22. The medieval Indian writer who refers to the discovery of America is :
 - (a) Malik Muhammad Jayasi
 - (b) Amir Khusrau
 - (c) Raskhan
 - (d) Abul Fazl
23. Which one of the following statement about Brihadeswara temple at Tanjavur, is not correct?
 - (a) The temple is a splendid example of Chola architecture
 - (b) It was built by emperor Rajaraja
 - (c) The temple is constructed of granite
 - (d) The temple is a monument dedicated to Lord Vishnu
24. Consider the following passage and identify the three tribal principalities referred to there, in using the codes given below
In the early history of the far South in India, three tribal

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (b) Konark Sun Temple (also known as the Black Pagoda) is in a small town in Puri (Odisha). It was built by Narasimhadeva of Imperial Ganga dynasty.
2. (c) Sangam Literature was made around 2,300 yrs ago.
3. (c) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (d) 7. (d)
8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (c) 11. (a) 12. (b)
13. (d) 14. (b) 15. (c) 16. (d) 17. (a)
18. (d) 19. (d) 20. (b)
21. (d) Kavirajamarga was written by Amoghavarsha I.
22. (d)
23. (d) The Brihadeshwara temple, called the Big Temple, is dedicated to Lord Siva. It was built by the great Chola King Raja Raja I (985-1012 A.D). It is an outstanding example of Chola architecture. Recognizing its unique architectural excellence, UNESCO has declared it a World Heritage Monument.
24. (b) The Pillar Edicts are divided into:
Major Rock Edicts: 14 Edicts (termed 1st to 14th) and 2 separate ones found in Odisha
Minor Rock Edicts, the Queen's Edict, Barabar Caves inscriptions and the Kandahar bilingual inscription.
In these Edicts there were three South Indian states described as Cholas, Pandayas, Cheras.
25. (a) Brihadeshwara Temple (Raja Rajeswara Temple) was built by emperor Raja Raja Chola I in 1010 AD. Meenakshi Temple located on the southern bank of the Vaigai River (Madurai, Tamil Nadu). It is dedicated to Parvati known as Meenakshi. Srirangam temple is one of the most illustrious Vaishnava temples in South India located on an island on the

bank of Cauvery river. The Durga temple is located in Aihole, Karnataka. It was built by Chalukyas between the 7th and the 8th century.

26. (b) In medieval India, the designations 'Mahattara' and 'Pattakila' were used for village headmen.

EXERCISE-2

1. (d) Pulakesin I performed the horse sacrifice like Vishnu-vardhana.
2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (d)
6. (a) The correct chronological order of the rulers of Kashmir is. Avantivarman, Didda, Harsha, Jayasinghe. Utpala dynasty founded by Avantivarman followed the Kakrotas. His successor Shankaravarman (885-902 CE) led a successful military campaign against Gurjaras in Punjab. Political instability in 10th century made the royal body guards (Tantrins) very powerful in Kashmir. Under the Tantrins, civil administration collapsed and chaos reigned in Kashmir till they were defeated by Chakravarman. Queen Didda, who descended from the Hindu Shahis of Kabul on her mother's side, took over as the ruler in second half of the 10th century. After her death in 1003 CE, the throne passed to Lohara dynasty.
7. (a) The Gupta had their capital at Deogarh, Chandella had their capital at Khajuraho, Chalukya's at Badani and Pallava's capital was at Mamallapuram.
8. (a)
9. (b) States such as Champaka (Chamba), Durgara (Jammu), Trigarta (Jalandhar), Kuluta (Kulu), Kumaon and Garhwal managed to remain outside the main areas of conflict in the northern plains.

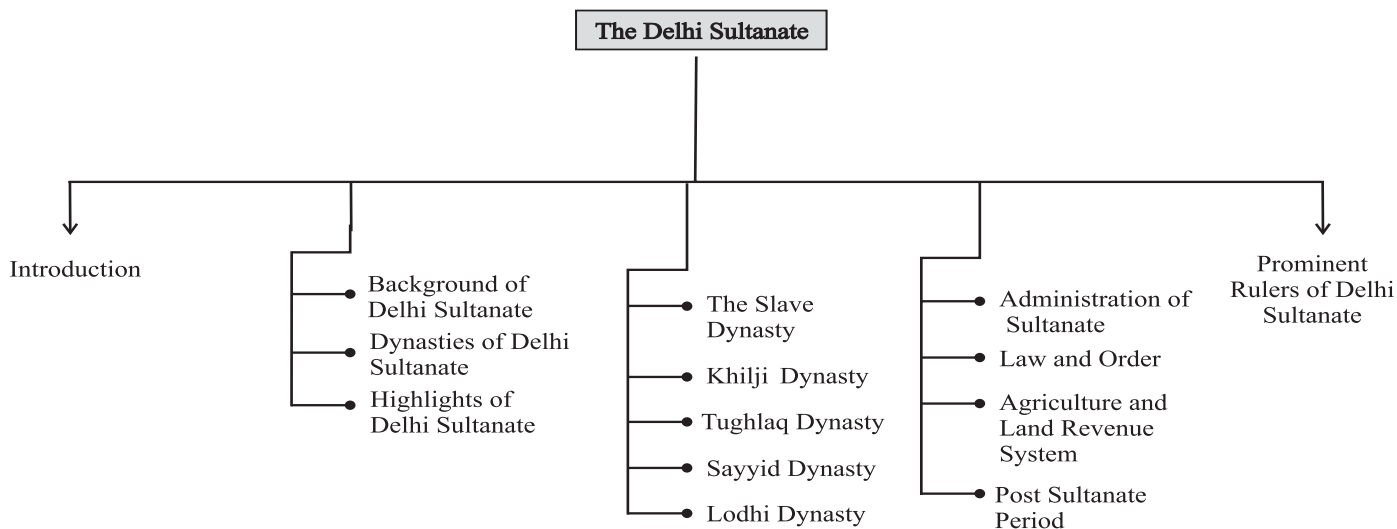


THE DELHI SULTANATE

12 Chapter

Introduction

Delhi Sultanate was founded by Turkish ‘*Mamluks*’ employed by rulers of Afghanistan. Early rulers had to defend north from attempted *Mongol invasions*. Their power derived from military, highways, trade routes and the ability to control provincial governors. They introduced *copper and silver coins*. In their reign, many refugees arrived from Persia after the Mongol invasions bringing many skills. Delhi was the capital of the Delhi Sultanate in the beginning of the thirteen century.



THE BACKGROUND OF DELHI SULTANATE

1. First Muslim Invasion - *Mohamamd Bin Qasim's invasion* (712 AD)
2. First Turk Invasion - *Mahmud Ghaznavi's invasion* (998-1030 AD).
3. Second Turk invasion - *Mohammad Ghori's invasion* (1175-1206) AD
4. The success of **Turks** in India.

Dynasties of Delhi Sultanate

Delhi Sultanate was ruled by five dynasties.

Dynasty	Period
The Slaves	1206 - 1290 AD
The Khilji	1290 - 1320 AD
The Tughlaqs	1320 - 1414 AD
The Sayyids	1414 - 1451 CE
The Lodhis	1415 - 1526 CE



The conquests of Muhammad of Ghur led to the establishment of Turkish rule. A new political power, the sultanate of Delhi came into being. The period of 1206 to 1526 A.D. in Indian history is known as Sultanate period. The rulers of this period were Turks.

Highlights of the Delhi Sultanate:

- Taxes were not standardized and widely fluctuated.
- Peasants paid 1/3 -1/2 of produce in taxes plus other types of taxes.
- Canals and irrigation facilities were developed to expand agriculture.
- **Ibn Battuta** was sent by the Sultan as a representative to China.
- *Sufi and Bhakti movements* which believed in fundamental unity of all religions became popular.
- Facilitated trade in the Indian Ocean, exports flourished
 - Cotton & silk textiles
 - Paper industry
 - Leather making
 - Metal crafts
 - Carpet weaving
- Protected India from being ravaged by the Mongols.
- Introduced new art and architectural styles into India.
- Ultimately failed due to constant rebellions of Muslim nobles and Hindu peasants.

THE SLAVE DYNASTY

Muhammad of Ghur left his Indian dominions in the care of his former slave *Qutub-ud-din Aibak*. On the death of Muhammad he tied up with *Ghazni* and founded a new dynasty called 'mameluks' or slave dynasty.

Slave Dynasty Timeline

Ruler	Reign
Qutbu-ud-din-Aibak	(1192–1210)
Aram Shah	(1210–1211)
Shams-ud-din-Iltutmish	(1211–1236)
Razia Sultana	(1236–1240)
Nasiruddin Mahmud	(1246–1266)
Ghiyasuddin Balban	(1266–1286)

Qutub-ud-din Aibak

He was born of Turkish parents in Turkiestan. *Aibak* received the title of *Sultan of Delhi* from *Ghiyas-ud-din Mahmud*, the successor of *Muhammad of Ghur*. He built two famous mosques, *Quwwat-ud-Islam* and *Adhai Din ka Jhonpara* at Delhi and Ajmer. He believed in matrimonial alliances. He was an efficient and brave commander. When he became the Governor of India, he conquered Meerut, Kalinjar, Mahoba, Koel, Ranthambhore, Kannauj etc. He was entitled as *Lakhabaksh* or 'giver of lakhs'. He started the construction of *Qutub Minar in Delhi*. He died as a result of fall from his horse while playing polo.

Aram Shah

After *Aibak's* death his son *Aram Shah* was enthroned at Lahore. But the nobles of his court decided to enthrone *Aibak's* son-in-law *Iltutmish* and after the conflict between both of them, *Iltutmish* conquered and became the successor of *Aibak*.

Iltutmish

The full name of *Iltutmish* was *Shams-ud-din Iltutmish*. He made himself secure as the sultan. He consolidated the Ghurid acquisition in India and proved it with a compact monarch. He completed the unfinished construction of *Qutub Minar*. He conquered Kannauj, Varanasi, Bahraich, Oudh, Gwalior, Bayana, Ajmer, Sambhal, Nagore etc. He was the first Turk Sultan to strike pure Arabian coins.

His governing class consisted of two groups. Turkish slave officers and *Tazik*. He organised the *iqtas*, army, currency to consolidate his sultanate. He reorganised the army of the sultanate and introduced the silver *tanka* and the copper *jital*. He also organised the team of 40 loyal nobles, *Turkhan-i-Chahalgani* to keep a watch over intriguers

Razia Sultana

Iltutmish was succeeded by his daughter *Razia* but the nobles of his court disregarded his wishes and placed his son, *Rukn-ud-din Firoz shah* on the throne but he was not an efficient ruler. So *Razia* held the title of sultan. The intrigues of the Turkish chiefs called the forty or *chahalgani* increased against the monarchy. *Razia* was the only woman who ever sat on the throne of Delhi. She was murdered in 1240 A.D. near *Kaithal*.

Ghiyas-ud-din Balban

Balban who had all control over sovereignty sat on the throne of Delhi in 1266 A.D. and adopted the name of *Ghiyasuddin Balban*. For the defence from Mongols, Balban recognized the military department known as *Diwan-i-Ariz*. He introduced Pabos, touching the kings feet and sijda - bowing to the king in his court. He was the first ruler who believed in kingship. *Feroz Khilji* killed the successors of Balban and captured the Delhi sultanate.

Turkan-i-Chahalgani

The most important institution that developed under the slave Dynasty was the institution of Turkan - i - Chahalgani. It was also called *Chahalgan* or “the forty” Chahalgans were a group of highly placed and powerful officers, whom *Iltutmish* had organised as his personal supporters. However, during the days of civil war between the successors of *Iltutmish*, the Chahalgan started looking for personal gains and played on prince against the other. When Balban assumed charge as Sultan, he crushed their power and strengthened his rule.

KHILJI DYNASTY (1290 A.D. - 1320 A.D.)

They were originally Turkish but traditionally became Afghan. *Jalaluddin* was the founder of this dynasty. He defeated Mongols in 1292 A.D. He was succeeded by his nephew *Alauddin Khilji*. He ruled from 1296 to 1316 A.D.

- He inscribed himself as *Alexander II* on his coin and adopted the title of *Yasmin-ul-Khilafat-Nasiri-Anurul Muminin*.
- He conquered over North India, Chittor, Ranthambhore, Telangana, Hoysals, Pandyas and Devgiri.
- He was a great administrator who carried out many useful reforms.
- He introduced new market regulation to provide essential commodities at reasonable rates to raise resources for making cash payment to the army.
- He appointed *Diwan-i-Riyasat* and *Shahna-i-Mandi* to regulate the fixed price market.
- He declared all land in the area from Lahore to Karu to be state land.
- He constructed monuments like *Alai-Darwaza* and *Sirifort* in Delhi.
- He prohibited the use of wine and organisation of parties among soldiers.
- The most important contribution of *Alauddin Khilji* was the introduction of price controls covering almost the entire market so that the cost of living would not be high. Grain was rationed and the price was fixed. There was restriction on sale and purchase of high quality cloth.
- Though *Alauddin* was illiterate, he was a patron of learning and art. He died in 1316 A.D. and *Qutubuddin Mubarak Khilji* ascended his throne and after him *Nasiruddin Khusro* succeeded him.
- After *Alauddin*'s death, kings followed a quick succession till *Giyasuddin Tughlaq* proclaimed himself the *Sultan of Delhi* in 1320 A.D.

Khilji Dynasty Timeline

Ruler	Reign
Jalal-ud-din Firuz Khilji	1290-1296
Alauddin Khilji	1296-1316
Qutb-ud-din Mubarak Shah	1316-1320

TUGHLAQ DYNASTY (1320 A.D.-1414 A.D.)

Giyasuddin Tughlaq was the founder of the new dynasty known as *Tughlaq dynasty*. Historians say that Tughlaq was the name of neither a race nor a family and that Ghiyasud-din's name was either *Ghazi Tughlaq* or *Ghazi Beg Tughlaq*. He extended his empire upto Madurai. As he was an Indian Muslim, the Turk nobles opposed him. He ruled upto 1325 A.D. He charged 1/5 of the produce and during famines exempted them from the taxes. He died in 1325 A.D.

Tughlaq Dynasty Timeline

Ruler	Reign
Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq	1321-1325
Mohammad bin Tughlaq	1325-1351
Firoz Shah Tughlaq	1351-1388
Ghiyas-ud-din Tughluq II	1388-1389
Nusrat Shah	1394-1399
Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah	1399-1413

Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq

He was the son of *Giyasuddin Tughlaq*. He has been referred to as an ill starred idealist whose experiments ended in failure. *Mohammad Tughlaq* organized agriculture department and called it as *Diwan-i-Amir Kohi*. He decided to shift his capital to *Devgiri* in the south for security reasons and named it as *Daulatabad*. He was a great patron of Philosophy, Arithmetic and Astrology. He was a lover of literature and poetry. *Ibanbatuta* was the *chief Qazi* of his empire. He died in 1351 A.D. during the invasion of Sindh.

Experiments of Mohammad Tughlaq

- Raising the taxes in *Doab*
- Transfer the capital from *Delhi* to *Daulatabad*
- Introduction of the token currency
- Expeditions into Khurson and Qurachil.

Firoz Shah Tughlaq

He ascended the throne at *Thatta* in 1351 A.D. He was Muhammad's cousin and chosen by the nobles as a sultan. He reduced taxation prescribed by the Quran. He established *Diwan-i-Khairat*, a charitable department. He established new towns like Firozpur, Firozabad, Hissar-Firoza and Jaunpur. His death was followed by a civil war among his descendants. The last ruler of Tughlaq dynasty was *Nasiruddin*.

The Sultanate after the Tughlaqs

After the Tughlaqs, the *Sayyid* and the *Lodi Dynasties* continued to rule from Delhi and Agra until 1526 but the control of the Delhi Sultans was only over a small region neighbouring Delhi. Regions like Jaunpur, Bengal, Malwas, Gujrat, Rajasthan and the entire South India had independent rulers.

THE SAYYID DYNASTY (1414 A.D. - 1451 A.D.)

Sayyid dynasty was short lived and was limited to Delhi. *Khizr Khan* was a Sayyid and his dynasty is called the Sayyid dynasty. The last ruler *Alauddin Shah* transferred the kingdom to *Bahlol Lodi*.

THE LODI DYNASTY (1451 A.D. - 1526 A.D.)

Ruler	Reign
Bahlol Lodi	1451-1489
Sikander Lodi	1489-1517
Ibrahim Lodi	1517-1526

Bahlol Lodi was the founder of *Lodi dynasty*. The most important Lodi Sultan was *Sikandar Lodi* who controlled the Ganga Valley. He shifted his capital from *Delhi to Agra*. He conquered Bihar and Tirhut. He was a bigot and demolished many Hindu temples. He introduced the measurement of land known as 'Gaz'. The eldest son of Sikandar Lodi was *Ibrahim Lodi* who ascended his throne. His relation with his nobles were not cordial. Ibrahim Lodi was defeated by *Babur* in the first *Battle of Panipat* in 1526 A.D. Thus the reign of Delhi Sultanate ended for 320 years.

Causes of the decline of the Delhi Sultanate

- (i) Weak system of government.
- (ii) The invasion of Taimur.
- (iii) Lack of clear cut succession policy.
- (iv) Ibrahim Lodi was a foolish emperor.
- (v) Greed for wealth and luxury among nobles.

ADMINISTRATION OF THE SULTANATE

The *iqtdari* was a type of land distribution and administration evolved during the Sultanate period. The *muqtis* had the right to collect and appropriate taxes. The sultan from *Ilutmish* started the practice of transferring *muqtis* from one *iqta* to another.

The sultans were the head of the state. He considered himself the deputy of the khalifa. He was the chief law giver and the Commander-in-chief. Other important officials were *Barid-i-mumalik*, *Wakil-i-dar*, *Amir-i-hazib*, *Sadr-i-Jahan*,

Amir-i-dad, *Amir-i-akhur*, *Shahna-i-pil*, *Shiqdar*, *Amur-i-Majlis*, *Majlis-i-an*. Each province was divided into a number of *shiqs* which were headed by *shiqdars* who maintained law and order. The village was the smallest unit of administration.

Law and Order

The head of the judicial department was the chief qazi who was responsible for the enforcement of Islamic law. According to Islam, the sources of justice are four—Quran, Hadis, Ijma and Qayas. Ijma was the collection of laws which were obtained from the Mujatahid. There were four types of courts at the provincial level.

- (i) *The court of Governor*
- (ii) *Qazi-e-Suba's court*
- (iii) *Court of Diwan-i-Suba*
- (iv) *Court of Sadar-i-suba*

Agriculture and Land Revenue System

During the regime of Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq and Firoz Tughlaq, there was a marked development of gardens. These gardens led to the improvement of fruits, especially grapes for the preparation of wine. Canals were set up by Firoz. Items of import were horses, armoury, slaves, dry fruits etc. Iron, arms, cotton, grains, sugar, spices, herbs, fruits and indigo were exported.

There were five types of taxes.

- (i) *Ushra*
- (ii) *Kharaj*
- (iii) *Khams*
- (iv) *Jazia*
- (v) *Zakat*

Ushra was the land tax taken from non-muslims on the total production from 5% to 10%. *Khams* was 1/5 of the total property. *Zakat* was 2.5% religious tax of the total income. *Jazia* was levied on non-muslims.

Batai was a method of fixing the land tax. It was of three types—*Khet Batai*, *Lank Batai*, *Ras Batai*.

Music

Rabab and *Sarangi* were introduced by the Turks. *Amir Khusro* is credited for introducing *Qawali*. The Indian classical work of *Rag Darpan* was translated into Persian.

POST-SULTANATE PERIOD

After the decline of Sultanate, many other kingdoms arose. Music was patronised, regional languages were stimulated and provincial style of architecture developed. Gujarat, Malwa and Rajasthan came into power. The Muslim rulers became friendly with the Rajputs. Gujarat style of architecture was extraordinary. Tomb of Shaikh Farid, Tanka mosque, Jama Mosque of Khambhat, Mosque of Muhafiz Khan, Sidi Saiyyad were built in early 16th century. Bengal, Kashmir, Mewar, Bahmani state's rulers were the patrons of art, science and education.

PROMINENT RULERS OF THE DELHI SULTANATE

Slave Dynasty	Khilji Dynasty	Tughlaq Dynasty	Sayyid Dynasty	Lodhi Dynasty
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Started by Qutab-ud-din Aibak. Succeeded by Itutmish, his son-in-law. Efficient ruler, great builder, completed Qutab Minar started by Qutab-ud-din Aibak. Itutmish defeated Rajput rulers. He also averted Mongol attack. Razia, his daughter, succeeded him. She was an efficient ruler but orthodox nobles did not accept her, killed in AD 1240. Nasir-ud-din Muhammad next ruler. Youngest son of Itutmish, very inefficient. Reign of government in the hands of Balban, his father-in-law. Balban was Prime Minister for 20 years. Became king after Nasir-ud-din's death. Very efficient ruler, controlled nobles and empire efficiently. Peace and prosperity reigned during his rule. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jalal-ud-din Khilji ascended the throne, after killing Balban's grandson. He was murdered by his nephew Ala-ud-din Khilji. Ala-ud-din became king in AD 1296. Ala-ud-din was a great king who conquered Gujarat, Chittor, Malwa, Ujjain, Dhar, Mandu, Chanderi in the north. He defeated the rulers of Devagiri, Warangal, Dwarsamudra, Madurai. He converted the rajas to vassals and took annual tribute from them. This was deliberate as Deccan was far away from his capital and thus, difficult to control. Equipped his kingdom against the Mongols. Controlled power of nobles. Introduced revenue reforms such as price control of essential goods. He was also a great builder and a patron of art and architecture. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After Ala-ud-din's death the nobles raised Ghias-ud-din Tughlaq to the throne in AD 1320. After his death Muhammad-Bin-Tughlaq ascended the throne. He was a man of vision but his reforms failed through want of adequate planning. His three schemes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – shifting of capital – token currency – taxation in the doab failed miserably. Firoz Shad Tughlaq <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – not a good general – lost Bengal and Deccan – himself a scholar, patronised scholars – great builders, built many towns – improved irrigation, built canals and wells. Built many hospitals also. – banned corporal punishment. – Timur invaded India and plundered it. The weak Tughlaq dynasty came to its end. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq died Timur's deputy marched into India. He occupied the throne of Delhi. The Sayyid dynasty was founded. Weak rulers gave up throne of Delhi to Bahlol Lodhi. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bahlol Lodhi, an Afghan noble, founded the Lodhi dynasty. Sikandar Lodhi the most efficient ruler. Annexed the whole of the Gangetic plain Ibrahim Lodhi could not get the support of his nobles. Daulat Khan invited Babur to invade India. Ibrahim Lodhi defeated by Babur in the first battle of Panipat 1526. Arabs were great explorers and mariners of their time. They used the compass and the astrolabes efficiently.

Points to remember

- Delhi became important under the **Delhi Sultanate**.
- The important dynasties of the Delhi Sultanate were the Slave Dynasty, Khilji Dynasty, Tughlaq Dynasty, Sayyid Dynasty and Lodhi Dynasty.
- The foundation of the Slave Dynasty was laid down by Qutab-ud-din Aibak. Dynasty introduced the market control and administrative measures in order to maintain a large standing army.
- Among the Tughlaqs, **Muhammad-Bin-Tughlaq** introduced three projects - shifting of capital from Delhi to Daulatabad, introduction of token currency, raising of land tax in the Doab region to fifty percent - all of which failed and weakened his position.
- After the Tughlaq dynasty, the disintegration of the Delhi Sultanate set in, though the Sayyids and Lodhis continued to rule till 1526.
- In the medieval period two new religious movements gained popularity: (i) *Sufism* (ii) *Bhakti*
- Sufism was Islamic mystic tradition while Bhakti was the devotion towards a God or his various forms.
- Sufism introduced many popular *orders or Silsilahs* of which the most widespread were the **Suhrawardi** and **Chishti** silsilahs.

Exercise - 1

- Which Turkish general destroyed the universities of Nalanda and Vikramsila?
 - Qutubuddin Aibek
 - Baktiyar Khalji
 - Ali Mardan Khalji
 - Tajuddin Yalduz
- About whose kingdom is it said "the dominion of the lord of the universe extended from Delhi to Palam."?
 - Qutubuddin Aibak
 - Nasiruddin Mahmud Tughlaq
 - Mohammad Gazni
 - Alam Shah
- After consolidating his power, Balban assumed the grand title of :
 - Tute-Hind
 - Kaisr-i-Hind
 - Zil-i-Ilahi
 - Din-i-Ilahi
- Fawazil in the Sultanate period meant:
 - extra payment to the nobles
 - revenue assigned in lieu of salary
 - excess amount paid to the exchequer by the Iqtadars
 - illegal exactions extracted from the peasants
- 'The king was freed from his people and they from their king'. On whose death did Badauni comment this?
 - Balban
 - Ala-ud-din Khilji
 - Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq
 - Firoz Shah Tughlaq
- With reference to medieval Indian rulers, which one of the following statement is correct?
 - Alauddin Khilji first set up a separate ariz's department.
 - Balban introduced the branding of horses in his military.
 - Muhammad Bin Tughlaq was succeeded by his uncle to the military.
 - Firoz Tughlaq set up a separate department of slaves.
- Which one of the following is the correct chronological order of the Afghan rulers to the throne of Delhi?
 - Sikandar Shah-Ibrahim Lodi-Bahlol Khan Lodi
 - Sikandar Shah-Bahlol Khan Lodi-Ibrahim Lodi
 - Bahlol Khan Lodi-Sikandar Shah-Ibrahim Lodi
 - Bahlol Khan Lodi-Ibrahim Lodi-Sikandar Shah
- Who among the following Delhi Sultans was known for introducing market control mechanism ?
 - Itutmish
 - Balban
 - Alauddin Khilji
 - Firoz Tughlaq
- Who wrote the book called Kitab-i-Nauras ?
 - Amir Khusro
 - Badauni
 - Ibrahim Adil Shah II
 - Ala-ud-din Bahmani
- During the reign of Alauddin Khilji, who were amils ?
 - Local landlords at village level
 - Government agents to collect land revenue
 - Khurasani and Multani traders of foodgrains
 - Banjaras who carried the food-grains from villages to towns.
- With reference to Delhi Sultanate, who was the founder of Sayyid Dynasty?
 - Khizr Khan
 - Mubarak Shah
 - Muhammad Shah
 - Alauddin Alam Shah
- What was Iqta in sultanate period?
 - Territories of land
 - A tax
 - A form of military
 - None of these
- In whose reign did the sultanate reach its farthest extent ?
 - Qutub-ud-din Aibak
 - Raziya
 - Ghiyasuddin Balban
 - Muhammad Tughlaq
- Which dynasty rules for the longest period of time in the Delhi sultanate?
 - Slave dynasty
 - Khilji dynasty
 - Tughlaq dynasty
 - Lodhi dynasty
- Who among the Sultans is credited with having introduced a purely Arabic currency of gold and silver?
 - Itutmish
 - Balban
 - Muhammed-bin-Tughluq
 - Alauddin Khilji
- Which Sultan introduced the practices of Sijda, Paibos and Nawroz in the Delhi Sultanate?
 - Balban
 - Razia Sultana
 - Itutmish
 - Firoz Shah Tughlaq
- Which of the following are true?
 - Balban did not go for fresh conquests, rather he concentrated on consolidation of the infant state at Delhi.
 - He set about a policy of liquidation of the challis or 40 nobles.
 - Balban did not show any difference in matters of administration of justice between high and low.
 - All of the above
- Which Sultan was the first to proclaim that the state in India of the Delhi Sultanate cannot be a truly Islamic state?
 - Behram Shah
 - Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah
 - Jalaluddin Khilji
 - Alauddin Khilji
- Who was the only converted Indian muslim to become the head of the Delhi Sultanate?
 - Kaikubad
 - Nasiruddin Khusrau Shah
 - Masud Shah
 - Qaimurs
- Which Jain saint was patronised by Mohammed-bin-Tughluq?
 - Hemachandra Suri
 - Jinaprabha Suri
 - Dasturji Mebarji
 - None

21. Which sultan had a dispute with Sufi Saint Nizamuddin Auliya?
 - (a) Jalaluddin Khilji
 - (b) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 - (c) Feroz Shah Tughlaq
 - (d) Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq
22. The Bahmani Sultanate came into being during the reign of which Sultan?
 - (a) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 - (b) Ibrahim Lodhi
 - (c) Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq
 - (d) Feroz Shah Tughlaq
23. Which of the dynasties ruled for the shortest period of time during of course of the Delhi Sultanate?
 - (a) Slave dynasty
 - (b) Khilji dynasty
 - (c) Sayyid dynasty
 - (d) Lodhi dynasty
24. Which Lodhi ruler was originally named as Nizam Khan?
 - (a) Bahlul Lodi
 - (b) Sikandar Lodhi
 - (c) Ibrahim Lodhi
 - (d) Dilawar Khan Lodhi
25. Who abolished Iqta system?
 - (a) Qutubuddin Aibak
 - (b) Iltutmish
 - (c) Balban
 - (d) Alauddin Khilji
26. Why did Mohammad-bin Tughlaq shift his capital from Delhi to Deogiri?
 - (a) Because he was fed up with Delhi.
 - (b) As a punishment for the people of Delhi.
 - (c) Because he wanted to extend his empire to the south.
 - (d) Because the new capital occupied a central and strategic location.
27. Who among the following Amirs was the one publicly flogged by the orders of Sultan Balban?
 - (a) Haibat Khan
 - (b) Imaduddin Raihan
 - (c) Sher Khan
 - (d) Malik Baqbaq
28. Who was the Governor of Kara-Manikpur to have revolted against Sultan Jalaluddin Firoz Khilji?
 - (a) Arkali Khan
 - (b) Almas Beg
 - (c) Jawn Khan
 - (d) Malik Chajju
29. Which sultan of Delhi made a rule that, in any given year, the land revenue can be increased only nominally, viz. one-tenth or one-eleventh of the fixed revenue?
 - (a) Balban
 - (b) Alauddin Khilji
 - (c) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 - (d) Firozshah Tughlaq
30. Who of the following was responsible for the murder of his father?
 - (a) Balban
 - (b) Mohammad Bin Tughlaq
 - (c) Alauddin Khilji
 - (d) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
31. Who among the following foreign historians is considered an authority on the history of the Delhi Sultanate?
 - (a) Richard Fox
 - (b) Peter Jackson
 - (c) Aden Southall
 - (d) Chris Bayly
32. Which Sultan of Delhi categorized the Ulema into 'Ulma-i-Akhiral' and 'Ulma-i-Duniya' and praised the former?
 - (a) Qutubuddin Aibak
 - (b) Iltutmish
 - (c) Balban
 - (d) Alauddin Khilji
33. During the time of Alauddin's invasion, Warangal was ruled by
 - (a) Chalukya dynasty
 - (b) Chola dynasty
 - (c) Kakatiya dynasty
 - (d) Yadava dynasty
34. Shashgani was a small silver coin equal to
 - (a) 4 Jitals
 - (b) 6 Jitals
 - (c) 8 Jitals
 - (d) 10 Jitals
35. Who among the following Sultans received the title of 'Syed-us-Salatin' from the Caliph?
 - (a) Iltutmish
 - (b) Balban
 - (c) Alauddin Khilji
 - (d) Firoz Shah Tughlaq
36. The statement. "India is not Arabia, it is not practically feasible to convert it into Qarul Islam." is associated with
 - (a) Iltutmish
 - (b) Balban
 - (c) Alauddin Khilji
 - (d) Muhammad Bin Tughlaq
37. With which Sultan of Delhi do you associate the compilation of Kingship theory and principles of administration called 'Vassayya' ?
 - (a) Iltutmish
 - (b) Balban
 - (c) Alauddin Khilji
 - (d) Firoz Shah Tughlaq
38. Which one of the following works of Amir Khusror deals with the military expeditions of Alauddin Khilji?
 - (a) Nuh Siphar
 - (b) Khajain-ul-Futuh
 - (c) Miftah-ul-Futuh
 - (d) Quairanus Sadain
39. According to historian Ziauddin Barani, the ideal Sultan of Delhi was
 - (a) Balban
 - (b) Alauddin Khilji
 - (c) Firoz Shah Tughlaq
 - (d) Bahlol Lodi
40. Which one of the following is an octagonal tomb?
 - (a) Tomb of Sikandar Lodi
 - (b) Tomb of Balban
 - (c) Tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 - (d) Tomb of Firoz Shah Tughlaq
41. With which Sufi saint of Delhi is associated the famous saying 'Hanooz Dilli Door Ast' ?
 - (a) Nizamuddin Aulia
 - (b) Sheikh Salim Chisti
 - (c) Bhakhtiyaruddin Kaki
 - (d) Mohammad Ghaus
42. Who established Diwan-i-Mustakharaj?
 - (a) Qutubuddin Aibak
 - (b) Razia Sultana
 - (c) Balban
 - (d) Alauddin Khilji
43. Which type of work was looked after by the department of Diwan-i-Kohi under Muhammad Tughlaq?
 - (a) Agriculture
 - (b) Army
 - (c) Justice
 - (d) Royal correspondence

44. Who of the following Sultans of Delhi had abolished the tax on grain (also called Zakat on grain)?
 (a) Alauddin Khilji
 (b) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 (c) Firoz Shah Tughlaq
 (d) Sikandar Lodi
45. What was Arghatta?
 (a) A machine to break forts
 (b) An irrigation canal
 (c) A device to lift water
 (d) A type of cloth
46. Which one of the following agrarian measures was NOT adopted by Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq?
 (a) He discarded measurement in favour of sharing.
 (b) The chiefs and headmen of villages were given back their perquisites.
 (c) The basis of the demand by the Government was to be *Hukm-i-hasil* (in accordance with yield) with enough provision for crop failures.
 (d) He made a large reduction in the scale of revenue fixed by Alauddin and brought it down to one-sixth of the gross produce.
47. Which one of the following pairs is not correctly matched?
 (a) Ahadi : Gentlemen trooper
 (b) Qalb : King's personal troops
 (c) Muqaddams : revenue collectors
 (d) Charai : House Tax
48. Which one of the following statements cannot be attributed to Firoz Tughlaq?
 (a) He restored the rent free lands (*inam*, *Idrar*) granted to theologians
 (b) He abolished all taxes not sanctioned by *Shara*
 (c) He raised the grants of teachers and stipends for students
 (d) He forced *Khuts*, *Muqaddams* and *Chaudharis* to pay grazing tax and house tax
49. Give one reason why the description of the Qutb-ud-din Aibak's dynasty as a "slave dynasty" is regarded as inaccurate.
 (a) Because except for Qutb-ud-din Aibak. Others rulers of the dynasty were not slaves
 (b) Because only three kings of this dynasty were slaves and even these three were manumitted by their masters
 (c) Because technically only Qutb-ud-din Aibak started his career as a slave and he too was manumitted upon obtaining a letter of investiture from the Abbasid Caliph
 (d) Because all the rulers of this dynasty did not belong to one family
50. The chief achievement of Balban was
 (a) the consolidation of Turkish power and putting down rebellions by reorganising his army
 (b) suppression of ambitious nobles
 (c) establishing rapport with the people
 (d) administrative reforms
51. When Ala-ud-din Khilji forbade his nobles the use of wine, intimate relations and abundance of wealth, and confiscated their endowments and *inams*, he aimed at
 (a) enhancing king's dignity
 (b) preventing the treachery of nobles
 (c) setting an example for his Hindu subjects
 (d) gathering more wealth for himself
52. Which is not a correct pair?
 (a) *Khanqah* — a house of mystics
 (b) *Khutba* — sermon
 (c) *Madad-i-mash* — grant of land or pension to scholars and saints by the Sultans
 (d) *Majlis* — meeting place or council
53. Which of the following is wrongly matched?
 (a) Qutab Minar — Aibak and Iltutmish
 (b) *Dhai din ka Jhonpara* — Ibrahim Lodi
 (c) *Alai Darwaja* — Alauddin Khilji
 (d) Red Palace — Balban
54. Who among the following Sultans of Delhi was the first to have paid to his soldiers in cash ?
 (a) Iltutmish
 (b) Alauddin Khilji
 (c) Muhammad bin Tughlaq
 (d) Feroz Tughlaq
55. During the reign of Alauddin Khilji, who were *amils* ?
 (a) Local landlords at village level
 (b) Government agents to collect land revenue
 (c) *Khurasani* and *Multani* traders of foodgrains
 (d) *Banjaras* who carried the food-grains from villages to towns.
56. Which Sultan declared himself as *Sikandar-i-Sani*, the second Alexander?
 (a) Balban (b) Kaiqubad
 (c) Iltutmish (d) Alauddin Khalji
57. Who among the following was the author of *Tarikh-i-Alai*, which contains the details of the first few years of Sultan Alauddin Khilji ?
 (a) Ziauddin Barani (b) Shams Siraj Afif
 (c) Amir Khusrau (d) Yahiya Bin Ahmad
58. Muhammad bin Tughlaq's experiment of introducing token currency could not succeed on account of
 (a) rejection of token coins by foreign merchants
 (b) shortage of copper for minting token coins
 (c) large-scale minting of spurious coins
 (d) poor quality of token currency
59. What was the name of Jain saint with whom Muhammad Tughlaq held discussions?
 (a) Rishabadeva (b) Hemchandra
 (c) Jinasena Suri (d) Jinaprabha Suri
60. Which one of the following sultans is credited with the appointment of 'Amir - Sadah' in the provinces?
 (a) Alauddin Khilji (b) Muhammad Tughlaq
 (c) Firoz Tughlaq (d) Bahlol Lodi

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- What were the main cause of the defeat of the Rajputs by the Turks?
 - Isolation and insularity of their society.
 - The iniquitous caste system.
 - Backward science and technology
 - Non violent and liberal policy of Indians.

(a) 1 and 2 (b) 1, 3, and 4
(c) 1, 2 and 3 (d) 2 and 3
- Why is the term 'Slave Dynasty' regarded as misnomer? Consider the following statements :
 - Except for Qutub-ud-din Aibak no other ruler was a slave.
 - Only three rulers of this dynasty were slaves and even they were manumitted by their masters.
 - Technically only Qutub-ud-din Aibak and his immediate descendants were slave.
 - All the rulers of this dynasty did not belong to one family.

Which of the above is/are correct?

(a) 1 and 3 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 2 only (d) 4 only
- Which of the following statements are true with regard to Alauddin Khilji?
 - He restructured the agrarian system to maintain his army and to stabilise his political power.
 - He forbade his nobles from taking wine.
 - All pensions and endowments were appropriated to the state.
 - He declared that he would be the king of the Hindus in the same way as he was of the Muslims.

Which of the above is/are true?

(a) 1 and 2 (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2 and 4 (d) 1, 2 and 4
- Consider the following statements :
 - By passing the role of the Caliph, Balban called himself the 'Shadow of God' and removed the Caliph's name from the Khutba and Sikka.
 - To pacify the ulema, Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq secured an investiture from the Abbasid Taliph.
 - Firoz Tughlaq secured the investiture twice from the caliph.
 - Iltutmish was the first of the Sultans to procure a manour of 'letter of investiture' from the caliph.

Which of these statements are correct?

(a) All of these (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 2, 3 and 4
- Consider the following statements on the reform of Ala-ud-din Khilji -
 - Confiscation of all grants of tax-free land.
 - Introduction of daag and chehra and in his military.
 - Abolition of iqtas of big nobles and military commanders.
 - Banning the sale of liquor and drugs.

Which of the above are correct?

(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 1, 2 and 4 (d) 1, 3 and 4
- Which of the following are true about Sikandar Lodi?
 - He tightened the espionage system.
 - He took a keen interest in the development of agriculture and regularly examined the price schedules for the markets.
 - He made his younger brother Jalal the independent ruler of the Jaunpur region, formerly ruled by the Sharqis.
 - His descendants preferred to call themselves the chaghatayids originating from Chengiz khan's second son, Chaghatay, who ruled Transoxiana.

Which of the above is/are correct?

(a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 2, 3 and 4
- With reference to the travellers, consider the following statements -
 - Ibn Battuta gave valuable information regarding Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq's reign.
 - Marco Polo and Athanasius Nikitin visited India during the regin of Rajputs.

Which of the above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Which of the Sultans measured the land for fixing land revenue?
 - Alauddin Khilji
 - Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 - Muhammad Bin Tughlaq
 - Sikandar Lodi

Select the correct answer from using the codes given below:

(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 1 and 3 only
(c) 1, 2 and 3 only (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
- Consider the following:
 - Tughlaqabad Fort
 - Lodhi Garden
 - Qutub Minar
 - Fatehpur Sikri

The correct chronological order in which they were built is

(a) 3, 1, 4, 2 (b) 3, 1, 2, 4
(c) 1, 3, 2, 4 (d) 1, 3, 4, 2

10. Arrange the following programmes of Mohammad bin Tughlaq in their chronological order.
1. Transfer of capital
 2. Increase of Taxation in Doab
 3. Promulgation of Token Currency
 4. Khurasan Expedition
- Select the correct answer from the codes given below:
- (a) 1, 2, 3 and 4 (b) 2, 3, 1 and 4
(c) 2, 1, 3 and 4 (d) 3, 2, 1 and 4
11. Which crops were not cultivated in India during the Sultanate period?
1. Potato
 2. Barley
 3. Sesame
 4. Maize
- Select your answer using the codes given below:
- (a) 1, 2, 3 (b) 1, 2
(c) 1, 4 (d) 3, 4
12. Bring out the correct statements about Raziya Sultana.
1. She was murdered by some bandits at Khaital after being deposed by the nobles
 2. Iltutmish nominated her as his successor
 3. She was successful in coming to the throne immediately after her father's death
 4. She was the only daughter to be preferred to sons by any ruler of India
 5. Her fondness for the Abyssinian slave Yaqub turned the nobles against her
- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 (b) 2, 3, 4
(c) 3, 4, 5 (d) 1, 2, 3
13. Name the Delhi Sultans born of Hindu mothers:
1. Firuz Tughlaq
 2. Sikandar Lodi
 3. Nasiruddin Khusrau
 4. Balban
 5. Alauddin Khilji
 6. Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
- (a) 2, 4, 5 (b) 1, 2, 4
(c) 3, 4, 5, 6 (d) 1, 2, 3, 6
14. Arrange in proper chronological order of the experiments of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq,
1. Introduction of token currency
 2. Transfer of capital from Delhi to Daulatabad
 3. Enhancement of land revenue to 50% in the Doab area
 4. Establish of a separate department of agriculture
 5. Appointment of a new set of revenue officers
- (a) 2, 1, 3, 4, 5 (b) 4, 5, 2, 3, 1
(c) 2, 4, 1, 3, 5 (d) 5, 3, 2, 1, 4
15. What is the descending order of the ranks of nobility under Delhi Sultanate?
1. Khan
 2. Malik
 3. Amir
 4. Sar-i-Khail
- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
(c) 1, 2, 3, 4 (d) 3, 2, 4, 1
16. Which of the following measures were taken by Balban for re-establishing the prestige and power of the crown?
1. He claimed his descent from the mythical hero Afrasiyab.
 2. He copied the court etiquettes of the Iranian Court.
 3. He instituted rigid formalities in the harem
 4. He reorganised the boundaries of provinces of the kingdom.
- Select the correct answer by using the codes given below:
- (a) 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 3 and 4 (d) 2 and 4
17. Consider the following pairs:
1. Forty Turkish slaves: Successors of Iltutmish
 2. Khot: Village headman
 3. Amiran-i-sada: Muhammad Tughlaq
- Which of the above pairs are correctly matched?
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 3
18. Which of the following new techniques in cotton textile industry was/were introduced in India by the Turks in the Medieval period?
1. Spindle
 2. Spinning wheel
 3. Water frame
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below:
- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 2 only
19. The main difficulties of Iltutmish when he ascended the throne were
1. The Punjab was hostile to him
 2. Bengal and Bihar severed their connections
 3. Ali Mardan of Lakhnauti set himself up as independent ruler
 4. The revolt of Aram Shah
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 4 and 5 (d) All of these
20. In which order did the following dynasties rule Delhi?
1. Lodi dynasty
 2. Tughlaq dynasty
 3. Khilji dynasty
 4. Syed dynasty
 5. Slave dynasty
- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 (b) 5, 3, 2, 4, 1
(c) 4, 3, 2, 1, 5 (d) 1, 3, 2, 5, 4
21. Consider the following statements:
- Alberuni's Kitab-ul-Hind is
1. a sympathetic study of Indian Civilisation.
 2. mainly a political history of India.
 3. critical of Mahmud Ghaznavi's plundering raids of India.
 4. mainly a study of Indian's cultural, social and intellectual history
- Which of the above statements(s) is/are correct?
- (a) 1, 3 and 4 (b) 1 and 4
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 4 alone

Matching Based MCQ

22. **List I** **List II**
- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Sadra-us-Sudur | 1. Foreign department |
| B. Diwan-i-Amir Kohi | 2. Religious department |
| C. Diwan-i-Rasalat | 3. Department of secret service |
| D. Barid-e-Mumaliq | 4. Agriculture department |
- (a) A - 4, B - 2, C - 1, D - 3
 (b) A - 2, B - 4, C - 1, D - 3
 (c) A - 1, B - 3, C - 4, D - 2
 (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4

23. **List I** **List II**
- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| A. Quwatul Islam Mosque | 1. Alauddin Khilji |
| B. Arhai Din ka Jhopra | 2. Mohammad Tughlaq |
| C. Alai Darwaza | 3. Qutubuddin Aibak |
| D. Vijay Mandal | 4. Iltutmish |
- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2
 (b) A - 2, B - 4, C - 1, D - 3
 (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2
 (d) A - 1, B - 2, C - 3, D - 4

24. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| A. Alberuni | 1. Tabquat-i-Nasiri |
| B. Hasan Nizami | 2. Taj-ul-Masir |
| C. Minhaj-us-Siraj | 3. Tarikh-i-Hind |
| D. Amir Khusro | 4. Tughlaq Nama |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (d) 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |

25. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| A. Amir Khusro | 1. Futuh-us-Salatin |
| B. Ziauddin Barani | 2. Rehla |
| C. Ibnabatuta | 3. Ashika |
| D. Isami | 4. Tarikh-i-Firozshahi |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |

26. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Diwani-Mushtakhrāj | 1. Jalaluddin Khilji |
| B. Diwan-i-Amirkohi | 2. Firozshah Tughlaq |
| C. Diwan-i-Khairat | 3. Muhammad Tughlaq |
| D. Diwan-i-Wakuf | 4. Alauddin Khilji |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

27. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| A. Alberuni | 1. Tarikh-i-Fakhrudi |
| B. Ainul Mulq Multani | 2. Khazan-ul-Futuh |
| C. Amir Khusro | 3. Insha-i-Mahru |
| D. Fakhre Mudabbir | 4. Tarikh-i-Hind |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (d) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

28. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. Qazi-ul-Quzat | 1. Revenue and Finance |
| B. Muhatsib | 2. Army Organization |
| C. Diwan-i-kul | 3. Custodian of Public Morals |
| D. Mir Bakshi | 4. Administration of Justice |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

29. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| A. Alauddin Khilji | 1. Agra |
| B. Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq | 2. Siri Fort |
| C. Feroz Shah Tughlaq | 3. Tughlaqabad |
| D. Sikander Lodi | 4. Hissar |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 |

30. **List-I** **List-II**
- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Baba Farid | 1. Qadiriya order |
| B. Shaikh Hamiduddin Nagauri | 2. Chishtiya order |
| C. Miyan Mir | 3. Suhrawardiya order |
| D. Shah Waliullah | 4. Naqshbandiya order |

Codes:

- | A | B | C | D |
|-------|---|---|---|
| (a) 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |

31. **List-I**
 A. Adil Shahi
 B. Nizam Shahi
 C. Immad Shahi
 D. Qutub Shahi
- List-II**
 1. Ahmednagar
 2. Bijapur
 3. Golkonda
 4. Berar
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (b) | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
32. **List-I (Traveller)**
 A. Barbosa
 B. Nicolo Conti
 C. Abdur Razzaq
 D. Nikitin
- List-II (Country)**
 1. Persian
 2. Italian
 3. Russian
 4. Portuguese
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 |
| (d) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
33. **List-I (Traveller)**
 A. Abdur Razzak
 B. Duarte Barbosa
 C. Nicolo Conti
 D. Nuniz
- List-II (Ruler)**
 1. Achyutadeva Raya
 2. Devaraya I
 3. Devaraya II
 4. Krishnadeva Raya
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
34. **List I (Deccan State)**
 A. Bidar
 B. Ahmadnagar
 C. Bijapur
 D. Golconda
- List II (Founder)**
 1. Yusuf Adil Shah
 2. Qutub Shah
 3. Amir Ali Barid
 4. Malik Ahmad
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
35. 1. Diwani-i-Risalat
 2. Diwan-i-Kohi
 3. Diwan-i-Arz
 4. Diwan-i-Bandagani
 5. Diwan-i-Wazarat
 6. Diwan-i-Insha
- A. Department of slaves
 B. Military Department
 C. Department of Records and Correspondence
 D. Agricultural Department
 E. Finance Department
 F. Department of Ecclesiastical Affairs, Public Charities and Foreign' Affairs
- (a) 1-B, 2-B, 3-A, 4-F, 5-C, 6-E
 (b) 1-E, 2-F, 3-B, 4-A, 5-C, 6-D
 (c) 1-F, 2-D, 3-B, 4-A, 5-E, 6-C
 (d) 1-A, 2-C, 3-D, 4-B, 5-F, 6-E
36. **List I (Author)**
 A. Minhaj Siraj
 B. Amir Khusrau
 C. Hasan Nizami
 D. Shams-i-Siraj Afif
- List II (Works)**
 1. Tarikh-i-Firuz
 2. Tajul Ma'asir
 3. Khazainul Futuh
 4. Tabaqat-i-Nasiri
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (c) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
37. **List I**
 A. Silver tanka
 B. Diwan-i-Kohi
 C. Dar-ul-Shafa
 D. Shahan-i-Mandi
- List II**
 1. Alauddin Khalji
 2. Feroz Tughlaq
 3. Iltutmish
 4. Muhammad Tughlaq
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 1 | 2 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |
38. **List I (Terms)**
 A. Haqqi-i-Shurb
 B. Qismat
 C. Taqavi
 D. Uslub
- List II (Meanings)**
 1. Loans to peasants
 2. Water tax
 3. Agrarian cesses
 4. Regulations
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 1 | 2 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (d) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
39. **List I (Monument)**
 A. Ahai-Din Ka Jhopra at Ajmer
 B. Hauz-i-Khas at Delhi
 C. Fortress of Adilabad
 D. Jami Masjid at Badaun
- List II (Builder)**
 1. Ala-ud-din Khilji
 2. Iltutmish
 3. Muhammad Tughlaq
 4. Qutb-ud-din Aibak
- Codes:**
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (d) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |

40. **List I**
(Officials of Delhi Sultanate)
- A. Barid-i Mumalik
B. Dabir-i-Khas
C. Sar-i-Jandar
D. Wakil-i Dar
- List II**
(Duties/Job)
1. Dealing with royal correspondence
2. Commanding Sultan's bodyguards
3. Heading the State news and information agency
4. Controlling and supervising the royal house hold

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	4	3	1
(b)	3	1	2	4
(c)	2	1	3	4
(d)	3	4	2	1

41. **List I**
(Official With Reference to the Medieval Period)
- A. Khuts
B. Amir-i-hajib
C. Muhtasib
D. Nawisandas
- List II**
(Description)
1. Officer in charge of the Royal Court
2. Officer maintaining Regulations of municipality
3. Clerk
4. Village official

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	4	1	2	3
(b)	3	2	1	4
(c)	4	2	1	3
(d)	3	1	2	4

42. Match the last rulers with their dynasties

List I		List II
A Kaiqubad	1	Slave dynasty
B Nasir-ud-din Khusrau	2	Khalji dynasty
C Mahmud II	3	Tughluq dynasty
D Ala-ud-din Alam Shah	4	Syed dynasty
E Ibrahim	5	Lodhi dynasty
(a) A-2, B-3, C-4, D-5, E-1		
(b) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4, E-5		
(c) A-5, B-4, C-3, D-2, E-1		
(d) A-2, B-4, C-3, D-1, E-5		

43. **List I**
- A Muhammad bin Tughlaq
B Firuz Tughlaq
C Balban
D Alauddin Khilji
- List II**
- 1 Land revenue assessment based on actual
2 Restoration of the prestige of the Crown
3 Creation of the department of agriculture
4 Creation of the Employment Bureau
- (a) A-3, B-4, C-2, D-1
(b) A-4, B-3, C-2, D-1
(c) A-4, B-3, C-1, D-2
(d) A-1, B-4, C-2, D-3

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

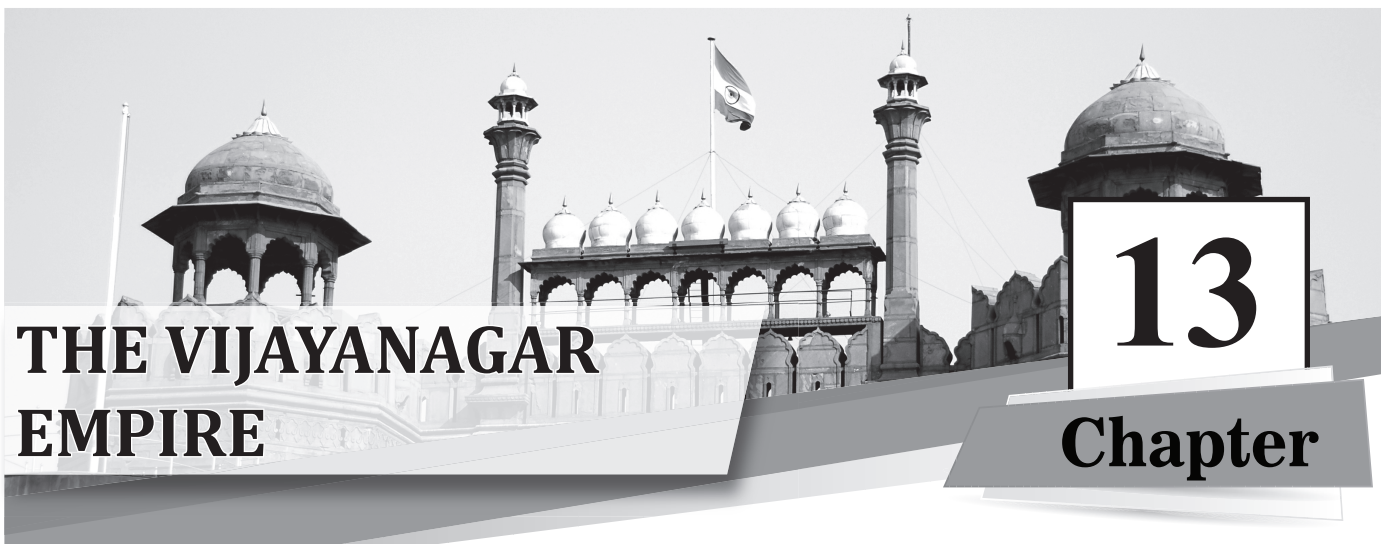
1. (b) 2. (b)
3. (c)
4. (c) Fawazil was balance between the income and expenditure of iqta-holders.
5. (c) Muhammad Bin Tughlaq died in 1351 CE. He was succeeded by his cousin Firoz Tughlaq.
6. (d) Firoz Tughlaq set up a separate department of slaves known as 'Diwan-i-Bandagan'. Mohd Bin Tughlaq was succeeded by his cousin (not uncle) Firoz Tughlaq. Alauddin Khalji introduced the branding system of horses in his military.
7. (c) Bahlol (1451–1489); Sikandar (1489–1517); Ibrahim (1517–1526)
8. (c) Alauddin introduced the market control policy to maintain a long standing army. Firuz Tughlaq was a orthodox ruler.
9. (c)
10. (b) Alauddin taken 50% land tax from farmers. He was the first Sultan who measured land for collecting actual amount of revenue.
11. (a) The sayyid dynasty ruled Delhi Sultanate in India form 1414 to 1451. They succeeded the Tuglaq dynasty and ruled that sultanate until they displaced by the Lodhi dynasty. The dynasty was established by Khizr Khan.
12. (a) 13. (d) 14. (c) 15. (a) 16. (a)
17. (b) 18. (c) 19. (b) 20. (b) 21. (b)
22. (c) 23. (b) 24. (b)
25. (d) Alauddin Khilji abolished Iqta system. He was son-in-law and nephew of Jalaluddin Khilji. He succeeded the throne in 1296 after killing Jalaluddin Khilji.
26. (d)
27. (d) Malik Baqbaq, the governor of Baduan, who had one of his servants beaten to death in druken condition, was publicly flogged.
28. (d) Chajju rebelled at Kara in 1290. He assumed the title Sultan Mughisuddin, issued coins in his name and had the Khutba read in his honour. Jalaluddin led his forces to meet the rebel. Chajju was captured and punished mildly by sending to Multan in honourable confinement.
29. (c) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq came to power in AD 1320 after killing the last Khilji, Khusrau Khan. He made a rule that, in any given year, the land revenue can be increased only nominally viz-1/10th or 1/11th of the fixed revenue.
30. (b) Muhammad Bin Tughlaq was responsible for the murder of his father, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq. To welcome the Sultan, a temporary wooden pavilion had been hastily constructed at Afganpur, a village some distance away from Tughlaqabad. All of a sudden, the pavillion came crashing down and killing the sultan, Ghiyasuddin.
31. (d) 32. (c)
33. (c) During the time of Alauddin's invasion Warangal was ruled by Kakatiya Dynasty. The king was Rudra Deva who surrendered before Kafur offering him a golden image of himself, 2000 horses, 100 elephants and the diamond Kohinoor.
34. (b) 35. (b) 36. (a) 37. (b) 38. (b)
39. (c) According to historian Ziauddin Barani, the ideal Sultan of Delhi was Firoz Shah Tughlaq. The Tarikh-i-Firozshahi (Firoz Shah's History) (1357) was an interpretation of the history of the Delhi Sultanate up to the then-present Firoz Shah Tughlaq.
40. (a) The tomb of Sikandar Lodi is an octagonal tomb. The tombs of Muhammad Shah and Sikandar Lodi are the good examples of octagonal tombs. Shish and Bara Gumbad are square tombs with imposing dome, turrets on corners and facades giving false impression of being double storeyed.
41. (a) Nizamuddin Aulia, Sufi saint of Delhi is associated with the famous saying 'Hanooz Dilli Door Ast'. Sultan Ghiasuddin was annoyed with a Sufi saint, Nizamuddin Auliya. During one of his expeditions he vowed that he would behead the saint in Delhi. The saint responded, "Hunooz Dilli Door Ast", which means 'it's a long way to Delhi'.
42. (d) Alauddin Khilji established Diwan-i-Mustakhraj. To know about the revenue arrears and collect them, he introduced a new department of Diwan-i-Mustakhraj.
43. (a) Agriculture was looked after by the department of Diwan-i-Kohi under Muhammad Tughlaq.
44. (d) Sikandar Lodi was the Sultan of Delhi between 1489 to 1517 AD. He was a labourious, generous and just ruler. Owing to a transient shortage of maize, he abolished the Zakat on grain and it was not renewed by any subsequent Sultan. The prices of all necessary articles remained low during his period.
45. (c) Arghatta was a device to lift water.
46. (d) 47. (d) 48. (d) 49. (b) 50. (a)
51. (b) 52. (c) 53. (b)
54. (b) He was the first ruler of Delhi Sultanate who established permanent Army. He is famous for his market reforms.
55. (b) Alauddin taken 50% land tax from farmers. He was the first Sultan who measured land for collecting actual amount of revenue.

56. (d) The accession of Alauddin Khalji hold on 22nd Oct., 1296 and some time, he declared himself as Sikandar-i-Sani, the second Alexander.
57. (c) The author of 'Tarikh-i-Alai' was Amir Khusrau. He adopted Indian themes and also the first muslim writer who used Hindi words.
58. (c) The large influx of gold from his plundering of south Indian campaign led him to increase coinage weights. He enlarged the gold dinar from 172 grains to 202 grains. He introduced a silver coin, the adlis, which was discontinued after seven years due to lack of popularity and acceptance among his subjects.
59. (d)
60. (b) Muhammad Tughlaq is credited with the appointment of 'Amir - Sadah' in the provinces.
10. (c) The correct chronological order of Mohammad Bin Tughlaq's programme is; increase of taxation in Doab, promulgation of token currency, transfer of capital, Khurasan expedition. During his reign, Tughluq imposed heavy tax in the land between the Ganga and the Yamuna rivers. Muhammad took a very modern step in introducing bronze coins as the token currency. Nevertheless, the absence of a central mint created a huge problem as the Government was not able to prevent forgery of coins. He transferred his capital in 1327 to Deogir (now Daulatabad). The Sultan had a vision of universal conquest. He decided to conquest Khurasan and Iraq and mobilized a huge army for the purpose. But his expedition proved a failure.
11. (c) 12. (a) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (c)
16. (b) 17. (b) 18. (d) 19. (d) 20. (b)
21. (a) 22. (b) 23. (c)
24. (a) Alberuni wrote the Tarikh-i-Hind. Hasan Nizami wrote the Taj-ul-Masir. Minhaj-us-Siraj had written the Tabqat-i-Nasiri. Amir Khusro wrote the Tughlaq Nama. Khwaja Hasan Nizami (1879-1955), a learned Sufi and a prolific writer, Nizami hailed from a family of hereditary custodians of the shine of the renowned and widely-venerated Chishti mystic, Khwaja Nizamuddin Auliya in Delhi. "Tabaqat-i-Nasiri" of Minhaj Uddin us Siraj is of immense importance to know about the history of this region. A Sufi mystic and a spiritual disciple of Nizamuddin Auliya of Delhi, Amir Khusro was not only a notable poet but also a prolific and seminal musician. He wrote poetry primarily in Persian, but also in Hindavi.
25. (b) Amir Khusro had composed the Ashika. Ziauddin Baruani composed the Tarikh-i-Firoz-shahi. Ibnbatuta composed the Rehla. Islami composed the Futuh-us-salatin. Amir Khusro also compiled the Khazainul Futuh, devoted to the achievements of Alauddin Khalji. Khusro also composed five historical masnavis (poems) in each of which historical events are described. Ibn Battuta was born into a family of Islamic legal scholars in Tangier, Morocco, on February 25, 1304, during the reign of the Marinid dynasty. Sultan Firoz Shah Tughluq was the Sultan of Delhi from 1351 to 1388. At his succession after the death of Muhammad Tughlaq, he faced many rebellions, including Bengal, Gujarat and Warangal.
26. (a) Diwan-i-Mushtakraj was established by Alauddin Khilji. Diwan-i-Amirkohi was established by Muhaammad Tughlaq. Diwan-i-Khairat was established by Feroz Shah Tughlaq.
27. (b) Tarikh-i-Hind was written by Alberuni Insha-i-Mahru was written by Ainul Mulk Multani. Khazinat-ul-Futuh was written by Amir Khusrav. Tarikh-i-Fakhriddin Mubarakshahi was written by Fakhre Mudabbir. Al-Biruni wrote an encyclopedic

EXERCISE-2

1. (c) The Rajputs were fighting continuously with each other. So they were violent in nature.
2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (b)
7. (a) Marco Polo and Athanasius visited India during sultanate period.
8. (c) The sultans who measured the land for fixing land revenue were Alauddin Khalji, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq and Muhammad bin Tughlaq. There were four categories of land. The first was the iqta. For the purpose of administration and revenue collection, the state was parceled out into tracts called iqtas under iqtadars on muqtis. Three types of land revenues were levied from the farmers. Kharaj-e-Jiziya, Charai and Ghari. He got the whole land measured and then fixed the share of the state on the basis of a pattern called Vishva. According to Barni, Charai was levied from cows and other milchy animals. Farishta states that a pair of oxen, a pair of buffaloes, two cows and ten goats were free from the tax-net. In addition, Ghari was a less important tax which was levied from time to time on some special occasions.
9. (b) The correct chronological order is Qutub Minar, Tughlaqabad Fort, Lodhi Garden, Fatehpur Sikri. Qutub Minar in red and buff standstone is the highest tower in India. It has a diameter of 14.32 m at the base and about 2.75 m on the top with a height of 72.5 m. Qutbu'd-Din Aibak laid the foundation of Minar in AD 1199. Tughlaqabad Fort is a ruined fort in Delhi, stretching across 6.5 km, built by Ghiyasud-din Tughlaq, the founder of Tughlaq dynasty, of the Delhi Sultanate in 1321. Lodhi Garden was set up in between the 15th and 16th centuries by the Sayyid and Lodhi rulers. The city was founded in 1569 by the Mughal Emperor Akbar, and served as the capital of the Mughal Empire from 1571 to 1585.

- work on India called “Tarikh Al-Hind” (History of India) in which he explored nearly every aspect of Indian life, including religion, history, geography, geology, science, and mathematics. Amir Khusro wrote a short auto-biographical Masnavi called “Shah Name mun” of Alauddin’s life. Khusro in his book “Khazinat-ul-Futuh” (the treasures of victory) recorded Alauddin’s construction works, wars, peace and security, administrative services.
28. (c) Khan Bahadur Salamatullah Khan was preceded by his father Maulvi Qazi Sana’atullah, who was the son of Qazi Amanatullah. The latter’s father was Qazi-ul-Quzat (Chief Justice) Baqaullah Khan (late 18th century AD). A mutasib was a supervisor of bazaars and trade in the medieval Islamic countries. His duty was to ensure that public business was conducted in accordance with the law of sharia. The Mir Bakshi was in charge of intelligence gathering, and also made recommendations to the emperor for military appointments and promotions.
29. (c) Alauddin Khilji built the Siri Fort. Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq established Tughlaqa-bad. Feroz Shah Tughlaq established Hiaar. Sikander Lodi established the Agra city. Siri Fort, in the city of New Delhi, was built during the rule of Ala-ud-Din Khalji of the Delhi Sultanate to defend the city from the onslaught of the Mongols. Tughlaqabad Fort is a ruined fort in Delhi, stretching across 6.5 km, built by Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq, the founder of Tughlaq dynasty, of the Delhi Sultanate of India in 1321, as he established the fifth historic city of Delhi, which was later abandoned in 1327.
30. (b) Baba Farid founded chishtiya order. Shaikh Hamiduddin Nagauri founded Suhrawardiya order. Miyan Mir founded Qadiriya order. Shah Waliullah founded Naqsh bandiya order. Baba Farid (1173–1266) was a Punjabi poet and saint of the Chishti order of Sufism. He is among the first known Punjabi poets. He is also one of the fifteen Sikh Bhagats within Sikhism and his selected works are included in the Guru Granth Sahib. Mian Mir, was a famous Sufi saint who resided in Lahore, specifically in the town of Dharampura (in present-day Pakistan). He was a direct descendant of Caliph Umar ibn al-Khattab. He belonged to the Qadiri order of Sufism. Abu’l-Fazl, Abu’l Fadl and Abu’l-Fadl ‘Allami (January 14, 1551 – August 12, 1602) was the vizier of the great Mughal emperor Akbar, and author of the Akbarnama, the official history of Akbar’s reign in three volumes.
31. (d) Adil Shahi belongs to Bijapur. Nizamshahi belongs to Ahmednagar. Immad shahi belongs to Berar region. Qutub Shahi belongs to Golkunda. The Adil Shahi or Adilshahi, was a Shia Muslim dynasty that ruled the Sultanate of Bijapur in the Western area of the Deccan region of Southern India from 1490 to 1686. Bijapur had been a province of the Bahmani Sultanate (1347–1518). The territory of the sultanate of Ahmednagar was located in the northwestern Deccan, between the sultanates of Gujarat and Bijapur. Initially his capital was in Junnar. The Qutub Shahi rulers were great builders, which included the Char Minar, as well as patrons of learning. Quli Qutb Mulk’s court became a haven for Persian culture and literature.
32. (c) Duarte Barbosa (C. 1480, Lisbon, Portugal – 1 May 1521, Philippines) was a Portuguese writer and Portuguese India officer between 1500 and 1516–1517, with the post of scrivener in Cannanore factory and sometimes interpreter of the local language (malayalam). Niccolò de’ Conti (1395–1469) was a Venetian merchant and explorer, born in Chioggia, who travelled to India and Southeast Asia, and possibly to Southern China, during the early 15th century. Kamal-ud-Din Abdur-Razzaq ibn Ishaq Samarqandi, (1413–1482), was a Uzbek chronicler and Islamic scholar. He was the ambassador of Shah Rukh, the Timurid dynasty ruler of Persia to Calicut, India, from January 1442 to January 1445. Afanasy Nikitin (died 1472) was a Russian merchant and one of the first Europeans to travel to and document his visit to India.
33. (b) Abdur Razzak came during the reign of Devaraya II. Nuniz came during the period of Achyutadeva Raya. Abdur Razzaq who was an ambassador at the court of Deva Raya II says:” This prince has in his dominions three hundred ports, each of which is equal to Calicut and his territories compromise a space of three months journey. All travellers agree that the country was thickly populated with numerous towns and villages. Abdur Razzaq also says:” The country is for the most part well cultivated and very fertile. The troops were in number to eleven lakhs.” Abdur Razzaq considered Vijayanagar to be one of the most splendid cities anywhere in the world which he had seen.
34. (b) 35. (c) 36. (d) 37. (c) 38. (d)
 39. (c) 40. (b) 41. (a) 42. (b)
 43. (a)



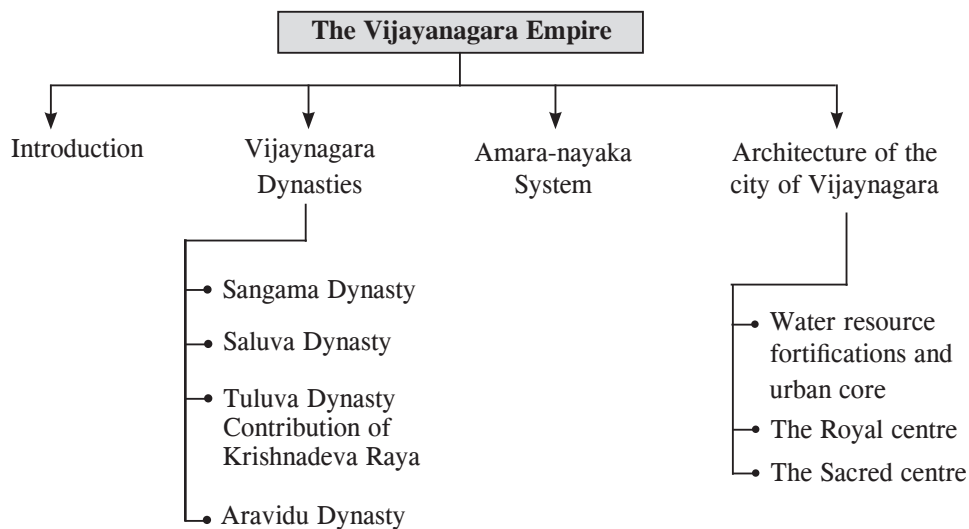
THE VIJAYANAGAR EMPIRE

13

Chapter

Introduction

One of the important kingdoms in the medieval Indian history, **Vijayanagara** is in today's **Bellary** District of northern Karnataka. The historic kingdom was extended over South India and included the territories of *Mysore, Trichinopally, Kanara, Pondicherry, Chingalpet and Kanchivaram*. Two brothers (also known as **Sangama** brothers) **Harihara (Hakka) I** and **Bukka Raya**, in A.D. 1336, laid the foundation of the Vijayanagar city, which was on the South bank of *Tungabhadra* River near *Anegudi Fortress*. This empire consolidated under **Harihara I** and began to expand under **Bukka Raya**. It is said that a sage *Madhav Vidyaranya* and his brother *Sayana* were the inspirational source for this empire. The rulers were strict worshipers of the Hindu Gods and Goddess, but also tolerant towards the other religions. The emperors were great patrons of art and culture. The region influenced development in the streams of music, literature and architecture. Many temples built in the south represent the Vijayanagar architecture. The economy of the region flourished and several coins were introduced during the reign of the rulers of the Vijayanagar Empire.



VIJAYANAGARA DYNASTIES

Dynasties that ruled over Vijaynagar include **Sangama, Saluva, Tuluva** and **Aravidu** Dynasty.

Sangama Kings

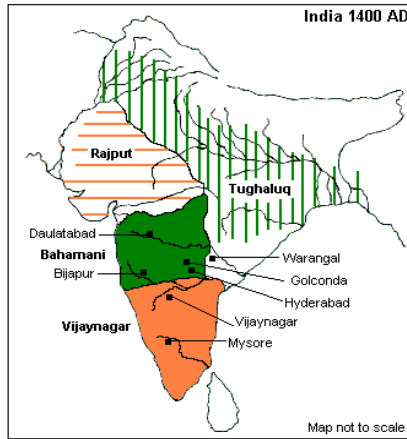
Harihara I (1336 - 1356)

He is known as *Hakka* and *Vira Harihara I*. He was the founder of Vijayanagar Empire. He was Bhavana Sangama's eldest son,

belonged to the Kuruba and was the founder of the Sangama dynasty. He built a fort at **Barkuru** which is at the west coast of present day of Karnataka. It is concluded from the inscriptions that he was administering the northern parts of Karnataka at *Gutti, Ananthpur* district from his seat.

Bukka Raya (1356-1377)

The kingdom prospered and continued to expand as Bukka Raya conquered most of the kingdoms of southern India, continually expanding the territory of the empire. He defeated



the *Shambuvaraya* Kingdom of Arcot and the *Reddis* of **Kondavidu** by 1360. He defeated the Sultanate of Madurai in 1371 and extended his territory into the south all the way to Rameswaram. His son, **Kumara Kamapna** campaigned with him and their efforts were recorded in the Sanskrit work **Madhuravijayam** written by his wife *Gangambika*. During his reign Bukka had clashes with the *Bahmani* Sultans. The first was during the time of *Mohammed Shah I* and the other during the time of *Mujahid*. It is said that Bukka also sent a mission to China during his reign. Under Bukka Raya's reign the capital of the empire was established at Vijayanagara which was more secure and defensive than their previous capital at *Anegondi*.

Harihara Raya II (1377-1404)

Harihara II continued to extend the kingdom's territory through fighting against the *Reddis* of Kondavidu for control of the coastal Andhra between *Nellore* and *Kalinga*. Harihara II took advantage of the death of *Mujahid Bahmani* in 1378 and extended his control into the northwest, controlling such ports as *Goa*, *Chaul*, and *Dabhol*. Harihara ruled from the capital *Vijayanagara* now more popularly known as **Hampi**. He patronised Kannada poet **Madhura**, a Jaina. He earned the titles *Vaidikamarga Sthapanacharya* and *Vedamarga Pravartaka*.

Bukka Raya II (1405-1406)

After the death of Harihara II the succession of the throne was disputed among Harihara II's sons. Virupaksha Raya managed to rule for a few months before he was murdered by his own sons. After Virupaksha's death, **Bukka Raya II** succeeded him as emperor of the Vijayanagara Empire. However, similar to his brother before him, Bukka Raya II only reigned for a short time period before he too would be overthrown by his brother, Deva Raya I.

Deva Raya I (1406-1422)

Deva Raya was continually fought against the *Velamas* of *Telangana*, the *Bahmani Sultan* of *Gulbarga*, and the *Reddis* of *Kondavidu* and the *Gajaptis* of *Kalinga*. Even so, Deva Raya was capable of managing the vast territory that he controlled.

After his death, he was succeeded by his sons Ramachandra Raya and Vijaya Raya.

Mallikarjuna Raya (1446-1465)

Mallikarjuna Raya brought prosperity throughout the Vijayanagara Empire as well as a *golden age for the Sangama Dynasty*. At the beginning of his reign he defended the kingdom from the attacks of the *Bahmani Sultan* and the Raja of the Hindu kingdom of Orissa, but thereafter it was marked by a string of defeats while at the same time the Portuguese arrived in southern India, seizing many of the ports on the western coast that the Vijayanagara Empire had once controlled. These events eventually led to the decline of the Sangama Dynasty.

Praudha Raya (1485)

He was an unpopular king of Vijayanagara Empire who ruled for a very short period of time being driven out of the capital by his able commander Saluva Narasimha Deva Raya in 1485.

Saluva Dynasty (1485- 1505)

The *Saluva Dynasty* was created by the **Saluvas**. The **Gorantla inscription** traces their origins to Karnataka region from the time of the *Western Chalukyas* and *Kalachuris* of Karnataka. The earliest known Saluva was **Mangaldeva**, the great grandfather of Saluva *Narasimha Deva Raya*. His descendants founded the Saluva Dynasty and were one of the ruling lines of the Vijayanagara Empire of Southern India.

AMARA-NAYAKA SYSTEM

- The *amara-nayaka* system was a major political innovation. Many features of this system were derived from the *iqta system* of the Delhi Sultanate.
- The *amara-nayakas* were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the **Rayas**.
- They collected taxes and other dues from peasants, crafts persons and traders in the area.
- They retained part of the revenue for personal use and for maintaining a *stipulated contingent of horses and elephants*.
- Some revenue was also used for the *maintenance of temples and irrigation works*.
- The *amara-nayakas* sent tribute to the king annually and personally appeared in the royal court with gifts to express their loyalty.
- Kings occasionally asserted their control over them by transferring them from one place to another.

Saluva Kings

Saluva Narasimha Deva Raya (1485-1491)

After the death of Virupaksha Raya II and arrival of Praudha Deva Raya as the new monarch of Vijayanagar, the empire plunged into negligency and anarchy. Seeing that a military

coup was the only hope to save the kingdom, he despatched the son of Tuluva Isvara, Tuluva Narasa Nayaka to the imperial capital of Vijayanagara. The incumbent king Prauda Raya fled thus starting the rule of Saluva Narasimha. He was successful at conquering the western ports of Kannada country of *Mangalore, Bhatkal, Honnavar and Bakanur*. This success enabled him to trade for swift horses with the Arabs. Saluva Narasimha eventually died in 1491.

Thimma Bhupala (1491)

He was the elder son of Saluva Narasimha Deva Raya. During the reign of his father, he was holding the office of Yuvaraja. Prince Thimma succeeded his father in 1491 but was soon murdered by an army commander during a period of political unrest in Vijayanagara. He was succeeded by his younger brother *Narasimha Raya II*.

Narasimha Raya II (1491-1505)

Narasimha Raya II succeeded by his elder brother Thimma Bhupala. Though he was a crowned king of Vijayanagara Empire, the real power lay in the hands of the empire's able commander *Tuluva Narasa Nayaka* till his death in 1503. In 1505, Narasimha Raya II was murdered in Penukonda and Viranarasimha Raya proclaimed himself king.

Tuluva Dynasty (1491 – 1570)

The dynasty was named “*Tuluva*” because they belonged to the Tulu speaking region called “*Tulunad*” and their mother tongue was “*Tulu*” language. They were originally from Karnataka. Krishna Deva Raya was the most famous ruler of their period. The empire attained its greatest glory of time.

Tuluva kings

Tuluva Narasa Nayaka (1491-1503)

He was commander of the Vijayanagar army under the rule of *Saluva Narasimha Deva Raya*. After the death of King Saluva Narasimha, crown prince Thimma Bhupala was murdered by an army commander. The faithful *Narasa Nayaka* then crowned the other prince, Narasimha Raya II but retained all administrative powers in order to bring stability to the kingdom.

Viranarasimha Raya (1503-1509)

Viranarasimha Raya was crowned in 1505 and spent all his years fighting rebel warlords. When on his death bed, legend has it that Viranarasimha Raya requested his minister Saluva Thimma (Thimmarasa) to blind Krishnadevaraya so that his

own eight year old son could become king of Vijayanagar. However there is no record to prove anything.

Krishna Deva Raya (1509-1529)

Sri Krishna Deva Raya was the most famous king of Vijayanagara Empire. Emperor Krishna Deva Raya also earned the titles *Kannada Rajya Rama Ramana, Mooru Rayara Ganda* (meaning King of three kings) and *Andhra Bhoja*. Krishna Deva Raya was assisted in administration by the very able Prime Minister **Timmarusu**, who was revered by the king as a father figure and was responsible for his coronation. The king's coronation took place on the birthday of Lord Krishna and his earliest inscription is from July 26, 1509.

Contributions of Krishnadeva Raya:

- His rule was characterised by expansion and consolidation.
- In his time, the land between the Tungabhadra and Krishna rivers was acquired.
- He subdued the rulers of Orissa and severe defeats were inflicted on the Sultan of Bijapur.
- He is credited with building fine temples and adding impressive Gopurams to many important south Indian temples.
- He founded a township near Vijayanagara, named Nagalapuram after his mother.

Achyuta Raya (1529-1542)

He was the younger brother of Krishna Deva Raya, whom he succeeded in 1529. Upon his death, the succession was disputed. His nephew, Sadashiva, finally became king while yet a child, under the regency of Aliya Rama Raya, a son-in-law of Krishnadevaraya. *The Tiruvengalanatha Temple* was built at Vijayanagara during his reign. It has become popularly known by his name as *Achyutaraya Temple*, rather than by the name of the deity Lord Venkateshwara to whom the temple was dedicated.

Sadashiva Raya (1542-1570)

Sadasiva Raya was controlled by his minister **Rama Raya**, the de facto king, who restored the Vijayanagara empire's power. Rama Raya's strategy was to play the Deccan Sultanates against each other by first allying with one and then another. **Aravidu Dynasty (1542 – 1586)**: This was the fourth and last Hindu dynasty which ruled Vijayanagar Kingdom in South India. *Rama Raya* was the regent of Tuluva kingdom's last king. **Tirumala** was the founder of Aravidu kingdom.

Aravidu Kings

Aliya Rama Raya or Rama Raya, (1542-1565)

Popularly known as “*Aliya*” Rama Raya, was the progenitor

of the “Aravidu” dynasty. This dynasty, the fourth and last to hold, is often not counted as a ruling dynasty of that empire. Rama Raya patronised the Sanskrit scholar **Rama Amatya**.

Tirumala Deva Raya (1565-1572)

He was the first Crowned King of the Vijayanagara Empire from the Aravidu Dynasty. He was the brother of the Aliya Rama Raya and son-in-law of Krishna Deva Raya.

Sriranga I/Sriranga Deva Raya (1572-1586)

He carried the restoration of the Vijayanagara Empire, but his reign was marred with repeated attacks and loss of territories from his Muslim neighbours. In 1576, **Ali Adil Shah** laid siege to his fort in *Penukonda* for three months, but he was defeated.

Venkata II/Venkatapati Deva Raya (1586-1614)

His reign of three decades saw a revival of strength and prosperity of the empire. He brought rebelling *Nayaks* of Tamil Nadu and parts of present day Andhra Pradesh under control.

Sriranga III (1642-1646)

He was the last ruler of the Vijayanagara Empire, who came to power in 1642 following the death of his uncle Venkata III. He was also a great grandson of *Aliya Rama Raya*.

ARCHITECTURE OF THE CITY OF

VIJAYANAGARA

1. Management of water resources

Since the city was located near the natural basin formed by the river *Tungabhadra*, embankments were built along river streams to create reservoirs. Also, arrangements were made to store rainwater, one such tank was **Kamalapuram** tank. Water was also conducted through a channel to the “royal centre”. One of the most prominent waterworks was the **Hiriya** canal.

2. Fortifications

Fortifications encircled the city as well as its agricultural hinterland and forests. No mortar or cementing agent was employed in the construction. The stone blocks were wedge shaped which held them in place, and the inner portion of the walls was of earth packed with rubble.

The most significant feature of this fortification is that it enclosed agricultural tracts.

Abdur Razzaq an ambassador of king of *Persia* noted

that between the first, second and the third walls there were cultivated fields, gardens and houses.

3. The urban core

Archaeologists have found fine Chinese porcelain in some areas, which suggest that these areas may have been occupied by rich traders. Architecture of tombs and mosques located here resembles that of the *mandapas* found in the temples of **Hampi**. The entire area was dotted with numerous shrines and small temples, pointing to the prevalence of a variety of cults, perhaps supported by different communities. Surveys also indicate that wells, rainwater tanks as well as temple tanks may have served as sources of water to the ordinary town dwellers.

The Royal Centre in the Vijayanagara

The king’s palace has two most impressive platforms – the “*audience hall*” and the “*mahanavamidibba*”.

Mahanavamidibba was a massive platform rising from a base of about 11,000 sq. ft to a height of 40 ft. There is evidence that it supported a wooden structure.

A beautiful building in the royal centre is the **Lotus Mahal**. According to **Mackenzie** this may have been a *council chamber*, a place where the king met his advisors.

Also, there is a beautiful temple in the royal centre known as the **Hazara Rama temple**.

The Sacred Centre in the Vijayanagara

- Temples functioned as centres of learning. Rulers granted land and other resources for the maintenance of temples.
- The Vijayanagara kings claimed to rule on behalf of the god **Virupaksha**. All royal orders were signed “*Shri Virupaksha*”, usually in the Kannada script. Rulers also used the title “*Hindu Suratrana*” which meant Hindu Sultan.
- The *rayagopurams* or royal gateways which signalled the presence of the temple from a great distance.
- The **Virupaksha temple** was built in the ninth-tenth centuries by **Krishnadeva Raya** to mark his accession. He is also credited with the construction of the eastern gopuram.
- In the famous **Viethala temple**, principal deity was **Viethala**, a form of **Vishnu** generally worshipped in Maharashtra. The introduction of the worship of the deity in Karnataka is indication of the ways in which the rulers of Vijayanagara accepted different traditions.

Exercise -1

- Which one of the following travellers is not associated with the description of the glories of Vijayanagar kingdom?
 - Abdur Razzaq
 - Paes
 - Ibn Batuta
 - Nuniz
- The feature of Dravidian architecture added in the Vijayanagar period was,
 - Ammana Shrine
 - Kalyana mandapa
 - Extensive decoration of gopurams
 - Paintings on the walls of temples
- 'A Forgotten Empire', written by the renowned historian Robert Sewell is about which one of the following empires?
 - Kushan empire
 - Mauryan empire
 - Vijayanagar empire
 - Mughal empire
- The ruins of the Vijayanagara at Hampi were brought to light in 1800 by
 - Colonel Colin Mackenzie
 - Sir John Shore
 - Andrew Fraser
 - John Marshall
- Who of the following founded a new city on the south bank of a tributary to river Krishna and undertook to rule his new kingdom as the agent of a deity to whom all the land south of the river Krishna was supposed to belong? [CSAT 2015-I]
 - Amoghavarsha I
 - Ballala II
 - Harihara I
 - Prataparudra II

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- With reference to the Vijaynagar administration, consider the following statement :
 - The tradition of village self government was discarded.
 - The kingdom was divided into rajyas or mandalams below which nadu, sthala and grama.
 Which of the above is/are correct?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Which two of the following foreign travellers came during the reign of Krishna Deva Raya and were portugueses?
 - Nicolo Conti
 - Abdur Razzaq
 - Domingo Paes
 - Fernao Nuniz
 Find the correct answer from the codes given below:
 - 1 and 3
 - 2 and 3
 - 1 and 4
 - 3 and 4
- Consider the following statements about Vijayanagara empire
 - Vijayanagara was noted for its markets dealing in spices, textiles and precious stones.
 - Krishnadeva Raya's rule was characterised by the strain within the imperial structure,
 - The Amara-Nayakas were military commanders who were given territories to govern by the Royas.
 Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
 - Only 3
 - 1 and 2
 - 1 and 3
 - All of these
- Which of the following was/were reason/reasons for the success of European trading companies in South India, during the 17th century?
 - The presence of the Mughals in the South was not as much as in the North.
 - The Vijayanagara kingdom had been overthrown in the late 16th century.
 - The South had many small and weak states. Select the correct answer using the codes given below
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 1 and 2
 - 2 and 3
 - Only 1

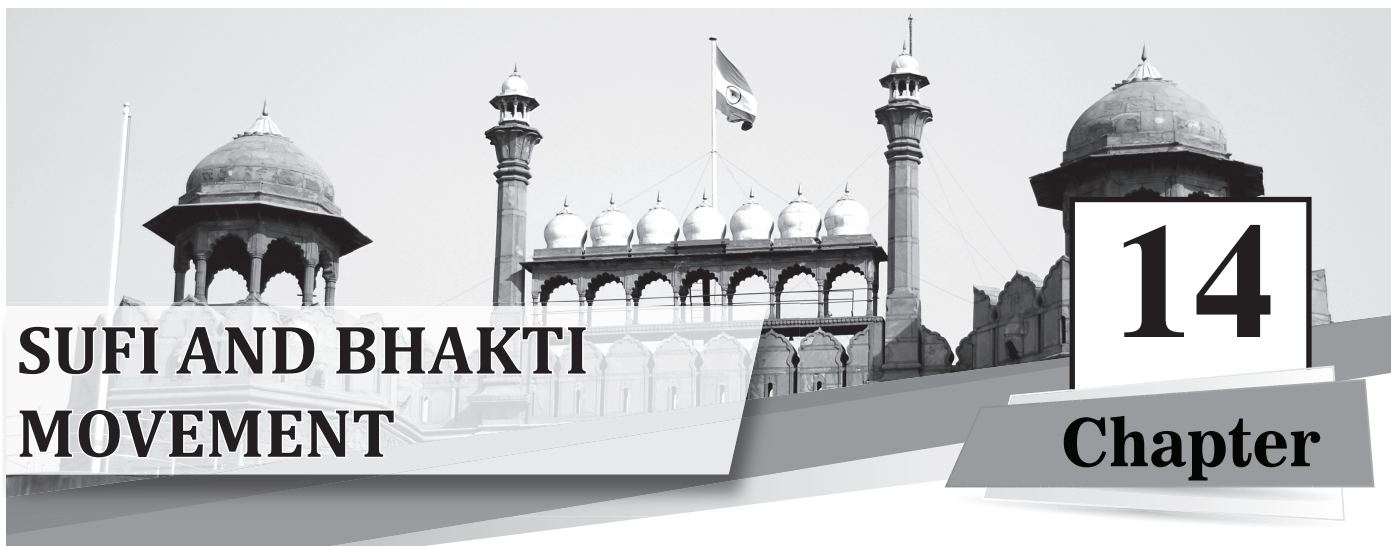
Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

- (c) Ibn Batuta was not associated with Vijayanagar Kingdom.
- (b)
- (c) Robert Sewell was a civil servant of Madras presidency. He was Keeper of the Record Office of Madras. He authored 'A Forgotten Empire-Vijayanagar', a contribution to the History of India.
- (a) The ruins were brought to light by an engineer and antiquarian named Colonel Colin Mackenzie (Surveyor General of India) in 1800 AD.
- (c) Vijayanagara or "city of victory" was the name of both a city and an empire. The empire was founded in the fourteenth century. In its heyday it stretched from the river Krishna in the north to the extreme south of the peninsula, (Krishna-Tungabhadra doab). It was founded by Harihara 1 and Bukka, in 1336.

EXERCISE-2

- (b)
- (d) Domingos Paes (16th century) was a Portuguese traveller who visited the Vijayanagara Empire around the year 1520. His account of Hampi, the capital of the Vijayanagara Empire is of the most detailed of all historic narrations on this ancient city. He visited the city during the rule of King Krishna Deva Raya. Fernao Nuniz, was a Portuguese traveller, chronicler and horse trader who spent three years in Vijayanagara, capital of the Vijayanagara Empire in the time period 1535-1537 CE. His writings have brought to light many interesting details about Vijayanagara at that time.
- (b) For effective administration the vast territory of the Rajya was divided as vassal states and provinces ruled directly by the king's direct representatives. While the vassal states were administered by the Nayakas or Samantas, the territories directly under the king were called Rajyas, Mandalas and sometimes Chavadis.
- (a) All statements are true.



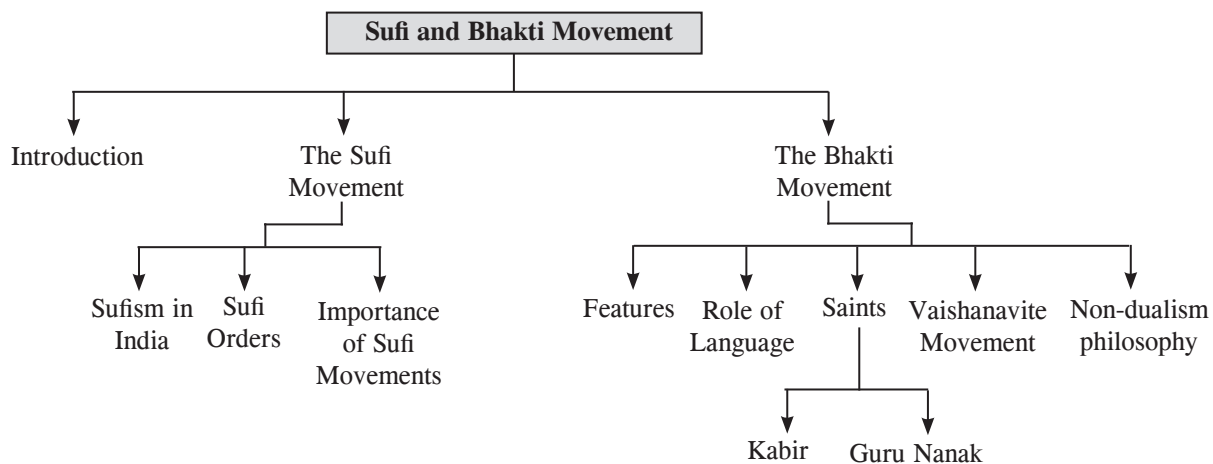
SUFI AND BHAKTI MOVEMENT

14

Chapter

Introduction

The medieval period saw the rise and growth of the *Sufi and Bhakti movement* in India. These movements brought a new form of religious expression amongst people. The *Sufis* were mystics who emphasised on an egalitarian society based on *universal love*. The *Bhakti saints* transformed Hinduism by introducing *bhakti* as the means to attain God. They considered *all human beings as equal* irrespective of caste, creed or religion.



THE SUFI MOVEMENT

Sufism was a religious movement which arose from Islam in the 8th-9th centuries AD. Its followers seek to find truth and love through direct encounters with God. The name '*Sufism*' is associated with the *coarse wool garments* that sufi saints wore as a mark of their rejection of worldly things. The method of their realizing God was the *renunciation of the World* and Worldly pleasures.

The Sufi movement consists of fraternal orders in which mentors train disciples in the Sufism's philosophical principles and practices. Such practices include writing and reciting poetry and hymns; some of the most famous

literature of the Islamic world has been written by Sufis. Sufis engage in distinct forms of ritual prayer '*dhikr*', i.e. *Zikr* 'meaning '*remembrance*', as well as bodily rituals such as those practices by '*Whirling Dervishes*', a Turkish Sufi order that practices meditation and contemplation of God through spinning.

Sufism in India

Islam came in the early medieval period which in spite of principle of universal brotherhood could not associate itself with Hinduism. Antagonism between the two different sects of people continued to grow day by day. At this time of mutual hatred and hostility, there appeared a group of religious thinkers who awakened the people about God and religion.

They did everything to establish brotherhood between the Hindus and Muslims. They were called 'Sufi' saints.

The Sufi movement was a socio-religious movement that was a solution to the problems mentioned above. The exponents of this movement were Muslim saints who had a deep knowledge of Vedantic and Buddhist philosophy. They had come in contact with sages and seers of India and could see the Indian religion closely. The Sufi movement in India, therefore, was the result of the Hindu influence on Islam. This movement influenced both the Muslims and Hindus and thus, provided a common platform for the two.

- Sufism emerged in India in the eleventh and twelfth centuries.
- One of the early Sufis of eminence was **Al-Hujwari**, popularly known as **Data Ganj Baksh** (Distributor of Unlimited Treasure). By the fourteenth centuries, the Sufism had spread to Kashmir, Bihar, Bengal and the Deccan.
- The Sufis came to India via Afghanistan on their own free will. Their emphasis upon a pure life, devotional love and service to humanity made them popular and earned them a place of honour in Indian society.
- Abul Fazl while writing in the *Ain-i-Akbari* speaks of fourteen *silsilahs* of the Sufis.
- These *silsilahs* were divided into two types: *Ba-shara* and *Be-shara*. *Ba-shara* were those orders that followed the Islamic Law (Sharia) and its directives such as *namaz* and *roza*.
- Chief amongst these were the *Chishti*, *Suhrawardi*, *Firdawsi*, *Qadiri* and *Naqshbandi silsilahs*.
- The *be-shara silsilahs* were not bound by the *Sharia*. The *Qalandars* belonged to this group.

Sufi Orders

An order is also called a *tariqah* (pl. *uruq*), which is the Arabic word for 'path' or 'way'. Sufi orders include a broad spectrum of activities. Sufis gradually became important part of the religious life of the general population and began to gather around themselves groups of followers who were identified and bound together by the special mystic path of the teacher. By the twelfth century A.D. (the fifth century in the Islamic era), these paths began to provide the basis for more permanent fellowships, and Sufi orders emerged as major social organizations in the Islamic community.

Sufi orders were characterized by central prescribed rituals, which involved regular meetings for recitations of prayers, poems, and selections from the Quran. These meetings were usually described as acts of "remembering God" or *dhikr* (*Zikr*). In addition, daily devotional exercises for the followers were also set, as were other activities of special meditation, asceticism, and devotion. The founder was the spiritual guide for all followers in the order, who would swear a special oath of obedience to him as their *shaykh* or *teacher*. As orders continued, the record of the transmission of the ritual would be preserved in a formal chain of spiritual descent, called a *silsilah*. As orders became firmly established, leadership

would pass from one shaykh to the next, sometimes within a family line and sometimes on the basis of spiritual seniority/mastery within the *tariqah*.

The Chishti Order

The Chishti order was founded in village *Khwaja Chishti* (near *Herat*). In India, the Chishti *silsilah* was founded by **Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti** (born A.D. 1142) who came to India around A.D. 1192. He made *Ajmer* the main centre for his teaching. He believed that serving mankind was the best form of devotion. He died in Ajmer in 1236. Ajmer became a leading pilgrim centre during Mughal period because the emperors regularly visited the Sheikh's tomb. Even today, millions of devotees visit his *dargah*. Among his disciples were *Sheikh Hamiduddin* of Nagaur and *Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki*. The former lived the life of a poor peasant, cultivated land and refused *Ilutmish's* offer of a grant of villages. *Sultan Ilutmish* dedicated the Qutub Minar to saint Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki.

Another saint – *Sheikh Fariduddin* of *Ajodhan* (Pattan in Pakistan) – popularised the Chishti *silsilah* in modern Haryana and Punjab. Popular as **Baba Farid**, he was respected by both Hindus and Muslims. His verses, written in Punjabi, are quoted in the *Adi Granth*. *Baba Farid's* disciple *Sheikh Nizamuddin Auliya* (1238-1325) was responsible for making Delhi an important centre of the Chishti *silsilah*. He came to Delhi in 1259 and saw the reign of seven sultans. Amongst his followers was the noted writer **Amir Khusrau**.

Another famous Chishti saint was **Sheikh Nasiruddin Mahmud**, popularly known as **Nasiruddin Chirag-i-Dilli** (*The Lamp of Delhi*). Following his death in 1356 and the lack of a spiritual successor, the disciples of the Chishti *silsilah* moved out towards eastern and southern India.

The Suhrawardi Order

This *silsilah* was founded by **Sheikh Shihabuddin Suhrawardi**. It was established in India by **Sheikh Bahauddin Zakariya** (1182-1262). He set up a leading *khanqah* in Multan, which was visited by rulers, high government officials and rich merchants. *Sheikh Bahauddin Zakariya* openly took *Ilutmish's* side in his struggle against *Qabacha* and received from him the title *Shaikhul Islam* (Leader of Islam). It must be noted that unlike the Chishti saints, the Suhrawardis maintained close contacts with the state. They accepted gifts, jagirs and even government posts in the ecclesiastical department.

The Suhrawardi *silsilah* was firmly established in Punjab and Sind. Besides these two *silsilahs* there were others such as the *Firdawsi Silsilah*, *Shattari Silsilah*, *Qadiri Silsilah*, *Naqshbandi Silsilah*.

Importance of Sufi Movement

1. Spread of Islam

Sufi orders had been vehicles in the missionary expansion of Islam. The approach of Sufis often involved an adaptation to specific local customs and practices. This helped Islam to

become a part of popular religious activity with a minimum of conflict. At the same time, the traditions of the Sufi devotions represented ties to the broad Islamic world that could integrate the newer believers into the identity of the Islamic community as a whole. In this way, orders like the **Qadiriya** played a significant role in the expansion of Islam.

2. A reformist movement

The liberal ideas and unorthodox principles of Sufism had a profound influence on Indian society. The liberal principles of Sufi sects encouraged many Muslim rulers to pursue tolerant attitude to their non-Muslim subjects. Most Sufi saints preached their teachings in the language of common man that contributed greatly to the evolution of various Indian languages like Urdu, Punjabi, Sindhi, Kashmiri and Hindi. The impact of Sufi Movement was deeply felt on some renowned poets of the period, like **Amir Khusrau** and **Malik Muhammad Jayasi** who composed poems in Persian and Hindi in praise of Sufi principles.

3. Spiritual progress of followers

Different Sufi traditions were involved in many different ways in helping to shape Muslim responses and also in defining Islamic forms of modernity. Sufi orders continued to serve as an important basis for popular devotional life; they were important forces in responding to imperial rule; they helped to provide organizational and intellectual inspiration for Muslim responses to modern challenges to the faith; and they continued to be an important force in the mission of Muslims to non-Muslims.

4. Enrichment of Culture

Sufi saints contributed greatly to the growth of a rich regional literature. Most of the Sufi saints were poets who chose to write in local languages. **Baba Farid** recommended the use of Punjabi for religious writings. **Shaikh Hamiduddin**, before him, wrote in Hindawi. **Syed Gesu Daraz** was the first writer of Deccani Hindi. A number of Sufi works were also written in Bengali. The most notable writer of this period was **Amir Khusrau** (1252-1325). He took pride in being an Indian and looked at the history and culture of Hindustan as a part of his own tradition.

THE BHAKTI MOVEMENT

Bhakti movement took place in **Tamil Nadu** between the seventh and twelfth centuries. It found expression in the poems of the **Nayanars** (devotees of Shiva) and **Alvars** (devotees of Vishnu). These saints looked upon religion as a strong bond based upon love between the worshipped and worshipper. They wrote in Tamil and Telugu and were able to reach out to masses.

Main Features

The Bhakti saints made no distinction of caste, creed or religion before God. They themselves came from diverse backgrounds. **Ramananda**, whose disciples included Hindus and Muslims, came from a conservative brahman family.

His disciple, **Kabir**, was a weaver. **Guru Nanak** was a village accountant's son. **Namdev** was a tailor. The saints stressed equality, disregarded the caste system and attacked institutionalised religion. The saints did not confine themselves to purely religious ideas. They advocated social reforms too. They opposed sati and female infanticide. Women were encouraged to join *kirtans*. **Mirabai** and **Lalla** (of Kashmir) composed verses that are popular even today.

Role of Local Language

An effective method for spreading of the Bhakti ideology was the use of local languages. The Bhakti saints composed their verses in local languages. Thus we have **Jnanadeva** writing in Marathi, **Kabir**, **Surdas** and **Tulsidas** in Hindi, **Shankaradeva** popularising Assamese, **Chaitanya** and **Chandidas** spreading their message in Bengali, **Mirabai** in Hindi and Rajasthani. In addition, devotional poetry was composed in Kashmiri, Telugu, Kannad, Oriya, Malayalam, Maithili and Gujarati.

Bhakti Saints

Amongst Bhakti saints, the most outstanding contribution was made by Kabir and Guru Nanak. Their ideas were drawn from both Hindu and Islamic traditions and were aimed at *bridging the gulf between the Hindus and the Muslims*.

Kabir

Kabir (1440-1518) was brought up in the house of a Muslim weaver. Kabir said that the Creator is One. His God was called by many names - Rama, Hari, Govinda, Allah, Rahim, Khuda, etc. It is the reason that the Muslims claim him as Sufi, the Hindus call him Rama-Bhakta and the Sikhs incorporate his songs in the *Adi Granth*. The external aspects of religion were meaningless for Kabir. His beliefs and ideas were reflected in the *dohas* (Sakhi) composed by him.

Kabir emphasised simplicity in religion and said that bhakti was the easiest way to attain God. He refused to accept any prevalent religious belief without prior reasoning. Kabir's belief in the unity of God led both Hindus and Muslims to become his disciples. Kabir's ideas were not restricted to religion. He attempted to change the narrow thinking of society. His poetry was forceful and direct. It was easily understood and much of it has passed into our everyday language.

Guru Nanak

Guru Nanak (1469-1539) was born at Talwandi (Nankana Sahib). From an early age, he showed inclination towards a spiritual life. He was helpful to the poor and needy. His disciples called themselves Sikhs (derived from Sanskrit *sisya*, disciple or Pali *sikkha*, instruction). Guru Nanak showed a new path for the establishment of an egalitarian social order. Like Kabir, Guru Nanak was as much a social reformer as he was a religious teacher. He called for an improvement in the status of women. He said that women who give birth to kings should not be spoken ill of. His *vani* (words) along with those of other Sikh Gurus have been brought together in the *Guru Granth Sahib*, the holy book of the Sikhs.

The Vaishnavite Movement

Saints such as Kabir, Namdev and Guru Nanak had preached devotion towards a *nirankar* form of God. During the same period, another movement based upon devotion towards a *sakar* form of God had also developed. This movement was called the **Vaishnavite movements** which focused on the worship of Rama and Krishna as incarnations (*avatars*) of Lord Vishnu. Its main exponents were **Surdas**, **Mirabai**, **Tulsidas** and **Chaitanya**. The path to salvation, according to them, was through poetry, song, dance and *kirtans*.

- The blind poet Surdas (1483-1563) was a disciple of **Vallabhachara**. His *Sursagar* recounts the exploits of Krishna during his childhood and youth.
- The love for Krishna was also expressed through the songs of Mirabai (1503-73). Her poems have a quality of their own and are popular even today.
- The Vaishnavite movement spread in the east through the efforts of Chaitanya (1484-1533). Chaitanya considered Krishna as the highest form of God. The devotion for Krishna was expressed through *Sankirtans* (hymn session by devotees).
- The worship of Rama was popularised by saints like **Ramananda** (1400-1470). He considered Rama as the supreme God.
- **Tulsidas** (1532-1623) wrote the *Ramacharitmanas*.
- The Vaishnavite saints called for reforms in religion and love amongst fellow beings. Their philosophy was broadly humanist.

Non-dualism

At the same time, Bhakti saints like Vallabhacharya, Ramanuja, Nimbaraka brought about new philosophical thinking which had its origin in **Shankaracharya's *advaita*** (non-dualism) philosophy.

Vishistadvaita of Ramanujacharya

Vishistadvaita means modified monism. The ultimate reality according to this philosophy is Brahman (God) and matter and soul are his qualities.

Sivadvaita of Srikanthacharya

According to this philosophy the ultimate Brahman is Shiva, endowed with Shakti. Shiva exists in this world as well as beyond it.

Dvaita of Madhavacharya

The literal meaning of *dvaita* is dualism which stands in opposition to non-dualism and monism of Shankaracharya. He believed that the world is not an illusion (*maya*) but a reality full of differences.

Dvaitadvaita of Nimbaraka

Dvaitadvaita means dualistic monism. According to this philosophy God transformed himself into world and soul. This world and soul are different from God (Brahman). They could survive with the support of God only. They are separate but dependent.

Suddhadvaita of Vallabhacharya

Vallabhacharya wrote commentaries on Vedanta Sutra and Bhagavad Gita. According to him, Brahman (God) was Sri Krishna who manifested himself as souls and matter. God and soul are not distinct, but one. The stress was on pure non-dualism. His philosophy came to be known as *Pushtimarga* (the path of grace) and the school was called **Rudrasampradaya**.

Points to Remember

- The *Sufi* and *Bhakti* movements were religious movements within Islam and Hinduism emphasising a *personalised relationship* between the human being and God.
- The message of the Sufi movement was *universal love and brotherhood* of mankind.
- Due to its belief in *the concept of unity of being*, Sufism was able to establish an ideological relationship with Hindu philosophy.
- The Bhakti movement grew amongst Nayanars and Alvars of the south and stressed upon a new method of worship of God.
- The Bhakti saints were divided into the *Nirgun* and *Sagun* believers.
- Unlike the *Nirgun* believers the *Sagun* believers saw God as having a definite form such as Rama or Krishna.
- The Bhakti and Sufi saints made valuable contributions to medieval Indian society by promoting social harmony and growth of regional literature and local languages.

Exercise -1

- Which one of the following statements about the teaching of Kabir is not correct ?
 - He was not against pilgrimage and idol worship
 - He believed in universal love
 - He emphasized on one God and the spread of devotionism
 - He did not consider it necessary to abandon the normal life of a householder
- Who is considered to be the founder of Bhakti movement?
 - Shankaracharya
 - Nimbakacharya
 - Ramanujacharya
 - Madhwacharya
- Who was the Sikh Guru who helped Dara ?
 - Guru Hargobind
 - Guru Hari Rai
 - Guru Tegh Bahadur
 - None of these
- The historical reason for Sufi saints isolating themselves from society was that:
 - Their mystical doctrine of union with God through love was regarded as heretical and attacked by orthodox Islam.
 - They preached escapism and worldly detachment.
 - They found a congenial atmosphere for naurturing their ideas in India, away from social surroundings.
 - Their views were unacceptable to the general masses.
- What is the most satisfactory explanation for the popularity of Bhakti movement?
 - It was the response of Hinduism to the challenge posed by Islam which looked superior because of its concept of one God, simplicity of worship, and universal brotherhood
 - It was a new edition of the old theistic view of God
 - It was an answer to the loneliness of Hindus and Muslims in general, and more so that of the artisans and the cultivating class because of the stratified society of the day
 - It was inspired by Sufism which had something in common with the traditonal asceticism of India
- Sheikh Moin-ud-din, Bakhtiyar Kaki and Farid-ud-din Ganj-i-Shakar were
 - prominent military leaders of the Sultanate period
 - prominent painters from the Sultanate period
 - prominent chisti saints
 - prominent poets from the courts of the Sultanate period
- Which one of the following statements about the teachings of Kabir is not correct?
 - He was not against pilgrimage and idol worship
 - He believed in universal love
 - He emphasised on one God and the spread of devotionism
 - He did not consider it necessary to abandon the normal life of a householder
- What was Ziyarat in the language of the Sufis?
 - Pilgrimage to the tombs of Sufi saints for seeking barkat (spiritual grace)
 - Reciting divine name
 - Offering free kitchens run on futuh (unasked for charity)
 - Setting up of auqaf (charitable trusts)

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- With reference to the philosophy of Kabir, Consider the following statements :
 - Kabir believed that the Quran was infallible.
 - Kabir rejected the conception of avataras.
 Which of the above is/are correct?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- What is the correct chronological sequence of the following saints?
 - Shankaracharya
 - Ramanuja
 - Shankaradeva
 - Dadu**Codes:**
 - 1, 2, 3, 4
 - 4, 3, 2, 1
 - 3, 1, 4, 2
 - 2, 1, 3, 4
- Consider the following statements:
 - Guru Nanak was interested in all the major forms of contemporary religious beliefs and practices whether 'Hindu' or 'Muslim'.
 - Guru Nanak was soft on the Jain monks.
 - He considered ritual reading of scriptures as waste of time.
 - During the last fifteen years of his life Guru Nanak settled at Kiratpur.
 Which of the above statements are not correct?
 - 1 and 2
 - 1 and 4
 - 2 and 3
 - 2 and 4
- Bhakti teachers emphasised that the
 - Relationship between man and man should be based on brotherhood
 - Relationship between man and God should be based on love
 - Relationship between man and God should be based on love
 - Cow should be worshipped as a symbol of God
 - Only 1 and 2
 - Only 2 and 3
 - 1, 2, 3 and 4
 - Only 1, 2 and 3

5. Arrange the following Sikh Gurus in chronological order.
 1. Guru Ram Das 2. Guru Arjun Dev
 3. Guru Hargobind 4. Guru Teg Bahadur
 Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 (b) 2, 1, 3, 4
 (c) 2, 1, 4, 3 (d) 3, 2, 4, 1

Matching Based MCQ

6. **List-I (Sufi Terminology)** **List-II (Meaning)**
 A. Futuh 1. Sufi musical gathering
 B. Sama 2. Conversations of Sufi saints
 C. Barkat 3. Unasked for charity
 D. Malfuz 4. Spiritual grace acquired by a Sufi

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (b) | 3 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |

7. Consider the following statements about Sufism
 1. The Sufism were critical of the dogmatic definitions and scholastic methods of interpreting the Quran and Sunna (traditions of the prophet) adopted by the theologians.
 2. The Sufis sought an interpretation of the Quran on the basis of their personal experience.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

8. Which of the following statements is/are not correct about Bhakti tradition in South India?

1. Earliest Bhakti Movements in India were led by Alvar and Nayanar saints.
 2. Nalayira Divyaprabandham, frequently described as Tamil Veda is an anthology of compositions by the Alvars.
 3. Karaikkal Ammaiyar, women Alvar saints, supported patriarchal norms.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1 and 2 (b) Only 3
 (c) Only 2 (d) All of these

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (a) Kabir was a mystic poet and saint, whose writings have greatly influenced the Bhakti movement. He was in the medieval period. The basic religious principles he espoused are simple. He was against the pilgrimage and idol worship.
 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (a)
 6. (c) Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki was disciple of Moinuddin Chishti. His most famous disciple was Fariduddin Ganjshakar. He was a renowned Muslim Sufi mystic, saint and scholar of the Chishti Order.
 7. (a) Kabir was born in the year 1440 AD and died in 1518 AD in holy city of Varanasi. He did not believe in idol worship. He was also against the performance of rituals and superstitions or pilgrimage to the so-called holy places.
 8. (a) Ziyarat is used to refer to a form of pilgrimage to sites associated with Muhammad and his family members and descendants. Sites of pilgrimage include mosques, graves, battlefields, mountains, and caves.

EXERCISE-2

1. (b)
 2. (d) The correct chronological sequence of the saints are: Sankaracharya, Ramanuja, Shankaradeva, Dadu. The earliest exponent of the Bhakti movement was Ramanuja who was appointed the successor of his teacher Yamunamuni. He travelled all over India and ultimately settled down at Srirangam. Namadeva,

who flourished in the first part of the fourteenth century, was a tailor who had taken to banditry before he became a saint. Other Nirguna saints were Dadu Dayal, who founded the Brahma Sampradaya or Parabrahma Sampradaya, Malukdasa a follower of Kabir, Sundardasa and Dharanidasa.

3. (b) 4. (c)
 5. (a) The correct chronological order of the Sikh Gurus is; Guru Ram Das, Guru Arjun Dev, Guru Hargobind, Guru Teg Bahadur. Guru Ram Das was born on September 24, 1534 to simple god-fearing parents, Hari Das and Anup Devi of Lahore. Guru Arjan was the youngest son of Guru Ram Das and Mata Bhani. He was born at Goindwal on April 15, 1563. Guru Har Gobind ji (5 July 1595-19 March 1644) was the sixth of the Ten Gurus of Sikhism. He became Guru on 11 June 1606 following in the footsteps of his father Guru Arjan Dev ji. Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji (April 18, 1621 - November 24, 1675) was the ninth of the Ten Gurus of Sikhism, becoming Guru on 16 April 1664 following in the footsteps of his grand-nephew, Guru Har Krishan.
 6. (b)
 7. (c) Sufism mystical Islamic belief and practice in which Muslims seek to find the truth of divine love and knowledge through direct personal experience of God.
 8. (b) Karaikal Ammaiyar was one of the three women amongst the sixty three Nayanmars, and was one of the greatest figures of early Tamil literature.

THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

15

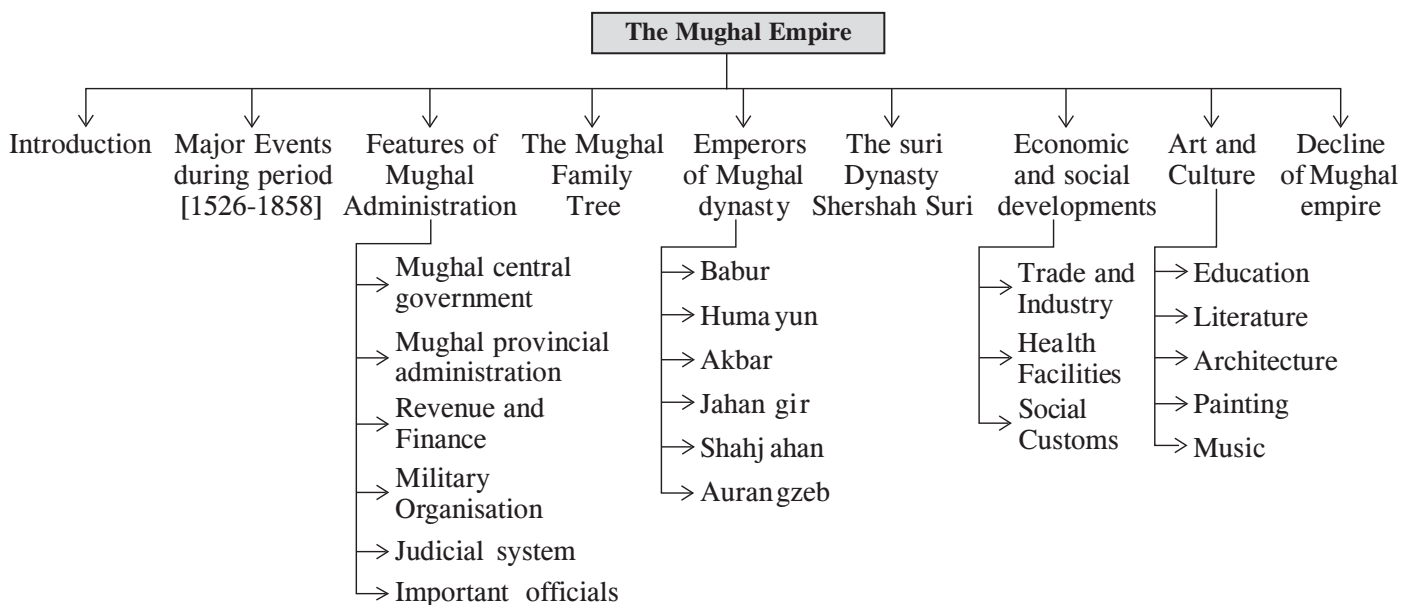
Chapter

Introduction

The *Saiyyid and the Lodhi* rules failed to stop the decline of the Delhi Sultanate. *Babur* took full advantage of the political chaos and established the rule of the *Mughal Dynasty* in India. The Mughals were able to create strong structures of administration and ideas of governance.

The 'classic period' of the Mughal Empire is believed to begin in 1556 with the coronation of *Akbar* to the throne. Under the rule of *Akbar*, the region enjoyed economic progress as well as religious harmony. Akbar himself was a successful warrior and he forged strategic alliances with several Hindu Rajput kingdoms. Though some Rajput kingdoms continued to pose a threat to the Mughal dominance, most of them were subdued by Akbar. By the mid-18th century, the *Marathas* had defeated Mughals. They won over several Mughal provinces from Punjab to Bengal. Due to the weakness of the Mughal Empire's administrative and economic systems, internal dissatisfaction arose that led to the break-up of the empire. The declaration of independence of its former provinces by the *Nawab of Bengal*, the *Nawab of Awadh*, the *Nizam of Hyderabad* and other small states also added to the chaos.

In 1739, the Mughals were defeated in the *Battle of Karnal* by the forces of *Nader Shah* leading to the loot in Delhi. During the following century Mughal power had become limited and the last emperor, *Bahadur Shah II*, had his dominance over the city of *Shahjahanabad*. He issued a *firman* supporting the Indian Rebellion of 1857. After the defeat, he was tried by the British East India Company for treason, imprisoned and exiled to *Rangoon*. The last remnants of the empire were formally taken over by the British. *The Government of India Act 1858* facilitated the British Crown formally assume direct control of India in the form of the new *British Raj*.



MAJOR EVENTS DURING MUGHAL PERIOD (1526 - 1858)

1526, May 27	Babur founds the empire of Hind.
1540, May 17	Mughal rulers are expelled and suppressed by the Afghan <i>Suri Dynasty</i> .
1555, July 23	Empire of Hind under the Mughal rulers restored.
1600, Dec 31	<i>East India Company</i> was given monopoly privileges on all trades with the East.
1608	The Companies ships arrived at the port of Surat.
1615	<i>Jahangir</i> granted the EIC the right to establish a factory at <i>Surat</i> .
1717	EEIC received a firman exempting the company from the payment of custom duties in <i>Bengal</i> .
1757	The forces of the Nawab of Bengal, <i>Siraj-ud-daulah</i> , was defeated at the Battle of Plassey.
1773	Lord North's India Bill, known as the Regulating Act of 1773, provided for greater Parliamentary control over the affairs of the company and placed India under the rule of a Governor General.
1858, Mar 29	The last mughal ruler is deposed.
1858, Aug 2	U.K. Act of Parliament annexed the Empire, creating British India.

FEATURES OF MUGHAL ADMINISTRATION

The Mughal Central Government

The principal officers of the Mughal central government were four:

1. **Diwan:** The Diwan, often called *the wazir* (the chief minister), was mainly concerned with revenue and finance, but he had a say in all matters where any

expenditure was involved. All the imperial orders were first recorded in his office before being issued.

2. **Mir Bakhshi:** The Mir Bakhshi performed those duties which had been the responsibility of the *ariz-i-mamalik* during the earlier period. Some foreign travellers called him *the lieutenant-general or the captain-general*.
3. **Mir Saman:** The work relating to state karkhanas, stores, ordinance, and communications was considered very important by Mughals and the person dealing with it was called the **Mir Saman**.
4. **Sadr:** The **Sadr** or **Sadr-i-jahan** was the director of the religious matters, charities and endowments.

Sometimes, a higher dignitary called **Vakil**, was also appointed. The Mughals had an efficient administrative system. The famous diwan under Akbar was **Raja Todar Mal**. The Diwan had under him two principal officers, called **Diwan-i-tan** and **diwan-i-khalsa**, who were in charge of salaries and state lands respectively. The organization of public services was based on the **Mansabdari** system. Every important officer of state held a **Mansab** or an official appointment of rank and emoluments. The principal categories of Mughal mansabdars were three –

- Those in command of ten to four hundred were commonly styled **Mansabdars** (officers)
- Those in command of five hundred to twenty-five hundred were **Amirs** (nobles)
- Those in higher ranks belonged to the category of **Umara-i-Kabir or Umara-i-Azim** (grandees).

Each grade carried a definite rate of pay, out of which the holders were required to maintain a quota of horses, elephants, beasts of burden, and carts. The mansabdars were paid either in cash or by temporary grant of *jagirs*. Appointment to the ranks of mansabdars was made by the emperor. In addition to the Mansabdars, there was a class known as **Ahadis**, who were usually young men of good families, who were not fortunate enough to secure a Mansab.

The Mughal Provincial Administration

The Mughal provincial administration was greatly improved under Akbar. The boundaries of the provincial units were more definitely fixed and a uniform administrative pattern was developed. By the introduction **Mansabdars**, liable to be transferred anywhere, the control over the provinces was made more effective.

The principal officer was the Governor, popularly known as **Subahdar** or **Subah**. Next was the provincial **Diwan**, who was in independent charge of the revenues of the province. He was usually a **Mansabdar** of much lower status than the Governor.

The next provincial functionary was the **Bakhshi**, or the paymaster. The **Sadr** and the **Qazi** were entrusted with religious, educational, and judicial duties. The **Faujdar** and the **Kotwal** were the two other important provincial officials. The Faujdar, who was the *administrative head of the sarkar* (district), was appointed by the emperor but was under the supervision and guidance of the governor. The kotwals were not provincial officers, but were appointed by the central government in the provincial capitals and other important cities. The Mughals interfered very little with the local life of the village communities. The **Muqaddam** was normally the sarpanch (head of the village panchayat, or council) who dealt with local disputes, arrange for watch and ward, and performed many functions entrusted to the local bodies.

Revenue and Finance

Tax structure of the Mughal empire was relatively simple. Revenue and expenditure were divided between the central and the provincial government. **Land revenue** was the most important source of income. The principal items of expenditure were defence, the general civil administration of the empire (including the religious organizations) and maintenance of the court and the royal palace.

The *Mughal revenue system* was based on the division of the empire into *subas or governorships, sarkars or districts, and parganas*, consisting of number of villages which were sometimes called **mahals**. The suba was modeled after the central imperial structure. The levy of tax was based on survey settlements calculated after measurement and classification of the cultivated areas. Akbar's revenue system was **raiyatwari**, the revenue amounted to one-third of the produce being collected directly from the individual cultivator.

Military Organization

The Mughal emperors depended upon four different classes of troops. They were—

- The soldiers supplied by the mansabdars.
- Troops under the command of a mansabdar, known as *Dakhili*, who were paid by the state.
- A third class were the **ahadis**, or “*gentlemen troopers*.” Drawing higher pay than those in the ordinary service.
- The artillery was paid wholly out of the imperial treasury.
- *The Mughals* had a poor navy. They had no fighting vessels, and the ships that they maintained were only for the commercial operations of the state.

Judicial System

The judicial system of the Mughals was similar to that of the sultanate. Normally no lawyers were allowed to appear. The disputes were speedily settled, often on the basis of equity and natural justice. Many crimes—including murder—were treated as individual grievances rather than crimes against society. The aim of the judicial system was primarily to settle individual complaints and disputes rather than to enforce a legal code, as is indicated by the fact that the criminal court was normally known as the **diwan-i-mazalim**, the court of complaints.

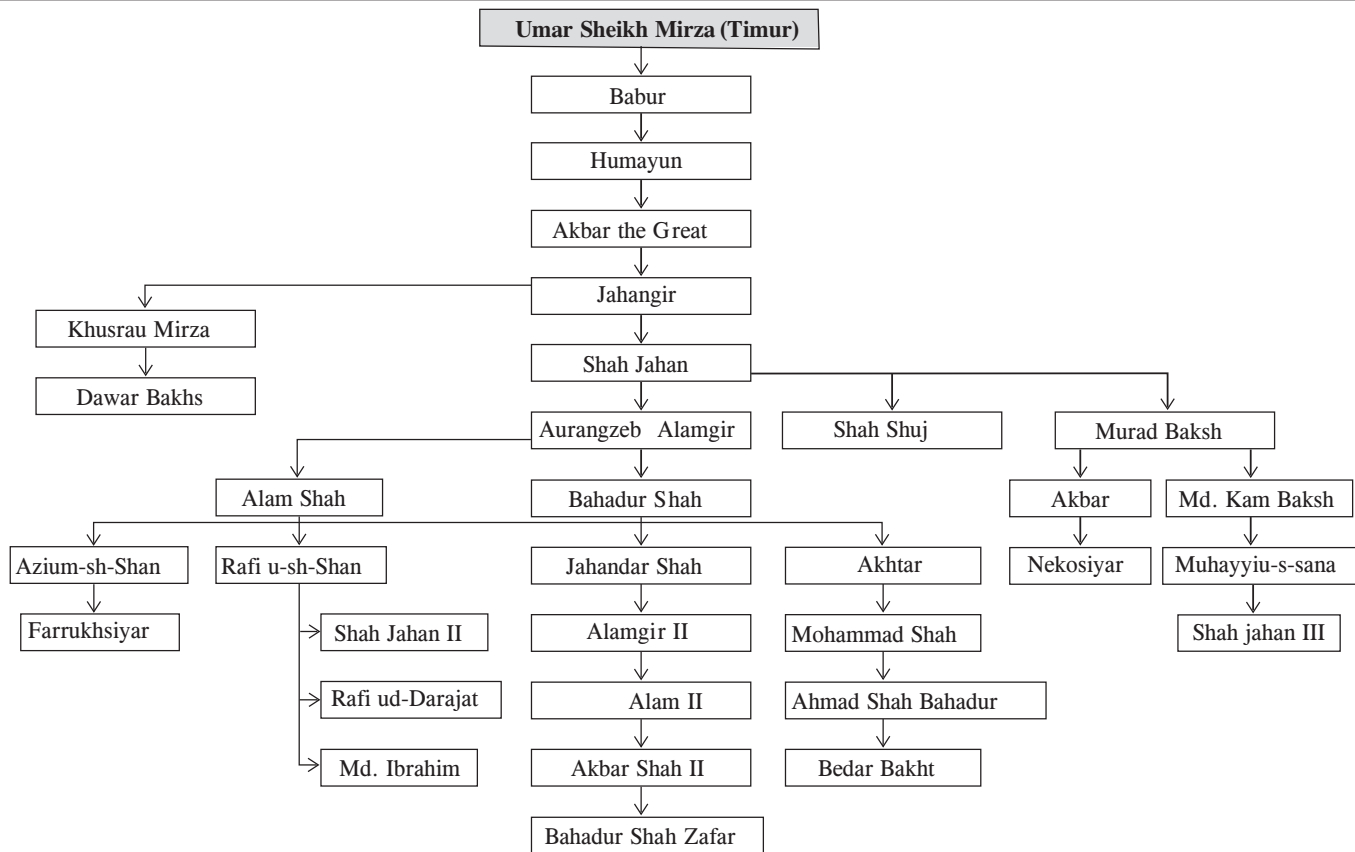
The judicial courts provided by the Mughals were principally of two types—secular and ecclesiastical. The principal courts for settlement of disputes were presided over by the emperor, the governors, and other executive officers. Akbar used to spend several hours of the day disposing of judicial cases, and governors followed the same procedure in the provinces. In the **Ain-i-Akbari** we find the instructions issued to a governor detailing the judicial procedure he should follow.

Apart from the secular courts and the panchayats, the principal agency for the settlement of disputes was the **qazis' court**. The qazi, being the repository of Muslim law, attended the hearing of cases by the executive authority, whether governor, faujdar or kotwal, and assisted the latter in arriving at a decision consonant with Quaranic precepts. The death penalty normally had to be confirmed by the emperor, but there were exceptions of the rule. Capital punishments and mutilations were frequent, and there are records of impaling, dismemberment and other cruel punishments.

Important officials

1. Mushrif-i-mumalik – Accountant general
2. Mustaufi-i-mumalik – Auditor general
3. Diwan-i-Khalisa
4. Diwan-i-tan
5. Daroga-i-dak – Chauki
6. Mir-i-arz
7. Waqua navis
8. Mir-i-dahri
9. Mir-i-mal
10. Harkaras – Spies and Couriers
11. Swanith-Nigar – News writers
12. Mir tazuk

THE MUGHAL FAMILY TREE



EMPERORS OF MUGHAL DYNASTY

Ruling Period	Name
1526 - 1530	Zahiruddin Muhammad Babur
1530 - 1540 and	Humayun
1555 - 1556	
1556 - 1605	Akbar
1605 - 1627	Jahangir
1628 - 1658	Shah Jahan
1658 - 1707	Mohamamed Aurangzeb
1707 (Mar 14 - Apr 27)	Qutib-ud-din A'zam Shah
1707 - 1712	Shah Alam Bahadur Shah-I
1712 - 1713	Mohammad
1713 - 1719	Furrukhsiyar
1719 (Mar 1 - Jun 7)	Rafi ul Darjat
1719 (Mar 30 - Aug 13)	Mohamamd Shah Nikusiyar
1719 (Jun 8 - Sep 6)	Mohammad Shah Jahan Sani
1719 - 1748	Mohammad Shah
1720 (Oct 12 - Nov 19)	Mohammad Ibrahim
1748 - 1754	Ahmad Shah Bahadur
1754 (Jun 3 - Nov 29)	Alamgir II
1759 (Dec 11 - Dec 25)	Shah Jahan III
1759 - 1806	Shah Alam II
1806 - 1837	Mohammad Akbar Shah II
1837 - 1857	Bahadur Shah Zafar

Babur (1526-1530 A.D)

The conquest of *Samarkand* in *Transoxiana* compelled Babur to come to India. He defeated *Ibrahim Lodi* in the *first Battle of Panipat* in 1526 AD. Babur's full name was *Zaheeruddin Mohammad Babur*; he was born in AD 1483 and he was made the king of *Farghana* at the age of 11 years and 4 months. After the battle of *Panipat*, Babur proclaimed himself '*Emperor of Hindustan.*' He made *Agra* his headquarter.

Babur succeeded because he brought cavalry from central Asia. He consolidated his army. He brought under his control *Punjab*, *Delhi* and the *Ganga* plains upto *Bihar*. He died in 1530 and was buried in *Agra*. Later his body was taken to *Kabul*. His famous battles were of *Khanwa*, *Chanderi* and *Ghaghra*. His book *Tujuk-i-Baburi* is a famous book written in *Turki* language.

Humayun (1530-40 AD)

Babur left behind four sons of whom the eldest one was *Humayun* who succeeded his throne. When he was only 12 years old, he was appointed as the governor of *Badakhshan* with his mother. *Humayun* first turned his attention to the *Afghan*. *Humayun* conquered *Gujarat* and *Malwa*. But he was defeated by *Sher Shah* at battle of *Chausa* and *Kannauj*. In 1556, he died in an accidental explosion.

Akbar (1556-1605 AD)

Akbar was one of the greatest rulers in Indian history. Akbar was born in Umerkot, Sindh on November 23, 1542. Akbar came to throne in 1556 after the death of his father, Humayun at the age of 13 years. During the first five years of his rule, he was assisted and advised by *Bahram Khan* in running the affairs of the country. His reign holds a certain prominence in history. He actually fortified the foundations of the Mughal empire. Akbar was a great patron of art, architecture. Despite being an illiterate, he had a tremendous love for learning. The first battle fought by Akbar was against Sikandar Shah Suri of Punjab. In 1556 'Akbar the Great' fought *Second battle of Panipat* against *Hemu*. Akbar solidified his support by revoking the *Jaziya tax* on non-muslims. He extended his empire by matrimonial alliances with Rajputs. He expanded the Mughal Empire by including Malwa, Gujrat, Bengal, Kabul, Kashmir and Khandesh. His third son, Salim was frequently in rebellion against his father. He died in 1605.

Akbar prohibited slavery and sati system. He fixed 14 years age for girls and 16 years age for boys for marriage.

Akbar's court had *Navratans*, meaning a group of nine extraordinary people. They included-

1. *Abul Fazel* - Akbar's chief advisor
2. *Faizi* - Poet
3. *Tansen* - Singer of his court
4. *Birbal* - Noble known for his wittiness
5. *Raja Todar Mal* - Akbar's finance Minister
6. *Raja Man Singh* - Trusted general
7. *Abdul Rahim Khan-i-Khana* - Hindi Scholar
8. *Hakim Humam* - Physician to the King.
9. *Mullah Do Piazza* - An intelligence advisor to the King.

Main Events During the reign of Akbar

Year	Major Events
1562	Abolition of Slavery
1563	Abolition of Pilgrimage Tax.
1564	Abolition of Jaziya.
1575	Ibadatkhana was built in Fatehpur Sikri
1578	Parliament of Religions in <i>Ibadatkhana</i> .
1579	Proclamation of " <i>Marhar</i> "
1582	Proclamation of <i>Tauhid-i-illahi</i> .
1575-76	Entire empire divided into 12 provinces (After victory of south it becomes 15)
1582	' <i>Dahsala system</i> ' introduced by Todarmal.
1573-74	' <i>Mansabdari system</i> ' introduced after victory over Gujarat.

Jahangir (1605 - 1627 AD.) :

He was the son of Akbar and Jodhabai. His childhood name was Salim and was born in 1569 AD. He succeeded his father throne after Akbar's death. He conquered three Kingdoms - Mewar, Kangra and Ahmadnagar in South India. Jahangir met, loved and married *Mehr-un-Nisa* who assumed the title of '*Nur Jahan*', '*Light of the world*'. He crushed the rebellion of his own son Khusroe

and made him blind. He issued 12 ordinances in public interest. He died in 1627 AD. Jahangir's most irksome foe was the *Rana of Mewar, Amar Singh* who finally capitulated in 1613 AD to Khurram's forces. He was an honest man and a tolerant ruler. Mughal gardens in *Srinagar* remain an enduring testimony to his artistic taste.

Shahjahan (1628 - 1658 AD.)

The name 'Shahjahan' comes from Persian meaning '*Ruler of Everywhere*'. He was the fifth Mughal emperor after Babur. On his succession to the throne, the first thing he had to face was revolt in Bundelkhand and the Deccan. Finally, he annexed Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golkunda.

In 1612, he was married to the daughter of Asaf Khan named Arjumand Bano Begum who was very beautiful. Shahjahan has left behind an extraordinary, architectural legacy of his buildings the most important are the *Tomb of Jahangir* at Lahore, the *Diwan-i-Aam*, the *Diwan-i-Khas* at Redfort and the Jama Masjid in Delhi. The *Taj Mahal*, *Moti Masjid* in Agra are remarkable for their purity and unadorned beauty. The famous revolt against him were of Bundelkhand, Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi and expedition against Portugese.

Aurangzeb (1658-1707 AD.)

He was the son of Mumtaz Mahal and Shahjahan. He was born in 1618 at Dahod near Ujjain. His full name was *Abul Muzaffar Mehi-ud-Din Muhammad Aurangzeb*. He was enthroned at Delhi in 1658 AD, after killing his brothers one by one. He conquered and annexed the states of Bijapur and Golkunda. He banned music and stopped the custom of *Jharokha Darshan*.

Aurangzeb set out for the Deccan in 1682 and spent 26 years of his life there. But he failed in conquering Marathas. He died in 1707 AD and was buried near Daulatabad.

SHER SHAH (THE SURI EMPIRE)

Sher Shah was the first muslim ruler of India who displayed a real aptitude for civil government. He gave sound administrative system to India which was followed by many rulers.

In the field of central administration, he followed the Sultanate pattern. There were four departments of central government :

1. **Diwan-e-Vizarat** : It dealt with financial matters such as collecting taxes and maintaining accounts.
2. **Diwan-i-arz** : It was headed by *ariz-i-mamalik*. It was a military department.
3. **Diwan-i-Rasalat** : He added by *Sadr*. It dealt with religious and foreign matter.
4. **Diwan-i-ensha** : It issued royal orders and conducted correspondence with different parts. According to A.L. Srivastava, there were two more ministers.

5. **Diwan-i-Barid** : It dealt with the postal system of the empire.

6. **Diwan-i-Qaza** : After the emperor, he was the chief justice of the empire.

There were two important officials at the sarkar level-

1. **Shiqdar-i-Shiqadaran** : To maintain law and order.

2. **Munshife-i-munshifan** : To supervise the revenue.

Land revenue represented a claim on behalf of the state to a share of the crop. Sher Shah settled the land revenue directly with the tillers of the soil and fixed the state demand at one third of the gross produce. *Sikandari Gaja* (32 points) was the measurement of land. He introduced a regular postal service. He issued a large number of silver coins. He improved communications by building roads. He constructed important roads like-

(i) Grand trunk road from *Sunargaon to Peshawar*.

(ii) Road from *Agra to Multan via Burhanpur and Delhi*.

(iii) Road from *Multan to Lahore*.

(iv) Road from *Mandu to Agra*.

He was also a very fine architect. He built *Purana Qila* in Delhi.

ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENTS DURING MUGHAL PERIOD

It was policy of the Mughal rulers to encourage trade. The Mughals, especially Akbar, encouraged trade by linking together various parts of the country through an efficient system of roads and abolishing many tolls and duties.

Trade and Industry

Mughal rulers welcomed the foreign traders, provided ample protection and security for their transactions, and levied a very low custom duty (usually no more than 2½% ad valorem). The expansion of local handicrafts and industry in Mughal period resulted in a surplus of export goods. Indian exports consisted of cotton cloth, indigo, saltpetre, spices, opium, sugar, woollen and silk cloth of various kinds, yarn, asafoetida, salt, beads, borax, turmeric, lac, sealing wax, and drugs of various kinds. The principal imports were bullion, horses, luxury goods for the upper classes, like raw silk, coral, amber, precious stones, superior textiles (silk, velvet, brocade, broadcloth), perfumes, drugs, china goods, and European wines.

The manufacture of cotton goods had assumed such extensive proportions that India sent cloth to almost half the world. *The textile industry*, well established in Akbar's day, continued to flourish under his successors. Even the silk *industry*—especially in Bengal—was in flourishing condition. Akbar was responsible for the

expansion of silk weaving at *Lahore, Agra, Fatehpur-Sikri*, and in *Gujarat*. He opened a large number of factories at important centres, importing master weavers from *Persia, Kashmir* and *Turkistan*.

Health Facilities

Public hospitals had been provided in Muslim India, at least since the days of *Firuz Tughluq* (1351–1388), the system seems to have been extended during the Mughal period. Jahangir states in his autobiography that on his accession to the throne he ordered the establishment, at government expense, of hospitals in large cities. That this order was actually made effective is shown by the records of salaries paid by the government and of grants for the distribution of medicine.

Social Customs

The marriage customs of Hindus and Muslims had many similarities. Early marriages were much in vogue amongst the Hindus, with seven considered proper age for a girl to be married. To leave a daughter unmarried beyond twelve years of age was to risk the displeasure of one's caste. The Muslims also betrothed their children between the ages of six and eight, but the marriage was generally not solemnized before they had attained the age of puberty.

ARTS & CULTURE DURING MUGHAL PERIOD

During Mughal period, architects, poets, historians, painters and musicians flourished. The patronage of the Mughal rulers gave a recognizable style and manner to a wide variety of arts.

Education

During Akbar's reign subjects such as *logic, philosophy and scholastic theology* had taken on new importance. The standard of learning in these subjects rose as is evidenced by the career of scholars like **Shaikh Abdul Haq Muhaddis** (1551–1642). The extensive study of **hadith** (also **hadis**) began because of contact with Arabia. A number of educational institutions and foundations, including the colleges established by **Ghazi-ud-din Khan Firuz Jang, Sharaf-ud-daulah**, and **Raushan-ud-daulah** in Delhi belong to Mughal period.

Later, in the eighteenth century, the *Dars-i-Nizamiya*, named after **Mulla Nizam-ud-din** (d.1748) provided instruction in grammar, rhetoric, philosophy, logic, scholasticism, tafsir (commentary on the Quran), fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence), hadith and mathematics. For the students interested in religious studies, there were institutions like **Madrasa-i-Rahimiya**, the forerunner of the modern seminary of Deoband, where *tafsir and hadith* were the principal subjects of study.

Many Muslim women were patrons of literature. The memoirs of **Gulbadan Begum**, *Akbar's aunt*, are well known, and his foster-mother, **Maham Anga**, endowed a college at Delhi. Akbar's wife **Salima Sultana**, the famous Empress **Mumtaz Mahal**, and Aurangzeb's sister, the Princess **Jahan Ara Begum**, were poetesses of note, as was his daughter, **Zeb-un-Nissa**.

Literature

Persian was the language of Mughal intellectual life. A large number of prominent Irani poets, including Urfi, Naziri, Talib, and Kalim, migrated to India, and at times the level of Persian literature was higher in Mughal India than in Iran. **Faizi** (1547–1595) was the brother of Abul Fazl. As Akbar's poet-laureate, his poetry mirrors a triumphant age. **Ghalib** (1796–1869), who was attached to the court of the last Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah, came under the spell of the immigrant Irani poets—Urfi, Naziri, Zahuri, and Hazin.

Apart from poetry, disciplines of history and biography were most extensively flourished during the Mughal period. Historians include **Abul Fazl** (1551–1602), whose comprehensive *Akbar Nama* is one of the most important historical works produced in India. **Badauni** (1540–1615), was a consummate artist, a master of the telling phrase, and capable of evoking a living picture with a few deft strokes. *Babur's autobiography*, originally written in Turkish, but soon translated into Persian by **Abdul Rahim Khan-i-Khana**.

Hindi was the next language which received patronage at Mughal court. The practice started by Akbar of having a Hindi **kavi rai** (poet-laureate) along with the Persian **malik-ul-shuara**. The greatest Hindi poet of Akbar's days was **Tulasidas**. *Raja Birbal* (1528–1583) was the kavi rai, but the works of Akbar's famous general **Abdul Rahim** have been better preserved. A skillful writer in Hindi, Abdul Rahim furthered the development of the language.

Mughal rulers patronized *Bengali, Kashmiri, Hindi, Deccani, and other regional languages*. This trend was most powerful in the regional kingdoms which grew up after the weakening of the Delhi Sultanate. The establishment of a well-organized central government at Delhi resulted in greater linguistic unification, and the influence of Persian became far more dominant. Mughal rule indirectly assisted the regional literatures.

Architecture

Architecture reached the pinnacle under the Mughal rulers. After India's conquest, Babur summoned from Constantinople pupils of the great Ottoman architect **Sinan**, to whom he entrusted the construction buildings. The buildings constructed by him exhibit no trace of local influence and are distinctly foreign.

Akbar's most ambitious project was his new capital at *Fatehpur Sikri*, the seat of the imperial court from 1569

to 1584. Some of the buildings there are dominated by the Hindu style of architecture, but Persian influences were equally strong in his day, as can be seen in the magnificent tomb for Humayun built in 1569 at Delhi. Akbar built two major fortresses at Agra and Lahore. **The Lahore fort**, which was built on the banks of the Ravi, at about the same time as that at Agra, was planned and constructed on practically the same grand scale.

Akbar's successor, Jahangir, was interested less in architecture than in painting and gardens. During Jahangir's reign a number of gardens were built, such as the **Shalimar Bagh** and the **Nishat Bagh** in Kashmir. Jahangir's beautiful mausoleum at Shahdara near Lahore was completed by his widow Nur Jahan.

Shah Jahan was the greatest builder amongst the Mughals. The style of Shah Jahan's principal edifices is basically Persian, but is distinguished by use of *white marble*, minute and tasteful decoration—particularly the open-work tracery which ornaments the finest buildings, giving them their distinctive elegance. Among the more famous of his buildings are the **Pearl Mosque** and the **Taj Mahal** at *Agra*, the **Red Fort** and **Jama Masjid** at *Delhi*, palaces and gardens at Lahore, a beautiful mosque at *Thatta in Sind* and many edifices at Ajmer and Ahmadabad.

Painting

Humayun is credited for the founding of the Mughal school of painting. He persuaded **Khwaja Abdul Samad** and **Mir Sayyid Ali**, the pupil of **Behzad**, to join his court at Kabul in 1550. They accompanied him to Delhi, forming the nucleus of the *Mughal school*.

In the reign of Akbar, many painters were granted ranks as **mansabdars** or **ahadis**. The painters worked in a large building at *Fatehpur Sikri*, and, according to Abul Fazl, "the works of all painters are weekly laid before His Majesty by the *daroghas* (supervisors) and the clerks; he then confers rewards according to the excellence of workmanship or increases the monthly salaries.

Khwaja Abdul Samad was the head of the establishment and was known by the title of **shirin qalam** (or "sweet pen"), referring to his skill in calligraphy. Later he became master of the mint (1577) and subsequently was appointed **diwan** at Multan.

Akbar's traditions were maintained by Jahangir. The main remnants of Jahangir's principal picture albums are in the *State Library of Berlin*, while another album, which was taken away by Nadir Shah during his sack of Delhi, is in the *Imperial Library at Tehran*.

Music

Most Mughal emperors patronized music. There were nearly forty prominent musicians who flourished at

Akbar's court. These artists came from *Gwalior*, *Malwa*, *Tabriz* (in Iran) and *Kashmir*. The most famous musician of the period was **Tansen**. According to some Muslim *chroniclers*, he was brought up in the hospice of **Shaikh Mohammad Ghaus** of *Gwalior*, but Hindu tradition describes him as a disciple of **Swami Haridas**.

The variety of music most extensively cultivated at Akbar's court was the ancient **dhrupad**. The same tradition was continued by **Bilas Khan**, the inventor of *bilas todi*. Music received great encouragement under Shah Jahan. He had thirty prominent musicians at his court. The **khiyal**, or *ornate school of music* was beginning to assert itself in his reign.

Decline of the Empire

Aurangzeb's death in 1706 caused the rapid decline of Mughal empire. The governor of Hyderabad, Bengal and Avadh established independent kingdoms and the Marathas reorganised under a new system of government.

CAUSES FOR THE DECLINE

1. The vastness of the empire.
2. Over centralized administration.
3. Wars of succession.
4. Weak successors.
5. Weakness of the army.
6. Independence of provincial Rulers.
7. Lack of tolerance shown to the non-Islamic majority by later Mughal emperors.
8. Aurangzeb's religious policy and deccan policy.
9. Invasion of Irani and Durrani kingdoms.
10. Arrival of the British.

Points to Remember

1. In the medieval periods rulers built private and public buildings like forts, palaces, tombs, temples, mosques, tanks etc.
2. The purpose of such buildings was to show the concern for the welfare of the people and at the same time display the power and wealth of their patrons.
3. During the Sultanate period, new features were introduced like arches and decorative features like calligraphy, geometry and arabesque.
4. Under the Mughals, a distinct style of architecture developed which was marked by the usage of red sandstone and marble and double - domed structure.
5. The most notable buildings during the Mughal period were built at *Agra*, *Fatehpur Sikri* and *Delhi*, Gardens were laid out in *Delhi*, *Kashmir* and *Lahore*.
6. The most prolific builder amongst the Mughal was *Shahjahan*, who built a number of buildings including the *Lal Qila* and the *Jama Masjid* in *Delhi* and the *Taj Mahal* in *Agra*.
7. Babur was the first Mughal king followed by Humayun, Akbar, Jahangir, Shahjahan and Aurangzeb.
8. Stability was achieved only under Akbar who expanded his empire over the Indian subcontinent.
9. Akbar introduced new administrative measures like *Mansabdari system* and *Jagirdari system*.
10. *Jahangir* married *Mehrunnisa* in 1611 and bestowed her with the title '*Nur Jahan*'.
11. Under Aurangzeb the Mughal empire expanded its territorial limits.
12. The process of decline of the Mughal empire set in at the time of Aurangzeb and new regional powers arose.

Exercise - 1

- Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was
 - the mosque for the use of Royal Family
 - Akbar's private prayer chamber
 - the hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions
 - the room in which the nobles belonging to different religions gathered to discuss religious affairs
- In medieval India, Mansabdari system was introduced for:
 - making recruitment to the army
 - facilitating revenue collection
 - ensuring religious harmony
 - effecting clean administration
- Head of the military department under the recognised central machinery of administration during Akbar's reign was:
 - Diwan
 - Mir Bakshi
 - Mir Saman
 - Bakshi
- How did the Mughal Emperor Jahandarshah's reign, come to an early end?
 - He was deposed by his Wazir
 - He died due to a slip while climbing down the steps
 - He was defeated by his nephew in a battle
 - He died of sickness due to drinking
- Aurangzeb reimposed 'jizya' in the twenty-second year of his reign in order to:
 - put economic pressure for forcing the majority community to convert their religion
 - meet a difficult financial situation
 - re-assert the fundamentally Islamic character of the State
 - Show anger against the Marathas and Rajputs
- Which of the following Mughal emperors spent a greater part of his reign to overthrow the Deccan Kingdoms?
 - Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shahjahan
 - Aurangzeb
- Between whom was the Battle of Khanwa (1527) fought?
 - Ibrahim Lodi and Rana Sanga
 - Babar and Rana Sanga
 - Humayun and Sher Khan
 - Humayun and Nusrat Shah
- Which Mughal officer helped Humayun capture the fort of Chunargarh from Sher Shah?
 - Rumi Khan
 - Dilwar Khan
 - Hindal
 - Mahabat Khan
- Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri was built by Akbar to commemorate his victory over which province?
 - Gujarat
 - Sind
 - Punjab
 - Mewar
- Which of the following areas was not conquered by Akbar?
 - Kashmir
 - Qandahar
 - Orissa
 - Bidar
- Mughal-Mewar peace treaty was concluded during the times of ?
 - Humayun
 - Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shah Jahan
- Which Mughal emperor stopped the practice of Forceful conversion of prisoners of war?
 - Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shah Jahan
 - Aurangzeb
- Whose reign is referred to as Renaissance in Persian, Arabic and Hindi literature?
 - Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shah Jahan
 - Aurangzeb
- Which Mughal emperor enrolled Guru Govind Singh into Mughal service?
 - Bahadur Shah I
 - Jahandar Shaha
 - Faurkh Siyyar
 - Mohammed Shah
- Sher Shah is considered to be the fore-runner of Akbar in administration because
 - his administrative policies were adopted by Akbar
 - he ruled before Akbar
 - he trained Akbar in administration
 - he supervised Akbar's administration
- Khalsa in Mughal rule meant
 - The Land belonging to Emperor
 - All royal system
 - Land from where revenue was collected for royal treasure
 - Religious Land grant
- In 1576, the Mughal army fought the battle of Haldighati with
 - Prithvi Raj Chauhan
 - Maharana Pratap
 - Udai Singh
 - Man Singh
- Who was the king to organize Asht Pradhan?
 - Akbar
 - Shivaji
 - Krishnadeva Ray
 - Tipu Sultan
- Who of the Mughal rulers understood the significance of Rajputs and tried to win them ?
 - Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shahjahan
 - Aurangzeb
- Which is not a characteristic of the Taj Mahal's architecture ?
 - Charbagh Plan
 - Double Dome
 - Pietra Dura
 - White Marble
- The member of Shivaji's Ashtapradhan who looked after foreign affairs was:
 - Peshwa
 - Sachiv
 - Pandit Rao
 - Sumant
- Mughal-Maratha treaty of 1719 was concluded in the times of ?
 - Jahandar Shah
 - Farukh Siyyar
 - Mohammed Shah
 - Bahadur Shah II
- Before which of his important battles in India did Babur declare the abolition of Tamgha tax ?
 - Panipat
 - Khanwa
 - Chanderi
 - None of these

24. Who was the infamous Qazi Fazihat or Qazi Fazilat during the reign of Sher Shah?
 (a) Governor of Bengal
 (b) Qazi-i-lashkar
 (c) Qazi-ul-Qazzat
 (d) Qazi of Bengal
25. Who was proclaimed as Mughal emperor by Asaf Khan on Jahangir's death to ensure Khurram's (Shahjahan's) enthronement?
 (a) Shahryar (b) Dawar Baksh
 (c) Tahmurs (d) Hoshang
26. Who among the following Englishmen was well versed in the Turkish language, received a Mansab of 400 and the title of 'English Khan' or Firangi Khan?
 (a) Fitch (b) Mildenhall
 (c) Hawkins (d) Sir Thomas Roe
27. In which language did Babar wrote his Autobiography?
 (a) Farsee (b) Arabi
 (c) Turki (d) None of these
28. What was the percentage (of the total revenue charged) of the extra tax charged by Sher Shah for the use of general welfare in calamities and emergencies?
 (a) 7.5% (b) 5.0%
 (c) 2.5% (d) 1.5%
29. On whom emperor, Akbar conferred the title of 'Jagat Guru' ?
 (a) Purushottam (b) Dastur Meherji Rana
 (c) Hari Vijay Suri (d) Devi
30. What does the term 'Elchi' or 'Safir' denote in the sixteenth century Mughal administrative vocabulary?
 (a) Ambassadors (b) Rebels
 (c) Spies (d) Governors
31. Which year of Akbar's reign has been regarded by the historian Vicent A. Smith as the most critical time?
 (a) 1556 AD (b) 1561 AD
 (c) 1571 AD (d) 1581 AD
32. During the Mughal period, what was Narnal or light artillery?
 (a) One carried on elephant back
 (b) One carried on camel back
 (c) One carried by man
 (d) None of these
33. Mahzar of 1579 was drafted by
 (a) Sheikh Mubarak (b) Abdun Nabi
 (c) Abul Fazal (d) Faizi
34. Among the following, which Mughal emperor introduced the policy of Sulah-i-Kul?
 (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Humayun (d) Aurangzeb
35. Which among the following became an integral part of Shahjahan's empire ?
 (a) Golkunda (b) Ahmednagar
 (c) Bijapur (d) None of these
36. Which company was authorized by Jahangir to set up a factory in Surat?
 (a) The English East India Company
 (b) The French East India Company
 (c) The United East India Company
 (d) The Portuguese East India Company
37. Which of the following was the court language during the reign of Akbar?
 (a) Hindi (b) Urdu
 (c) Persian (d) Arabic
38. Which of the following tombs is placed in the centre of a large garden and resembles as a prototype of the Taj Mahal?
 (a) Akbar's tomb at Sikandara
 (b) Itmaduddaula's tomb at Agra
 (c) Shershah's tomb at Sasaram
 (d) Humayun's tomb at Delhi
39. Which one of the following contemporary sources depicts Humayun's passion for astronomy and astrology?
 (a) Tarikh-i-Rashidi (b) Tuzuk-i-Babri
 (c) Humayun Namah (d) Qanun-i-Humayuni
40. Which Mughal emperor abolished the old custom of Sizda?
 (a) Akbar (b) Shahjahan
 (c) Aurangzeb (d) Bahadurshah
41. The Delhi Madarasa known as 'Khairul Manazil' was built by
 (a) Hamida Bano Begum
 (b) Gulbadan Begum
 (c) Maham Angah
 (d) Shah Begum
42. "Din-i-Ilahi" was a movement of Akbar's folly, not of his wisdom." Who made this statement?
 (a) A.L. Srivastava (b) R.P. Tripathi
 (c) V.A. Smith (d) S.R. Sharma
43. Who among the following painters committed suicide?
 (a) Basawan (b) Lal
 (c) Daswant (d) Mahesh
44. The offsprings of which Mughal emperor were born in a Sufi's Khanqah instead of the Mughal haram?
 (a) Humayun (b) Akbar
 (c) Shahjahan (d) Aurangzeb
45. During whose reign did Khan-Jahan Lodi revolt?
 (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Shahjahan (d) Aurangzeb
46. Who among the following poets was given the title of 'Malik-ush-Shoara' by Akbar?
 (a) Ashki (b) Qudsi
 (c) Faizi (d) Farebi
47. Jahandar Shah ascended the throne after the death of
 (a) Azam Shah (b) Bahadur Shah I
 (c) Farrukh Siyar (d) Muhammad Shah
48. Which one of the following was not among the 12 Ordinances of Jahangir?
 (a) Prohibition of Wine
 (b) Amnesty to Prisoners
 (c) Abolition of Tamgha and Mir Bahri
 (d) Confiscation of Madad-i-Mash lands
49. Kalanaur is known as a place of
 (a) Akbar's birth place
 (b) Proclamation of Akbar as the emperor
 (c) Marriage ceremony of Humayun
 (d) None of the above

50. Who among the following Mughal kings had sent Raja Ram Mohan Roy as his envoy to London?
 (a) Alamgir II (b) Shah Alam II
 (c) Akbar II (d) Bahadur Shah II
51. Name the person who wrote the history of Aurangzeb in total secrecy. What was the name of the work?
 (a) Aquil Khan Razi's Zafar Namah-i-Alamgiri
 (b) Khafi Khan's Munta Khab-ul-Lubar
 (c) Mirza Muhammad Kazim's Alamgir naham
 (d) Muhammad Saqi's Masir-i-Alamgiri
52. What was/ were the cause(s) of war of succession between the son of Shah Jahan?
 (a) Removal of Mir Mumla, a confident of Aurangzeb, from the office of wazir
 (b) Unfounded rumour of Shah Jaha's death and succession of Dara Shikoh to the throne.
 (c) Shah Jahan's special affection for Dara Shikoh, leading to rivalry between Dara Shikoh and Aurangzeb.
 (d) Both (b) and (c)
53. Which one of the following pairs is NOT correctly matched?
 (a) Afif Qandahari — Tarikh-o-Akbari
 (b) Nizamuddin — Tabaqat-i-Akbari
 (c) Abdul Qadir — Muntakhab-ut-Tawarikh
 (d) Mutamad Khan — Khulastut Tawarikh
54. Which one of the following pairs is Not correctly matched?
 (a) Gulbadan Begum — Humayunama
 (b) Khawand Mir — Qanum-i-Humayuni
 (c) Ziauddin Barani — Tarikh-i-Firuzshahi
 (d) Khwaja Kalan — Tazkira-i-Humayun Akbar
55. Which Mughal emperor prohibited the use of tobacco?
 (a) Babur (b) Jahangir
 (c) Aurangzeb (d) Muhammad Shah
56. Which one of the following pairs is NOT correctly matched?
 (a) Iqta : Revenue assignment for civil and military service
 (b) Mansab : Official status of the nobles in the sultanate administration
 (c) Khalisa : Directly administered land by the Mughal emperor
 (d) Ijara : A contractual system of revenue assignment
57. Which one of the following indicates the correct chronological order in which the four give important forts were captured by Emperor Akbar?
 (a) Asirgarh-Ranthambhor-Kalinjar-Merta
 (b) Merta-Kalinjar-Ranthambhor-Asirgarh
 (c) Asirgarh-Kalinjar-Ranthambhor-Merta
 (d) Merta-Ranthambhor-Kalinjar-Asirgarh
58. There was an unprecedented increase in the number of mansabdars during the reign of:
 (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Shahjahan (d) Aurangzeb
59. The do aspa, sih aspa rank in the mansabdari system was introduced by:
 (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Shah Jahan (d) Aurangzeb
60. During the reign of Jahangir, the title of Nair-ul-Asr was given to:
 (a) Mir Sayyid Ali (b) Abdus Samad
 (c) Abul Hasan (d) Ustad Mansur
61. Which one of the following pairs is correct matched?
 (a) Gulbadan Begum : Akbar
 (b) Abdul Hamid Lahori : Jahangir
 (c) Khafi Khan : Shahjahan
 (d) Zeb-un-Nissa : Bahadur Shah II
62. Which one of the following pairs is NOT correctly matched?
 (a) Ahmad Shah : Hazrat Gesu Daraz
 (b) Mahmud Begarha : Faizi Sarhindi
 (c) Akbar : Abdur Rahim Khan-i-Khanan
 (d) Jahangir : Muhammad Salih
63. Who invented the technique of extracting scent from Rose?
 (a) Maham Anga (b) Nurjahan
 (c) Mumtaz Mahal (d) Roshan Ara
64. Tobacco cultivation was introduced in the Deccan by the Portuguese during the 16th century. Tobacco smoking reached the Mughal Court because of which one of the following?
 (a) The Portuguese missionaries introduced it into the Mughal Court
 (b) The Mughal ambassador to Bijapur, Mirza Asad baig introduced it to Akbar
 (c) The soldiers of the Deccan spread this among the Mughal nobility
 (d) The farmers who took tobacco cultivation introduced this to the Mughal Court
65. Whose painting style was an immediate inspiration at the time of Babur's conquest of Delhi?
 (a) Mansur (b) Sayyid Ali
 (c) Bihzad (d) Miskin
66. Who among the following introduced the dahasala system of land revenue collection for the first time?
 (a) Babur (b) Humayun
 (c) Akbar (d) Shahjahan
67. Which one of the following pairs is NOT correctly matched?
 (a) Humayunamah : Gulbadan Begum
 (b) Tabaqat-I Akbari : Nizamudding Ahmad
 (c) Padshahnamah : Abdul Hamid Lahori
 (d) Futuhat-I Alamgiri : Mirza Muhammad Kazim
68. Which one of the following buildings is NOT located in Fatehpur Sikri?
 (a) Buland Darwaza
 (b) Anup Talao
 (c) Qila-i-Kuhna mosque
 (d) Panch Mahal

69. With reference to the Mughal administration, which one of the following statements is NOT correct?
- The Mughal artillery was under the charge of Mir-i-Atish
 - Supervision over the lands granted by the Emperors or princes to pious men, scholars and monks was under the charge of the chief Sadr
 - The imperial household was under the charge of Mir Manzil
 - The censorship of public morals was under the charge of Muhtasib
70. The first architectural achievement of Jahangir's reign in India was the construction of his father's mausoleum. Where was it built?
- Lahore
 - Shikohabad
 - Surat
 - Sikandara
71. Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was
- the mosque for the use of Royal Family
 - Akbar's private prayer chamber
 - the hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions
 - the room in which the nobles belonging to different religions gathered to discuss religious affairs
1. Among the following which Mughal Emperor introduced the policy of Sulh-i-kul?
- Babar
 - Humayun
 - Akbar
 - Shahjahan
72. Among the following which Mughal Emperor introduced the policy of Sulh-i-kul?
- Babar
 - Humayun
 - Akbar
 - Shahjahan
73. Who among the following was not a party to the coalition that fought against the English in the Battle of Buxar?
- Mir Kasim
 - Mir Jafar
 - Shuja-ud-daulah
 - Shah Alam II
74. Who among the following has issued the coin rupee for the first time?
- Muhammad bin Tughluq
 - Ala-ud-din Khilji
 - Sher Shah
 - Akbar
75. Which one among the following books was authored by a lady of the Mughal Royal House?
- Akbar Nama
 - Babur Nama
 - Humayun Nama
 - Badshah Nama
76. Which one among the following depicts the correct meaning of the term Tins-i-Kamil concerning crops in Mughal India?
- Paddy crop
 - Cash crop
 - Coarse crop
 - Crop grown, in the arid
77. Which of the following did not constitute part of the army reforms of Sher Shah?
- Keeping a large army at the centre
 - Introduction of a swiftly moving artillery
 - Cash payment to soldiers
 - Introduction of the practice of branding horses
78. Which of the statements given below about the Mughal rule in India is false ?
- Peasant communities were a united and homogeneous group
 - There was an abundance of food grain
 - The State encouraged these crops that brought in more revenue
 - Most regions produced two crops in a year
79. Between whom was the Battle of Chausa fought?
- Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and Humayun
 - Humayun and Sher Khan
 - Akbar and Rana Pratap
 - Jehangir and Rana Amar Singh
80. During Aurangzeb's reign, whose duty was it to see that people lived their lives in accordance with the 'Sharia'?
- Ahadis
 - Mansabhdars
 - Muhtasibs
 - Walashuhis
81. Who among the following had constructed the Red Fort in Delhi ?
- Akbar
 - Jahangir
 - Shah-Jahan
 - Aurangzeb

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Which of the following statements about Aurangzeb is true?
 - He was the greatest Mughal emperor.
 - He worked for the glory of the Mughal dynasty.
 - He dismissed tradition of music in his court.
 - His biggest enemy was marathas.
 Which of the above is/are correct?
 - 1 and 2
 - 3 and 4
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 2, 3 and 4
- The greatest literary achievement of the Mughal period can be said to be
 - preserving of official records in a systematic manner.
 - the replacement of religious bias by secular attitude among the men of letters and their patrons.
 - adoption of a common language to understand the thinking of the common people.
 - they expressed their intellectual knowledge through the paintings and sculptures.
 - 1 and 2
 - 3 and 4
 - 2 only
 - 2 and 4
- Which of the following statements about the revenue system of the Mughals is incorrect?
 - Land revenue was collected as a fixed share varying from 1/3 rd to 1/2 of the total produce.
 - Ryots were evicted from their holding for default of payment.
 - Akbar followed Sher Shah's land revenue system.
 - Patta system was started to control the cheatings of taxes by peasants.
 Which of the above is/are not correct?
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 2 and 3
 - 2 only
 - 4 only
- Consider the following statements-
 - Battle of Khanwa was fought between Akbar and Rana Sanga.
 - Battle of Khanwa was fought between Babur and Ranasanga in 1527 AD,
 - Humayun lived in exile about 15 years.
 - First battle of chunar was the landmarks for Humayun's military expedition
 Which of the above is/are correct?
 - 1 and 2
 - 3 and 4
 - 2 and 3
 - 1 and 4
- Which of the following was/were steps taken by Sher Shah to promote trade and commerce?
 - Making travel safe for trader.
 - Building a new highway between Delhi and Warangal.
 - Abolishing internal duties and levying taxes only at the points of import and sale.
 - Building sarais along roadways.
 - 1, 2 and 3
 - 2 and 3
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 1, 2, 3 and 4
- Why did reign of Shahjahan considered as the 'golden period' of Mughal empire?
 - Trade and commerce flourished.
 - There was no external threat to India. The country was safe and sound.
 - The territorial expansion was at its top.
 - Financially the state was comfortable.
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 2 and 3
 - 2, 3 and 4
 - 1, 2 and 4
- What was the reasons of the decline of Mughal empire ?
 - Aurangzeb's religious and political policy
 - Peasants became stronger
 - Zamidars became rebellion
 - Administration was centralised
 Which of the above is/are correct?
 - 1, 3 and 4
 - 2, 3 and 4
 - 1 and 4
 - 2 and 3
- Consider the following statements:
 - A war of succession started among the four sons of the Emperor Shahjahan in 1657 A.D.
 - There was no codified Law of Succession for the Mughal dynasty.
 Which of the statements given above is/are correct ?
 - 1 only
 - 2 only
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
- Name the person/persons who invited Babur to invade India.
 - Daulat Khan Lodi
 - Mahmud Lodi
 - Bhara Mal of Amber
 - Rana Sanga of Mewar
 - Alam Khan Lodi
 - 1, 2, 3
 - 2, 3, 4
 - 1, 4, 5
 - 3, 4, 5
- Which among the following titles was/were not assumed by the Mughal Emperor, Akbar?
 - Caliph
 - Ghazi
 - Imam
 - Mujahid
 - 1, 2, 3
 - 2, 3
 - Only 1
 - Only 2
- Arrange the following events of Jahagir's reign in the chronological order?
 - Captain Hawkin's visit to Jahangir's court.
 - Sir Thomas Aoe's arrival at Jahanir's court.
 - Mahabat Khan's revolt and capture of Jahangir.
 - Prince Khrram's revolt against his father.
 - Jahangir's marriage with Nur Jahan.
 - Issue of 12 famous ordinances.
 Choose the correct answer from the codes below:
 - 1, 2, 5, 6, 3 and 4
 - 6, 5, 1, 2, 4 and 3
 - 2, 4, 3, 5, 6 and 1
 - 6, 1, 5, 2, 4 and 3

12. Consider the following statements:
In 1560's Akbar began to patronise the formation of the Mughal school of painting with the illustration of Dastan-i-Amir Hamaza, because
1. Akbar inherited Humayun's taste for painting.
 2. Akbar was especially interested in book illustration.
 3. Akbar was persuaded to take interest in painting by Abdul Fazl.
- Of these statements:
- (a) 1, 2 and 3 are correct
 - (b) 2 and 3 are correct
 - (c) 1 and 2 are correct
 - (d) 1 and 3 are correct
13. Which of the following were the main features of the imperial Mughal land revenue system?
1. It varied according to the crop grown.
 2. It varied from region to region.
 3. It varied according to farming bids received.
 4. It varied according to individual contracts with village headmen.
- Select the correct answer by using the codes given below:
- (a) 2, 3 and 4
 - (b) 1 and 4
 - (c) 1 and 2
 - (d) 1 and 3
14. Consider the following professions:
1. Spinning
 2. Weaving
 3. Weeding and transplanting
 4. Rubble making and carrying bricks and plaster materials
- Which of the above professions were largely carried on by women workers in Mughal India as is evident from the Mughal miniatures and Glossaries?
- (a) 1, 3 and 4
 - (b) 1 and 4
 - (c) 1, 2 and 3
 - (d) 3 and 4
15. Consider the following statements related to the Mansabdari system of the Mughals:
1. Akbar introduced the Mansabdari system.
 2. Mansabdars were ranked according to the number of zats and sawars they had.
 3. Mansabdars were military officers only.
- Which of the above statements are correct?
- (a) 1, 2 and 3
 - (b) 1 and 2
 - (c) 2 and 3
 - (d) 1 and 3
16. Consider the following statements:
Hemu, who was defeated at the Second Battle of Panipat by Akbar's army, was a
1. minister and general of Adil Shah
 2. trader or Baniya by birth
 3. governor of Agra
 4. general of Sikandar Shah
- Which of the above statement (s) is/are correct?
- (a) 1 and 2
 - (b) 1, 2 and 3
 - (c) 2 and 4
 - (d) 1 alone
17. Consider the following statements:
Under Todar Mal's bandobast in Akbar's administration
1. the state was to advance loans to the cultivators which could be paid in easy annual instalments.
 2. Remissions of revenue were granted in bad season.
3. The revenue collectors were required to write officially annual reports about the word, character and integrity of their subordinates.
 4. the accounts were to be kept in Hindi
- Which of the statements given above are correct?
- (a) 1 and 2
 - (b) 1, 2 and 3
 - (c) 3 and 4
 - (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
18. Arrange the following events of Akbar's reign in the Chronological order:
1. Uzbek Rebellion
 2. Introduction of Dagh System
 3. Conquest of Kashmir
- Select the correct answer from the codes given below:
- Codes:**
- (a) 1, 2 and 3
 - (b) 2, 1 and 3
 - (c) 3, 2 and 1
 - (d) 2, 3 and 1
19. Which of the following Mughal emperors dismissed the chief 'Sadra' of the empire?
1. Akbar
 2. Jahangir
 3. Shahjahan
 4. Aurangzeb
- Select the correct answer from the codes given below:
- Codes:**
- (a) 1 and 2
 - (b) 1 and 3
 - (c) 2 and 3
 - (d) 1 and 4
20. Consider the following statements regarding duty of the Muhatsibs.
1. Check gambling dens and prostitution.
 2. Check and interfere in the private life of the citizens.
 3. Check weights and measures.
 4. See that intoxicants were not consumed in public places.
- Which of the above statements regarding the duty of Muhatsibs are correct?
- (a) 1 and 2 only
 - (b) 3 and 4 only
 - (c) 1, 3 and 4 only
 - (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4
21. Consider the following statements about the Treaty of Chittor
1. Mewar, including Chittor were restored to the Rana.
 2. Rana had to be personally present at the Mughal Court.
 3. Rana could not repair or re-fortify chittor.
- Which of the above statements is/are correct?
- (a) 1 only
 - (b) 1 and 2 only
 - (c) 1 and 3 only
 - (d) 1, 2 and 3
22. Arrange the following battles of the Mughal period in chronological order
1. Battle of Ghagara
 2. Battle of Kanauj
 3. Battle of Chausa
 4. Battle of Khanwa
- Select the answer from the codes given below:
- Codes:**
- (a) 4, 3, 1, 2
 - (b) 4, 1, 2, 3
 - (c) 4, 1, 3, 2
 - (d) 4, 2, 3, 1
23. Consider the following statements
1. Shah Jahan discontinued Jharokha darshan and Tula Dana.
 2. Shah Jahan refused to grant land to Shanti Das, the leading Jain Jeweller and banker of Ahmedabad to build a resting place for Jain saints.

33. **List-I (Books)**
- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. Alamgir namah | 1. Muitamad Khan |
| B. Tabaqat-i Akbari | 2. Munshi Mohd.Kazim |
| C. Chahar Chaman | 3. Chandra Bhan Brahman |
| D. Iqbal namah-i Jahangiri | 4. Nizamuddin Ahmad |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 4 | 2 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (d) | 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 |
34. Match the following:
- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| List-I | List-II |
| A. Revenue acceptance deed | 1. Patta |
| B. Market town | 2. Qabuliyat |
| C. Mughal silver coin | 3. Mohur |
| D. Revenue title deed | 4. Qasbah |
| E. Mughal gold coin | 5. Shahrukh |
- (a) A-2, B-3, C-1, D-4, E-5
 (b) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4, E-5
 (c) A-2, B-1, C-5, D-2, E-3
 (d) A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3, E-5
35. **List-I**
- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Battle of Samel | A. Defeat of Afghans under Ibrahim Lodhi by Babur. |
| 2. Battle of Bilgram | B. Defeat of Rajputs under Rana Sanga by Babur. |
| 3. Battle of Bhagara | C. Defeat of Afghans under Mahmud Lodi by Babur. |
| 4. Battle of Khanwa | D. Final defeat of Humayun by Sher Shah. |
| 5. First Battle of Panipat | E. Defeat of Rajputs under Maldeo of Marwar by Sher Shah. |
- (a) 1-E, 2-D, 3-C, 4-B, 5-A
 (b) 1-D, 2-C, 3-B, 4-A, 5-E
 (c) 1-C, 2-E, 3-D, 4-B, 5-A
 (d) 1-B, 2-A, 3-E, 4-C, 5-D
36. **List-I**
- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| Mughals | List-II |
| 1. Babur | Places of their Tombs |
| 2. Humayun | A. Kabul |
| 3. Akbar | B. Delhi |
| 4. Jahangir | C. Sikandra |
| 5. Shahajahan | D. Lahore |
| 6. Aurangzeb | E. Agra |
| | F. Aurangabad |
- (a) 1-A, 2-C, 3-B, 4-E, 5-F, 6-D
 (b) 1-A, 2-B, 3-C, 4-D, 5-E, 6-F
 (c) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-E, 5-F, 6-A
 (d) 1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A, 5-E, 6-F
37. **List-I (Event)**
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| A. Battle of Haldighati | 1. 1611 |
| B. Marriage of Jahangir with Nurjahan | 2. 1576 |
| C. The capture of Qandhar by Safavids | 3. 1680 |
| D. Death of Shivaji | 4. 1622 |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (b) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (d) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
38. **List-I (Monuments)**
- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| A. Taj Mahal | 1. Extensive use of trabeate forms |
| B. Fatehpur Palace | 2. Largest dome build in pre modern India complex |
| C. Gole Gumbad | 3. Surrounded by water |
| D. Sher Shah's tomb | 4. Bulbous dome |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| (b) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (c) | 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |
| (d) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
39. **List-I (Foreign Travellers)**
- | | |
|----------------|---------|
| A. Hawkins | 1. 1615 |
| B. Thomas Roe | 2. 1608 |
| C. Manucci | 3. 1585 |
| D. Ralph Fitch | 4. 1658 |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (b) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
40. **List-I**
- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| A. Aqa Riza | 1. Shirin Qalam |
| B. Ustad Mansur | 2. Nadir-uz-Zaman |
| C. Abdus Samad | 3. Nadir-ul-Asr |
| D. Mian Tansen | 4. Akbar |
- Codes:**
- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
41. **List-I (Books)**
- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Iyar Danish | 1. Abdul Hamid Lahori |
| B. Humayun Nama | 2. Khafi Khan |
| C. Badshah Nama | 3. Gulbadan Begum |
| D. Muntakhab-ul-Lubab | 4. Abul Fazl |

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	2	4	3
(b)	4	3	1	2
(c)	4	1	3	2
(d)	1	4	3	2

42. Consider the following:

The arrival of Babur into India led to the

1. introduction of gunpowder in the subcontinent
2. introduction of the arch and dome in the region's architecture
3. establishment of Timurid dynasty in the region

Select the correct answer using the code given below.

- (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 3 only
 (c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

43. Which one among the following pairs is correctly matched?

- (a) The Second Battle : Defeat of Jaichand of Kannauj of Tarain by Muhammad of Ghori
 (b) The First Battle of : Defeat of Sikander Lodhi by Panipat Babur
 (c) The Battle of Chausa: Defeat of Humayun by Sher Shah
 (d) The Battle of Khanwa : Defeat of Rana Pratap by Akbar

44. Which one among the following is not a function of Mir Bakshi, the Head of the Military Department as well as of the nobility under Mughal rule?

- (a) He made recommendations for appointment to Mansabs to the emperor
 (b) He collected reports of intelligence and information agencies of the empire and presented them to the emperor at the court
 (c) He was responsible for all incomes and expenditures and held control over Khalisa, Jagir and Inam lands
 (d) He was responsible for the security of foreign travellers on the highways of the empire

45. The Mansabdari system of the Mughals was a complex system. Its efficient functioning depended upon

1. the practice of offering the title of 'Mansabdar' to military personnel only.

2. proper functioning of the dagh (branding) system.

3. proper functioning of the jagirdari system.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 1 (b) 1 and 3
 (c) 2 and 3 (d) All of these

46. Consider the following statements about Sher Shah's administration

1. He divided his empire into Sarkars, which were further subdivided into Parganas.
2. The Sarkars and the Parganas were directly administered by Sher Shah without the help of any other officials.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

47. Which of the following Mughal emperors spent a greater part of his reign to overthrow the Deccan Kingdoms?

- (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Shahjahan (d) Aurangzeb

48. Consider the following statements :

- (1) The Ain-i Akbari is the third book in the Akbarnama written during the reign of the Mughal Emperor, Akbar.
- (2) Abul Fazl was the author of the first two books of the Akbarnama while Akbar was the author of the third.
- (3) The best known accounts of illustrated Mughal official reports are the Akbarnama and the Babarnama.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct ?

- (a) 1 only (b) 1 and 3 only
 (c) 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (c) Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was the hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions on every Thursday to debate on religious issues raised by Akbar.
2. (d) Mansabdari system was introduced in 1595–96, was a combined status showing a noble's civil and military capacity.
3. (b)
4. (c) He was defeated by his nephew, Farrukh Siyyar with the help of Sayyid Brothers.
5. (c)
6. (d) Aurangzeb spent most of his time in defeating the south dynasties and died at Burhanpur in 1707 A.D.
7. (b) The Battle of Khanwa (1527) was the second of the series of three major battles. The first battle of Panipat was the first of the series, the battle of Ghaghra was the last. This battle was fought near the village of Khanwa, about 60 km west of Agra on March 17, 1527. Babur defeated a formidable army raised by Rana Sanga of Mewar in this battle and firmly established his rule over North India.
8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (d) 11. (c) 12. (a)
13. (a) 14. (a) 15. (a) 16. (a) 17. (b)
18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (a)
21. (d) Sachiv was the minister in charge of royal correspondence. Pandit Rao – religious matter
22. (b) 23. (b)
24. (a) Governor of Bengal was the infamous Qazi Fazihat or Qazi Fazilat during the reign of Sher Shah.
25. (b) Dawar Baksh was proclaimed as Mughal emperor by Asaf Khan on Jahangir's death to ensure Khurram's (Shahjahan's) enthronement. Upon the death of Jahangir, in order to secure the accession of Shahjahan, Asaf Khan, the brother of Nur Jahan, brought Dawar Baksh out of confinement, declared him king and sent him to Lahore.
26. (c) Hawkins was well versed in the Turkish language, received a Mansab of 400 and the title of 'English Khan' or 'Firangi Khan'.
27. (c) Babur wrote his autobiography in Turki language. It is an autobiographical work, written in the Chagatai language, known to Babur as "Turki" (meaning Turkic), the spoken language of the Andijan-Timurids. Babur's prose is highly Persianized in its sentence structure, morphology, and vocabulary, and also contains many phrases and smaller poems in Persian.
28. (c)
29. (c) Emperor Akbar conferred the title of 'Jagat Guru' on Harivijay Suri. 1526–1595 C.E: Muni Hiravijayji Suri was the supreme pontiff of Tapa Gachcha order of Jain Svetambara tradition. He is famous for propounding the Jain philosophy to emperor Akbar and turning him towards vegetarianism. Akbar was so impressed with Hiravijaya Suri that he bestowed on him the title of Jagat Guru. Akbar almost denounced meat eating and almost turned to vegetarianism due to inspiration from him.
30. (a)
31. (d) The year 1581 AD of Akbar's reign has been regarded by the historian Vicent A. Smith as the most critical time.
32. (c) There were several types of Mughal light artillery. If carried on the back of a man, they were called Narnal; if carried on backs of elephants Gajal, if on backs of camels Shutrnal.
33. (a) 34. (a) 35. (b) 36. (a) 37. (c)
38. (d) Humayun's tomb at Delhi is placed in the centre of a large garden and resembles as a prototype of the Taj Mahal. Fourteen years after Humayun's death, Hamida Banu Begam also known as Haji Begam commenced the construction of his tomb. It is the first proper example of the Mughal style influenced by Persian architecture. Mirak Mirza Ghiyath, a Persian architect was employed for this job. It is now a UNESCO World heritage site. The tomb's centre piece is the tomb. This is believed to be the predecessor or prototype of Agra's Taj Mahal.
39. (b) 40. (b) 41. (c) 142. (c) 42. (c)
43. (b)
44. (c) In 1628, Shahjahan faced a major revolt by Khan Jahan Lodi. He had united with the ruler of Ahmednagar and came out in open rebellion against the emperor. The aggression by Khan Jahan came to an end by the year 1960, when he surrendered and died near the fort of Kalinjar.
45. (b)
46. (b) Jahandar Shah ascended the throne after the death of Bahadur Shah I. The death of Bahadur Shah was followed by the usual struggle among his four sons for the throne. Jahandar Shah, the eldest son of Bahadur Shah, killed his two brothers in the battle which was fought on March 27 to 28, 1712 AD ultimately, Jahandar Shah ascended the throne on March 29, 1712 AD.
47. (d)
48. (b) Kalanaur is known as a place of proclamation of Akbar as the emperor. In Kalanaur, Punjab, the 13-year-old Akbar was enthroned by Bairam Khan

- on a newly constructed platform, which still stands. He was proclaimed Shahanshah (Persian for "King of Kings"). Bairam Khan ruled on his behalf until he came of age.
49. (c) Akbar II had sent Raja Ram Mohan Roy as his envoy to London. Akbar had little de-facto power due to the increasing British control of India through the East India Company. Shortly before his death, he sent Ram Mohan Roy as an ambassador to Britain.
50. (b) 51. (d) 52. (d) 53. (d) 54. (b)
55. (b) 56. (d) 57. (d) 58. (d) 59. (d)
60. (a) 61. (b) 62. (b) 63. (c) 64. (c)
65. (c) 66. (d) 67. (c) 68. (c) 69. (c)
70. (d)
71. (c) Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur Sikri was the hall in which Akbar held discussions with scholars of various religions on every Thursday to debate on religious issues raised by Akbar.
72. (c) Akbar ruled with a social and religious toleration that was relative, not absolute, and was based on his concept of sulh-i-kul (for the general good of all people) which built on his liberal views of religion. Akbar took the Sufi mystic notion of sulh-i-kul and transformed it to become a principle denoting amity within a culturally pluralistic India.
73. (b) It was a significant battle fought between the forces under the command of the British East India Company on the one side and the combined army of Mir Kasim, the Nawab of Bangal, Nawab of Awadh and Shah Alam II, the Mughal Emperor. Mir Jafar was a puppet of British East India Company.
74. (c) The first Rupee (Silver coin) was introduced by Sher Shah and was called "Rupia" which remained in use throughout the Mughal rule.
75. (c) Gulbadan Begum (daughter of Babur) was the author of Humayun Nama.
76. (b) In Mughal period Cash crops were called Tins-i-Kamil or jins-i-ala.
77. (b) Sher Shah did not introduce swiftly moving artillery. Sher Shah effected many military reforms in order to save the country from foreign invasions and internal revolt. With the object of organising the Army, Sher Shah began to pay the soldiers their salary in cash; maintained their respective roles; brandished the horses etc.
78. (a) Peasant Communities were heterogeneous group on the basis of caste and other caste like distinctions.
79. (b) The Battle of Chausa was fought between Mughal ruler Humayun and Sher Khan in 1539. In this battle Sher Khan defeated Humayun and became India's emperor.
80. (c) 81. (c)
- four sons. Shah Jahan favoured the succession of his eldest son, the liberal-minded Dara Shikoh. Aurangzeb, the third son, opposed Shah Jahan. Arriving at Delhi, after imprisoning his father at Agra, he crowned himself king in 1658.
9. (c) 10. (d) 11. (d) 12. (c) 13. (c)
14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (a) 17. (b)
18. (a) The correct chronological order of the events of Akbar's reign were; Uzbek Rebellion, introduction of Dagh System and Conquest of Kashmir. Uzbek chiefs broke out in rebellion in 1564, Akbar decisively defeated and routed them in Malwa and then Bihar. He pardoned the rebellious leaders, hoping to conciliate them. But they rebelled again, so Akbar had to quell their uprising a second time. Ali Shah surrendered immediately to the Mughals, but another of his son, Yaqub, crowned himself as king, and led a stubborn resistance to Mughal armies. Finally, in June, 1589, Akbar himself travelled from Lahore to Srinagar to receive the surrender of Yaqub and his rebel forces.
19. (d) Akbar and Aurangzeb were the Mughal emperors who dismissed the chiefs 'Sardars' of the empire.
20. (c) Regarding the duty of Muhatsibs, they checked gambling dens and prostitution. They checked weights and measures. They also saw that intoxicants were not consumed in public places. The Muhatsibs appointed by Aurangzeb failed to improve the lives of the people.
21. (c) Regarding the treaty of Chittor Mewar including Chittor was restored to the Rana. The treaty between Amar Singh and Mughal King Jahangir had some obligations that fort of Chittor would not be repaired and Mewar would have to keep a contingent of 1000 horses in the Mughal service. Besides Amar Singh would not have to be present at any of the Mughal Darbars.
22. (c)
23. (a) During the beginning of his rule, Shahjahan used to favour Islam, but as the time rolled by he became tolerant to other religions, and kept continuing the 'Jharokha Darshan' 'Tuladaan' and Tilak on the forehead of the Hindu Kings. He donated lands to Shanti Das, a jeweller and banker, to construct inns for Jain saints. He also had Hindu poets like Pt. Jagannath, Kavindracharya, Chintamani, and Sunder Das.
24. (d) 25. (d)
26. (d) Gulbadan Begum composed the Humayun Nama. Ishwar Das Nagar composed Futuhat-i-Alamgiri. Xahiya bin Ahmad composed Tarikh-i-Mubarakshahi. Abbas Khan sarwani composed Tarikh-i-Shershahi Gulbadan Begum was daughter of Mughal Emperor Babur, she is the author of Humayun Nama, the account of the life of her half-brother, Humayun. Ishwar Das Nagar composed Futuhat-i-Alamgiri which is history of Aurangzeb's reign. Tarikh-i-Mubarakshahi was written by yahiya-bin-Ahmad Sirhindi in which A detailed account of

EXERCISE-2

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (c)
6. (d) 7. (a)
8. (c) In the absence of a well-defined law of succession a terrible civil war broke out among Shah Jahan's

- Mubarak Shah's reign (Sayyid dynasty) is available. The Tarikh-i-Sher Shahi is a historical work compiled by Abbas Khan Sarwani, a waqia-navis, who detailed the rule of emperor Sher Shah Suri.
27. (b) Akbar built the Buland Darwaza and Fatehpur Sikri. Alauddin Khilji built the Alai Darwaza of Delhi. Aurangzeb built the moti masjid of Delhi. Shahjahan built the moti masjid of Agra.
28. (c) Tuzuk-i-Babri was composed by Babar. Humayun Nama was composed by Gulbadan Begum. Akbarnama was composed by Abul Fazal while Tujuk-i-Jahangiri was composed by Jahangir.
29. (b) Battle of Bahadurgarh occurred in Feb. 1658. Battle of Dharmat happened in April, 1658. Battle of Samugarh happened in June 1658. Battle of Deorai happened in April, 1659.
30. (a) Babar — Jami Majid (Sambhal)
Humayun — Din Panah
Akbar — Jhangiri Mahal
Jahangir — Akbar's Mausoleum
31. (d) Babar's tomb is in Kabul. Humayun's tomb placed in Delhi. Akbar's tomb placed in Sikandara. Jahangir's tomb placed in Lahore.
32. (c) Iqta was introduced by Delhi Sultans while Jagir was introduced by Mughals. Amaram was introduced by Vijaynagar empire. Mokasa was introduced by Maratha. 'Iqta' is an Arabic word, which became a tool of administration in Islamicate traditions. The land pieces assigned to military chiefs were called as Amaram during Vijayanagar empire. Two-thirds of the collections however remained with the Maratha sardars who collected the taxes and they used it for maintaining their troops for the chhatrapati. This part of the levy was called mokasa. The chauth along with sardeshmukhi levies ensured a steady and large stream of income for the Marathas and helped them expand their armies beyond the swarajya territories of Shivaji.
33. (d) 34. (c) 35. (a) 36. (b) 37. (a)
38. (d) 39. (a) 40. (a) 41. (b)
42. (b) In the fourteenth and fifteenth century gun powder was used for military purpose in India and even artillery in its rudimentary form was known. The Babur's first real expedition took place in India in 1519 when he captured Bhera. The Delhi Sultanate's greatest contribution to Indian fine arts was the introduction of Islamic architectural features, including true domes and arches, and the integration of Indian and Islamic styles of architecture. The Timurid dynasty was a Sunni Muslim dynasty. Members of the Timurid dynasty were strongly influenced by the Persian culture and had established two well-known empires in history, namely the Timurid Empire (1370-1507) in Persia and Central Asia and the Mughal Empire (1526-1857) in the Indian subcontinent.
43. (b) First Battle of Panipat (1526) was fought between two mega-powers- Babur, then ruler of Kabul and Ibrahim Lodhi, king of Delhi Sultanate. It was fought near Panipat (present day Haryana). Babur won the battle and established the Mughal Empire. Second Battle of Panipat (1556) was fought between Akbar (Ruler of Mughal Dynasty) and Muhammad Adil Shah (ruler of Pashtan Suri Dynasty), along with his Prime Minister Hemu. Third Battle of Panipat (1761) was fought between the Afghans and the Marathas. The battle lasted for two months which ultimately resulted in the defeat of Marathas and end of their dominance in India.
44. (a) Recommendation for appointment to mansabs to the Emperor is not a function of Mir Bakhshi . The duties of Mir Bakhshi included-
The recruitment of the army maintaining a list of mansabdars with their postings.
Keeping a roster of the Palace guards.
Preparing the rules as to grants of pay keeping up a list of officers paid in cash, and an abstract of the total paybills.
The superintendence of the mustering for branding and verifying the troopers' horses and the orders subsidiary thereto.
45. (c) Mansabdari was a system of army and civil services introduced by Akbar in place of the Jagirdari system. The 'Mansab' is an Arabic word meaning rank or position or status of a person. During the early reign of Akbar, the lowest grade was ten and the highest was 5000. Akbar introduced the rank of 'Zat' and 'Sawar' in the Mansabdari system.
46. (a) Sher Shah divided the entire Kingdom in 47 divisions and called them "Sarkars". These Sarkars were divided into Parganas. Every Pargana was under a Shikqdar, who looked into the law and order of his Pargana.
47. (d) Aurangzeb spent most of his time in defeating the south dynasties and died at Burhanpur in 1707 A.D.
48. (d) The first volume of Akbarnama deals with the birth of Akbar, the history of Timur's family and the reigns of Babur and Humayun and the Suri sultans of Delhi. The second volume describes the detailed history of the reign of Akbar till 1602, and records the events during Akbar's reign. The third volume is named Ain-i-Akbari and details the administrative system of the Empire as well as containing the famous "Account of the Hindu Sciences". It also deals with Akbar's household, army, the revenues and the geography of the empire. It also produces rich details about the traditions and culture of the people living in India. It is famous for its rich statistical details about things as diverse as crop yields, prices, wages and revenues. Baburnama (alternatively known as Tuzk-e Babri) is the name given to the memoirs of Zahir ud-Din Muhammad Babur (1483 – 1530), founder of the Mughal Empire and a great-great-great-grandson of Timur.

UNIT-III : MODERN HISTORY



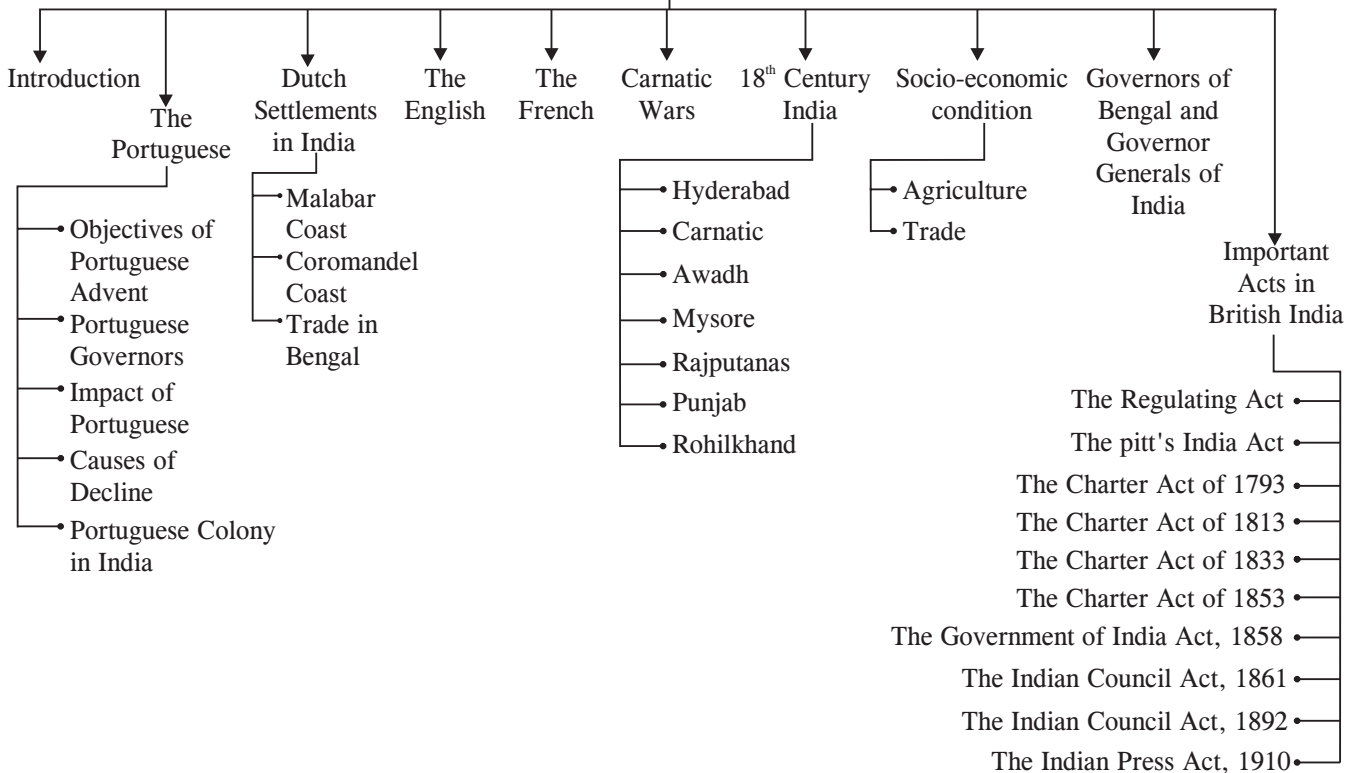
CHRONOLOGY OF THE BRITISH INDIA

16 Chapter

Introduction

Europeans had a great demand for Indian products such as Indian spices like *pepper*, *cinnamon*, *cardamom*, *ginger* and such other things which provoked them to start trading in India. At that time the commercial activities of Asia was being controlled by the *Arabs*. In 1400 AD trade was proved to be immensely profitable and *Italy* was treated as a distribution centre for the spices obtained from India. The sea voyage of Europeans had started in India much before the establishment of Moghul Empire as they were well aware of India's prosperity.

Chronology of the British India



THE PORTUGUESE

In 1498, a Portuguese navigator, *Vasco da Gama*, came to Calicut on the western coast of India for the first time with a motive of trading. With this, he became *the first European* to re-establish trade relations with India. Primarily his finding was confined only to find new trade route from *Europe to Asia via Cape of Good Hope*. He was well-received by the Zamorin of Calicut. He returned back to Portugal in 1499 AD. His second visit to India was in 1502 followed by the arrival of *Pedro Alvarez Cabral* in 1500 which led to the establishment of Portuguese Trading Centers at *Calicut, Cannanore and Cochin*.

Objective of Portuguese Advent:

- The maritime empire of Portuguese was named as *Estado da India*, which were primarily confined to the control of Indian export to Europe but in later age they monopolised the port-to-port *trade on the Malabar Coast* and trade from *Indian to Persian Coast*.
- Initially their trade was restricted only to export spices from India but later on they had shifted their focus to other valuable items such as *wheat, rice, silk and precious stone*.
- The growth of European trade was hampered by sending fleet annually so the term was extended on three year basis by the Portuguese Governors.

Portuguese Governors:

Francisco De Almeida(1505-1509)

1. He was the *First governor and viceroy* of Portuguese India, appointed by King Manuel I of Portugal
2. He erected forts in *Anjediva, Cochin, Cannanore*, and refused to cede office until after Battle of Diu.
3. He initiated the *Blue Water Policy*, which aimed at the Portuguese Mastery of the Sea and confined portuguese relationship with India only for the purpose of trade & commerce.

Alfonzo-De-Albuquerque (1509-1550):

1. He was the second Portuguese Governor and Viceroy of India who controlled Persian gulf and Red sea; established head quarters on western coast of India and destroyed the Arab Trade in Malay Peninsula.
2. He conquered Goa in 1510 from the Sultan of Bijapur.
3. He encouraged the propagation of Christianity & inter-marriage with the natives
4. He died at *Table Bay*, on return voyage, in march 1510.

The Impact of Portuguese:

1. The Portuguese began to spread Christianity in the *Malabar & the Konkan coast*. Missionaries like *St. Francis Xavier, Father Rudolf & Father Monserette* played a leading role in propagating the Christian faith.

2. The Missionaries started schools & colleges along the west coast, where education was imparted in the native language.
3. The missionaries undertook research on Indian history and culture. The Portuguese brought *the printing press* to India. The Bible came to be printed in the Kannada & Malayalam language.
4. The Portuguese brought some crops to India like *Tobacco*, some fruits & vegetables were also introduced by him *potatoes, lady's finger, chilly, pineapple, sapota, groundnuts*, etc.

Causes for Decline of Portuguese:

1. After Albuquerque the Portuguese administration in India became inefficient because his successor were *weak & inefficient*.
2. The Portuguese officials were neglected by the home government. Their salaries were low. Thus they indulged in *corruption and malpractice*.
3. The Portuguese adopted *forced inter-marriage & conversion to the Christian faith* which made the natives hostile.
4. In 1580 *Portugal was merged with Spain* which neglected the Portuguese interest in India.
5. The Portuguese has to face the *stiff competition of the Dutch* in India.
6. *Portuguese discovered Brazil* which diverted their attention from India.

Portuguese Colony in India:

Establishment of trading stations gave rise to small colonies of Portuguese had also been developed in the coastal part of India, such as *Calicut, Cochin, Cannanore, Daman, Salsette, Chaul, Bombay, San Thome near Madras* and *Hoogli* in Bengal. **Cochin** was the first capital of Portuguese in India which later shifted to *Goa* by *Nino da Cunha*.

THE DUTCH

The Portuguese enjoyed trade monopoly over the Arabian Sea till the 17th century. The complete monopoly of the Dutch over trade and commerce of Indonesia was another reason as to why they left India. The decline of Portuguese had started with the advent of Dutch in 1605. The Dutch East India Company of Netherlands was formed in 1592 to trade with East Indies. *Cornelis Houtman* was the first Dutch to come to India. The Dutch established trading centres at *Nagapatnam* in Tamil Nadu, *Machlipatnam* in Andhra Pradesh, *Chinsora* in Bengal & at *Mahe* on the Malabar Coast. The headquarters of the Dutch in India was **Nagapatnam**. The Dutch could not withstand the stiff competition of the Portuguese and the English and thus left India.

Techniques of Trade:

1. Dutch occupied the Indian subcontinent from 1605 to 1825 with an aim of trade of various items.
2. Merchants of the *Dutch East India Company* first established themselves in *Dutch Coromandel*, notably **Pulicat**, as they were looking for textiles to exchange with the spices they traded in the East Indies.
3. Apart from textiles, the items traded in Dutch India include *precious stones, indigo*, and silk across the Indian Peninsula, *saltpeter* and *opium* in Dutch Bengal, and *pepper* in Dutch Malabar.
4. The excellent business techniques of Dutch can be illustrated from the fact that they started trading without the interference of middle man to earn maximum profit.
5. They became commercially active in India and they introduced coins to be used in trading with local importance.

Dutch Settlements in India:

Like Portuguese the Dutch union too established their settlements along the coasts of India which were of commercial interests. Important among them were:

(i) Malabar Coast :

Though primarily the Dutch opted for Malabar coast of India, later they found it to be less profitable as the spice trade of Malabar was less valuable than cloth trade of Coromandel Coast. **Vengurla** was the only coast occupied by Dutch. After a bitter struggle of Power the Dutch were defeated by the English in the *Battle of Bedara*, 1759.

(ii) Coromandel Coast:

Admiral Van Hagen started trade with then *Coromandel Coast* by setting up permanent settlement in **Masulipatnam** in early 1605. Soon another factory was founded at *Devanampatnam* (Tegnapatnam) or *Fort St. David*. In 1610 AD Dutch established another factory on the *Pulicat coast* and named it as *Fort Geldria* in honour of the home province of Van Berchem, the Director General of the **Coromandel Factories**.

(iii) Trade in Bengal

The Dutch East India Company started trading with Bengal from 1615. In 1627, a trading post was established in *Pipli*. In addition they set up colonies at *Chinsurah* adjacent to Hooghly during 1627 which facilitated trade in *opium, salt, muslin and spices*. A fort called *Fort Gustavius*, a church and several other buildings were built. A famous Frenchman, **General Perron** who served as military advisor to the Mahrattas, was also settled in this Dutch colony near Bengal Coast. They have also settled factories in Pipli which later on shifted to *Balasore*, but remained in neglected state as the focus was maximum on Chinsura.

THE ENGLISH

Captain Williams Hawkins was the first English who came to India with a purpose of trade during the tenure of *Mughal Emperor Jehangir* & received permission to do the same at *Surat*. Initially both Indians and Europeans were benefitted

by the trade. During these early days, the British fought with other Europeans to gain monopoly over trade. In the early part of the 17th century the British were able to *overcome the Portuguese* in these conflicts. They became victorious even against the Dutch towards the end of the 18th century.

- After Captain Williams Hawkins, **Captain Best** came to India and got permitted to start a factory at Surat.
- He defeated the Portuguese in the *Battle of Swalley* near Surat.
- In 1615, **Sir Thomas Roe** visited the court of *Jehangir* and obtained *trade concessions*.
- With due course of time several trading centers were emerged at different places in India such as *Madras, Machalipatnam, Hariharpur, Balasore, Kasim bazaar and Hoogly*.
- The company obtained *Bombay* from the English King **Charles II** who received it as a part of dowry, when he married the Portuguese Princess Catherine.
- The English acquired three villages in Bengal which later developed to become *Calcutta*. The later Moghul Emperor Farookhsiyar granted the English the firman which permitted them to carry on duty free trade in Bengal. The Headquarters of the English Company in India was *Madras*.
- During this phase the internal conflicts of kings had gone up to great extents which incited the English to take part in the internal wars of the kings. They started helping the kings with their military tricks and troops and sometimes their alliance had a great victory over the enemies which made English rapacious and they started taking undue advantages from winning party.
- Thus the English permanently settled in India till 1947. In 1707 the different trading companies came together to form the "*United Company of the Merchants of England trading to East Indies*". It was this Company which carried on trade & commerce with India till 1857.

Exports: Textile woven with specific patterns were the main attraction of trade with British East India Company followed by indigo, saltpeter, and Opium.

Imports: The prime products imported at Coromandel Coasts were sandalwood and pepper from Archipelago, Copper from Japan and Textile from China.

THE FRENCH

- French were the last European community which came to India during 1664 AD. The French East India Company was established by Jean Baptiste Colbert, the Minister of Louis XIV, the Bourbon king of France. They were authorized to carry on commerce and establish colonies in the East Indies.
- The first French Factory had established in *Surat* in 1667 under the state patronage of Gujarat. In 1669 the second French factory was established at *Masulipatnam* by securing patent from the *Sultan of Golconda*.
- The well-known French Viceroy in India is **Franco Martin**. He extended the French commercial activities

in India by establishing French settlements at Balasore, Chinsurah Masulipatnaam, and *Pondicherry*. Among which Pondicherry was considered to be the most important settlement of French and hence designated as the Headquarters of French in India.

French Governors

Joseph-Francois Dupleix, the most powerful Governor of French possessions was appointed in 1742. He had entered into agreements with native rulers so as to fulfil his dream of establishing French Supremacy over India. During his governance French power reached its peak. He succeeded in establishing his supremacy over the Carnatic and the Deccan which became a threat to British. But towards the end of his term the French started losing their ground to British in 1753-54. In early 1760 they completely lost their power and position to British in India. This Anglo- French rivalry can be best illustrated by the three Carnatic wars fought between French and English from 1745 to 1763.

CARNATIC WARS

(a) **First Carnatic War (1746 A.D. - 1748 A.D.):**

- Also known as : *Battle of Thomas*.
- Parties involved : *French forces Vs. Forces of Anwarud-din*, the Nawab of Carnatic backed by English people. **Consequences** : *Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle* was signed and Madras was handed over to English again. French got territories of South India.

(b) **Second Carnatic War (1749 A.D. - 1754 A.D.):**

- Parties Involved : *Dupleix along with Chanda Sahib Vs. Nasirjang and Muhammad Ali* supported by British
- Consequences : The party of Muhammad Ali defeated Chanda sahib and captured Trichinopoly.

(c) **Third Carnatic War (1757 A.D. - 1763 A.D.):**

- Also known as: *The seven year's war*
- Parties involved : French vs English
- Consequences : The treaty started with capturing French colonies of Chandan Nagar by British in 1757 and concluded with termination of Peace of Paris treaty.

18th CENTURY INDIA

With the descent of mighty Mughal Empire, a large number of new states started growing all over India in 18th century. They continued to remain prominent till 20th century. These autonomous states were established with their own viable economic as well as law and order systems. In addition the administrations of individual states were having a good control over the surplus production of the peasants which helped them to establish the local centers of power and patronage.

The newly formed states were Hyderabad, Carnatic, Bengal, Awadh, Mysore, Rajputana and Punjab.

Hyderabad

- The state of Hyderabad was first envisaged by the Viceroy of Deccan, *Zulfiqar Khan* who administered the state with the help of *Daud Khan* since 1708.

- Later he appointed *Nizam-ul-Mulk* as the Subedar of Deccan who succeeded in laying the foundation of the state with his witty political understandings.
- He played a crucial role in overthrowing *Sayyid brothers*.
- As a Wazir he ruled his land as the sole authority but without being independent by the Central Government.
- He practiced tolerant policies towards Hindus as he had appointed *Puran Chand* as his Diwan.
- The orderly administration was quiet similar to that of Jagirdari System of the Mughal Empire.
- Marathas were kept aloof of his dominion, but after his death Hyderabad became the victim for Delhi Sultanate.

Carnatic

- It came under the rule of Nizam of Hyderabad as one of the subas of Mughal Dynasty.
- The Nawab of the Carnatic, *Saadullah Khan* freed himself from the support of the Viceroy of the Deccan by taking advantage of the weakness of Nizam.
- He also appointed his nephew *Dost Ali* as his successor without the formal approval of his superior and the legacy continued up to 1740 in hereditary term.

Awadh

- *Saadat Khan Burhan- ul-Mulk* was the founder of the *Kingdom of Awadh*. who was appointed as the Governor of Awadh in 1722.
- Being a successful soldier and a wise ruler he managed to suppress the refractory zamindars and carried out a *revenue settlement* in 1723 which protected the interests of the ryots.
- The jurisdiction of Awadh extended to *Banaras, Ghazipur, Jaunpur and Chunar* under his administration but he got arrested by the military of *Nadir Shah* in the *Battle of Karnal* and committed suicide so as to save himself from dishonour.
- The next governor of Awadh was Safdar Jung , the nephew and son-in-law of Saadat Khan, who had to carry on his war against the Rohillas
- He signed an agreement with Marathas against Ahmad Shah Abdali with a declaration that Marathas were to be paid ₹ 50 lakhs, granted the *Chauth of the Punjab, Sindh and the Doab* in addition to the *Subahdari of Ajmer and Agra*. However the agreement could not last long and failed as the the Peshwa went over to Safdar Jung's enemies at Delhi.
- After the death of Safdar Jung his son Shuja-ud Daula took over Awadh Empire and later became the Wazir of Delhi.
- He signed an agreement with the Nawab of Bengal, *Mir Qasim* as well as with the Emperor *Shah Alam II*, against the Company. He suffered a crushing defeat in the *Battle of Buxar* in October 1764.

Mysore

- Mysore was evolved as an autonomous yet most powerful state of south India during early 18th century under the rule of *Hyder Ali*.
- He was appointed as the *Faujdar of Dindigul* in 1755 during the service of Nanjaraja.
- In a very short period he could recognize the military techniques of West and started applying it on his own troop.
- Two major wars were being fought against British under his leadership known as *Anglo-Mysore War I and II* among which he died in the second war.
- After his death his son took *Tipu Sultan* took over the charge of Mysore and fought the remaining battle of *Anglo-Mysore War II*. He defeated the British and signed the *Treaty of Mangalore*.
- The Marathas and Nizams made alliance along with British sensing the growing power of Tipu Sultan.
- The third *Anglo-Mysore War* was the result of the conflict between the newly formed alliance and Tipu Sultan where he lost nearly half of his territory.
- Finally in the fourth *Anglo-Mysore war* Tipu Sultan completely lost his territory.

Rajputanas

- The Rajputanas took advantages of weak government of Mughal dynasty and freed themselves from the central control of Mughal Empire.
- The Rajput States were often divided among themselves and engaged in petty quarrels and civil wars.
- *Raja Jai Singh of Amber* (1699-1743) was considered to be the most eminent ruler of Rajputana during 18th Century. He founded the city of *Jaipur* on strict architectural principle.
- As a powerful Astronomer, he erected observatories with sophisticated instruments at *Delhi, Jaipur, Ujjain, Varanasi and Mathura* and drew up a set of tables to enable people to make astronomical observations.
- He enforced a law to check the lavish expenditure in daughter's wedding.
- But in late 18th century Rajputana was conquered by Marathas.

Punjab

- The kingdom of Punjab was established by Maharaja Ranjit Sing who conquered Kashmir, Peshawar and Multan at a stretch.
- As an efficient administrator and skillful diplomat he built up powerful, well-equipped, army along European lines with the help of European structure. His troop consisted of people from various parts of India.
- He was a tolerant leader in terms of religion and this can be illustrated from the fact that he appointed both Hindu and Muslim minister in his court.

- During Afgans advancement the British forced Ranjit Singh to sign the *Treaty of Tripartite* in 1838 which gave freedom to the British troops to pass through Punjab.

Rohilkhand

- It was established by Afghan adventurer Muhammad *Khan Bangash* which was extended around the territory of Farukhabad.
- When Nadir Shah invaded India, Ali Muhammad Khan Bangash carved out a separate principality known as *Rohilkhand* at the foothills of Himalayas between Ganga in South and Kumaon Hills in the North, Aolan in Bareilly and later at Rampur.

SOCIO-ECONOMIC CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE

The eighteenth century society witnessed two extreme situation of socio-economic condition which stopped its progress socially, culturally and economically. Extreme poverty existed joining hands in hand with extreme rich. The multi layered society was structured on the basis of religion, region, tribe, language, class and caste etc. The increasing revenue demands of the state, the oppression and rapacity of the Zamindars, revenue farmers and the deprecation of the adventurers made the life of the people miserable. The lower strata of the society had to bear all sorts injustice and inequalities imposed to them by the upper class. Agriculture was the primary occupation of the people followed by trade.

Agriculture

Though it was the primary occupation of the lower strata of the society of 18th century, it was not much developed. The peasant were used to the age old practices of cultivation which was unable to provide them with greater yield from their piece of land. Additionally the taxes and revenues imposed on them by the Zamindars made the condition even more pathetic. The peasants worked hard with the old technology to get more productivity but all were in vain as the Zamindars, Jagirdars and revenue farmers collected maximum amount of the production.

Trade

Trading was the major look out of the people coming under higher strata of the society and extensive trade within and outside the countries were carried out during the Mughal Period.

Different products were being imported from various countries such as *pearls, raw silk, wools, dates, dried fruits, and rose water* from *Persian Gulf*; *coffee, gold, drugs and honey* from *Arabia*; *tea, sugar, porcelain, and silk* from *China*; *gold, musk, woolen clothes* from *Tibet*; *Tin* from *Singapore*, *spices, perfumes, arrack and sugar* from *Indonesia*; *ivory and drugs* from *Africa*; *woolen clothes and metal such as iron, copper, lead and paper* from *Europe*.

As India was rich and self sufficient in some of the product such as *cotton textile, wheat, rice, silk, opium, sugar, pepper, spices precious stones* etc, these are largely exported from India to other parts of the world. Consequently export of India was more than its import.

GOVERNORS OF BENGAL AND GOVERNOR GENERALS OF INDIA

Name and Tenure	Well Known For	War fought
Robert Clive (1758-60) and (1765-67)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Diarchey of Dual Government</i> of Bengal from 1765-72. • Considered one of the creators of British power in India. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Battle of Plassey</i> (1757) • <i>Battle of Condore</i> (1758)
Henry Vansittart (1760-65)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deposed Mir Jafar, the Nawab of Bengal, and replaced him with his son-in-law Mir Qasim. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Battle of Buxar</i>
Harry Verelst 1767-69	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased tax revenue of the East India Company. • Exposed corruption within the company. 	
John Cartier (1769-1772)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Great Famine of Bengal 1770 occurred in his regime which claimed about two million lives 	
Warren Hastings (1772-85)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founding <i>Asiatic Society of Bengal</i> • Auctioning the right to collect land revenue to its highest bid • Starting <i>Diwani</i> and <i>Fauzdari Adalats</i> in district level and <i>Nizam Adalats at Kolkata</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Rohilla war</i> (1774) • <i>1st Anglo-Maratha War</i> (1776-82) • <i>2nd Anglo-Mysore War</i> (1780-84)
Lord Cornwallis (1786-93)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Codifying laws in 1793 so as to separate the administration for revenue and justice • <i>Abolition of all the superfluous posts.</i> • <i>Creating the post of District judge.</i> • <i>Establishment of lower grade court.</i> • <i>Father of Civil Services in India.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>3rd Anglo-Mysore War</i> against Tipu Sultan and signed the treaty of Srirangapatnam in 1792
Sir John Shore (1793-98)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1st Charter of Act in 1793 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Battle of Kharda</i> between Nizam and Marathas in 1793
Lord Wellesley (1798-1805)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Started subsidiary alliance to achieve British dominancy over India • <i>Forming Madras Presidency</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>4th Anglo-Mysore war</i> in 1799 and with defeat and death of Tipu Sulatan • <i>Treaty of Bassein</i> in 1802 • <i>2nd Anglo-Maratha war</i> from 1803-1805 defeating Scindia, Bhonsle and Holkar
Sir George Barlow (1805-1807)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Vellore Mutiny</i> in 1806 	
Lord Minto (1807-1813)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Concluding <i>Treaty of Amritsar</i> with Raja Ranjit Singh • <i>Charter of Act 1813</i> was passed 	
Lord Hastings (1813-1823)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adopting the Policies of intervention and wars • Forceful implementation humiliating treaties or Peshwas and Scindias. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Anglo-Nepalese war</i> (1813-23)
Lord Amherst (1823-33)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acquisition of Malayan Peninsular territories • <i>Capturing Bharatpur</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>First Burmese War</i> (1824-26)
Lord William Bentinck (1833-35)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Abolition of Sati</i> and other cruel rites in 1829 • <i>Annexation of Mysore.</i> • Concluding a treaty of perpetual friendship with Ranjit Singh (1831) • He was also known as <i>Father of Modern Western Education in India.</i> • He was last Governor General of Bengal who later continued his service as the first Governor General of India from 1833 to 1835 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • occupied Coorg and Central Cachar in 1834 on the plea of missgovernance
Sir Charles Metcalfe (1834-36)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Passed the famous <i>Press Law</i> which liberated the press in India 	
Lord Auckland (1836-42)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extended irrigation • Inaugurated famine relief 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1st Anglo Afgan war (1836-42)
Lord Ellenborough (1842-44)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brought an end to Afgan war. • Annexed Sindh in 1843 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • War with Gwalior (1843)
Lord Hardings (1844-48)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gave preference to English education • Treaty of Lahore in 1846 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1st Anglo Sikh war (1845-46)

Lord Dalhousie (1848-56)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abolished titles and pensions Passed widow Re-marriage Act 1856. Introduced “<i>Docterine of Lapse</i>” Annexed Punjab, lower Burma or Pegu and Awadh. Started railway, post and telegraph service. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2nd Anglo Sikh war (1848-49) 2nd Anglo Burmese war, 1852.
--------------------------	---	--

GOVERNOR GENERAL AND VICEROYS OF INDIA (1858-1947)

Lord Canning (1856-62)

The last Governor General but first viceroy of India who resumed duty in 1858 and continued as viceroy till 1862; Major wars fought were First War of Independence and War with Bhutan. He was well known for imposing 5% income tax on earning of 500. The Indian Council act of 1861 was passed during his tenure. He withdrew the Doctrine of Lapse. The Indian Penal Code of Criminal Procedure was passed in 1859. He set up universities at *Kolkata, Madras and Mumbai*.

Lord Elgin I (1862-63)

He had served as Governor of Jamaica and Governor General of Canada before serving as Viceroy of India. He was sent to China as envoy for opening a trade for the British. *Wahabi movement* took place during his period.

Sir John Lawrence (1864-69)

Started telegraphic communication in India was opened with Europe. Setting up High courts in *Kolkata, Mumbai, and Madras*. Expanded Canal works and Railways. Advocated state managed railways. *Created the Indian Forest Department* and recognized native judicial services.

Lord Mayo (1869-72)

Introduced *financial decentralization* in India. Established *Rajkot College at Kathiawar* and *Mayo college at Jaipur* for princes. Organized statistical survey of India. Established Department of Agriculture and Commerce. Introduced state railway. During his time as census was held first time in India in 1871. He was the only viceroy to be murdered by a convict of Andaman in 1872.

Lord Northbrook (1872-76)

Abolished income tax. Kuka movement took place in Punjab during his period.

Lord Dufferin (1884-88)

3rd *Burma War* took place in 1885; Establishment of Indian National Congress in 1885.

Lord Landsdowne (1888-94)

The Second Factory Act was passed in 1891; *Indian Council Act* was introduced in 1892; Categorized civil services into *imperial, provincial and sub-ordinate*; Appointment of *Durand Commission* to define the line between British India and Afghanistan (1893).

Lord Elgin II (1894-99)

Munda uprising by *Birsa Munda* took place in 1899. Convention delimiting the frontier between China and India was ratified; Great Famine occurred during his time in 1896-97; Appointed *Lyall Commission* after famine in 1897; Assassinated of two British official Rand and Amherst by Chapekar Brothers in 1897.

Lord Lytton (1876-1880)

Pursued *free trade and abolished duties* on 29 British manufactured goods which accelerated drain of Wealth in India. Arranged Grand Darbar in Delhi (1877). Passed *the Royal Title Act (1876)*. During his tenure Queen Victoria was declared as *Kaisar-i-Hind*. Passed infamous *Vernacular Press Act (1876)*. Lowered the age limit of Civil Service Exam from 21 to 19.

Lord Rippon (1880-84)

Repeal of Vernacular Press Act in 1882. Passed *First Factory Act* in 1882 to improve labour condition. Resolution of Local self govt in 1882. Appointment of *Hunter Commission* for education reforms in 1882. *The Ilbert Bill controversy* erupted during his period. Enabled Indian district magistrates to try European Criminals.

Lord Curzon (1899-1905)

- Appointed a *Police Commission* in 1902 under *Andrew Frazer*;
- Set up Universities commission and passed *Indian University Act* in 1904;
- Set up department of Commerce and Industry;
- Set up *Indian coinage and Paper currency Act* in 1899;
- Partition of Bengal took place in 1905; created North-west Frontier Province and Archaeological Survey of India;
- Extended railway to a great extent.

Lord Minto II (1905-1910)

- Swadeshi Movement* took place in (1905-08);
- Foundation of *Muslim League* in 1906;
- Surat Session and Split in Congress in 1907;
- News paper in 1908. Morley Minto reforms in 1909.

Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)

- Annulment of the Partition of Bengal (1911);
- Transfer of Capital* from Calcutta to *Delhi*;
- Delhi Darbar and Coronation of King George V and Queen Mary (1911);
- Establishment of Hindu Maha Sabha by Madan Mohan Malviya.

Lord Chelmsford (1916-21)

- *Home Rule Movement* launched by Tilak and Anne Besant in 1916;
- Champaran Satyagraha took place in 1917;
- Montague's August declaration in 1917, Kheda Satyagraha and Satyagraha at Ahmedabad in 1918,
- *Government of India Act*, Repressive Rowl-att Act in 1919,
- Jalianwala Bagh massacre in 1919,
- *Khilafat Movement* (1920-22),
- *Non-Co-operation Movement* (1920-22),
- Saddler Commission (1917).

Lord Reading (1921-26)

- *Criminal law Ammendment Act* and abolition of cotton excise.
- Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and Rowlatt Act of 1919.
- Violent *Moplah rebellion* in Kerala (1921).
- Foundation of CPI (1921).
- Chauri Chaura incident in 1922.
- Foundation of Swaraj Party in (1923).
- *Kakori Train Dacoity* in 1925.
- Foundation of RSS in 1925.
- Murder of Swami Shradhanand in 1926.

Lord Irwin (1926-31)

- *Simon Commission* announced in 1927;
- Butler Commission (1927),
- Nehru Report 1928.
- 14 Points of Jinnah in 1929,
- Lahore session of Congress and Poorna Swaraj declaration in 1929,
- *Civil Disobedience Movement* 1930,
- Dandi March in 1930,
- *Ist Round table conference* in (1930),
- Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931).
- Martyroodom of Jatin Das due to hunger strike.

Lord Willingdon

- *2nd Round Table conference* in 1931,
- *Civil Disobedience movement* 1932,
- Announcement of Mac Donalds Communal Award in 1932,
- 3rd Round Table Conference;
- Foundation of Congress Socialist Party in 1934
- Government of India Act 1935,
- Burma separated from India (1935),
- All India Kisan Sabha (1936),
- *Poona Pact* was signed.

Lord Linlithgow (1936-43)

- General Election held in (1936-37),
- Resignation of Congress ministries in 1939,
- Deliverance Day of Muslim League in 1939,
- *Cripps Mission* in 1942 Foundation and Forward Block by S. C. Bose (1939),
- *Lahore Resolution* (1940),
- August offer (1940) *Quit India Movement* (1942).

Lord Wavell (1943-47)

- C. Rajgopalchari's formula in 1944 to solve political deadlocks,
- *Wavell Plan* and Shimla conference in 1945,
- INA trial in 1945,
- *Naval mutiny* in 1946,
- Cabinet Mission, 1946 and acceptance of its proposal by Congress,
- Direct Action day announced by Muslim League on 16th August, 1946,
- First meeting of constituent assembly was held on 9th Dec, 1946.

Lord Mountbatten (March-August 1947)

- Introduction of *Indian Independence Bill* in house of commons and passed by the British Parliament on 4th July, 1947,
- Appointment of 2 boundary commissions under Sir Cyril Radcliyye,
- Announced 3rd June, 1947 Plan.

Governor Generals of Free India (1947-50)

- **Lord Mountbatten (1947-48)** : He was the first Governor General of free India, Kashmir to be a part of India (Oct. 1947). The Murder of Gandhiji (30th Jan, 1948).
- **C. Rajagopalchari (June 1948 - Jan 1950)** : He was the last Governor of free India. He was the only Indian Governor General.

IMPORTANT ACTS**The Regulating Act**

The Regulating Act of 1773 was an Act of the Parliament of Great Britain intended to refurbish the management of the East India Company's rule in India. The company was very much important to British as it was the only company which was trading in India with many influential people as its shareholders.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The *Act cut down Company dividends* to 6% until it repaid a £1.5M loan along with restricting the term of the Court of Directors to 4 years.
2. It *prohibited the servants of company* from engaging in any private trade or accepting presents or bribes from the natives.
3. It elevated the position of Governor of Bengal to Governor-General of Bengal during the period of Warren Hastings with the subsumption of the presidencies of Madras and Bombay under Bengal's control.
4. According to the act four men were to be appointed by British government in the name of "*Council of Four*" to serve the Supreme Council of Bengal.
5. A *supreme court* was established at *Fort William* at Calcutta under the provision of the act stating that British judges were to be sent to India to administer the British legal system that was used there.

The Pitt's India Act

The Pitt's India Act, was an Act of the Parliament of Great Britain which was passed by East India Company in 1784 so as to address the shortcomings of the Regulating Act of 1773.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. With the Pitts India Act of 1784, East India Company's political functions were differentiated from its commercial activities.
2. In political matters, the company which was till now working as somewhat sovereign was made directly subordinate to the British government.
3. To enable this, a *Board of Commissioners* was created, which was called *Board of Control*.
4. 6 people viz. *the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Secretary of State, and four Privy Councilors*, nominated by the King were the members of this Board of Control.
5. The Secretary of the State was entitled as the *President of the Board of Control*. This Board of control was empowered to control all matters of civil or military government or revenues.
6. The board was given full access to the company's records. It had the powers to send Governors to India and full authority to alter them.

The Charter Act of 1793

The Charter Act of 1793 extended the commercial privileges of the company for a further period of twenty years. Lord Cornwallis was given special power at the time of his appointment, to override his Council but it was not extended to all Governors or Governors General by the Charter of 1793.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The Governor General was granted extensive powers over the subordinate presidencies.
2. The Governor General's power of over-ruling his council was affirmed, and extended over the Governors of the subordinate presidencies.
3. *Senior officials* were forbidden from leaving India without permission.
4. Royal approval was mandated for the appointment of the Governor General, the governors, and *the Commander-in-Chief*.
5. The EIC was empowered to grant licences to both individuals and Company employees to trade in India (known as the "*privilege*" or "*country*" trade), which paved the way for shipments of opium to China.

The Charter Act of 1813

The Charter Act of 1813 renewed the tenures of the commercial privileges of the Company. Moreover the Charter of 1813, envisaged that the Company should function as the commercial body wholly. Its political function was *limited considerably*.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The monopoly of trade of the company was *abolished* except in tea and its trade with china.
2. Church was placed under a *Bishop* which was maintained from Indian revenue. Englishmen were granted

permission to settle and hold land in India. The Christian Missionaries were allowed to spread their religion in India.

3. The crown had Complete power over territorial and revenue.
4. For the improvement of education, grant of rupees one lakh every year was allotted.

The Charter Act of 1833

The Charter Act of 1833 granted a lease to the Company for further twenty years. The Act introduced *centralization in the legislative and administrative function* and provided the *abolition of slavery* thereby brought several changes in the Constitution of India. The Charter Act of 1833 was a turning point in the history of modern India.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The monopoly of all trade of the company was *abolished*.
2. All restrictions on European immigration into India and acquisition of land and property in India removed.
3. A Law Commission was constituted for codification of laws.
4. The debts of the company were taken over by the Indian government which agreed to pay its shareholders a 10.5% dividend on their capital out of the Indian revenues for the next 40 years.
5. Section 87 of the Act declared that no person can be disqualified for any place in the company's service by reason of caste, colour, creed or place of birth.
6. The Charter Act of 1833 afforded to the Indians an opportunity of entering into the company's service.
7. The merit became the basis for employment in government services and the religion, birth place were not be the Criteria.

The Charter Act of 1853

The Charter Act of 1853 renewed the powers of the company but did not mention the specific time period. It allowed the company to retain the possession of the Indians territories in trust of *Her Majesty*. It also provided the scope for thorough revisions of the existing legislative procedure.

Provisions of this act were:

1. Laid foundation of *Parliamentary system of Government*, the executive and legislative separated. Legislative Assembly functioned in the model of British Parliament.
2. Renewed the term of East India Company for an indefinite period;
3. Reduced the number of *Board of Directors* from 24 to 18 and 6 out of them were nominated;
4. Indian Civil Service became an *open competition*. *Macaulay* made Chairman of the Committee.
5. The Act for the first time introduced local representation in the Indian (Central) Legislative Council. The Governor-General's Council had six new legislative members. They were appointed by the local (provincial) governments of *Madras, Bombay, Bengal and Agra*.
6. The Act separated, for the first time, the legislative and executive functions of the Governor General's Council.

The Government of India Act, 1858

1. Rule of company in India ended and the *rule of crown* started.
2. System of *Dual government ended*. Court of Directors and Board of control abolished and substituted them with a post of secretary of state.
3. Secretary of State governed India through the Governor General.
4. Governor General received the title of Viceroy who represented Secretary of State.
5. A highly *centralised administrative structure* was created.

The Indian Council Act, 1861

The first ever constitutional structure was formulated in 1861. The British Government passed the Legislative Council Act to introduce better provisions for the Governor General's Council and for Local Government.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The *three separate presidencies* (Madras, Bombay and Bengal) were brought into a common system.
2. System of legislative devolution in India was inaugurated.
3. The Act added to the Viceroy's Executive Council a fifth member - *a jurist*.
4. For purposes of legislation, the Viceroy's Executive Council was expanded by the addition of not less than six and not more than 12 additional members, who would be nominated by the Governor General and would hold office for two years. Therefore, the total membership increased to 17.

The Indian Council Act, 1892

The Government introduced another Act known as the Indian Councils Act of 1892 which could not ensure the maximum safeguards to the Muslims. For which the leaders of Muslim community felt for a separate electorate to protect the Muslim Interest.

Provisions of this Act were:

1. The number of the non-official members, in the Central and Provincial Legislative Councils were increased. However, the official members were still in majority.
2. The members of the Legislative Councils were given the right to put questions. They were also authorized to discuss the annual budget.
3. The local bodies were given right to send their elected members to the Legislative Councils.

Indian Press Act, 1910

It revived the worst features of *the Vernacular Press Act* – Local government was empowered to demand a security at registration from the printer or publisher.

Assamese, Bengali, Hindi, Kannada, Gujarati, Konkani, Malayalam, Kashmiri and Marathi were added in new Vernacular language and literature.

Exercise - 1

- What was the occasion for the Portuguese to hand over Bombay to the British?
 - Growth of peaceful relations between the English and the Portuguese as a result of Portugal's independence from the control of Spain.
 - The marriage of Charles II with the Portuguese princess Catherine of Braganza.
 - The defeat of Spanish Armada by the British in 1588.
 - The Treaty of Madrid concluded in 1630.
- Which two Europeans were involved in the Battle of Wandiwash in 1760?
 - Portuguese and Spanish
 - Dutch and British
 - French and British
 - Portuguese and British
- When and by whom were the Portuguese driven out of Hughli in Bengal?
 - 1631-Qasim Khan
 - 1666-Prince Shuja
 - 1625-Shaista Khan
 - 1650-Prince Murad
- The British paramountcy in India was completed in 1856 with
 - Annexation of Punjab
 - Annexation of Sind
 - Annexation of Carnatic
 - Annexation of Awadh
- By which Governor General and when was the Carnatic state annexed?
 - Lord Minto-1808
 - Lord Wellesly-1801
 - Sir John Shore-1797
 - Lord Cornwallis-1792
- By which clause, did the Charter Act of 1833 accepted educational qualifications for Indian Civil Service appointment?
 - Clause 86
 - Clause 76
 - Clause 87
 - Clause 82
- Why did British resort to the 'Downward Filtration Theory' till 1854
 - To justify their social policy in India
 - To justify their education policy in India
 - To justify their industrial policy in India
 - To justify their commercial policy in India
- Which of the following is wrongly matched?
 - The Pitt's India Act (1784)—Board of Control to guide and control Company affairs.
 - Charter Act of 1813—Company's monopoly of trade with India ended.
 - Charter Act of 1833—Company's debt taken over by the Government of India.
 - Charter Act of 1853—To regulate Company's affairs.
- The title of 'Viceroy' was added to the centre office of the Governor-General of India for the first-time in
 - 1848 A.D.
 - 1858 A.D.
 - 1862 A.D.
 - 1856 A.D.
- Railways were introduced in India when the Governor-General of India was
 - Curzon
 - Dalhousie
 - Hardinge
 - Ripon
- Lord Dalhousie introduced the first telegraph line in 1853, which ran between:
 - Calcutta and Bombay
 - Agra and Madras
 - Bombay and Thana
 - Calcutta and Agra
- "White Mutiny" by the European soldiers, was staged during the period of:
 - Canning
 - Ripon
 - Dalhousie
 - Mayo
- Madras was restored to the English by the French by
 - The Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1749)
 - The Treaty of Pondicherry (1754)
 - The Treaty of Salbai (1782)
 - The Treaty of Mangalore (1784)
- Awadh was annexed by Lord Dalhousie in 1856. Which one of the following statements about Nawab Wajid Ali Shah, the last Nawab of Awadh, is not correct?
 - He was a great patron of Indian music and dance
 - He had good command over Persian and Urdu languages and wrote several books
 - He is regarded as the father of modern Urdu stage
 - The prolonged period of peace and prosperity during his rule resulted in the growth of a distinct Lucknow culture around the Oudh court
- Who was the founder of the autonomous kingdom of Awadh or Oudh?
 - Safdar Jang
 - Saadat Khan
 - Shuja-ud-daula
 - Asaf-ud-daula
- Which one of the following statements about the rule of Saadat Khan in Awadh is not correct?
 - He suppressed the lawless and rebellious zamindars and thus increased the financial resources of his government
 - He carried out a fresh revenue settlement
 - He improved the lot of the peasants by levying equitable land revenue and by protecting them from oppressive zamindars
 - He took several steps to improve trade and commerce
- Who of the following Governor-Generals realised the importance of Rajput alliance and entered into treaties with a number of Rajput states?
 - Warren Hastings
 - Lord Cornwallis
 - Lord Wellesley
 - Lord Hastings

18. What were Calicoes?
 (a) Indigo exported from India
 (b) Cotton exported from India
 (c) Textile exported from India
 (d) Precious stones exported from India
19. The Supreme Court at Calcutta was established by
 (a) North's Regulating Act of 1773
 (b) Pitt's India Act of 1784
 (c) Charter Act of 1793
 (d) Charter Act of 1813
20. After his return to Britain, Robert Clive died in 1774 due to
 (a) A dreadful disease
 (b) Committed suicide
 (c) Was assassinated
 (d) Died under mysterious circumstances
21. Consider the following events:
 1. Annexation of Udaipur
 2. Annexation of Jhansi
 3. Annexation of Punjab
 4. Annexation of Oudh
 The correct chronological sequence of these event is:
 (a) 3-4-2-1 (b) 2-1-3-4
 (c) 2-4-3-1 (d) 3-1-2-4
22. Who was the first Portuguese Viceroy in India?
 (a) Vasco-da-Gama (b) Albuquerque
 (c) Da Almeida (d) Duarte Pacheco
23. The Cape of Good Hope was discovered by
 (a) Vasco-da-Gama (b) De Almeida
 (c) Albuquerque Diaz (d) Bartholomew
24. "The greater the number of the forts you hold the weaker will be your power. Let our forces be on the sea, because if we should not be powerful at sea, everything will be at once against it" whose words are these?
 (a) Vasco-da-Gama (b) Albuquerque
 (c) Da Almeida (d) Duarte Pacheco
25. Who is commonly known as the 'Navigator'?
 (a) King John II (b) Prince Henry
 (c) King Emmanuel (d) Pope Alexander VI
26. The Portuguese established their first business centre at
 (a) Calicut (b) Surat
 (c) Goa (d) Cochin
27. The Danish established a factory in 1620 at
 (a) Pondicherry (b) Calicut
 (c) Tranquebar (d) Goa
28. Why was Bombay handed over to the British by the Portuguese?
 (a) The Portuguese handed it over to the British after a peace-treaty in Europe
 (b) The marriage of Charles II with The Portuguese princess Catherine of Braganza
 (c) The defeat of the Spanish Armada by the British in 1588
 (d) Due to Portuguese independence from Spain
29. Which one of the following powers was the first to establish trade links with India?
 (a) English (b) Dutch
 (c) Portuguese (d) French
30. Identify the wrong statement with regard to Dutch interest and activities in India?
 (a) Several attempts were made by the Dutch to monopolise the channels of trade between India and the West
 (b) They took no part in politics or cultural contacts
 (c) They became the carriers of trade between India and the islands of the Far East
 (d) They treated the people of India ruthlessly and also exploited them
31. From which Mughal Emperor did John Middenhall tried to obtain a farman for trade in Gujarat?
 (a) Akbar (b) Jahangir
 (c) Aurangzeb (d) None of these
32. The commercial rivalry between the Dutch and the English in India came to an end
 (a) As a result of an agreement between the trading stations at Government of Britain and Holland in 1609
 (b) Following issuance of orders granting monopoly in favour of the British East India Company by the Pope
 (c) With the defeat of the Dutch at the battle of Bedara in 1759
 (d) As a result of the 'Massacre at Amboyna'
33. Due to commercial rivalry the Dutch indulged in the massacre of Englishmen at
 (a) Malacca (b) Amboyna
 (c) Surat (d) Cassimbazar
34. Which of the following statement is true with regard to the Golden Farman
 (a) It granted the privilege of trading in Bengal in return for a fixed annual payment of duties worth Rs. 3000
 (b) It allowed free trade in the ports belonging to the kingdom of Golkunda on payment of duties with 500 pagodas
 (c) The English factories were not bothered with demands of customs for goods imported or exported by land or by water
 (d) The English were allowed to fortify their positions on Indian soil
35. Who among the following Mughal Emperors, granted permission to trade of tax in the territories of Bengal, Hyderabad and Gujarat to the British?
 (a) Aurangzeb
 (b) Farrukh-siyar
 (c) Bahadur Shah
 (d) Muhammad Shah

36. In which year were Factories opened for the first time in Orissa.
 (a) 1613 A.D. (b) 1632 A.D.
 (c) 1639 A.D. (d) 1663 A.D.
37. The first article in which the English started trading was
 (a) Indigo (b) Saltpetre
 (c) Cotton (d) Pepper
38. After 1880, Railways were built during British rule in India through—
 (a) Indian merchants or money-lenders
 (b) Private enterprise
 (c) State Agency
 (d) A and B both
39. Who was the architect of Communal Award?
 (a) Lord Linlithgow (b) Lord Reading
 (c) Lord Irwin (d) Ramsay Macdonald
40. Identify the Acts passed by the British Government in 1856.
 (i) Religious disabilities Act
 (ii) General Service Enlistment Act
 (iii) Hindu Widow Remarriage Act
 (iv) Abolition of the Sati (Regulation XVII)
 (a) i, ii, iii (b) i, iii, iv
 (c) ii, iii, iv (d) All of them
41. Which of the following was not one of the social reform measures introduced by William Bentinck?
 (a) Abolition of sati
 (b) Abolition of slavery
 (c) Removal of disabilities due to change of religion
 (d) Suppression of the organized bands of *thugs*
42. Which of the following governor general was responsible for passing the famous Regulation XVII of 1829 which declared sati illegal and punishable by courts?
 (a) John Adam (b) Amherst
 (c) William Bentinck (d) Auckland
43. Which of the following is regarded as the Magna Carta of western education system in India?
 (a) The report of the Committee of Public Instruction, 1823
 (b) The Charter Act of 1833.
 (c) Despatch of Sir Charles Wood, Secretary of State, 1854
 (d) Report of the Hunter Commission, 1862
44. To which of the following governor general goes the credit of taking steps to stop the human sacrifices practiced by the Khonds in Orissa under the erroneous belief that there by the fertility of the land was increased?
 (a) Lord Ellenborough (b) First Lord Hardinge
 (c) Lord Dalhousie (d) Lord Canning
45. Who among the following was the first Governor General of India?
 (a) Lord Amherst (b) Lord William Bentinck
 (c) Sir Charles Metcalfe (d) Robert Clive
46. Who among the following was the Viceroy of India at the time of the formation of Indian National Congress?
 (a) Lord Mayo (b) Lord Ripon
 (c) Lord Dufferin (d) Lord Lansdowne
47. Separate electorates for Muslims in India were introduced by which one of the following Acts?
 (a) Government of India Act of 1909
 (b) Indian Councils Act of 1892
 (c) Rowlatt Act of 1919
 (d) Government of India Act of 1935
48. The Treaty of Amritsar was concluded between Maharaja Ranjit Singh and who of the following?
 (a) Lord Cornwallis (b) Lord Dalhousie
 (c) Lord Hastings (d) Lord Minto
49. Who among the following has started the Public Works Department in India in AD 1848?
 (a) Lord William Bentinck
 (b) Lord Dalhousie
 (c) Lord Wellesley
 (d) Lord Cornwallis
50. Which British military officer defeated Tipu Sultan in India, Napoleon Bonaparte in Europe and eventually, became the Duke of Wellington?
 (a) Arthur Wellesley (b) Robert Clive
 (c) Warren Hastings (d) Richard Wellesley
51. Consider the following statements and identify the person referred to therein with the help of the codes given below. During his stay in England, he endeavoured to educate the British people about their responsibilities as rulers of India. He delivered speeches and published articles to support his opposition to the unjust and oppressive regime of the British Raj. In 1867, he helped to establish the East India Association of which he became the Honorary Secretary.
 (a) Ferozeshah Mehta (b) Mary Carpenter
 (c) Dadabhai Naoroji (d) Anand Mohan Bose
52. Which one of the following statements related to the Boston Tea Party on December 16, 1773 during the American War of Independence is correct?
 (a) The revolutionaries stealthily entered into the ships and threw all the chests of tea into the water
 (b) The revolutionaries hosted a Tea Party in the honour of Charles Townshend, the British Chancellor of the Exchequer in order to place their grievances before him
 (c) It marked a celebration when Lord North, the successor of Townshend, repealed some of the duties imposed by Townshend
 (d) It was a protest against the Quebec Act
53. Prior to 1813, which among the following measures, was not adopted by the British to exploit the Indians economically ?
 (a) Monopolising the trade of raw goods wherever possible and selling them at high rates
 (b) Forcing Indian craftsman to produce quality products in fixed quantity and at fixed price
 (c) Free Trade Policy
 (d) Elimination of Indian traders from competition by every means

54. Which one of the following was not a result of British colonial rule in India?
- (a) Ruin of Indian agriculture
 - (b) Ruin of Indian industries
 - (c) Ruin of Indian trade
 - (d) Ruin of Indian feudalism
55. Who among the following Governor Generals formed the Triple Alliance against Tipu Sultan?
- (a) Warren Hastings (b) Lord Cornwallis
 - (c) Lord Wellesley (d) Lord William Bentinck
56. The suppression of Indian language newspapers under the Vernacular Press Act of 1878 was caused by the criticism of
- (a) lavish lifestyle of the English officials
 - (b) ill-treatment given to Indigo workers by their English masters
 - (c) inhuman approach of English officials towards the victims of the famine of 1876-77
 - (d) misuse of religious places of India by English officials
57. British colonialism in India saw the emergence of new cities. Calcutta, now Kolkata, was one of the first cities. Which of the following villages were, amalgamated to form the city of Calcutta?
- (a) Midnapur, Chittagong, Burdwan
 - (b) 24-Parganas, Kalikata, Thakurgaon
 - (c) Sutanuti, Kalikata, Gobindapur
 - (d) Midnapur, Thakurgaon, Gobindapur

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Find out the wrongly matched one/ones
 - Lytton-Lee Commission
 - Mayo-Scholarship scheme
 - Ripon-Repeal of Vernacular Press Act
 - Canning-Queen Victoria's Proclamation

(a) 2, 3, 4 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 4 (d) 4 only
- Why did British resort to the 'Downward Filtration Theory' till 1854
 - To justify their social policy in India
 - To justify their education policy in India
 - To justify their industrial policy in India
 - To justify their commercial policy in India
- Which of the following is incorrect?
 - Clive was the first European who initiated the policy of taking part in the internal quarrels of the Indian princes to acquire territory and power in India.
 - Duplex was the first European who initiated the policy of taking part in the internal quarrels of the Indian princes to acquire territory and power.
 - Albuquerque was the first European who took part in the internal quarrels of the Indian princes to acquire territory and power.
 - Warren Hastings was the first European who took part in the internal quarrels of the Indian princes to acquire territory and power.
- Arrange the following in correct chronological order
 - Third Carnatic War
 - First Burmese War
 - First Mysore War
 - Second Afghan War

Codes :

(a) 1, 4, 3, 2 (b) 1, 3, 2, 4
(c) 2, 4, 1, 3 (d) 3, 1, 2, 4
- Which of the following statements about Fourth Anglo-Mysore War are correct?
 - The Madras Council suggested a policy of rigorous and intense attack on Mysore.
 - Lord Wellesley tried to revive the triple alliance.
 - Tipu sent emissaries to Arabia, Versailles, Mauritius and Kabul enlisting support against the English.
 - The war was of a very short duration though decisive.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1, 3 and 4
(c) 2 and 4 (d) 1 and 3
- The Viceregal Lodge at Shimla is a well-known ancient monument. Which of the following statements about the monument are correct?
 - The Lodge was built by 17th Viceroy, Earl Dufferin.
 - The present shape of the building was given by Earl of Marquis of Lansdowne.
 - It is famous for holding three meetings before Independence of India including the Cabinet Mission.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 1 and 2
- Identify the correct sequence of the following events of Indian history (starting with the earliest)
 - The Doctrine of Lapse
 - The Subsidiary Alliance
 - The Treaty of Lahore
 - The Pitt's India Act

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) 4, 2, 3, 1 (b) 1, 2, 3, 4
(c) 2, 1, 4, 3 (d) 3, 2, 1, 4

Matching Based MCQ

- | List I | List II |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| A. Hindu widow's remarriage | 1. William Bentinck |
| B. Prohibition of Sati | 2. Lansdowne |
| C. Age of Consent Act | 3. Ellenborough |
| D. Abolition of slavery | 4. Dalhousie |

(a) A - 3; B - 4; C - 2; D - 1
(b) A - 4; B - 2; C - 1; D - 3
(c) A - 4; B - 1; C - 2; D - 3
(d) A - 2; B - 1; C - 3; D - 4
- Match the following

List I	List II
(Battle)	(Treaty)
A. The Third Carnatic War	1. Treaty of Salbai
B. The Third Mysore War	2. Treaty of Lahore
C. The First Maratha War	3. Treaty of Paris
D. The First Anglo Sikh War	4. Treaty of Srirangapatam

Codes :

A	B	C	D
(a) 2	1	4	3
(b) 2	4	1	3
(c) 3	4	1	2
(d) 3	1	4	2

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (b)
6. (c) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (b)
11. (d) 12. (a) 13. (b) 14. (d) 15. (b)
16. (d) 17. (d) 18. (c) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (d) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (c) 25. (b)
26. (a) 27. (c) 28. (b) 29. (c) 30. (a)
31. (a) 32. (c) 33. (b) 34. (b) 35. (b)
36. (d) 37. (a) 38. (d) 39. (d) 40. (a)
41. (b) This was undertaken in 1843 during the term of Lord Ellenborough.
42. (c)
43. (c) Also known as Wood's Despatch, it asked the government of India to assume responsibility for the education of the masses. It, thus, repudiated the "downward filtration theory" which undertook to educate a few persons who in turn were expected to spread modern ideas among the masses.
44. (b)
45. (b) Lord William Bentinck was the first governor General of India.
46. (c) Lord Dufferin was the viceroy of India at the time of the formation of Indian national Congress.
47. (a) Government of India Act 1909 introduced separate and discriminatory electorates for Muslims. This was for the first time that, electorate for returning to the representatives to the councils was decided on the basis of class & community. For the central council, one more category Muslims was added. This was for the first time that the seats in the legislative bodies were reserved on the basis of religion for Muslims. This is called Communal representation.
48. (d) The Treaty of Amritsar of 1809 was an agreement between the British East India Company and Ranjit Singh, the Sikh leader who founded the Sikh empire. The treaty settled Indo-Sikh relations for a generation. The immediate occasion was the French threat to northwestern India, following Napoleon's Treaty of Tilsit with Russia (1807) and Ranjit Singh's attempt to bring the Cis-Sutlej states under his control. The British wanted a defensive treaty against the French and control of Punjab to the Sutlej River. Although this was not a defensive treaty, it did fix the frontier of lands controlled by Ranjit Singh broadly along the line of the Sutlej River.
49. (b) A separate Public Works Department was established by Lord Dalhousie. The main works of this department were to construct roads, bridges and government buildings.
50. (b) Robert Clive established the military and political supremacy of the East India Company in Bengal. Under the dual Government company will look after fiscal matters and all the rest would be dealt by the Indian rulers.
51. (c) Dadabhai Naoroji was a Parsi intellectual and Indian political and social leader. His book Poverty and Un-British Rule in India brought attention to the draining of India's wealth into Britain.
52. (a) On the night of December 16, 1773, Samuel Adams and the Sons of Liberty boarded three ships in the Boston harbour and threw 342 chests of tea overboard. This resulted in the passage of the punitive Coercive Acts in 1774 and pushed the two sides closer to war.
53. (c) British did not adopt Free trade policy to exploit the Indians economically.
54. (d) Ruin of Indian Feudalism was not a result of British colonial rule in India.
55. (b) Triple Alliance consisted of British, Nizam and Marathas against Tipu sultan in 1791-92.
56. (b) The Vernacular Press Act in 1878 was passed by Lord Lytton and repealed by Lord Ripon. The suppression of vernacular newspapers was caused by the criticism of ill treatment given to indigo workers by their English masters.
57. (c)

EXERCISE-2

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (c)
4. (b) 1. Third Carnatic War (1756-1763)
2. The First Anglo-Mysore War (1767-1769)
3. The First Anglo-Burmese War (1824-1826)
4. The Second Anglo-Afghan War (1878-1880)
5. (a) The Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1798-1799) was a war in South India between the Kingdom of Mysore and the British East India Company under the Earl of Mornington. In the battle, Tipu Sultan was shot and killed.
6. (c) The Viceregal Lodge, also known as Rashtrapati Niwas, is located on the Observatory Hills of Shimla, Himachal Pradesh. It was built during the regime of Lord Dufferin. Its construction started in 1880 and was completed in 1888. The cabinet Mission 1946 was held in the The Viceregal Lodge.
7. (a) 8. (c)
9. (c) The third Carnatic war- Treaty of Paris (1763)
The Third Mysore war- Treaty of Srirangapatnam (1792)
The first Maratha war- Treaty of Salbai (1782)
The first Anglo Sikh war- Treaty of Lahore (1846)

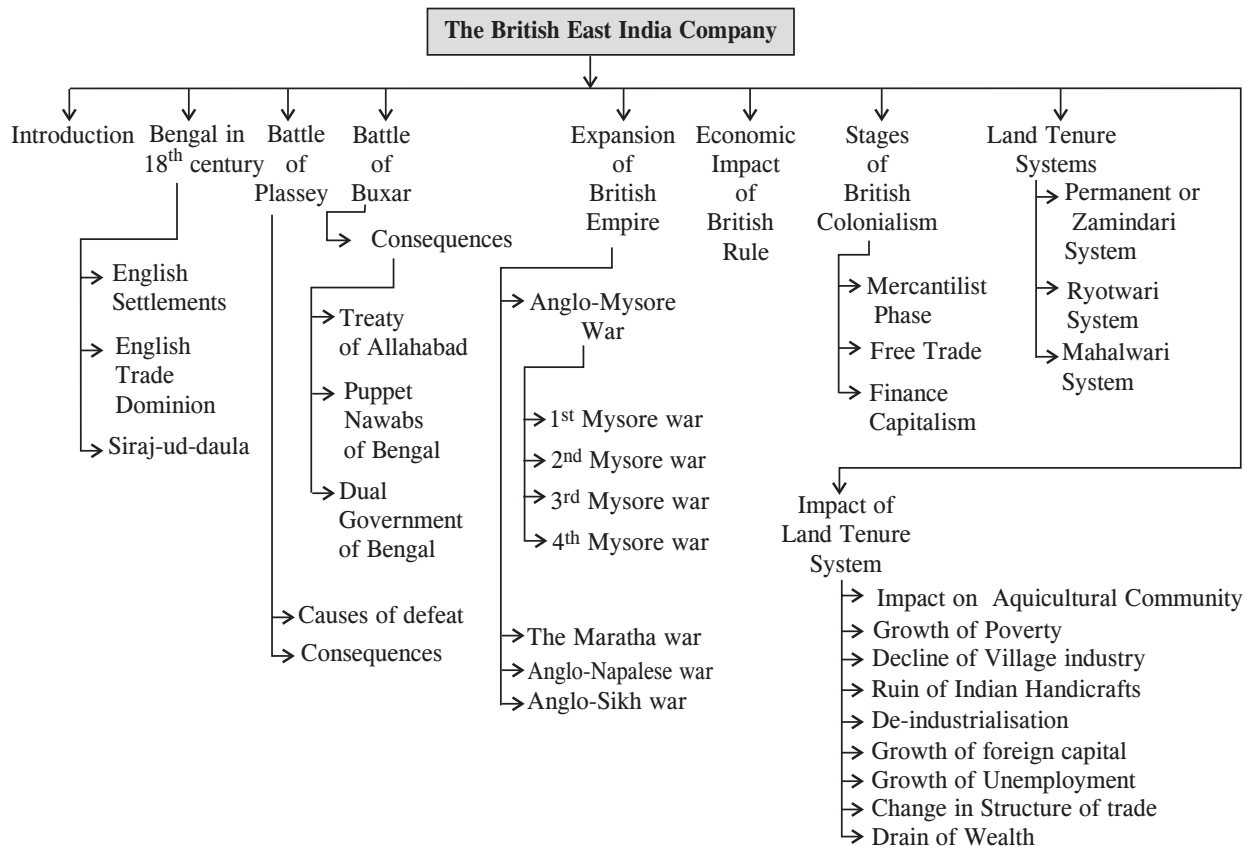


THE BRITISH EAST INDIA COMPANY

17 Chapter

Introduction

The riches of Asia were comparably greater than those of European Estates in the middle of 17th century. European sailors and traders came to Asian ports right from the 15th century. But by the end of 19th century most parts of Asia and Africa came under direct or indirect control of European imperialism. As industrial nations scrambled for raw materials and new markets brought Europeans to the Eastern lands, especially in Asian countries, India being one of them. Since India has been the trading centre from ancient times, merchants and traders from Europe visited regularly. Indian rulers also gave support to them and made them profitable. The decline of the power of the Maratha and Mughals offered an opportunity to the European trading companies to become active in Indian politics. Among many European companies who came to India, the English East India company proved to be the strongest. Hawkins, the ambassador of James I, the King of England, visited the court of Jahangir in 1609 and got a firman to set up an English factory at Surat. Sir Thomas Roe, the British representative, was able to get some trade concession from Jahangir and the Mughal rulers. Prince Charles II got Bombay as his dowry when he married the Portuguese Princess Catherine of Braganza.



The British East India Company was founded in 1600 in England. Initially it was only interested in trade, and had to content itself with working around the fringes of the Mughal Empire. As the Mughals weakened, however, the company grew powerful. It had the unusual distinction of ruling an entire country. Its origins were much humbler. On 31st December 1600, a group of merchants who had incorporated themselves into the East India company were given monopoly privileges on all trade with the East Indies. The company's ships first arrived in India, at the port of Surat, in 1608. Sir Thomas Roe reached the court of the Mughal Emperor, Jahangir, as the emissary of King James I in 1615, and gained for the British the right to establish a factory at Surat. Gradually the British eclipsed the Portugese and over the years they saw a massive expansion of their trading operation in India. Numerous trading posts were established along the east and west coasts of India, and considerable English communities developed around the three presidency towns of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras. In 1717, the company achieved its hitherto most notable success when it received a *firman* or *royal dictate* from the Mughal Emperor exempting the company from the payment of custom duties in Bengal.

BENGAL IN EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

Bengal or the present West Bengal in India and almost the whole of Bangladesh, was *the richest province of Mughal India*. Bengal was the only bright spot where prosperity prevailed and “was the *only mine of silver left in the Mughal empire*”. Murshid Quli Khan, who was appointed the Diwan of Bengal in 1700, remained at the realm of affairs till his death in 1727. Then his son-in-law *Shuja* governed the province for fourteen years. While the rest of India was distracted by fratricidal wars, Maratha invasions and Jat uprising, and northern India was devastated by the invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali, Bengal, on the whole, remained tranquil. Trade, Commerce, industries and agriculture - all prospered. There was a huge phenomenal growth of foreign trade during this period. From 1706 to 1756, during the first half of the 18th century, Bengal received in return for its exports nearly six and a half crore rupees worth of billion and about Rs. 2.3 crores of merchandise. Decca exported nearly thirty lakh rupees worth of cloth to Asian countries. There were a number of other commodities which were exported from Bengal. Foreign trade stimulated industry and added to the prosperity of the country. Bengal goods were in great demand in East and West Asian countries, in Africa and in Europe. *The Dutch, the English and the French had a number of settlements and factories in different parts of Bengal*. Progress in trade, industry and agriculture stimulated the growth of urban centres and banking, which is illustrated by the rise of the jagat seths (world bankers). *Hughli*, which was the most important port of Bengal, grew

into a great centre of culture. The population of Calcutta rose high and Decca and Murshidabad became populous cities.

English settlements in Bengal

Several remarkable phases fall in the early history of the English settlements in Bengal. Between the year 1633 and 1663, the English factories in Bengal aimed at nothing more than peaceful trade under the protection of the Mughal power. In 1690, *Job Charnock* laid the foundation of Calcutta as an English settlement. Seven years later a fortified factory known as Fort William was built which was made the seat of a new Presidency, officially called ‘Presidency of Fort William in Bengal’ in 1700. With the growth of population at Sutanuti, the English tried to extend the area of this settlement by buying two adjacent villages - Kalikata and Govindpur. These 3 villages formed the nucleus of the future metropolitan city of Calcutta. The English enjoyed the greatest advantage to trade in Bengal on payment of Rs. 3000 a year in lieu of all customs and other dues. This was an imperial order issued in 1691.

Bengal was the most fertile and richest Indian province that helped the English to gain mastery over India. The English East India Company had been given the freedom to trade in Bengal without paying taxes since 1717. They also had the right to issue dastaks or passes for the movement of their goods. This had been done under a farman (order) by the Mughal Emperor. This farman always created a conflict between the English and the Nawabs of Bengal. It not only created loss of revenue to the state but was misused by the English traders. They often issued dastaks on their private trade to evade taxes.

After the death of Aurangzeb in 1707, the English, apprehending monarchy and civil war began fortification. *Murshid Quli Khan*, the de facto nawab of Bengal, grew jealous of the trade and prosperity of the English and thought it unjust that they should have the right to trade free or for a small consideration while his own subjects were denied this privilege. So in 1713 he annulled all the privileges of the English and ordered that they should thereafter pay the same duties as the local merchants. Upon this the English sent an embassy under *John Surman* to the Mughal emperor *Farrukhsiyar*. As a result of this Mission, the English were able to get three farmans in their favour, in July 1717, which granted the English company privilege to trade duty-free in Bengal, in lieu of an annual payment of Rs. 3,000, to settle wherever it pleased and to rent thirty-eight villages in the vicinity of Calcutta. *Murshid Quli Khan* did not object to the exemption of the English trade from the customs duties, but did not permit the renting of thirty-eight villages in the neighbourhood of Calcutta. During the reign of *Murshid Quli Khan*, in spite of occasional interruptions, the trade of the English East India company in Bengal steadily prospered. When *Alivardi Khan* came to the gaddi of Bengal, he was very

conscious of the importance of foreign trade for the economic prosperity of Bengal. Therefore, he did not willfully injure the interests of the traders, whether European or Asian, but he was opposed to the attempts of the English to strengthen their fortifications in Calcutta.

English Trade Dominion

The trade arrangements which the English had made with the Mughal government were very unfavourable for the Mughals, particularly because the company's trade was now far more prosperous than it had been in the mid-seventeenth century. Murshid Quli Khan, wanted the English to pay customs duties but they increased their military establishments. The construction of Fort William was finished in 1716, and in 1718 the nawab asked them not to strengthen their fortifications at Calcutta. He realised the importance of external trade and encouraged foreign merchants to put all of them on an equal footing.

The customs duties remained unsettled, and in 1735 the English admitted that Nawab Shujauddin "was too absolute to regard any orders from court in their favour". Alivardi Khan exercised some control on the English traders. His reign synchronised with the two Karnatak wars. Alivardi, as a precaution against the projection of the Anglo-French struggle into Bengal, opposed the attempts of both companies to strengthen their fortifications at their principal settlements in this province', Calcutta and Chandannagar. Towards the close of his reign, the English began to repair and strengthen their fortification at Calcutta.

Siraj-ud-daula (1756-57)

Siraj-ud-daula was the grandson of Alivardi, who succeeded him and left free to lead a riotous life. Everyone trembled at the name of Siraj-ud-daula.

In May 1756, Siraj started for Purnea to deal with the rebellion Shaukat Jang, but he retreated from Rajmahal on receipt of news of the defiant attitude of the English at Calcutta. Calcutta was attacked and taken. Then followed an effective expedition against Purnea. Shaukat Jang was defeated and killed in the *Battle of Manihari*. Siraj was now at the Zenith of his fortune. He received an imperial farman confirming him in the Subahdari of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Siraj-ud-daula's rupture with the English due to the crisis lay in the Company desire to improve its position and enhance its influence in Bengal.

The renewal of the Anglo-French war in Karnatak made it necessary for the English to make a bid for a firmer foothold in Bengal which was an important source of supply for their army. The presence of the French at Chandannagar close to Calcutta called for improvement of the defences of Fort William. Siraj ordered them to stay as traders and not masters. The French complied but the English did not. They wanted to gain control and dictate their own terms.

Capture of Calcutta

Siraj had reasonable grounds to seek a settlement of accounts with the English, under his orders the Qasim Bazar factory was invested, occupied and looted (May 1756). He personally led an attack on Calcutta, and after some resistance the city fell. *Governor Drake* and several other officers "disgracefully deserted" the city when its fall seemed imminent, they escaped to Fulta. *Holwell*, and a number of Europeans surrendered. All these prisoners were crowded in a chamber 18 feet by 14 feet 10 inches, with only one window, throughout the hot night of June. According to *Holwell*, they numbered about 165 or 170, and the next morning "only about 16" came out alive, "the rest being suffocated to death". The British historians call this event the '*Black hole tragedy*'. But Siraj was not personally responsible for the consequence of the confinement of the prisoners which was arranged by his officers.

Clive made a surprise attack to the nawabs in which the nawab's losses far exceeded those of the English. And four days later (February 9, 1757) the *Treaty of Alinagar* was signed.

Calcutta was taken back by the English under *Robert Clive* in the beginning of 1757. The Nawab was pressurized to accept all the demands of the British. Of course these demands were not acceptable to the Nawab. This resulted in to the *Battle of Plassey* between the Company and the Nawab in June, 1757. *Siraj-uj-Daulah* was defeated and Mir Jafar proclaimed the Nawab.

BATTLE OF PLASSEY (1757)

Siraj-ud-daulah was defeated and killed by the British in the Battle of Plassey in 1757. It was one of the *most significant events in Indian history*. This Battle paved the way for British conquest of Bengal and eventually, the whole of India. Mir Jafar, the new puppet Nawab installed by the British, granted the East India Company the right to collect revenue and also the right to free trade.

Cause of Defeat in Plassey : There were many reasons for the defeat to Siraj-ud-daulah.

- He was betrayed by his own officers and merchants such as Mir Jafar and Jagat Seth.
- The British had superior naval power.
- Siraj-ud-daulah was inexperienced and young.
- He did not make any attempt to gain support from the French.

Thus the Battle of Plassey paved the way for the British control over Bengal and ultimately helped them in controlling the entire country. The English East India Company was now not merely a trading company but also a military power. It possessed considerable landed territory which now needed a strong army to maintain and protect it.

Consequences of the Battle

- *Mir Jafar* became the Nawab of Bengal however the real power was in the hands of British. He paid to the company a sum of 17,700,000 rupees.
- The company got right to trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa without paying any tax.
- Company also received the Zamindari of 24 parganas of Bengal. It means English East India company changed from being a trading company to a political power.
- It gave British a foothold in India.
- Bengal's rich resources were now available to the British to defeat other European powers.
- Victory raised the power of Britishers.

The Verdict of Plassey was confirmed by the English victory at Buxar (1764). During the intervening years, the "Commercial character" of the English became predominantly political because Mir Jafar was weak in character Clive's firmness and ingenuity pushed him into helplessness, the Marathas lost for some years their military power and political ascendancy as a result of their defeat at Panipat, and the French suffered complete shipwreck in South India. In 1757 no one could have predicted the impending misfortunes of the Marathas and the French, but the establishments of British rule in Bengal could hardly have been anticipated. "It was the events of the next ten years which turned a paramount influence into a new regime. The Battle of Buxar was significant for it led to the rise of British rule. After this victory the English Company took over all the internal affairs of Bengal. Now they had to subdue the Afghans and Marathas, before they could establish their supremacy in India.

BATTLE OF BUXAR (1764)

Mir Qasim, the son-in-law of *Mir Jafar*, was made the new Nawab by the East India Company. *Mir Jafar* failed to meet the Company's demand. The new Nawab, however, became unpopular with the British soon because of the following measures he undertook.

- Modernization of the army.
- attempt to improve the finances of Bengal.
- attempt to check the misuse of trade privileges of the British
- abolition of taxes on internal trade to the dislike of the British.

Mir Qasim forged an alliance with the Mughal emperor *Shah Alam-II* and Nawab of Awadh *Shuja-ud-Daulah*. Their combined forces fought with the British forces at Buxar on October 1764. But the combined forces were defeated by the British. With this victory, the company became the real masters of Bengal.

Some major consequences of Battle of Buxar

The battle of Buxar was the result of *Qasim's* alliance with *Shuja* and is, on that ground, linked with political fortunes of *Mir Qasim*, the impact of the defeat fell exclusively on *Shuja*.

- One single blow reduced the most important and influential ruler of North India to dust. He made desperate efforts to continue fighting but deserted by his troops.
- He became a fugitive, seeking aid and shelter from his hereditary foes the Rohilla and Bangash Afghans as also the Marathas.
- His two subhas Awadh and Allahabad came under effective English occupation.
- When all his efforts failed, he sought security in unconditional surrender to the English.
- *Shah Alam* had already found shelter with the English.
- *Buxar* was a great victory for the English in the military sense. At Plassey *Siraj-ud-daula's* defeat was due to the treachery of his own generals.
- At *Buxar* the English emerged victorious without the aid of treachery in *Shuja's* camp.
- *Shuja's* ascendancy in Bengal survived the last challenge and the door was not open for the projection of its influence into the Awadh-Allahabad region.

Treaty of Allahabad (1765): *Clive* returned to Calcutta in May 1765 as *governor of Bengal* for the second time. The problem of the Company's relations with *Shuja* and *Shah Alam* awaited solution. Although the former's territories were under the occupation of the English army, annexation was ruled out. The assumption of administrative responsibility for the two subahs would be an experiment which had not yet been tried even in Bengal and was beyond the company's capacity. *Vansittart* had promised Awadh to *Shah Alam*, but *Clive* knew that he would not be able to maintain himself there without the help of English. *Shuja*, on the other hand was likely to provide a better security for Bengal's western frontier. *Clive* made the final settlement through the *Treaty of Allahabad* with *Shuja-ud-daula*. *Shuja's* old dominions were restorted to him with the exception of *Kora* and *Allahabad* which were given to *Shah Alam*. He was required to pay a war indemnity of Rs. 50 lakhs and to allow the company to trade duty-free in his dominions.

Thus the *Treaty of Allahabad* was signed by *Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II*. By this treaty, *Shah Alam II*, granted *Diwani* rights of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa to the Company. Now company has to collect revenues from these provinces and to pay to the Nawab a fixed sum of rupees 53 lakh a year. Company also granted the Emperor an annual pension of rupees 26 lakh. *Robert Clive* established a *Dual system of government* in Bengal. By this system the Nawab looked after the administration of law and order, where as the company kept in its own hand the charge of collecting revenue. Though the responsibility to look after the welfare of the people lay with the Nawab, the actual power lay with the English.

Thus *Robert Clive* laid the foundations of the British rule in India. He was an able and an ambitious man who had a number of achievements to his credit like the capture of *Arcot* and *Chandannagar*.

The Puppet Nawabs of Bengal : After the Battle of Buxar, the English recalled their old puppet, *Mir Jafar*, to the throne of Bengal, who by accepting the English condition of numerically

limiting the forcing of Bengal, crippled himself militarily. The weakness of his character, accentuated by bitter political experience and a crippling disease, made impossible to play an effective role in politics and administration. The victory of Buxar and Mir Jafar's death a few months later completed the establishment of the company's power in Bengal.

The Dual Government of Bengal : The treaty of Allahabad was a historical landmark in the history of Bengal because it led to an administrative transition and prepared the ground for the introduction of British system of administration in India.

It marked the end of the nawab's authority and ushered in a system under which power was ingeniously divorced from responsibility. It was a miserable failure of the company. When *Warren Hastings* was appointed *governor* of Bengal in 1772, he "tore the mask of Mughal sovereignty" and decided to rule Bengal by the right of conquest. Thus in less than two decades the actual power in Bengal was transferred from the nawabs of Bengal to the East India company and this richest province was reduced to acute poverty and misery, which was further followed by famines and epidemics. The capture of Bengal opened the flood gates of British colonialism and imperialism in India, reducing the rich economy of the country.

THE EXPANSION OF BRITISH EMPIRE

With Warren Hastings becoming the governor in 1772, Bengal came under the direct control of the company. He even stopped the annual grant of Emperor Shah Alam II. He also took away Allahabad and Kora from the Emperor and sold these territories back to the Nawab of Awadh. Awadh acted like a buffer between the British possessions and any external attack.

Anglo-Mysore wars

The First Mysore War : The first Mysore war began in 1767. The English defeated Hyder Ali and took possession of one of his fertile provinces. But by a treaty signed in 1769 all conquests made by either side were restored. English also promised to help Hyder Ali in case of attack by another power.

The Second Mysore War : The second Mysore was broke out in 1780 when Hyder Ali was attacked by the Marathas, and the English did not came to his rescue. He wanted them to vacate the part which was the only outlet for Mysore's trade and the English refused it. Hyder Ali died in the middle of the war in 1782 and left his son Tipu Sultan to continue the struggle.

The Third Mysore War : The Third Mysore War, broke out when Tipu Sultan, invaded the tiny Kingdom of Travancore in 1789, British decided to retaliate. The Marathas and Nizam also joined this war on the side of the British. The combined forces of British compelled Tipu to sign a treaty called *the treaty of Srirangapatnam*. He surrendered half of his territory to the enemies and paid heavy war indemnity. He was also forced to send two of his sons to Cornwallis as hostages to ensure his good conduct in future. At this time Lord Cornwallis was the Governor General of Bengal.

The Fourth Mysore War (1799) : At the time of the Fourth Mysore War (1799), *Lord Wellesley* was the Governor General

of Bengal. Tipu fortified his capital and recruited fresh soldiers for his cavalry. It was of a very short duration and Tipu's capital Srirangapatnam was captured by the British. The English took control of a large part of Mysore. The French who fought on the side of Tipu Sultan were also eliminated from India. The British Empire got extended after the conquest of Tipu's territory, from one end of the Deccan to the other.

The Maratha War

The Maratha wars bring to light how the English intrigned against the Marathas. After the death of the fourth Peshwa, a struggle for succession to the post of the Peshwa took place among the various clamants. Most of the Maratha chiefs including Mahadaji Sindhia fought the British under the leadership of Nana Phadnavis. The first Anglo-Maratha war (1772-1782) was followed by a peace treaty in 1782. In 1801-02, the two Maratha chiefs Holkar and Sindhia fought between themselves as both of them wanted to control the weak Peshwa. This wars the second Maratha war that fought for four years (1801 - 1804). The British succeeded in defeating the Maratha chief namely Holkar, Sindhia and Bhosle. Peshwa Baji Rao was feeling the humiliation of signing the subsidiary alliance, raised a huge army and attacked the British residency at Poona in 1817. This was the starting of the Third Maratha War. The rulers of Nagpur and Indore also came to the help of the Peshwa. But even after that, the Marathas were defeated and large part of their territories were annexed by the British.

Anglo-Nepalese War

The Gorkhas of Nepal, were also growing in strength at that time. Their occupation of some districts that belonged to the British provoked this attack. Thus the Anglo-Nepalese War (1814-16) became unavoidable. Nepal had to give many territories to the British. A British resident was stationed at Kathmandu. They reached upon the Himalayas. The British also fought against Burma and Burma occupied Shahpuri, a small island in the Bay of Bengal, which was under British protection. The war started and Burma was defeated and the *Treaty of Yandoboo* was concluded. Now Assam and neighbouring areas were bought under the control of the British.

Anglo-Sikh War

The conquest of Punjab followed that of Sindh after the death of *Maharaja Ranjit Singh* in 1836, the Kingdom was chaotic due to the internal struggle for power. By the treaty of Amritsar signed in 1809, *the Sutluj river had been fixed as the boundary* between the British and Maharaja Ranjit Singh's territories. Thus, barely the Sikh army had crossed the river then *Lord Hardinge* declare war, known as the *First Anglo-Sikh war* (1845-46). The Sikh were defeated and Punjab was now controlled by the British. British suffered heavy losses in the Battle of *Chilianwala* also known as *Second Anglo-Sikh war*. But they were able to defeat the Sikhs. The Punjab was annexed by *Lord Dalhousie* on 29th March 1849. Dalip Singh was given a pension and sent to England. *The Kohinoor* was taken away by the British as present for their queen.

Lord Dalhousie also applied the *Doctrine of Lapse*. According to that, adopted sons could not be made the ruler. It means the right of an adopted son to succeed to the throne was denied. Dalhousie annexed *Satara, Jaitpur, Udaypur, Sambalpur, Nagpur, Baghat and Jhansi*. Burma and Awadh were annexed by him on the charges of maladministration. He annexed Tanjore and Karnataka by abolishing the titles and pensions of their respective rulers. The British conquest gave India its geographical unity. By the time Dalhousie left India, the boundaries of British India were touching the Hindukush on the one end and Burma on the other practically covering the entire land area from the Himalayas to Kanya Kumari. But at the same time it provided the Indians the basis to wake up as one nation to fight against the colonial rule.

Economic Impact of British Rule of India

During the 17th century India was “the largest producer of industrial goods in the world.” Her principal exports consisted of cotton and silk fabrics, spices, indigo, sugar, drugs, precious stones and diverse works of Art. Gold and silver flowed into the country and added to her wealth. India became a ‘sink of precious metals’. In world trade “India was the respiratory organ for the circulation and distribution of moneys and commodities of the world; it was the sea wherein all the rivers of trade and industry flowed and thus enriched its inhabitants. “Apart from the European trade, India had a flourishing trade with other countries of Asia.”

India’s industries and agriculture both profited from her commercial relations with the countries of Asia - from Arabia to China and eastern coast of Africa.

Decline of India’s trade and commerce

Aurangzeb’s long wars in the Deccan and the lawlessness developing in North India due to the weakness of the imperial machinery of administration, reduced the cultivation of land as well as industrial production.

- Peace was disturbed by rebellions and wars.
- Trade suffered not only from insecurity but also from vexatious imports by local princes and petty chiefs.
- Foreign trade was seriously affected by the ruin of Indian shipping, first by the Portuguese, and later by the Dutch and English rivals in the Asiatic sea.
- India lost her old markets in South - East Asia, West Asia and Africa as a result of the dwindling of her mercantile marine power.
- During the early years of the eighteenth century, the English merchants finally came to localise their commercial interest in India.
- Farrukhsiyar’s firman of 1716, which provided for an extraordinary reduction in customs duties for the English merchants of Surat and Bengal, helped them to prevail over Dutch and Indian rivals.

In spite of these setbacks, the balance of trade was still in India’s favour and her agriculture, handicrafts and industries thrived, with England being the major beneficiary of India’s

vibrant economy. During the half century preceding Plassey, the trade of the English company prospered in India despite political disturbances, war and competition from the French and the Dutch.

- In 1652, the English and in 1665, the Dutch, obtained from Shahjahan exemption from all duties from Surat to all inland centres, and from Hughli or Pipli to Agra and Delhi.
- An Act passed in 1700 prohibited the use of Asiatic silks and printed and dyed calicoes in England, though these could still be imported into England for re-exportation.
- An Act passed in 1720, generally prohibited the wear and use of calicoes not dyed or printed in England.
- In Bengal, the English put their own interpretation on Farrukhsiyar’s farman and claimed right which were not really warranted by the imperial grant. Even then they had to reckon with the competition from Indian traders and the French and the Dutch merchant and the restraints imposed by the Nawabs could not be ignored.
 - After 1757 there was a large-scale English run. On Bengal’s inland trade.
 - In 1765 Clive established monopoly of salt manufacture and trade through a society.
 - In 1776 Warren Hastings introduced a new scheme of leasing out to individuals the privilege of manufacturing and selling salt.
 - In 1758 Robert Clive secured from Mir. Jafar, the puppet Nawab of Bengal, monopoly of the Satpetre trade in Bengal for the company.
 - By 1793 indigo became another important item of export, indigo planters were “British Free Traders”.

Transformation of Indian Economy into Colonial Economy

- Soon after the battles of Plassey and Buxar, when the English established their sway over the rich province of Bengal, the Indian economy was transformed from a surplus and self-sufficient economy into a colonial economy.
- There was a steady increase in both exports and imports of the company.
- The company’s servants captured the trade in commodities like salt, betelnut and tobacco which had so long been prohibited to all European traders.
- This was one of the factors which led to the break up between the English and Mir Kasim, the Nawab of Bengal.
- It is also an admitted fact that the British deliberately crippled Indian trade and manufacture by creating a high tariff wall in Britain against Indian goods and by encouraging the import of British goods into India.
- After the acquisition of political power of Bengal by the English, India’s economy was made to subserve British colonial interests. The huge drain of wealth from Bengal, the destruction of its industry, and the gradual increase in land revenue during the latter half of the eighteenth century, ruined Bengal completely.
- Dubious methods were adopted by the English to ruin trade, crafts and industries.

- Parliament passed various prohibitory and sumptuary laws for the protection of the English wearing industry. The rich textiles of Bengal, for which there was demand all over the world, were monopolised by the English.
- Bolt, a senior servant of the company, wrote in 1772 that weavers who dared to sell their goods to purchasers other than the company were “frequently seized and imprisoned, confined in irons, fined considerable sums of money and deprived, in the most ignominious manner, of what they consider most valuable, their crafts”.
- The result of such methods was the wholesale abandonment of their occupation by the weavers and the decline of the weaving industry in Bengal.
- In 1786, the Court of Directors made the first tentative efforts for sale of Lancashire cotton cloth in Bengal.
- In 1793 “the calicoes and muslins of India, even for Indian use, were supplanted in Bengal by the products of the steamlooms of Manchester”.
- In 1815 the Bengal Government reduced the import duty on British goods by 2 1/2 percent, delivering thereby a severe blow to Indian Industry.

After 1765, the land revenue demand of Bengal alone was raised by 400 percent in the thirty years.

As saltpetre was an ingredient for the manufacture of gunpowder, it was in great demand among European nations during their wars in the 18th century. The indigo planters were ‘British Free Traders’, who exploited and oppressed the poor indigo cultivators in the most inhuman manner. Bengal’s rich sugar industry was also ruined on account of heavy duties imposed on Bengal sugar in England as compared with low duties on West Indies sugar. India’s flourishing shipbuilding industry was also ruined on account of the restrictions imposed on Indian shipping in the interests of British shipping.

England’s political power in India enabled the British manufacturer to convert this country into a vast market for their goods. The result was an ‘economic revolution’ which made India a land of poverty in the nineteenth century.

The inventions of *Hargreaves*, *Arkwright* and others during the years 1767 to 1785 helped extensive production of cotton goods in England. The unorganized Indian manufacturers, incapable of using improved scientific methods and discriminated against in respect of duties by the company’s Government, were not equal to this unfair competition.

THE STAGES OF BRITISH COLONIALISM

The Battle of Plassey in 1757 laid the foundation of British colonialism in India, when the East India company established its hold over Bengal. Company strengthened its naval power in the coastal regions of India, and after the Battle of Plassey, when the rich provinces of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa came under its control, it made concrete efforts to usurp the wealth of local Nawabs, Zamindars and Chiefs. Consequently, every year the wealth and resources of India began to be drained out; and as England became richer, India grew poorer and agriculture became the only source of sustenance to the Indians. But Indians agriculture too broke down on account of the oppressive British revenue system.

The Basic tenet of colonialism is economic exploitation but the basic nature of colonialism is manifested through various means of economic exploitation.

R.P. Dutt has made a brilliant analysis of the Indian colonial economy and commented upon *Karl Marx’s theory* of three phases of British Colonialism and economic exploitation of India. These phases are:-

I. Mercantilist Phase (1757 To 1813)

The East India Company completely monopolised trade and by manipulating low prices of Indian finished goods for exports to England and Europe, began the direct plunder of India’s wealth. During this period the surplus revenues of Bengal and other provinces were utilised for buying the finished Indian goods for export.

II. Free Trade Industrial or Capitalism (1813 to 1858)

During this phase, India was converted into a free market for the import of industrially manufactured British goods and a source of raw materials to be exported to England. The extent of exploitation can be judged by the fact that India, which had for centuries exported cotton goods to the whole world, started, by 1850, importing one-fourth of all British cotton exports. In 1833 a complete ban was imposed on all commercial activities of the company.

Thus exports from India came to be confined to raw materials and foodgrains, which caused famine conditions in India, resulting in the death of nearly 20 million people in the nineteenth century.

III. Finance Capitalism (After 1860)

After the rebellion, there was a collusion between the British and India’s conservative and reactionary elements. To meet their commercial and social needs roads and railways, post and telegraph, banking and other services were developed. These measures helped in augmenting the investment of British capital in India. To retain control over Indian capital and industrial development, the *managing agency system* was also adopted. During this third phase India, in the real sense, became a colony of Britain.

As a result of the nearly two centuries long economic exploitation of India by England, the Indian economy was not only completely ruined, but the basic character of almost every aspect of Indian economy also totally altered.

LAND TENURE SYSTEM IN INDIA

Permanent or Zamindari System:

Introduced by - Cornwallis in 1793

What was it : A 10 year (decennial) settlement made with Zamindars, who were the absolute owners of lands for which the East India company gave them permanent rights to collect land revenue.

Presidency : Mainly applied to Bihar and Bengal.

Features :

- All the land belonged to Zamindars.

- Zamindars had to collect revenue from tenants and submit it to British.
- They had the full authority to decide the amount to be collected from tenants.
- There was provision for Zamindars to keep some amount of revenue with themselves.
- The amount of revenue was fixed once and for all the time to come.
- Zamindars were having three type of right over land

Alienable : As per the right the Zamindari could be transferred from incapable to capable ones if they did not meet the revenue collection target.

Rentable : The Zamindari could be outsourced to comparatively smaller Zamindars.

Heritable : With the death of Zamindars it would be automatically transferred either to the siblings or to the descendants.

Consequences of Zamindari System

Political Impacts

- British got new political allies with Zamindars who would keep their own guardsmen to suppress peasant revolts.
- Sometimes they also would act as informers and remained loyal to British rule.

Economic Impacts

- Financial security of British had increased.
- Cost of running administration decreased as the British appointed few Zamindars to collect revenue from lakhs of farmers.
- Gradually the income of the government started declining as the revenue collected were fixed permanently whereas there were continuous increase in intermediaries.

Social Impacts

- Socially Zamindari system had a negative impact on the lower stratum of Indian Society.
- The farmers had nothing to do with bargaining power as such they lose it.
- Since they didn't have any possession over land they had to opt for being tenants -at-will for zamindars.
- The Britisher shifted textile manufacturing to Britain with a plea of industrial revolution and started importing cotton from and exporting finished product to India. This led to collapse of Desi industries and the weaver became unemployed which compelled them to migrate to village in search of work.
- Hence the begar or unpaid labour started increasing in the field of zamindars.
- As the zamindari had monopoly of controlling the revenue they started to levy more and more tax on the poor farmers and made them poorer day by day.

Ryotwari System

Introduced by - Thomas Munco and Read in Madras in 1826.

What was it : This was a direct settlement made between colonial government and the "ryots" (the peasants)

Presidency : Madras, Bombay and Assam.

Features :

- All the land were claimed by Government and allotted directly to the cultivation on the basis of the amount of tax they could pay.
- Farmers gained authority over their piece of land and they were free to use it in whatever way they wanted. It might be personal use, rent, sell, bequeath, mortgage and lease.
- The farmer could be expelled from the possession of land if they were unable to pay the tax.
- The government has the authority to increase their revenue whenever they wanted
- The amount of tax was revised in every thirty years.

Consequences of Ryotwari System

Political Impacts

- The intermediate layer between peasants and British, the Zamindar started to lose their importance as a result of direct agreement.

Economic Impacts :

- The Government insisted upon growing cash crops so as to earn more cash revenue. As cash crops required more growing and maintenance cost it compelled the peasants to take more loans from money lenders.
- Another instance which made the peasant farmless was the result of American Civil War which resulted into reduction of cotton export. Hence the peasants defaulted on loans and the lands were transferred to money lenders.

Social Impacts :

- The weavers became unemployed because of cotton-textile industries in Britain. Hence they had to work for Zamindars at their own will so as to earn their livelihood.
- Farmers had to pay revenue even during drought and famine which became hard at times.

Mahalwari System:

Introduced by: Lord William Bentick in 1833.

What was it : Out sourcing of revenue collection work to village community. Technically the tax collector was the "head man" of the village.

Presidency : Gangetic valley, north west provinces, Parts of central India, Punjab.

Features :

- The assessment of taxation was done by individual village.
- Taxation targets were distributed among the cultivators.
- Individual farmers were responsible for their share of contribution. So everyone was liable for others arrears.
- A group of high caste elders were recommended to represent the whole village population.
- The revision of tax was on periodical basis.

Consequences of Mahalwari System

Political Impacts

- Introduction of village headman or “Lambardar” for collecting the tax from the cultivators and submission of the same to British.

Economic Impacts :

- As the system was primarily confined to Punjab and parts of Northern India the British started to extract more revenue by giving supplications of the fertile lands. Hence generally a revenue of 50% - 70% was collected of the total produced.
- With passing generation the land got divided among the descendants to the farmers. Hence there were gradual decrease in size of land holdings which in turn reduced the farm productivity.
- The transfer of lands to money lenders was more as there were increase in such farmers who continuously losing their land due to inefficiency of repaying debts.

Social Impacts : The settlement of taxation was directly with villagers which led to form a common ownership and its maintenance known as “Bhai Chara” or “Mahali” i.e. represented a group of villagers.

IMPACT OF LAND TENURE SYSTEM

Over all the peasant community was affected to a great extent by the land tenure system levied by British.

1. Impact on Agriculture community

- **Change in Agrarian life :** On, one hand there was steady growth of population of peasant community due to peaceful condition among the people, but on the other hand there was gradual disappearance of economic self-sufficiency of the farmers and gradual transfer of authority within the village from the village elders to the agents of the government.
- **Disintegration of Village Communities and Emergence of Indian Middle Class :** The land revenue system succeeded in breaking up the age old social frame work which was an assimilation of different groups of categorized on the basis of their profession like peasants, artisans etc. But with growing demand of changing revenue system the artisan had to sacrifice their profession as they lost the position and market of their products. Moreover they changed into wage labourers from the industrial workers.
- **Agricultural Backwardness :** The land revenue system compelled the peasant for paying heavy revenues to the British. As a result they were unable to save money for future use. In addition the liability of the farmer was restricted to him. The Zamindar had nothing to do with that rather than villagers or peasant gradually get poorer. Even they didn't have the option to optimise their cultivation practice with better amenities. This resulted into the backwardness of Agriculture in India.
- **Increase of Rural Indebtedness :** As the peasant communities were unable to pay the revenue they had the

only option of taking debt from the moneylender who in long run captured the land holdings of the poor farmer due to the lack of repayment of loan. This was a common phenomena during the Ryotwari land tenure system.

- **Commercialisation of Agriculture:** Previously the agricultural productivity was confined to the “village use” only which converted into ‘production of marketing’ as a result of land tenure system. This enabled the “merchant” or the middle man class of society to take undue advantages from the peasants as they had a monopoly over the market owing to their supremacy in economic position.

2. Growth of Poverty

- During 1854 - 1901, 24 famines hit India, in which about 29 million people perished.
- In 1943, famine of Bengal claimed three million lives.
- There were other factors which also contributed to the growth of poverty among the agriculturists. On addition to such economic earthquakes as the periodically occurring agrarian crisis, there were also non-social causes such as drought, or devastating rains which brought economic misery to the agriculturists.
- A large proportion of Indian peasant population got into debt due to their inability to pay land revenue as a result of bad monsoons.
- Famines also hit the land. These famines revealed that poverty, chronic starvation, low life expectancy, and infant mortality had taken firm roots in India.
- The worst feature of the Indian famines was that large-scale deaths occurred not because of drought, floods, crop failures, and non-availability of food grains in the country but mainly due to starvation owing to the poor purchasing power of the people.
- The cumulative effect of all the factors enumerated above explains the growth of the phenomenal poverty of the agricultural population.
- Unable to pay his debt or even the interest on it, the agriculturist not only lost his crops to the money lender but rapidly lost his land to him.

3. Decline of Village Industries

- During 1757 - 1857, the East India Company Expanded its control over more and more territories in India.
- In 1813, the industrial classes had become politically powerful in England.
- The 1813 Charter destroyed the monopoly of trade of the East India company.
- The Act of 1793, in Bengal, had a very disastrous effect on the life of the craftsmen.
- The village industries were an integral part of the balanced and self-sufficient village economy of pre-British India.
- The famines also contributed to the decline of village artisan industries. During the period of famine, poor artisans, specially weavers, were constrained to seek relief by taking to other forms of work.
- Another aspect of the change in the status of the artisan was that he was increasingly transformed into a wage worker.

- Many of the village artisans deserted their traditional occupations and migrated to urban areas.
- These artisans became either wage - earners in towns and cities or turned into landless labourers on petty wages.

4. Ruin of Indian Handicrafts

While the village industries declined slowly, the town handicrafts in India had a “sudden and complete collapse” under the British rule. Karl Marx has rightly said “The British intruder broke up the Indian handloom and destroyed the spinning loom, and inundated the very mother country of cotton with cottons”. The rule of the East India Company proved disastrous to the handicraft industry in India for a number of reasons. The first was that it destroyed the native states, which were the greatest customers and patrons of this industry. Secondly, the East India Company, which was the successor of these states, could have given impetus to the industries, but, being a foreign company under the control and direction of foreign power, it adopted measures under the pressure of British Government, which proved detrimental to the manufacturing interests of India. Thirdly, being a trading company it wanted to produce things cheaply and sell them profitably in other markets. B. D. Basu has enumerated the following principal measures taken by the British to bring about the collapse of Indian handicrafts. From the time England acquired political power in India, she destroyed Indian industries principally by means of:

1. The forcing of British free trade on India;
2. imposing heavy duties on Indian manufacturers in England.
3. the export of raw products from India;
4. the transit and customs duties;
5. granting special privileges to the British in India;
6. building railways in India;
7. compelling Indian artisans to divulge their trade secrets; and
8. holding of exhibitions.

Another factor which affected the handicrafts in India was the attitude of the new wealthy classes which evolved on the basis of the establishment of British rule in India.

5. De-Industrialisation

The colonial masters of India deliberately deprived India of the fruits of the Industrial revolution and strove to keep India predominantly agrarian, so that they could secure cheap agricultural raw materials from India for British industries and find ready markets in India for industrially produced goods of Britain. In England and other European countries there were Indian modern industries which vanquished and crushed Indian handicrafts.

Ruin of handicrafts and industries and industrialisation led to acute poverty and unemployment. Therefore, by the end of the 19th century, the demand for rapid industrialisation along modern lines had assumed national proportions.

6. Growth of foreign capital and the rise of modern industries in India

- In 1850, cotton textiles, jute, and coal mining industries were started in India.
- Before 1914 nearly 97% of British capital investment in India was diverted towards completion of govt. projects, plantation industry and development of financial houses.
- The coming of railways heralded the entry of modern machines in India and during the 1850's Cotton textiles, jute, and coal mining industries were started in India.
- Thus establishment of modern industries began in India during the second half of the nineteenth century, but its growth was slow and stunted and under the control of foreign capital.
- Thus the predominant control of British finance capital retarded the tempo of free industrial growth and general, economic development in India.

7. Growth of Unemployment

- In India, labour was released from traditional industries but there was no growth of modern industries or extension of agriculture to absorb that labour. Briefly, the economic development of the country became “an appendage of a foreign exploitative system”.
- Industry and trade were in foreign hand leading to a drain of the country's wealth; and its vast resources were monopolised and brutally exploited by the colonial masters.

8. Change in the Structure of India's Trade

- The expansion of British trade in India not only proved ruinous to Indian trade and industry, but also radically changed the structure of India's trade. Competition with imported goods destroyed the Indian industry, deprived the artisans of their income and narrowed down the avenues of employment for labour.
- Thus, the change in the structure of Indian trade became an instrument of exploitation of India's resources and her economic enslavement. Owing to this change, there was such a heavy reduction in the prices of Indian products in the world market that the terms trade turned heavily against India.

9. Drain of Wealth

- The father of Indian Nationalism, Dadabhai Naoroji has explained the “Drain of Wealth” theory in his book *Poverty and Unbritish Rule in India*. As per the theory, part of India's national wealth was being drained away to England without being consumed by Indians and having no economic or material return. This nature of the drain of wealth was continuous, which included home charges, expenditure by secretary of state and Indian office in London, dividends of share holders of East India Company, interest on public debt, war and military expenditure and store purchases in England, interest on foreign capital investments, foreign banking, shipping, insurance and managing agency.

Exercise - 1

- Identify the Englishman, who gave all the information about the “Black-Hole Episode”, though in a single-sided way.
 - Stephenson
 - Minchin
 - John Surman
 - Holwell
- English was made the medium of instruction in India in the year of:
 - 1844
 - 1835
 - 1833
 - 1813
- Ghasiti Begam, Sahukat Jang, Rajballabh and Yar Latif Khan were sore enemies of
 - Nawab Alivardi Khan
 - Nanda Kumar
 - Siraj-ud-daulah
 - Shuja-ud-daulah
- Who led the Maratha forces in the 3rd Battle of Panipat in 1761?
 - Vishwanath Rao
 - Sadashiva Rao
 - Madhava Rao
 - Dattaji Scindia
- Lord Cornwallis has been criticised for not destroying Tipu Sultan when he had the chance to do so after the third Anglo-Mysore war. Which one of the following consideration was not a factor taken into account by Cornwallis in taking his decision?
 - Sickness spread among the English troops
 - War with France, and the consequent alliance between Tipu and the French, were apprehended
 - The territory was too large to be administered with any
 - Cornwallis was ill-disposed towards the court of Directors who were advising full annexation
- Haider Ali was originally
 - a member of the royal family
 - an adventurer
 - an invader
 - a Hindu chief
- Haider Ali declared war on English, thereby starting the second Anglo-Mysore war on the ground that
 - His neutrality was violated
 - The English had abused him
 - The English had conspired against him
 - None of the above
- Haider Ali established his authority over the Mysore state by overthrowing
 - Devraj
 - Nanjaraj
 - Kaviraja
 - Krishna Raj
- Which Nawab of Bengal shifted his capital from Murshidabad to Monghyr?
 - Mir Qasim
 - Mir Jafar
 - Siraj-ud-daulah
 - Shuja-ud-din
- Haider Ali’s administration is remembered for its:
 - Leniency
 - Severity
 - Nobel innovations
 - Welfare measures
- An Indian ruler of the 18th century who planted “the Tree of liberty” at his capital, enrolled himself as a member of the Jacobin club of France and loved himself to be called ‘Citizen’, was
 - Mir Jafar
 - Tipu Sultan
 - Haider Ali
 - Banda Bahadur
- Tipu Sultan was defeated and killed in the Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799). Who of the following did not give a share in Tipu’s territories?
 - The Marathas
 - The English
 - The Nizam
 - The Hindu dynasty of Mysore
- Tipu Sultan was a man of complex character. He was an innovator, which of the following was not one of his innovations?
 - A new calendar
 - A new method of survey and settlement
 - A new system of coinage
 - New scales of weights and measures
- Between 1765 and 1800 the Sikhs brought the whole of Punjab and Jammu under their control. At that time they were organised into:
 - Six misls
 - Ten misls
 - Twelve misls
 - Sixteen misls
- Give the location of the decisive battle of the second Anglo-Sikh war?
 - Buddewal
 - Chilianwala
 - Ramnagar
 - Gujarat
- Indicate the importance of the treaty of Amritsar (1809) signed between Ranjit Singh and the English?
 - It marked the beginning of an era of peace and prosperity in the Punjab
 - It helped Ranjit Singh in realising his ambition of conquering Multan, Kashmir, Ladakh and Peshawar
 - It recognised the power of the British as the political limit of Ranjit Singh’s policy of expansion
 - It made him the undisputed master of all the Sikhs
- What was the most important reason for the First Anglo-Sikh War (1845-46)?
 - The attempts of the English Company to interfere with the internal matters of the Lahore state
 - The agreement entered into the Dogra Chief, Gulab Singh, by the English to sell Kashmir to the former
 - To divert the energies of ungovernable Khalsa army
 - The war-like preparations of the English across the Sutlej

18. During whose Peshwaship was the second and third Anglo-Maratha fought resulting in the abolition of the Peshawaship by the English?
 (a) Narayan Rao (b) Raghunath Rao
 (c) Madhav Rao I (d) Baji Rao II
19. What is the correct sequence of the following events?
 1. Third Maratha war
 2. Third Battle of Panipat
 3. Third Mysore War
 4. Third Burmese War
 (a) 3-4-2-1 (b) 2-1-3-4
 (c) 2-4-3-1 (d) 3-1-2-4
20. The following are connected with the First Anglo-Maratha War 1779-82:
 1. Convention of Wadgaon
 2. Treaty of Purandar
 3. Treaty of Surat
 4. Treaty of Salbai
 Their arrangement in the correct chronological order is
 (a) 3-2-1-4 (b) 2-1-3-4
 (c) 4-2-1-3 (d) 1-4-3-2
21. What was the worst part of the permanent settlement of Bengal?
 (a) Disintegration of the village communities
 (b) Creation of absentee landlords
 (c) Sub-infatuation of estates and holdings
 (d) Subjection of the cultivator to untold misery
22. Under the dual government in Bengal, the administration was carried on by -
 (a) The East India Company and the British government.
 (b) The English Company and the Mughal emperor of India.
 (c) The British government and the Indian government
 (d) The East India Company and the Nawab of Bengal.
23. Identify the name of the wife of the Mughal Emperor who is believed to have sabotaged the work of the rebels by acting as an informer to the British.
 (a) Zeenat Mahal (b) Fatima Begum
 (c) Hazrat Mahal (d) Mumtaz Mahal
24. 'The Musalman', the handwritten daily newspaper in circulation since 1927, is published from which one of the following places?
 (a) Chennai (b) Hyderabad
 (c) Mysore (d) Lucknow
25. Under which one of the following systems of assessment, the British Government collected revenue directly from the farmers?
 (a) Zamindari (b) Ryotwari
 (c) Annawari (d) Desaiwari
26. In 1856, Awadh would not have been annexed with the British empire if the Nawab of Awadh had
 (a) allied with the British
 (b) not refused to introduce reforms as suggested by the British
 (c) fought against the British
 (d) a natural heir
27. Which one among the following was the result of the First Anglo-Maratha War of 1775-1782?
 (a) The British won the war
 (b) The Marathas won the war
 (c) There was no victory for either side
 (d) It helped Haider Ali to gather strength because the British and Marathas were engaged in a mutual war
28. Which one among the following was the immediate cause of attack by Nawab Siraj-ud-Daula on Calcutta in 1756?
 (a) Refusal of the English Company to pay the overdue trade tax
 (b) The English conspired against the Nawab with a view to depose him from the Throne
 (c) Siraj-ud-Daula wanted to drive out the English from Bengal
 (d) Refusal of the English to demolish the fortification of Calcutta
29. The fortification of Calcutta by the British in 1756 was regarded by the Nawab of Bengal, Siraj-ud-Daulah, as
 (a) growth of large-scale British trade
 (b) an attack upon his sovereignty
 (c) insecurity of the British in India
 (d) British control over Bengal
30. Which one among the following thinkers argued that Maratha rule in general and Shivaji in particular represented early nationalist consciousness in India?
 (a) Pandita Ramabai
 (b) MG Ranade
 (c) Bipin Chandra Pal
 (d) Gopal Krishna Gokhale

Exercise -2

Statement Based MCQ

- Identify the positive effects of the beginning of European Commerce in India.
 - Money economy grew up.
 - International market relations were set-up.
 - Increased quantity of India's export.
 - Indian agriculture was further commercialised.

(a) 1, 4, 5 (b) 2, 3, 4
(c) 1, 2, 3, 5 (d) 1, 2, 3
 - Bring out the correct statement about British expansion in Madras
 - In 1658, all the English settlement on the Coromandal and in Eastern India were placed under the control of Fort St. George.
 - In 1801, Lord Wellesley created the Madras presidency as it existed till Indian Independence.
 - In 1640, the British obtained the site of Madras from the Raja of Valikondapuram.
 - The British built a fortified factory, viz. Fort St George, at Madras.

(a) 1, 2, 3 (b) 1 & 3
(c) 1, 2, 4 (d) 2, 3, 4
 - What was/were the object/objects of Queen Victoria's Proclamation (1858)?
 - To disclaim any intention to annex Indian States
 - To place the Indian administration under the British Crown
 - To regulate East India Company's trade with India

Select the correct answer using the code given below.

(a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
 - Which of the following statements above Ryotwari settlement is/are correct?
 - It recognised the cultivators as the owner of land.
 - It was a temporary settlement.
 - It was introduced later than the permanent settlement. Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) Only 1 (d) All of these
 - Which of the following statements regarding Permanent Settlement is/are correct?
 - The Permanent Settlement was introduced in parts of the Madras and Bombay Presidencies.
 - The Permanent Settlement created a new class of landlords with hereditary rights on land.
 - The landlords created by the Permanent Settlement could never be removed under any circumstance.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3
 - Which of the following statements about Permanent Settlement are correct?
 - It conferred proprietary rights to peasants.
 - The Zamindars were recognised as the proprietors of land.
 - The government permanently fixed the land revenue demand.
 - The Zamindars acted as the middlemen between the peasants and the government.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

(a) 2, 3 and 4 (b) 3 and 4
(c) 1 and 4 (d) 1 and 3
 - Consider the following statements about Shivaji's military acumen
 - He was a master in guerrilla tactics and swift cavalry warfare.
 - He had built a series of fortified strongholds on the table mountains of the Western Deccan.

Which of the statement(s) given above is/are correct?

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
 - Under the forceful thrust of British rule, a rapid transformation of the Indian economy took place. In this context, which of the following statements is/ are correct?
 - Indian economy was transformed into a colonial economy in the 19th century whose structure was determined by Britain's fast developing industrial economy.
 - The influx of cheap Indian products into England gave a great blow to English textile industries.
 - The 19th century saw the collapse of the traditional Indian village economy and fresh economic alignment along commercial lines.

Select the correct answer using the code given below :

(a) 1 and 3 (b) 1 only
(c) 2 only (d) 1 and 2
 - Consider the following statements
 - Battle of Buxar provided the key to the English to establish their rule in India.
 - The Treaty of Allahabad, concluded in 1765, enabled the British to establish their rule in Bengal.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Directions (Qs. 10-12):** The following questions consist of two statements, Statement I and Statement II. You are to examine these two statements carefully and select the answers to these questions using the codes given below Codes

- (a) Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
- (b) Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
- (c) Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
- (d) Statement I is false, but Statement II is true
10. **Statement I:** The Permanent Zamindari Settlement of land created a new class of landlords.
Statement II: The new class of landlords became strong political allies of the British and were interested in the continuance of British dominion.
11. **Statement I:** The economy of India in the 19th century came to a state of ruin under English East India Company.
Statement II: English East India Company's acquisition of Diwani right led to the miseries of the peasants and those associated with the traditional handicrafts industry of India.
12. **Statement I:** The annexation of Awadh by Lord Dalhousie in 1856 adversely affected the financial conditions of the sepoys.
Statement II: The sepoys had to pay higher taxes on the land where their family members stayed in Awadh.

Matching Based MCQ

DIRECTIONS (Qs. 13 to 17): Match List-I with List-II and select the correct answer by using the codes given below the lists.

13. **List I**
- Hector Munro
 - Siraj-ud-daula
 - Robert Clive
 - Shaja-ud-din
- List II**
- The first Nawab of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.
 - Battle of Plassey
 - Battle of Buxar
 - The last Nawab of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.
- (a) A-4, B-2, C-1, D-3
(b) A-1, B-3, C-4, D-2
(c) A-3, B-4, C-2, D-1
(d) A-2, B-1, C-3, D-4

14. **List I**
- Treaty of Seringapatam
 - Death of Haider
 - Treaty of Mangalore
 - Death of Tipu
- (a) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4
(b) A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3
(c) A-4, B-3, C-1, D-2
(d) A-3, B-4, C-2, D-1

15. **List I**
- Permanent Settlement
 - Ryotwari Settlement
 - Mahalwari Settlement
- (a) A-3, B-1, C-2
(c) A-3, B-2, C-1
- List II**
- Parts of Madras and Bombay Presidencies
 - Gangetic Valley, North- West Provinces, Punjab.
 - Bengal and Bihar
- (b) A-1, B-2, C-3
(d) A-2, B-1, C-3

16. **List I**
- Hyderabad
 - Bengal
 - Avadh
 - Travancore
- List II**
- Nizam-ul-Mulk
 - Alivardi Khan
 - Saadat Khan
 - Martanda Varman

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (c) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

17. **List I (Wars)**
- Second Carnatic War
 - Second Anglo-Mysore
 - Third Anglo-Mysore
 - First Anglo-Maratha War
- List II (Treaties)**
- Salbai
 - Bassein
 - Pondicherry
 - Srirangapatnam
 - Mangalore

Codes:

- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| (b) | 3 | 5 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 4 | 5 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 3 | 1 | 4 | 5 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (b) 5. (d)
6. (b) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (b)
11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (d)
16. (c) 17. (c) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (a)
21. (d) 22. (d)
23. (a) Zeenat Mehal was the wife of Bahadur Shah II.
24. (d) The Musalman is the oldest Urdu language daily newspaper published from Chennai in India. The newspaper was founded by Syed Azmatullah in 1927. The Musalman is possibly the only handwritten newspaper in the world.
25. (b) Ryotwari System was introduced by Thomas Munro in 1820. In this System, the ownership rights were handed over to the peasants. British Government collected taxes directly from the peasants.
26. (d) Lord Dalhousie was keen on annexing the kingdom of Awadh. But the task presented certain difficulties because the Nawab of Awadh had been a British ally since the Battle of Buxar and had been most obedient to the British over the years. Lord Dalhousie hit upon the idea of alleviating the plight of the people of Awadh and accusing Nawab Wajid Ali on the ground of misgovernance and annexed his state in 1856.
27. (c) The First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-1782) was fought between the British East India company and Maratha Empire in India. The war began with the Treaty of Surat and ended with the Treaty of Salbai. After the British defeat, Warren Hastings through Mahadji Shinde proposed a new treaty between the Peshwa and the British that would recognize the young Madhavrao as the Peshwa and grant Raghunathrao a pension.
This treaty, known as the Treaty of Salbai, was signed on 17 May 1782, and was ratified by Hastings in June 1782 and by Phadnis in February 1783. The treaty also returned to Shinde all his territories west of the Yamuna. It also guaranteed peace between the two sides for twenty years, thus ending the war.
28. (d) His charges against the company were mainly threefold. Firstly, that they strengthened the fortification around the Fort William without any intimation and approval; secondly, that they grossly abused the trade privileges granted to them by the Mughal rulers, which caused heavy loss of customs duties for the government; and thirdly, that they gave shelter to some of his officers, for example Krishnadas, son of Rajballav, who fled Dhaka after misappropriating government funds. Hence, when the East India Company started further enhancement of military preparedness at Fort William in Calcutta,

Siraj asked them to stop. The Company did not heed his directives, so Siraj-ud Daulah retaliated and captured Kolkata (Shortly renamed as Alinagar) from the British in June 1756.

29. (b) When the elderly Alivardi Khan died in 1756, he was succeeded as Nawab of Bengal by his grandson, Siraj ud-Daulah. He was particularly distrustful of the British, and aimed to seize Calcutta and the large treasure he believed would be held there. From the moment he became Nawab, he began searching for a pretext to drive the British from his lands. It resulted in a battle between British East India Company and Siraj ud-Daulah. The British were unprepared for the attack on June 20th. Entire European population of the city fell almost immediately leaving the city in Indian hands.
30. (d) Gopal Krishana Gokhale was a senior leader of the Indian National Congress and founder of the Servants of India Society. According to him Maratha rule in general and Shivaji in particular represented the early nationalist spirit and consciousness in India.

EXERCISE-2

1. (c) 2. (d)
3. (a) The object/objects of Queen Victoria's Proclamation (1858) were to disclaim any intention to annex Indian States as the announcement reversed Lord Dalhousie's pre-war policy of political unification through princely state annexation. It was also to place the Indian administration under the British Crown. Therefore, statement 1 & 2 are correct. However it was not to regulate East India Company's trade with India so statement 3 is wrong.
4. (d) The Ryotwari system, instituted in some parts of British India, was one of the two main systems used to collect revenues from the cultivators of agricultural land.
Features of Ryotwari System
 1. Government claimed the property rights to all the land, but allotted it to the cultivators on the condition that they pay taxes. In other words, it established a direct relation between the landholder and the government.
 2. Farmers could use, sell, mortgage, bequeath, and lease the land as long as they paid their taxes. In other words Ryotwari system gave a proprietary right upon the landholders.
 3. IF they did not pay taxes, they were evicted
 4. Taxes were only fixed in a temporary settlement for a period of thirty years and then revised.
 5. Government had retained the right to enhance land revenue whenever it wanted

6. Provided measures for revenue relief during famines but they were seldom applied in real life situation.
5. (b) As per the Permanent Settlement system, the Zamindars who formerly collected revenues were “recognized” as Landlords and the ownership of the Land was made hereditary. This means that now onwards there would be no auctioning. The son of Zamindar would be a Zamindar.
6. (a) On the basis of the report submitted by Sir John Shore Cornwallis introduced land revenue settlement for ten years with Zamindars in 1789 but the same was made permanent in 1793 by the proclamation of Cornwallis and it was known as Permanent Land Revenue settlement.
- The basic features of the settlement were as follows:
1. The Zamindars were made hereditary owners of the land under their possession. They and their successors exercised total control over lands.
 2. The Zamindars could sell and purchase lands.
 3. The state had no direct contact with the peasants.
 4. The company’s share in the revenue was fixed permanently with the Zamindars.
7. (c) Shiva Ji innovated military tactics, pioneering the guerrilla warfare methods (Shiva sutra or ganimi kava), which leveraged strategic factors like geography, speed, and surprise and focused pinpoint attacks to defeat his larger and more powerful enemies. Shivaji himself constructed about 15-20 new forts (including key sea forts like Sindhudurg), but he also rebuilt or repaired many strategically placed forts to create a chain of 300 or more, stretched over a thousand kilometres across the rugged crest of the Western Ghats.
8. (a)
9. (c) The Battle of Buxar was fought between British East India Company and the combined forces of Mir Qasim, the Nawab of Bengal, Shuja-ud-Daulah, the Nawab of Awadh and Shah Alam II, the Mughal Emperor on 23rd October, 1764. Shah Alam II, signed the Treaty of Allahabad that secured Diwani Rights for the Company to collect and manage the revenues of almost 100,000,000 acres (400,000 km²) of real estate, which helped establish the English rule.
10. (a) In order to keep powerful people happy and to collect better revenue, Lord Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement. As per permanent system, rajas and taluqdars were recognized as zamindars. The zamindars were supposed to collect the land revenue from the peasants.
11. (a) Both statements are true and statement II is correct explanation of statement I Britain ruined India’s previous economy and industries as a result of Britain forcing them to import their goods from Britain and not buy their own goods from India. Industries such as the handmade cloth industry, clock-making, metal, and carpentry industries, fell because cloth was made of better quality for cheaper in Britain because of mass production.
12. (a) The annexation of Awadh by Lord Dalhousie on the pretext of maladministration left thousands of nobles, officials, retainers and soldiers jobless. Moreover, the annexation of Awadh adversely affected the sepoy’s purse.
13. (c) 14. (a) 15. (a) 16. (d) 17. (b)



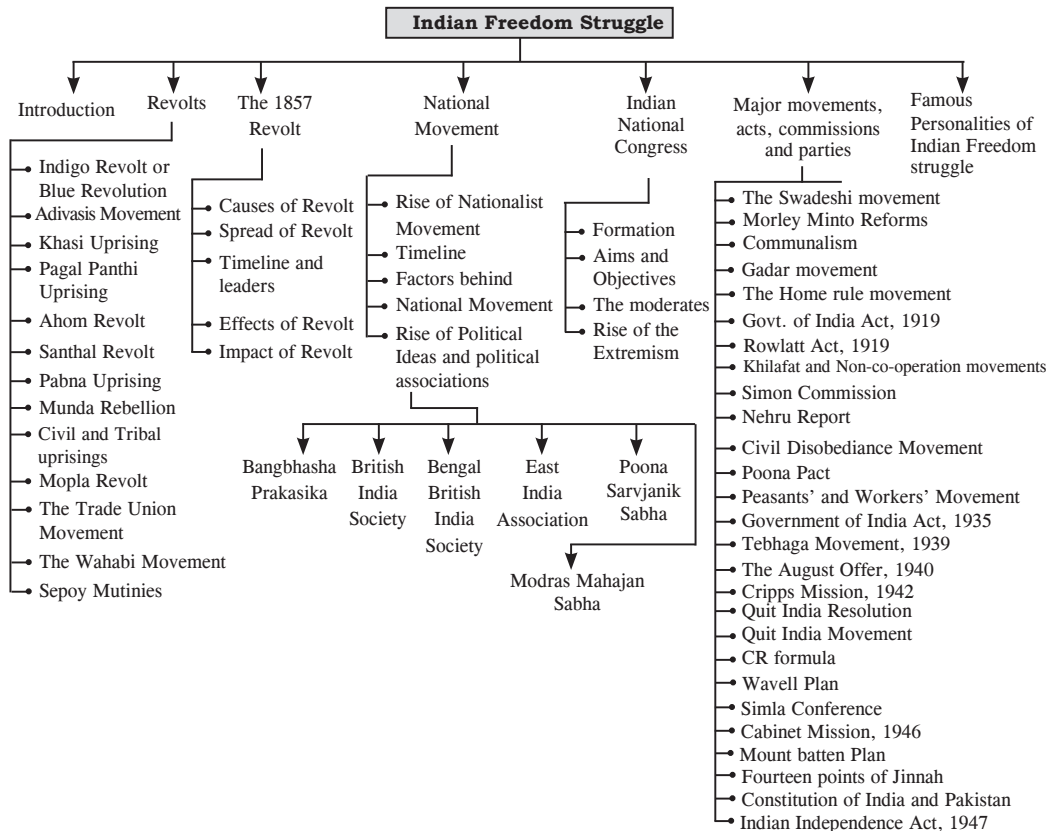
INDIAN FREEDOM STRUGGLE

18 Chapter

Introduction

The national movement in India started in the second half of the nineteenth century. As we already know that the English had come to India to trade and make profits. So the East India Company came to enhance the profit of Indian possessions as well as to maintain and strengthen its powers. However, sporadic uprisings with a motive of driving British out of India had started a century earlier. The cumulative effect of British expansionist policies, economic exploitation and administrative innovations over the years had adversely affected the position of all rulers of Indian states, sepoys, zamindars, peasants, traders, etc. excepting of course, the western educated class who owned their 'position' to the company's government. The Indian rulers were not united. They were selfish and guided by self-interest. There was no feeling of nationalism. The British had superior weapons and military tactics. Thus the British were successful in subjugating the whole of India.

Such a feeling of growing discontent, got its manifestation in several civil rebellions, tribal uprisings and sepoy mutinies during the colonial rule. There were also violent religio-political uprisings and disturbances, which were anti-British. Of all uprisings in the 19th century, the Revolt of 1857 was the most important as it was the first major challenge to the British domination. It was a watershed in the history of British rule in India, shook the very foundation of the British empire in India. It also changed the character of British rule, marking the end of the rule of the East India Company and bringing British India directly under the British Crown.



REVOLTS

Indigo Revolt or Blue Rebellion

Thousands of ryots refused to grow Indigo in Bengal in 1859 AD. The English had established the monopoly production of Indigo by capturing land in Bengal and Bihar. In 1860, the peasants of Patna and Nadia districts refused to pay rents to the planters and attacked factories. The rebels here supported by local zamindars and village headmen.

Ashley Eden, the lieutenant governor of Bengal tried to appease the ryots and issued an order by which no ryots would be forced to accept the contract. After the rebel, the plantation of Indigo was shifted from Bengal to Bihar. In Champaran, the workers revolted in Bihar. In Champaran, the workers revolted in 1867-68 and later in 1917 in the leadership of **Mahatma Gandhi**.

There was a strong demonstration against the cultivation of indigo in Champaran (Bihar) in 1866-68. The indigo crisis continued till the beginning of the 20th century when M. K. Gandhi had intervened in favour of the indigo cultivators. And finally, after his intervention the long pending problem got some solution.

Adivasis Movement

In 1772, the Paharia Revolt broke out followed by five years uprising led by **Tilka Manjhi**. The Tomar and Munda revolts occurred. In the next twenty years, various revolts occurred in Singhbhum, Gumla, Birkhumi, Bankura, Manbhoomi and Palamu followed by the Kol uprising in 1832 and the Khewar and Bhunji revolts in 1832 to 1834.

Khasi Uprising

'Khasi' is a tribal community which lives in the region between Garo and Jaintia Hills. Khasi uprising of 1783 was in protest of East India Company's effort to build a road link between Brahmaputra Valley and Sylhet. The leaders of this revolution were Tirath Singh and Ganga Singh. This uprising developed into a popular revolt during British rule. By 1833, the revolt was suppressed by English military action.

Pagal Panthi Uprising

Pagal Panth was a semi-religious sect which had influence in the northern districts of Bengal. Karan Singh was its founder and Tipu Shah was successor of this movement. Tipu Shah took up the cause of the peasants against atrocities and oppression by Zamindars. Tipu captured Sherpur in 1825 and assumed royal power. This uprising crushed with the help of army in 1833.

Ahom Revolt

Gomadhhar Konwar led this revolt. This revolt broke out in Assam. The British had promised to withdraw from Assam after First Burma War (1824-26), but instead of withdrawing the British attempted to annex Ahom's territory in the Company's dominion. As a result of the rebellion the

company was forced to hand over Upper Assam to Maharaja Purandar Singh Narendra and part of kingdom was restored to the Assamese King.

Santhal Revolt

The Santhal hul or santhal revolt of 1855-56 was held against the permanent settlement of Lord Cornwallis. **Sindhu and Kanhu Murmu** were the leaders of the revolt in which thousands of Santhals took part. A forest regulation was passed in 1878 which imposed restrictions upon adivasis. The act divided the forest lands in India into three categories - reserved, protected and unclassified. The act changed the traditional rights of adivasis on the forest and forest became state property.

In 1914, Jatra Oraon started Tana Bhagat Movement and 25,000 adivasis joined the movement. The Khasis living in Assam and Meghalaya revolted against the British.

Pabna Uprising

"**Pabna Uprising**" was a movement by the peasants against landlords in the Pabna districts of Yusufzahi Paragana of East Bengal in 1872. In 1873, an **Agrarian League** was formed by Ishan Chandra Roy, Shabhu Pal and Khooi Mallah. Peasants refused to pay enhanced rents of land and fought against zamindars in the court. The discontent of peasants continued till 1885 when the Government enhanced occupancy rights by the "**Bengal Act of 1885**".

Munda Rebellion

Birsa Munda started revolt against the British policies. Zamindars and moneylenders were exploiting the Adivasis. Munda rebellion resulted in the **Chotanagpur Tenancy Act of 1908**. It banned forced labour and assured local customary land rights to the tribals.

For more than three decades the Munda Sardars had been fighting against destruction of their system of common land holdings by the jagirdars, thikadars and money lenders. The revolt of the Munda took place during 1899 - 1900 under the leadership of Birsa Munda who mobilized his followers on religious and political grounds. In 1899, Birsa declared a revolt to establish Munda rule in the land by billing thikadars, jagirdars, Rajas, Hakims and Christians. For this he congregated force of 6,000 Mundas. He was, however, captured in February 1900 and died in jail in June.

Civil and Tribal uprisings

Sanyasi Revolt: The British rule in Bengal after 1757 brought a new economic order which spelt ruin on Zamindars, peasants and artisans alike. The famine of 1770 and the insensibility on the part of the company was regarded to be the main cause of alien rule. The restriction imposed on visits to holy places alienated the sanyasis. The Sanyasis in retaliation started attacking on the company's factories and state treasuries. **Warren Hastings** could contain these sanyasi raids only after massive military actions.

Khonds rising : Khonds the tribal people of Orissa first revolted in 1846 and then in 1855. They were led by **Chakra Bisoi**. They were suppressed with great difficulty by the British.

Movement of Frontier Tribes: The other region to have witnessed tribal movements of considerable proportion was the north-eastern frontier. The region differed substantially from the rest of tribal India in two basic aspects. Here the tribals formed an overwhelming majority and thus were relatively economically and socially secure.

The factors that led to a different typology being suggested for the tribal movements along the frontier from that of the non-frontier tribes were:

- Religious and social reform movements.
- Movements for separate statehood within the Indian union or more autonomy for tribal areas
- Insurgency and
- Assertion of cultural rights.

Tribal Movements, 1935-47 : Factors contributing to the development of a sense of larger tribal identity were

- The Government of India Act 1935
- The rise of modern education and
- Gradual emergence of a small educated middle class among the tribes of the hills and plains.

World War II, during which these hills had become 'important' theatres of war, had penetrated their isolation due to world events. Many tribals feared that their cherished ancient laws, customs and village organisations would be destroyed by non-tribal rulers after independence. At the time of independence there were two major political trends among the frontier tribes. The first was in favour of asserting more tribal autonomy within the Indian Union. The second trend was towards complete independence for tribal areas. Its protagonists were the **Naga Nationalist Council, the United Mizo Freedom Organisation and the Mizo National Front.**

Mopla Revolt

In 1921, the **Mopla** rebelled in **Malabar** region. The Mopla peasants were Muslims but the landlords were Hindus. Excessive land revenue demands, extra cesses and insecurity of land tenures were reason of rebel.

The Trade Union Movement

The trade union movement in India originated due to different reasons –

- The poor working conditions in Indian factories.
- The condition of industries and mines was poor.
- Wages of workers were very low.
- Realisation among leaders to protect the interest of workers.
- Economic distress
- Set up of International labour organization.

The first factory commission was set up in Bombay in 1875 followed by the **First Factory Act of 1881** which aimed at prohibiting child labour. The **All India Trade Union Congress**

(AITUC) was established by **N.M. Joshi** in 1920. The Trade Union Act of 1926 established trade unions as legal bodies to protect the right of registration and privileges of the workers. The British appointed a royal commission, the **Whitely Commission** in 1928. It consisted 11 members out of which 6 were Indians. They visited India in 1929.

It included –

- Adoption of policy of standard wages in Bombay cotton mills and jute mills of Bengal.
- Development of trade unions.
- To settle disputes, officers were appointed.
- Time and piece workers were included.

The Wahabi Movement

It was named after **Abdul Wahab**. It was a religious movement and aimed at the restoration of Muslim powers and fighting against the British and the Sikhs. The Wahabi movement was suppressed by the British government in 1870.

Sepoy Mutinies

There were several mutinies took place before the 1857 revolt. The 47th Native Infantry revolted in 1824. There were mutinies in 1825 in Assam, in 1838 in Sholapur, in 1844 in Sindh and in 1849 to 59 in Punjab.

THE 1857 REVOLT

According to **P.E. Roberts**, "The Revolt of 1857 was just a sepoy mutiny and it arose due to cartridges with fats."

According to **V.D. Savarkar**, "The Revolt of 1857 was the first war of India's independence, the great rebellion, the Indian mutiny."

These sections of the country were responsible for the revolt in 1857 –

- Rulers
- Peasants
- Soldiers
- Common people

Through the Doctrine of Lapse, the British brought a number of kingdoms under its control. Queen of Jhansi **Lakshmibai**, **Nana Saheb**, the son of the Maratha Peshwa Baji Rao II and **Begum Hazrat Mahal**, the queen of Awadh opposed this policy.

Due to commercialization of the agriculture peasants were compelled to grow cash crops. They had to pay very high taxes. There was no hope for improvement of the fertility of land.

The Indian soldiers were unhappy with the Britishers as they were not given high position in the army. Apart from this reason, they were also not content with the policy of British government regarding the overseas jobs and the remuneration. Common people were forced to accept the religion of Christian Missionaries.

Causes of the Revolt

1. Political Causes:

- (i) Growing suspicion among native rulers over Lord Dalhousie's policies of 'Doctrine of Lapse' and annexation of the territories of native rulers;
- (ii) Annexation of Avadh on the ground of 'misgovernance';
- (iii) Disposing of Nawab Wazid Ali Shah, the reigning ruler of Avadh;
- (iv) Absentee 'soverigntyship' of the British in India;
- (v) Lord Canning's announcement that Mughals would lose the titles of Kings and be mere princes; and
- (vi) disbanding of the Pindaris and irregular soldiers who constituted a large section among the army ranks.

2. Administrative and Economic Causes:

- (i) Inefficient and prejudiced administrative machinery of the company;
- (ii) Rampant corruption;
- (iii) Racialism in civil and military administration;
- (iv) Deprivation of the traditional ruling classes of their luxury due to the establishment of the company's suzerainty over the Indian states;
- (v) Introduction of new land revenue system which snatched the land from the cultivator and gave it to moneylender or traders or new aristocrats, and
- (vi) De-industrialisation of the country.

3. Military Causes:

- (i) Displeasure of Indian sepoys with alien rule;
- (ii) Compulsion of the sepoys to serve at the cantonments;
- (iii) Withdrawal of free postage facility to sepoys following the enactment of Post-Office Act of 1856 which necessitated them to serve beyond the seas;
- (iv) Debarring the foreign service allowance or batta for Sepoys serving in Sindh and Punjab, and
- (v) Racial discrimination.

4. Social and Religious Causes:

- (i) Social discrimination of the British against Indians;
- (ii) Spread of Christianity through missionaries;
- (iii) Missionaries' attempt to conversion to Christianity;
- (iv) Enactment of the Religious Disabilities Act 1850, which enabled a convert to inherit his ancestral property; and
- (v) Antagonism of the traditional Indian society due to the law prohibiting sati, child marriage and female infanticide.

5. The Immediate Cause: The Government introduced a new Enfield rifle in the Army. Its cartridges had greased paper cover which had to be bitten off before the cartridge was loaded into the rifle. It was believed that the grease was composed of beef and pig fat. The Hindu as well as Muslim sepoys were enraged because the use of greased cartridges was against their religion and they feared that the government was deliberately trying to destroy their religion and convert them to Christianity. This issue is said to have agitated both Hindu and Muslim soldiers.

Spread of the Revolt

The Revolt was sparked off on **March 29, 1857** when a section of Indian Soldiers of the 19th and 34th Native Infantry posted at **Barrackpur** near Calcutta mutinied and a Brahmin soldier, **Mangal Pandey**, killed the British army officers, the regiment was disbanded and Pandey executed. At Meerut, in May 1857, 85 sepoys of the 3rd Cavalry regiment on their refusal to use the greased cartridges were court martialled and were sentenced to long term imprisonment. On 10th May, 1857, the sepoys broke out in open rebellion, shot their officers, released their fellow sepoys and headed towards Delhi with the cry '**Delhi Chalo**'. Delhi was seized by the rebels on 12 May, 1857. **Bahadur Shah II** was proclaimed the Emperor of India. Delhi became the centre of revolt and Bahadur Shah was its symbol. Very soon the rebellion spread to Lucknow, Allahabad, Kanpur, Bareilly, Benaras, in parts of Bihar, Jhansi and other places. In many Indian states, the rulers remained loyal to British Government but their soldiers revolted. South India remained practically undisturbed.

Kanpur was captured by the rebels on 5th June, 1857. **Nana Sahib** was proclaimed the Peshwa, General Sir Hugh Wheeler commanding the station surrendered on 27 June. At Kanpur Nana Sahib was joined by his able Lieutenant Tantia Tope and Azimullah. Later on, Kanpur was captured by Campbell on December 6, 1857.

The revolt of Lucknow was led by the **Begum Hazrat Mahal**, who declared her son **Birjis Kadir** as the Nawab of Awadh. Helped by the sepoys at Lucknow and the Zamindars and peasants of Awadh, the begum organised in all out attack on the British. Sir Henry Lawrance was killed during the course of the residency. Later on, General Outram and Hemelock force their way into the residency. They were also besieged but later on were relieved.

Laxmibai of Jhansi joined the rebels when the British refused to acknowledge her right to adopt a heir to the gaddi of Jhansi. On June 4, 1858, Rani Laxmibai was proclaimed the head of the state and she provided spirited lead to the rebels and fought heroically against the British forces. She and her companion **Tantia Tope** made the most imaginative and heroic resolve to capture Gwalior. Maharaja Scindia tried to fight against Rani of Jhansi, but most of his troops deserted to her and he took refuge at Agra. Rani of Jhansi died fighting on 17th June, 1858. At Bareilly, **Khan Bahadur Khan** had proclaimed himself the Nawab Nizam. In Bihar a local Zamindar **Kunwar Singh** raised the banner of revolt.

Timeline-Sepoy Mutiny

29 th March 1857:	Revolt of Barrackpore Calcutta. Mangal Pandey killed two British army officers
May 1857:	85 Sepoys of 3 rd Cavalry regiment at Meerut were court martialled. Sepoys revolted at Meerut, shot their officers, released fellow sepoys and marched towards Delhi. Delhi seized by mutineers and Bahadur Shah Zafars II proclaimed "Shahenshah-e-Hindustan by rebels. Mutiny reached to Ferozpur, Aligarh, Etawah, Bulandshahar, Nasirabad, Bareilly, Moradabad, Shahjahanpur.
June 1857:	On 4 th June, 2 nd cavalry and 1 st Native Infantry revolted, revolts at Gwalior, Bharatpur, Allahabad, Jhansi, Faizabad, Sultanpur, Lucknow.
July 1857	Mutinies at Indore, Mhow, Sagar, Jhelum, Sialkot.
September 1857:	Delhi recaptured by the British
October 1857:	Revolt reached Koltab
December 1857:	The British won the 'Battle of Kanpur' in the leadership of 'Sir Colin Campbell'
March 1858	British recaptured Lucknow.
April 1858	British recaptured Jhansi. Fresh revolt in Bihar led by Kunwar Singh.
May 1858:	Bareilly, Jagdishpur and Kalpi were recaptured by the British.
December 1858:	British re-established their authority over India.

The leaders and the centres of the revolt

Centre	Leader	Commander-in-chief
Delhi	Bahadur Shah Zafar	Bakht Khan
Kanpur	Nana Sahib	Tantia Tope
Lucknow	Begum Hazrat Mahal	Maulvi Ahmadullah
Bareilly	Khan Bahadur Khan	
Bihar	Kunwar Singh	
Jhansi	Rani Lakshmibai	
Kalpi	Tantia Tope	

The British Governor general mobilized all his forces and hanged thousands of people. The revolt was suppressed by the British.

Effects of the Revolt

1. A new Act was passed in 1858 by which the power of EEIC was shifted to British crown. A secretary of State for India was appointed. The title of **viceroys** was given to **the governor general**. The British army was reorganized in India.
2. Hindus and Muslims became united against the British government.
3. Policies were made to protect zamindars and landlords.
4. Religious and social practices of India were decided to be

respected by the British.

5. They gave assurance to the rulers of different provinces that their provinces won't be annexed further. But British crown would be their original sovereign.

Failure of the Revolt

- Lack of coordination and central leadership.
- Revolt lacked a forward-looking programme, coherent ideology, a political perspective or a vision of the future society and economy.
- Rebel leaders lacked resources and experiences as compared to British.
- Revolt lacked the support of martial races of the north.
- British power had remained intact in the Eastern, western and southern parts of India from where the forces were sent to suppress the revolt.
- Limited territorial and social base.

Impact of the Revolt

Even though the revolt of 1857 ended in failure yet it had shuddered the British rule in India from its very foundation. It was the first great and direct threat to British rule in India. That was why, aftermath of the revolt, the British troops did inhuman atrocities upon the Indian people. Thousands of rebels were executed publicly after a mock trial.

The revolt of 1857 brought about fundamental changes in the character of British administration. Some of these were:

- (a) The Queen's Proclamation
- (b) Pursuing the policy of divide and rule
- (c) Reorganisation of British army
- (d) The Act for the better government of India 1858 was passed etc.

Features of the Revolt of 1857

- The Revolt has been called the *first war of independence* and opened a glorious chapter in the history of people in India.
- The Revolt inspired the people of India to imbibe the spirit of selfless services and patriotism.
- It produced many heroes like *Rani Lakshmibai* and *Tantia Tope*.
- It gave *patriotism* to future generations people.
- It made Indians aware of the *true nature* of the British.
- The *participation* of common people, rulers, soldiers, students and others gave the revolt its popular character.
- Many people and rulers whose survival threatened were drawn into the revolt.

NATIONAL MOVEMENT

Rise of Nationalist Movement

The foundation of the nationalist movement had been laid by the end of the 19th century. The main target of this movement was to face the challenge of foreign supremacy. Its effects were the socio-religion reform movement, the spread of modern western education, the emergence of the middle class and the economic consequences of the British rule. The political awareness that these trends gave birth to the concept of 'nationhood' and 'nationalist aspirations'. In the wake of

this political consciousness various political association were founded, particularly in the Presidency towns, to organise the English-educated classes to plead for a more or less common programme of political progress. The culmination of this trend was the foundation of the *Indian National Congress in 1885*, which marks the formal beginning of the organised nationalist movement, to drive out the foreigners from the country. All classes of people in India joined at one stage and played their part in the freedom struggle.

Timeline of Indian Independence Movement

1. 1857 - The Revolt of 1857
2. 1870 - Poona Sarvajanik Sabha founded
3. 1876 - Indian National Association founded
4. 1878 - Vernacular Press Act passed
5. 1885 - Indian National Congress was founded
6. 1892 - Gandhiji left for Africa
7. 1905 - Partition of Bengal and Swadeshi Movement
8. 1906 - Muslim League founded
9. 1915 - Gandhiji came to India
10. 1918 - Satyagrah at Champaran
11. 1919 - Rowlatt Act, Jallianwala Bagh massacre
12. 1920 - Khilafat and Non-Co-operation Movement
13. 1924 - Poorna swaraj
14. 1932 - Civil Disobedience Movement
15. 1940 - Demand of two different nations by Muslim League
16. 1942 - Quit India Movement
17. 1947 - Partition and Freedom of India.

Freedom Struggle

1. First phase (1885 - 1905)
2. Second phase (1905 - 1919)

Some of the high points of this struggle were:

- (1) Foundation of the Indian National Congress and its first twenty years (1885 - 1905) - the moderate phase.
- (2) The rise of neo-nationalism or Extremism, the Swadeshi movement and the first phase of Revolutionary Terrorism (1905-15)
- (3) The beginning of the Gandhian phase-commencing with the anti-Rowlatt Bills agitation to the Non-Co-operation Movement (1916-22)
- (4) The council entry programme and the rise of the Swarajist party, the second phase of the Revolutionary Terrorism and the anti-Simon Commission Agitation (1922-28)
- (5) The Nehru Report, the Lahore Session of the Congress, the Poorna Swarajya resolution and the Civil Disobedience Movement (1928-34).
- (6) The Government of India Act 1935, the so-called provincial autonomy in action, and the outbreak of the Second World War (1935-39)
- (7) The Second World War, beginning of radical and communal movements and the Quit India Movement (1939-44) and
- (8) India towards freedom and partition (1945 - 47)

Factor responsible for the National Movement

We may list the following factors which created discontent among the people of India and brought the Indian on the same platform against British rule.

- (1) Economic causes;
- (2) Political causes;
- (3) Social -religious causes;
- (4) Unified system of administration;
- (5) Development of the means of communication;
- (6) Growth of western thought and education;
- (7) Development of vernacular languages;
- (8) Growth of a modern press;
- (9) Art and literature;
- (10) Racial arrogance of the rulers; and
- (11) Immediate factors of provocation under the Viceroy Ripon, especially the Ilbert Bill controversy.

Rise of political ideas and Political Association (Upto 1885)

British Supremacy in India created certain forces as a result of its direct and indirect consequences which eventually challenged the British imperialism. One important effect of the initiation of western culture in India was the growth of modern political concepts like nationalism, nationality, political rights etc. The Indian sub-continent witnessed the growth of political ideas and political organisation hitherto unknown to the Indian World. This was the reason why political associations heralded 19th century modern politics into India.

Several public associations were began. In 1866, *Dadabhai Naoroji* organised the East India Association to discuss the Indian question and to influence British to promote Indian welfare. Later, he organised branches of the Association, in prominent Indian cities.

Bangbhasha Prakasika Sabha

Founded in 1836, it was first organized political association of India. It worked for reform of administrative association of Indians with the British, spread of education, putting forward Indian demands to the British parliament. Raja Ram Mohan Roy was pioneer in political movement in India. The 'Sabha' was established by associates of Raja Rammohan Roy.

British India Society

British India Society was founded in 1839 in England with efforts of William Adam who was a friend or Raja Rammohan Roy. The Society organised meeting at several place to create awareness of the condition in India. In 1841, the society started a newspaper "British Indian Advocate."

Bengal British India Society

With efforts of George Thomson, alongwith Dwarkanath Tagore, Chandra Mohan Chatterjee and Parmananda Maitra; 'Bengal British Society was founded on 20th April 1843. The idea behind this set-up was to secure the welfare and advancement of all classes in loyalty to the government of the reigning sovereign of the British dominions.

East India Association

This organisation was established by “The grand old man” of Indian National Movement Dadabhai Naoroji. It was a platform for discussing matters and ideas about India, and to provide representation for discussing matters and ideas about India and to provide representation for the Indians to the Government. Naoroji delivered first lecture to the association on 2nd may 1867. The ‘Associations’s’ first president was *Lord Lyveden*.

India League

Founder editor of “*Amrit Bazaar Patrika*”, Sisir Kumar Ghose, along with a few progressive leaders of the time, founded the “*India League*” in year 1875 in Calcutta. The basic aim of the ‘League’ was to represent masses and to stimulate a sense of nationalism among the people. Later, the ‘League’ was superseded by the “*India Association*”, founded in year 1876 with active participation from Anand Mohan Bose, and S.N. Banerjee. ‘Indian Association’ raised voice against issues like age limit for ICS examination and opposed ‘Ilbert Bill’.

Poona Sarvjanik Sabha

On 2nd April, 1870 Poona Sarvjanik Sabha was founded by M.G. Ranade and G.V. Joshi. The ‘Sabha’ provided many prominent leaders of national stature like ‘Bal Gangadhar Tilak’. It aimed to serve as a mediating body between British Government and people of India. In 1875, “Sabha’ submitted a petition to the ‘*House of Commons*’ to demand India’s representation in British Parliament.

Madras Mahajan Sabha

It was established by S. Ramaswami Mudaliar and P. Anandacharlu in year 1884 in Madras. The Sabha in collaboration with ‘*Bombay Presidency Association*’ and the ‘*Indian Association*’ sent a delegation to England.

INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS

The foundation of Indian National Congress in 1885 was not a sudden event. It was the culmination of political awakening. It was an all India level organisation aimed at certain basic tasks and objectives. *A.O. Hume* was the founder of Indian National Congress. *First INC meeting* was held at the *Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College* on 28th December, 1885. *W.C. Banerjee* was elected its first president and was attended by 72 delegates. It aimed at the development of close relations between national workers. The second session of INC met at Calcutta in December 1886 under the presidentship of Dadabhai Naoroji. 436 delegates participated in this meeting.

Formation of Congress as a body for freedom struggle, highlights its characteristics as one of the oldest and biggest democratic organization in the world.

Aims and Objectives of Congress:

- Promotion of friendship amongst the countrymen.
- Development of consolidation of feeling of national unity irrespective of race, caste, religion or provinces.
- Formulation of popular demands and presentation before the government through petitions.
- Training and organization of public opinion.
- Consolidation of sentiments of national unity.
- Recording of the opinions of educated classes on pressing problems
- Laying down lines for future course of action in public interest.

Role of Congress

- Early congress leaders showed their concern for removal of poverty from India, a resolution highlighting improvement of India.
- Annual sessions of Congress took place in different venues every year.
- Provincial conferences were organized so as to foster countrywide involvement.
- Congress took important steps so as to organise public opinion in Great Britain in favour of Indian viewpoint.
- Congress gave thrust on seeking representation in government. It was Madan Mohan Malviya who commented no taxation without representation.
- In 1872 *Dadabhai Naoroji* became a member of British Parliament.
- By *Indian Council Act of 1892*, indirect elections were introduced for the first time for a credit also goes to INC.
- Congress demanded fiscal suspension from British Government.
- Congress demanded Indianization of Civil services.
- It also protested against economic emasculation of India.
- INC also protested against insensitivity shown by government to natural disasters including famines, plague and floods in India. That is why in 1896 it passed a resolution blaming British rule for famines in India.
- Mahatma Gandhi appeared on Congress platform of the first time in 1901, Calcutta session, seeking support for Indian struggle in South Africa and the session was Presided by *Dinolaw Wacha*.
- It was in 1905 that a resolution was passed seeking introduction of socialistic pattern of society. Apart from resolution for introducing concept of economic and social reconstruction.

Understanding ‘Safety Valve Theory’

The ‘Safety Valve Theory’ is based on seven volumes of secret report which *A.O. Hume*, the founder of the Congress, read at Simla in 1878. The theory was first mentioned in *Hume’s biography*, written by *William Wedderburn* and published in 1913. According to this theory, the British wanted the formation of an organization which could save the administration from possible political outburst in the country. That is why they provided ample support to *A.O. Hume* and other Indian intelligentsia in the formation of the Indian National Congress.

The First Congress Session: A. O. Hume along with the co-operation of Indian leaders organised the first session of the Indian National Congress at *Bombay* in the hall of the Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College in December 1885. There were four main demands put forward by the Congress at its first session:

- (a) A simultaneous examination for the ICS to be held in England and India;
- (b) Reform of legislative council and adoption of the principle of election in place of nomination in constituting them;
- (c) Opposition to the annexation of upper Burma; and
- (d) Reduction in the military expenditure.

The Moderates (1885 - 1905)

The moderates were the first in the 19th century to develop an economic critique of colonialism. This critique was perhaps the most important contribution to the development of the national movement in India. They pointed out that a large part of India's capital and wealth was being drained to Britain in the form of salaries and pensions to British Civil and military officials working in India.

Moderate leaders believed in constitutional medium of struggle. That is why, radicalism of direct action was absent from their struggle. Their achievement lies in the fact that they were architect of first all India politics forum. It fostered sense of political unity and spirit of togetherness in Indians for making of India as nation.

Methods of Political work

- Moderate congressmen believed in a peaceful and constitutional agitation
- Prayers and petitions were the media.
- Congress sessions survived only for 3 days a year. It had no channel to carry on the work in the interval.
- They had faith in goodness of the British nation and were sure that all would be well if the British could be familiarised with the true state of affair in India.
- In 1889, a British Committee of INC was formed.

Role of Masses: The basic weakness of the moderates lay in their narrow social base. Their movement did not have a wide appeal. In fact, the leaders lacked political trust in the masses. The area of their action was limited to the urban community. As they did not have the support of the masses, they declared that the time was not ripe for throwing out a challenge to the foreign rulers. Their programmes and policies championed the cause of all sections of the Indian people and represented nation-wide interests against colonial exploitation.

Main objectives and Demands of the INC (1885 - 1905)

In the early years, the INC also suffered from a blinkered conviction in the essential sense of justice and goodness of the British people. they deluded themselves that all would be well if the British people could be acquainted with the true state of affairs. They had an equally deep rooted belief that the Indian nation was one and that its suffering arose from the discriminatory behaviour of sundry bureaucrats. The resolutions passed at various Congress sessions reflected these twin factors. They were roughly similar from one session to the next, and they dealt with three broad types of grievances, namely political, administrative and economic.

About INC

- Aurobindo Ghosh called INC as “begging institute”.
- Bipin Chandra Pal viewed “INC playing with bubble”.
- Tilak, the Father of Indian Unrest said “INC distinguished between begging and claiming the rights”.
- Tilak also said, “Rights are not begged, they are claimed”.
- Even Jawaharlal Nehru observes the early Congress to be “an English knowing upper class affairs”.

Rise of the Extremism

The moderate policies of the early Congress disillusioned many of its younger leaders, known as *Neo-nationalists* or *Extremists*. By their painstaking studies and writings, the early nationalist leaders had exposed the true nature of British rule in India. Dadabhai Naoroji, exposed the exploitative nature of British rule in India and proved that Britain was ‘bleeding India white’ and the constant ‘drain of wealth’ from India was directly responsible for India's economic miseries.

The new turn in Indian politics found expression in two forms-

- (i) The formation of the Extremist group within the Congress,
- (ii) the growth of Terrorism or Revolutionary movement in the country at large.

Four prominent Congress leaders - *Lokamanya Tilak*, *Bipin Chandra Pal*, *Aurobindo Ghose* and *Lala Lajpat Rai* - defined the creed of the new group, gave articulate to its aspirations and guided its operations. Tilak gave the slogan to the new group when he said, “*Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it*”.

It should be clearly understood that the demand for Swaraj by extremists was demand for complete freedom from British rule and full independence to manage national affairs without any foreign control. The swaraj of the moderate leaders was merely a demand for colonial self-government within the Empire.

- The methods applied by the two groups were different in their modulation and approach. The extremists had no trust in the generosity of the British public or parliament, nor were they convinced of the power of merely holding conference.
- The extremists also affirmed their worry in passive resistance, mass agitation and strong will to suffer or make self-sacrifices. The new leadership sought to create an ardent love for liberty, accompanied by a spirit of sacrifice and readiness to suffer for the cause of the country.
- They tried to root out from the people's mind the power of the British rulers and gave them self-reliance and confidence in their own strength.
- They had full confidence in the strength of the masses and they planned to achieve swaraj through mass action.
- They, therefore, pressed for political work among the masses and for direct political action by the masses.
- The extremists urged boycott of the foreign goods use of Swadeshi goods, national education and passive resistance.

The torch of extremism was lit by Tilak who used religious orthodoxy to arouse national consciousness. He was the first to give the slogan of “*Swarajya, Swadesh and Boycott*” and wrote in his paper Kesari, “*Our nation is like a tree, of which the original trunk was swarajya and the branches were Swadeshi and Boycott.*”

The three pillars of extremism were ‘*Lal, Bal and Pal*’ (*Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal*) who became the ideals of future nationalists. They launched a vehement attack on the British Government.

Partition of Bengal (1905 AD.) In Bengal the nationalist feelings and anti British movement arose. Lord Curzon played the policy of *Divide and Rule*, to crush nationalism. The government separated East Bengal which was dominated by the Muslims and merged it with Assam instead of spreading non - Bengali areas from the province of Bengal. Both radicals and moderates opposed it.

The condition for the appearance of militant nationalism had thus, developed when in 1905 the partition of Bengal was declared and the Indian national movement, entered its second phase.

- On 20th July, 1905, Lord Curzon issued an order dividing the province of Bengal into two parts: Eastern Bengal and Assam with a population of 31 million and rest of Bengal with a population of 54 million of whom 18 million were Bengalis, and 36 million Biharis and Oriyas.
- Although the main argument supported by the Government in favour of the partition was that the existing province of Bengal was too big to be efficiently administered by a single provincial government, the real motive was to curb the growth of national feeling in politically advanced Bengal by making a gulf between the Bengali speaking Hindus and Muslims, and destroying the unity of 78 millions of Bengalis by dividing them into two groups.
- The Indian National Congress and the nationalists of Bengal strongly opposed the partition. They realised the principal motive behind the partition was the destruction of the unity of the Bengalis on religious grounds. They could not but feel that the partition was a measure intentionally adopted to ignite enmity and hostility between the Hindus and Muslims, the two great communities in Bengal.
- An anti partition agitation was initiated on 7th August, 1905 at the Town Hall, Calcutta, where a massive demonstration against the partition was organised.
- 16th October, 1905 was the day fixed for the coming into force of partition and after a month, Lord Curzon left India.
- 16th October, 1905 was declared to be a day of national mourning throughout Bengal. It was observed as a day of fasting. There was a hartal in Calcutta. People went to the Ganges barefooted in the early hours of the morning and took their bath.
- *Rabindranath Tagore* composed a national song, ‘*Amar Sonar Bangla*’, for this occasion which was sung by huge crowds parading the streets.
- There were cries of ‘*Bande Mataram*’ which became a national song of Bengal.
- The ceremony of *Raksha Bandhan* was observed on 16th October, 1905. Hindus and Muslims tried rakhi on one

another’s wrists as a symbol of the unbreakable unity.

Muslim league The Muslim League was founded in 1906 at Dacca. It demanded for the separate electorate for Muslims. This demand was later included in the Government India Act 1909.

In 1907, the congress split due to differences that arose between the moderates and extremists.

MAJOR MOVEMENT ACTS, COMMISSION AND PARTIES

The Swadeshi Movement

To oppose the partition of Bengal the Indian leaders initiated the *Swadeshi* and *Boycott Movement* in August 7, 1905. To offer more active resistance, it was decided to Boycott British goods. This was the beginning of the Swadeshi movement, which within a few years transformed the Indian political scene. Bon-fires of British cloth demonstrated the people’s determination not to rely on foreign products. It gave a tremendous impetus to Indian industry, an open challenge to the British authority. This swadeshi movement was an immense success.

Main effect of Swadeshi Movement

Swadeshi movement was stepping stone of Nationalist movement, which led to the beginning of organized political movement in India.

- Rise of Neo-nationalism
- Surat split
- Boycott of foreign goods.
- Cultural revival and emergence of nationalist art and literature.
- Concept of national education.

Movement under Extremists (1905 - 08)

- Led by Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal, Lajpat Rai and Aurobindo Ghosh.
- The political extremists, demanded self-government for India, not under British control or British superiority, But by severing all British connections, and wiping off British influences.

Morley Minto Reforms or Indian Council Act, 1909

This reform named after Morley, the secretary of state and Minto, the viceroy at that time. The principle of separate electorate for Hindus and the Muslims was legalized. The Home Rule Movement was started due to the Congress inactivity after 1907 and disappointment with the Act of 1909. During this period Tilak gave the famous slogan, “*Swaraj is my birthright and I will have it.*”

Communalism

Communalism is the belief that in India Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs and Christians form different and distinct communities. Inherent in communalism is the second perception that the social, cultural, economic and political interests of the followers of one religion are dissimilar and divergent from the interest of the followers of another religion. When the interests of the followers of different religions or of different religious communities are seen to be mutually incompatible,

antagonistic and hostile. Communalism is said to be at its apex. Thus, at this stage, the communalists assert that Hindus and Muslims cannot have common secular interest, and that their secular interests are bound to be opposed to each other.

To look upon the communal problem in India merely as the Hindu-Muslim question or religious antagonism between the Hindus and the Muslims is misleading. Apart from the Hindus and the Muslims there was third period in the communal triangle - the British rulers, who insinuate themselves between the Hindus and the Muslims and thus, created a communal triangle of which they remained the base.

Spread of Communalism:

- The communalism spread as a result of British policy of *divide and rule*.
- The separation of electorates through the Constitutional Acts.
- The Act of 1909, gave weightage to the Muslims in the Legislative councils elections.
- The spread of communalism among the Muslims, Hindu and Sikhs made the question of the Indian nationalism knotty.
- Yet, a considerable number of members of each community was patriotic and was on the side of the congress.
- The Nationalist leaders used religious overtones which led to causing the problem of communalism.

World War I and Indian Nationalism

The First World War broke out in June 1914 between Britain, France and Russia on one side and Austria, Germany, Italy and Turkey on the other. As India was a colony of Britain, many Indians troops fought in different parts of the world as part of British army.

- When the war started, the congress was firmly under the control of *Gokhale* and the *Moderates*.
- The Indian National Congress decided to support the British war efforts, both as a matter of duty and in a spirit that grateful Britain would repay Indian's loyalty and gratitude.
- In India, the years of the war marked the maturing of nationalism.
- During the war India's manpower and resources were badly exploited.
- The moderate leaders remained loyal and supportive to the British war efforts.
- Some leaders like B. G. Tilak and Annie Besant were convinced that the British would not grant them their demand of self rule till they pressurised them.
- The immediate impact of this nationalist wave in India was the launching of the Home Rule Movement by Mrs. Annie Besant and B. G. Tilak.
- War years turned out to be years of intense nationalist political agitation.
- Tilak's contention was that every Indian had the birth right to be free. He laid the foundations for the great anti-government movement led by Gandhiji in the next few years.
- To curb the revolutionary and terrorist activities, the government introduced repressive laws, which included the Indian Criminal Act, under which special Tribunals were set up to try the revolutionary and terrorist cases.

- Under the Defence of India Act, hundreds of suspects were transported without benefit of proper trial.
- These repressive measures hit the revolutionaries very hard, but did not blunt their courage.
- General Muslims uprising also took place on account of the declaration of war against Turkey.
- They strongly proposed that Muslims should not remain subservient to the British Government, but should participate in the National Movement.
- The events of the First World War and the prevalent sentiments were responsible for the Lucknow Pact and the *Khilafat Movement*.

Gadar Movement

The movement also known as the "Gadar Mutiny" or the "Gadar Conspiracy" was a plan to initiate a pan-India revolt in the British Indian Army in 1915 to end British rule in India. The movement was linked to "Gadar Party"—An organisation founded by Punjabi Indians in the United States and Canada. Some of key members of Gadar Party were Lala Har Dayal, Sohan Singh Bhakna, Abdul Hafiz, Mohamed Barakatullah, Kartar Singh. Sarbha and Rasbehri Bose. The party had its headquarters in 'San Francisco'. It also published a magazine 'Gadar' for free distribution to promote aims and objectives of the organisation.

The Home Rule Movement

The release of Tilak after 6 years of jail in Mandalay (Burma) moderated the launching of Home Rule Movement by Tilak and Mrs. Annie Besant, both of them decided to work in close co-operation to launch the movement to attain concessions, disillusionment with Morley - Minto Reforms and Wartime miseries. But the Home Rule Movement declined after Besant accepted the proposed *Montagu Chelmsford Reforms* and Tilak went to Britain to pursue the case that he had filed against *Valentine Chirol*, the author of *Indian unrest*.

The Lucknow Session of Congress (1916)

- Lucknow Pact was signed in 1916.
- By this pact, the Congress accepted the separate electorates given to the Muslims by the 1909 Act.
- By this it does not mean that the Congress and the Muslim League merged with each other. They still held up their annual sessions separately and had district agendas and political cause of action.

Beginning of the Gandhian Era [Post war situation]

During the First World War, nationalism had required its forces and the nationalists were expecting major political achievements after the war; and they were willing to fight back of their expectations were thwarted. The economic situation in the post-war years had taken a turn for the worse. Indian industries, which had prospered during the war because of foreign imports of manufactured goods, faced losses and

closure. The Indian industrialists wanted protection of their industries through imposition of high customs duties and grant of government aid, they realized that a strong nationalist movement and an independent Indian government along could secure these. The workers facing unemployment and high prices and living in great poverty, also turned actively towards the nationalist movement. The urban educated Indian faced increasing unemployment. Thus, all sections of Indian society were suffering economic hardships.

The government was aware of the rising tide of nationalist and anti-government sentiments once again decided to follow the policy of concessions and repressions.

Importance of the year 1919

- The year 1919 constitutes an important landmark in the history of British India.
- The *Rowlatt Bills* and the reign of terror in Punjab culminated in *Jallianwala Bagh massacre*.
- The emergence of M. K. Gandhi.
- Development of Pan - Islamism as a force of Indian politics.
- The passing of Government of India Act, 1919 on the basis of *Montagu Chelmsford Report*.

Government of India Act, 1919

The Government of India Act of 1919 incorporated the idea of a dual form of government referred as diarchy for the major provinces. It was intended to bring partial responsible government.

- The provincial budget was separated from the central budget.
- The governor was empowered to reserve a bill for the consideration of the Governor General if it related to some specified matters.
- A post of High Commissioner was created.
- The central legislature was made bicameral for the first time. The Upper House was named the council of state. That contained 60 members in which 33 were elected. The Lower House was named the legislative Assembly. That contained 145 members in which 104 were elected.
- Direct election system was adopted in the province. In which reservation system was present on the basis of communalism.

Entry of Gandhiji : The arrival of Mahatma Gandhi on the political horizon of India added new management to the National Movement. He played a great part in the country's struggle for freedom. He returned to India from South-Africa in 1915. He led the struggle of Indian peasants and workers. During the First World War he advised the Indians to help the British government in the hope of getting Home Rule after the war. But the enactment of *Rowlatt Act, 1919*, created great unrest in the country. A powerful agitation rose against this Act. This Act was like giving stones to a hungry man. At this critical juncture Mahatma Gandhi entered the field of Indian politics and took the command of the national movement. So the period is generally called the Gandhian Era.

Some important points

- Satyagraha is a combination of two sanskrit words: Satya (truth) and agraha (eagerness): In English Satyagraha is referred to a 'passive resistance'.
- Gandhiji's satyagraha was based on *truth* and *non-violence*. For him, Satyagraha was a way of life, a spiritual and moral force.
- Gandhiji urged on non-violent methods of struggle and had faith in the power of masses. Under his leadership the Indian National Movement got a new direction and adopted new methods and techniques.
- Gandhiji moved by the degradation and humiliation experienced by the 'untouchables, led a crusade against this institution. He called these people 'Harijans' or 'Children of God'.
- He dedicated his life to the removal of untouchability. Spread of education among girls and Hindu-Muslim unity. He also promoted Swadeshi and popularized the *Chakra and Khadi*.

Rowlatt Acts, 1919

In 1919, the British had passed the *Rowlatt Acts* by which the British government got power to detain anybody without trial for two years. Anybody could be imprisoned without a chance to defend himself or herself. Gandhiji called for satyagrah against the Rowlatt Act. The agitation against the act reached extreme in Punjab. A public meeting was held at *Jallinwala Bagh* in a small park enclosed by building on all sides. *General Dyer* with his troops entered the park and ordered his army to fire without any warning. This was the worst incidence of British rule.

Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy and its Aftermath

- The Rowlatt Satyagraha as a political campaign was a failure as it did not attain its object 'the repeal of the Rowlatt Act.' But it projected Gandhiji as an all India leader of immense potential.
- The anti-Rowlatt Act agitation was particularly severe in the Punjab which was suffering from the after effects of wartime repression, forcible recruitment and the influence of the revolutionaries.
- The movement provoked a hartal in many parts of the Punjab, and violent disturbances took place.
- The Lieutenant Governor, Michael O 'Dwyer, had already earned notoriety as an oppressive administrator.
- On April 9, 1919, he ordered the arrest of two local Congress leaders, Dr. Satyapal and Dr. Kitchlew, who were associated with the Reception Committee for the annual session of the INC to be held in December 1919.
- To protest against their arrest and the British repression, a public meeting was held at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar on April 13, 1919, where General Dyer arrived with armoured cars and troops and fired on the unarmed peaceful crowd without warning, killing nearly, 1,000 people and scores of others.
- The massacre of Jallianwala Bagh was followed by martial law and a veritable reign of terror prevailed in the Punjab.

- To protest against the Jallianwala Bagh tragedy Rabindranath Tagore surrendered the Knighthood conferred on him by the British Government.

Khilafat and Non-Co-operation Movements

During 1919-22, the British were opposed through two mass movements- The Khilafat and Non Co-operation.

The British prime minister promised the Muslims that sultan of Turkey would not be humiliated after the end of Ist World War. The Khilafat movement aimed against the British government received the support of Mahatma Gandhi. He addressed the issue of Swaraj. All leaders boycotted British goods and clothes. On 4th February 1922, in Chauri Chaura, a violent clash broke up between local police and protestors. Gandhi went on for 3 days fast to appeal to the Indians to stop all resistance and the movement was called off.

An Appraisal of the Movement: The sudden suspension of the Non-Co-operation movement also led to the demise of the Khilafat issue and breakdown of the precariously balanced Hindu-Muslim harmony. Shortly after the movement was called off communalism became rampant all over the country and serious riots broke out. In Kerala, an anti-Zamindar bloodletting was witnessed, when Muslim Moplah peasants turned on Hindu landlords and money-lenders. The Communal situation became far worse during the years 1921-27 than it had been even before.

Mahatma Gandhi's promise to achieve Swaraj within a year of launching the movement was not fulfilled. The Non-Co-operation Movement failed to achieve any of its declared objectives. But its ultimate gain outweighed the immediate losses. The congress had become a force to reckon with and thereafter it went from strength to strength. It generated a desire for freedom and inspired the people to challenge the colonial rule.

The Swaraj Party (1923)

The suspension of Non cooperation was not liked by the extremists. In the Gaya session of Congress *C.R. Das* had resigned from the membership of the Congress. He started *Swaraj Party at Allahabad*.

Simon Commission

In November, 1927 the British government appointed the Simon Commission. It consisted all Britishers without a single Indian representative. The commission arrived in India in February 1928 and met with a strike.

Nehru Report (1928)

The report was a memorandum outlining a proposed new dominion status constitution for India. It was prepared by a committee of All party conference chaired by Motilal Nehru and Jawaharlal Nehru as secretary.

Provisions of Nehru Report

1. Dominion status be granted for internal freedom be sanctioned.
2. Dyarchy should be removed and responsible rule be established.

3. A supreme court should be set up.
4. Federal government should be established.
5. The central legislature should consist of two houses.

Civil Disobedience Movement

Civil Disobedience Movement was launched under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi in the year 1930 was one of the most important events of freedom struggle of the country. On 12th March, 1930, a Dandi salt march was started where the British salt law was broken. This angered the British government. On March 1930, Gandhi signed the Gandhi - Irwin pact. It aimed at the calling off the civil disobedience movement and participation of Congress in the Round Table Conference.

Civil disobedience movement was started again and continued till 1934.

Among the programmes outlined for the Civil Disobedience movement were:

- (i) The violation of the salt law and other laws;
- (ii) Boycott of courts, legislatures, elections, Government functions, Government school and colleges.
- (iii) Non-payment of land-revenue, rent or other taxes.
- (iv) Boycott of foreign goods and burning of foreign cloth;
- (v) Peaceful picketing of shops selling liquor and other intoxicants;
- (vi) Organising mass strikes and demonstrations;
- (vii) Resigning government jobs and not joining the civil, military or public services.

Dandi March : The Civil Disobedience movement was started by Gandhiji on 12th March 1930, with his famous Dandi March. Gandhiji along with 78 companions, which included Sarojini Naidu marched nearly 375 km from Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi, a village in Gujarat sea-coast. It was on the same day after reaching Dandi, Gandhiji broke the law by making salt from sea water. A wave of enthusiasm swept the country. Salt laws were broken at many places and even women took part in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

The Third Round Table Conference - (1932)

(November 17 to December 24, 1932)

It was held in *London* in 1932. The Congress boycotted it.

Unhampered by the developments on the Indian political scene, the British Government continued with its work of constitutional reforms. The third Round table Conference was called on November 17, 1932 and it lasted till December 24 that year. The Congress boycotted it and only 46 delegates attended the session. This session put together the final features of a concrete plan for the Government of India Act 1935, which, after some amendments, was passed by the British Parliament on August 2, 1935.

Poona Pact

The 'Poona Pact' was an agreement between Gandhiji and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar which was signed on 25th September 1932 in Poona. This agreement ended fast unto death undertaken by Mahatma Gandhi to protest '*Mc.Donand's Communal Award*' to the depressed classes (untouchables) by giving separate electorates to Dalits for electing members to the state

legislative assemblies in British India. The major points of this pact were as follows:

- (1) 148 seats were allowed to the depressed classes in the provincial legislatures.
- (2) The representation of the depressed class in the central legislature would likewise be on the principles of joint electorate.
- (3) Certain percentage of seats allotted to the general non-Muslim electorate was to be reserved for the depressed class.
- (4) Adequate representation was to be given to the depressed class in civil services.

Peasants' and Workers' Movement

The 1930's economic depression worsened the condition of the peasants and workers in India. The prices of agriculture products dropped by over 50 percent by the end of 1932. The employers tried to reduce wages. The peasants all over the country began to demand land reforms, abolition of zamindari, reduction of land revenue and rent, and relief from indebtedness. Workers in the factories and plantations increasingly demanded better conditions of work and recognition of their trade union rights. The Civil Disobedience movement and the rise of the left parties and groups produced a new generation of political workers who devoted themselves to the organisation of peasants and workers. Consequently, there was rapid growth of trade unions in the cities and the Kisan Sabhas in many areas particularly in Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Kerala and Punjab. The first All-India peasant organisation, the *All-India Kisan Sabha* was formed in 1936 under the Presidentship of *Swami Sahajanand Saraswati*. The peasants also began to take a more active part in the national movement.

The Government of India Act 1935 :

- The Government of India Act 1935 consisted of 14 parts, 321 Articles and 10 schedules. The Act of 1935 prescribed a federation, taking the provinces and the Indian states as its units. It was optional for the Indian states to join the federation, and since they never joined the federation never came into being.
- The Government of India Act 1935 referred to diarchy on central level. The central legislature was bicameral consisting of the federal Assembly and the council of the state.
- The Act divided legislative powers between centre and provinces. The executive authority of the centre was vested in the Governor General on behalf of the crown. the Governor General could prevent discussion in the legislature and suspend the proceeding on a Bill.
- A central court was established in Delhi consisting of a chief justice, other three judges and two additional judges. Central Reserve Bank was established by Act of 1935. Diarchy on province was abolished, Vidhan Parishad was established in some provinces.
- By Act of 1935 India council was abolished.

Tebhaga Movement (1939)

The Tebhaga Movement was a movement of peasants in Bengal. At that time the peasants or tenants had to give half of their harvest to the owner of the land or the Zamindars. The

peasants insisted that one-third of the harvest should be taken by landlords in place of one-half. This movement marked as turning point in the history of agrarian movements in India.

The August Offer, 1940

In 1940 session at Ramgarh (Bihar), Congress passed a resolution to offer support to British government in war if a provisional national government is set up at the centre. In response to this, the then Viceroy 'Lord Linlithgow' offered something which became popular as 'the August Offer'.

Some key elements of the proposal were :

1. A representative "constitution making body" shall be appointed immediately after the war.
2. The number of Indian in the Viceroy's executive council will be increased.
3. A war advisory council would be set up.

Congress, however did not approve "The August Offer".

Cripps Mission (1942)

Churchill was compelled to change his attitude. He came to discuss with Indian leaders and break the constitutional stalemate.

In March 1942, the British Government sent Sir Stafford Cripps, a member of the war cabinet, to India with a Draft Declaration. The Drafted Declaration had the following features:

- (i) It reiterated the intention of the British Government to set up an Indian Union soon after the war.
- (ii) The Indian Union would have dominion status with power to secede from the commonwealth.
- (iii) An elected body charged with the task of framing a new constitution for India with the Princes as participants.
- (iv) Pakistan was conceded in principle, in that once the constitution was drawn up, any province might opt out of the Indian Union.
- (v) The Constitution-making body would conclude a treaty with the British Government guaranteeing to protect the racial and religious minorities and covering all other necessary matters.
- (vi) Until a new constitution was framed, the British Government was to remain responsible for the defence of India.

Negotiations between Cripps and the Congress leaders broke down. Stafford Cripps returned home in the middle of April leaving behind frustrated and embittered Indian people.

The failure of the Cripps Mission and the growing threat of Japanese aggression brought about a radical change in Mahatma Gandhi's attitude towards the British Government. The people's discontent with rising prices and wartime shortages was reaching an explosive stage. Japan won a series of dramatic victories in the Western Pacific. Malaya and Singapore were overrun, and the retreating British troops surrendered Rangoon in early March 1942. Soon the Japanese were at India's eastern frontier, and brought India within the range of actual hostilities. Mahatma Gandhi came to believe that "the presence of the British in India is an invitation to

Japan to invade India and their withdrawal removes the bait.” He therefore asked the British “*to leave India in God’s hands or in modern parlance to anarchy*”.

Quit India Resolution

‘Wardha Resolution’ is also known as ‘*Quit-India Resolution*’. In Wardha Session of Congress in 1942, a resolution was passed that demanded that the British rule in India must end immediately. This resolution was an outcome of the change of attitude of Congress party towards British rule.

Quit India Movement

- In 1942, Gandhiji started the final movement called the *Quit India movement* with the famous slogan of *Do or Die*.
- The British followed a policy of severe repression. Popular discontent a product of rising prices and wartime shortages instigated freedom fighters.
- A large number of people extended their co-operation to Gandhiji and the Indians came out in open rebellion against the Britishers.
- They set fire to police stations, post offices, railway stations and other government buildings.
- The Quit India movement made a great contribution to the Freedom struggle of India. It made the Indian masses determined to get freedom.
- The Quit India Movement inaugurated at the call of Mahatma unfolded in four phases. In the first phase there were strikes, processions, and demonstrations. This phase lasted for three to four days and commenced from the day of Gandhi’s arrest on August 9th, 1942.
- Quit India movement was Gandhi’s final bid to secure India’s independence.

C. R. Formula (Rajaji Formula):

It soon became evident to the government that no solution to the Indian problem was possible without the concurrence of the Muslim League. Gandhiji tried to reach an accord with Jinnah. They met in Bombay from September 9 to 27, 1944. Rajagopalachari had induced Gandhiji to accept the principle of Pakistan and had devised a formula which formed the basis of the talks in 1944, to end the deadlock between the Congress and the Muslim League.

The C. R. Formula became the basis for the Gandhi - Jinnah talks in Bombay in 1944 itself to settle the Hindu-Muslim differences.

Wavell Plan (1945)

Mr. Wavell presented a plan for ending the political problems in India. It is known as Wavell plan. It was assured that all the members of Executive except viceroy and the commander - in - chief would be Indian. The representation of Hindus and Muslims would be equal in the viceroy’s council. Indians would have the right to frame out their constitution. But this plan became a failure.

Simla Conference

The Simla conference was a 1945 meeting between viceroy *Archibald Wavell* and the major political leaders of India at

Simla. It began in cordial atmosphere but due to obstinacy of *Jinnah* and his communal viewpoint no decision could be taken.

Cabinet Mission (1946)

When the cabinet mission arrived in Delhi, it had three members, Cripps, A.V. Alexander and Pethick Lawrence. The mission talked with Congress and Muslim League about the interim government and constitutional assembly. Muslim League demanded for separate nation whereas the Congress opposed it.

Sir Pethick Lawrence, while announcing the appointment of the Mission had made it clear that its objectives was to set up quickly a machinery for drawing up the constitution for independent India and to make necessary arrangements for an Interim government.

The Cabinet Mission spent the first three weeks in discussions with the leaders of various political parties, members of the Viceroy’s Executive Council, the rulers of Princely States, etc. After all these discussions, when it could not arrive at any agreed solution, the Cabinet Mission announced its own recommendations on May 16, 1946.

Declaration of Atlee

In July 1946, Congress found a glorious victory in the election of constituent assembly. The Muslim League felt defeated. Dangerous communal riots broke out at Silhat, Tripura, Noakhali, Garhmukteshwar, Bihar and other places.

After Direct Action day, the Atlee, P.M. of the British Government announced to leave India.

Mountbatten Plan

Lord Mountbatten, who had come to India as Viceroy in March 1947, worked out a compromise after long discussions with the Congress and Muslim League - The country was free but not united. India was to be partitioned and a new state of Pakistan was to be created along with a free India. He announced his compromise Plan on 3rd June 1947.

Salient features of the plan

1. If the areas with the majority of the Muslim population so desired, they should be allowed to form a separate dominion. A new constituent assembly would be set up.
2. Boundary commission would be set up to define the boundaries of the Hindu and Muslim provinces in Bengal and the Punjab.
3. The governor general should be common to both dominions and that the present governor general should be reappointed.
4. Transfer of power should be on the basis of the Government of India Act of 1935.
5. In the case of two dominions, the armed forces should be divided between them.

In July 1947, the British Parliament passed the historic *Indian Independence Act* to legalize the *Mountbatten Plan*. The Act, thus provided for the establishment of two independent states - India and Pakistan with effect from 15 August 1947. The boundary lines between the two nations were drawn by

Rad Cliff, a British lawyer, who knew nothing about Indian conditions or geography.

The country was to be partitioned but not on the basis of Hinduism and Islam. India became independent on 15 August, 1947.

On the night of 14 August Jawaharlal Nehru, said in his midnight speech, 'At the stroke of midnight hour, when the world sleeps, India will awake to life and freedom....'.

Fourteen Points of Jinnah

The Fourteen Points of Jinnah were proposed by *Muhammad Ali Jinnah* as a Constitutional Reform plan to safeguard the political rights of Muslims in a self-governing India. A comparison of the Nehru Report (1928) with Jinnah's Fourteen Points had a political gap between the Muslims and the Hindus in India. Jinnah aim was to get more right for Muslims. He therefore gave his 14 points. These points covered all the interests of the Muslims at heated time and in this Jinnah stated that it was the "parting of way" and that he did not want and would not have anything to do with the Indian National Congress in the Future. The League leaders motivated Jinnah to revive the Muslim League and gave it direction. As a result, these points became the demands of the Muslims and greatly influenced the Muslim thinking for the next two decades till the establishment of Pakistan in 1947.

The Fourteen Points

1. The form of the future constitution should be federal, with residuary powers vested in the provinces.
2. The uniform measure of autonomy shall be guaranteed to all provinces.
3. All legislature in the country and other elected bodies shall be constituted on the definite principle of adequate and effective representation of minorities in every province without reducing the majority in any province to a majority are even equality.
4. In the Central Legislature, Muslim representation should not be less than one third.
5. Representation of communal groups shall continue to be by means of separate electorate as at present, provided it shall be open to any community at any time to abandon its separate electorate in favour of a joint electorate.
6. Any territorial distribution that might at any time be necessary shall not in any way affect the Muslim majority.
7. Full religious liberty, i.e., liberty of belief, worship and observance, propaganda, association and education, shall be guaranteed to all communities.
8. No bill or resolution or any part thereof shall be passed in any Legislature or any other elected body if three fourths of the member of any community in that particular body oppose it as being injurious to the interest of that community or in the alternative, such other method is devised as may be found feasible and practicable to deal with such cases.

9. Sindh should be separated from the Bombay Presidency.
10. Reforms should be introduced in the North West Frontier Province and Balochistan on the same footing as in the other provinces.
11. Provision should be made in the constitution giving Muslims an adequate share, along with the other Indians, in all the services of the state and in local self-governing bodies with due regard to the requirements of efficiency.
12. The constitution should embody adequate safeguards for the protection of Muslim culture and for the protection and promotion of Muslim education, language, religion, personal laws and Muslim Charitable institutions and for their due share in the grants-in-aid given by the State and by local self-governing bodies.
13. No Cabinet, either central or provincial should be formed without there being a proportion of at least one-third Muslim ministers.
14. No change shall be made in the constitution by the Central Legislature except with the concurrence of the State's contribution of the Indian Federation.

Constitution of India and Pakistan

- The Independence Act declared that British Paramountcy over the Indian States to lapse on August 15, 1947. They were allowed to join either India or Pakistan.
- Before that date, most of the states had signed the Instrument of Accession by which they agreed to accede to India.
- But there were some states which thought that in the changed situation they were entitled to declare their independence.
- By 15 August, 1947, all the 562 states except *Kashmir*, *Hyderabad* and *Junagadh* incorporated in the new Federal Union.
- Hundreds of small states merged with neighbouring provinces and disappeared altogether from the country's political map.
- Thus "a bloodless revolution had been brought about, on the one hand, by the operation of democratic forces unleashed by freedom, and on the other, by the patriotic attitude of the rulers who had been quick to appreciate the change".
- The Maharaja of Kashmir also delayed accession to India or Pakistan even though the popular forces led by Sheikh Abdullah's National Conference wanted accession to India.
- When Pathans and irregular armed forces of Pakistan invaded Kashmir, the Maharaja of Kashmir sought the assistance of the Government of India.
- On 26 October 1947, he formally acceded to the Indian Union, whose air borne troops saved the situation in the nick of time.
- On 31 October 1947 an interim government was formed with Sheikh Abdullah as its head, which, with the help of Indian troops, successfully repelled tribal raids, aided and abetted by Pakistan.
- On 31 December 1947, the Indian Government appealed to the Security Council of the United Nations to stop this

- act of aggression, on the part of Pakistan against India.
- The claims of India and Pakistan were put forward before the Security Council which could not arrive at a fruitful solution.
- The two dominions fought a war for over a year till the UN commission arranged for a ceasefire between the two Governments on 1 January, 1949.
- The efforts of the Security Council to arrive at an enduring solution to the dispute between the Governments by sending successive UN representatives like *Sir Owen Dixon* and *Dr. Frank Graham*, proved unsuccessful.
- In 1951, the Constitution Assembly met in Jammu and Kashmir to frame a constitution for the State.
- The Constituent Assembly ratified the accession of the State to India in February 1954.
- In November 1956, the Constituent Assembly legalised the status of Jammu and Kashmir as an integral part of the Indian Dominion.
- Pakistan retains her de-facto control over the area which her troops occupied in 1947.

Indian Independence Act of 1947

In July, the Mountbatten plan was executed by the *Indian Independence Act, 1947*. This Act was presented in the *House of commons*. On 18 July 1947, the British parliament passed the Bill. According to it, two separate nations were created and Jinnah was made the governor general of the New nation Pakistan. 14 August, 1947 saw the birth of new Islamic Republic of Pakistan. At midnight the next day on 15th August, India got its freedom. The two countries were founded on the basis of religion with Pakistan as an Islamic state and India as a secular one.

The process of partition had claimed many lives in the riots. Not only was the country divided, but also were the provinces of Punjab and Bengal caused riots and claimed the lives of Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs equally.

FAMOUS PERSONALITIES OF INDIAN FREEDOM STRUGGLE

Ambedkar, B. R. (1891 - 1956): A leader of the depressed classes throughout his life, he worked for the moral and material progress of the untouchables. He was jurist by profession and equally a great social worker, politician, writer and educationist. He launched a number of movements for securing equal status for the lower castes. He was appointed the Law Minister in the Interim Government and also Chairman of the Constituent Assembly's Drafting Committee.

Ansari, M.A. (1880 - 1936): Qualified as a physician, he organised the All India Medical Mission of Turkey in 1912-13. Later took a leading part in the Home Rule League agitation. Elected President, Muslim League in 1920. Participated in the Khilafat, the Home Rule and Non-Cooperation Movements. He was the founder of the Nationalist educational institution, *Jamia Millia Islamia* in 1920.

Azad, Chandra Shekhar (1906 - 31): One of the most famous revolutionaries from the present day Uttar Pradesh. He was arrested during Non-Co-operation movement, and was flogged for ridiculing the court during trial by declaring his name as Azad, his father as Swatantra and his home as prison. From this he became famous as Azad. He shot himself dead with the last bullet he had in his pistol, while fighting alone with the police.

Asaf Ali (1888 - 1953): Started his legal career at Delhi and later joined the Home Rule movement, in 1945, took up the Secretaryship of the INA Committee and he was *India's first Ambassador to Washington*.

Badruddin Tyabji (1844 - 1906): First Indian barrister at Bombay High Court.

Bal Gangadhar Tilak (1857 - 1920): Remembered as *Lokmanya*, he played a leading part in popularising the cult of patriotism; first nationalist leader who sought close contact with the masses and he was also a forerunner of Gandhiji. He started akharas, lathi clubs, Shivaji and Ganapati festivals to inculcate among the people the spirit of service to the nation, the first congress leader to suffer several terms of imprisonment for the sake of the country. He openly declared, "*Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it*".

Bhagat Singh (1907 - 1931): Born in a Sikh Jat family of Lyallpur district, joined the *Hindustan Socialist Republican Army in 1925*; in 1928 shot and killed Saunders to avenge the death of Lala Lajpat Rai who received injuries during the anti-Simon Commission agitation at Lahore. He was the main accused and received the death sentence; executed on 23 March, 1931.

Bhulabhai Desai (1877 - 1946): Established the *Swadeshi Sabha* for promoting the boycott of foreign goods. His last and perhaps the greatest contribution to the national cause was his brilliant defence of the INA prisoners in 1945.

Bipin Chandra Pal (1858 - 1932): Entered into the Brahmo Samaj and founded the English weekly, *New India*; initially follower of Surendranath in politics; founded *Bande Mataram* in 1906 and was imprisoned for refusing to give evidence in the *Bande Mataram Sedition case* in 1907.

Chakravati Rajagopalachari (1878 - 1972): Participated in the anti-Rowlatt Bill Satyagraha in 1919 and gave up his legal profession in 1920, to join the Non-Co-operation Movement; a chief organiser of the Congress in the South; involved a formula for the solution of Indian Constitutional tangle in 1944 and assisted Gandhiji in his negotiations with Jinnah, served the Interim Government as *Minister for Industry, Supply, Education and Finance* and then as the *Governor of West Bengal*. In 1948 succeeded Lord Mount Batten as the *first Indian Governor General of the Indian Dominion* till 26 January 1950 when India became a republic, between 1952 and 1954 Rajaji was the *Chief Minister of Madras*. Founded the *Swatantra Party* in 1959.

Dadabhai Naoroji (1825 - 1917): *The Grand Old Man of India*, associated with the Indian National Congress right

from its inception. The Indian to become a *Member of the House of Commons* on the Liberal Party's ticket, *President of Indian National Congress thrice*, in 1886, 1893 and 1906, first Indian to draw the attention of the Indians as well as the British Public to the drain of wealth from India to Great Britain and the resulting poverty of the Indians; "*Poverty and un-British rule in India*", a book written by Naoroji was published in 1901, proves his thesis of Drain of wealth.

Gopal Krishna Gokhale (1866 - 1915): A follower of Mahadev Govind Ranade, popularly known as the Socrates of Maharashtra; Gandhiji became Gokhale's political pupil, in 1905 laid the foundation of the '*Servants of India Society*' for the training of national missionaries for the service of India, and to promote, by the constitutional means, the true interest of the Indian people.

Gopinath Bordoloi (1880 - 1950): One of the *builders of modern Assam*; imprisoned in 1941 and 1942 for taking part in the individual satyagraha and the Quit India Movement.

Jatindra Mohan Sen Gupta (1885 - 1933): Renounced his legal practice during the Non-Co-operation Movement, organised the strike of the employees of Assam Bengal Railways, led the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Kamala Nehru (1899 - 1936): She was married to Jawaharlal Nehru in 1916, joined her husband in the Non-Cooperation Movement, and the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Kasturba Gandhi (1869 - 1944): Endearingly married to Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi in 1882, one of the first of a group of Indian women to be imprisoned in the Transvaal, arrested for participating in the Quit India Movement in 1942, died while serving imprisonment at Poona.

Sarojini Naidu (1879 - 1949): Educated in England, showed a marked flair for literature at an early age which later found expression in beautiful English verses and earned her the title "*Nightingale of India*". She joined Home Rule League in 1916; *first Indian lady to preside over the Congress*, led the salt raid at Dharsana in 1930, at the beginning of the Quit India Movement in 1942 arrested and detained with Gandhiji; the *first Indian lady* to become the *Governor of Uttar Pradesh* in free India, fought all her life against poverty, ignorance and social taboos.

Narayan Malhar Joshi (1879 - 1955): He was a member of the Central Pay Commission in 1947, an important leader of the *Indian trade union movement*; organised creches, dispensaries for women and children and industrial training schools and co-operative societies.

Swami Sahjanand Saraswati (1889 - 1951): He was President of the "*All India Kisan Sabha*". He pioneered the peasants cause and became the Founder-President of the Bihar Kisan Sabha in 1927.

Vijaya Lakshmi Pandit (1900 - 1990) Sister of Jawaharlal Nehru, a prominent national leader, was imprisoned thrice in connection with Civil Disobedience Movement in 1932, 1941 and 1942; played an important role as India's representative in San Francisco during the first meeting in UN where she challenged the might of the British.

Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan (1890 - 1988): Born in a village of Peshawar district of the British India, joined the national movement at very young age and inculcated the ideas of nationalism into the minds of the Pathans; plunged into the agitation against the Rowlatt laws, the Khilafat, Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience movements, never saw eye to eye with the fanatical ideology of the Muslim League and was committed to secularism. He opposed the Partition of India. He was popularly known as *Frontier Gandhi*.

Mahadev Desai (1892 - 1942): In 1917 came in close contact with Gandhiji pledged himself into the Champaran Satyagraha, editor of Motilal Nehru's periodical, *Independent*.

Ram Manohar Lohia (1910 - 1968): A socialist, in 1934 became a founder member of the *Congress Socialist Party* and edited its journal. '*The Congress Socialist*', in free India. A forceful journalist who promoted the cause of Hindi as national language.

Sachchidananda Sinha (1871 - 1950): A distinguished lawyer, journalist, politician and educationist, joined the Congress in 1899, actively participated in the Home Rule movement, from 1936 to 1944 *Vice-Chancellor* of Patna University.

Vallabhai Patel (1875 - 1950): Born in an agriculturist family of Nadiad in Gujarat; entered politics by joining the Gujarat Sabha in 1915, of which Gandhiji was the President; joined the Non-Co-operation Movement; led the famous peasants agitation against increase in land revenue at Bardoli and won a signal victory; joined the Quit India Movement in 1942; in free India became the *Deputy Prime Minister*; a man of iron who never allowed personal sentiment to confuse his duties.

Acharya Vinoba Bhave : Close associate of Gandhiji; leader of *Sarvodaya* and the *Bhoodan Andolan*; was a staunch advocate of cow protection.

Rajendra Prasad (1884 - 1963): As a student he took interest in the anti-partition agitation in Bengal and established the Bihari Students 'Conference' in the fore-front of the salt Satyagraha and the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1930 and 1932 and suffered imprisonment; on failure of Cripps Mission undertook a tour of his province and prepared the masses for the Quit India Movement; joined Interim Government as Minister for Food and Agriculture in 1946; the *first President of the Constituent Assembly*, became the *first President of the Indian Republic*.

Abdul Kalam Azad (1888 - 1958): Known as the Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, born in Mecca where his ancestors had migrated from India during the revolt of 1857; in 1898 accompanied his parents to India and settled in Calcutta, associated himself with the revolutionaries during the Swadeshi Movement; in 1929 he came in close contact with Gandhiji and supported the Non-Cooperation programme; *Chief of the Khilafat Committee*, elected President of the special session of the Congress at Delhi in 1924, he led the negotiations with British Cabinet Mission (1946), a member of the Constituent Assembly; joined the *Interim Government as Minister of Education and Arts*, in free India he became the *Education Minister* and later took

charge of the portfolios of *National Resources and Scientific Research*, he established the *University Grants Commission*.

Ghosh, Aurobindo (1872-1950): A leading Bengali revolutionary who later turned yogi. For about ten years, he remained active in the political field, particularly during the partition of Bengal, and was one of the propounders of the programme of Swadeshi and boycott. He expressed the view that political freedom was “the life and breath of our nation”. In 1910, he retired to Pondicherry, where he spent his life in mediation and spiritual pursuits.

Hume, Allan Octavian (A.O.Hume): (1829 - 1922): A British Civil Servant in India, who after his retirement for service in 1882 worked for India’s political claims and is known as the ‘*father and founder*’ of the INC. Hume was the guiding spirit during the formative years of the INC. He had studied medicine and surgery and was a great naturalist and botanist.

Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar (1820 - 1891): He was an uncompromising social reformer and put up a valiant fight for introduction of *widow remarriage* and stamping out polygamy from society.

Jinnah, Mohammad Ali (1875 - 1948): A leading lawyer, leader of the Muslim League and founder of Pakistan.

Besant, Annie (1847 - 1933) An Irish English woman, who came to India in 1939 to work for the *Theosophical society*. She ardently worked for India’s independence. In 1915 she founded the *Home Rule League* to launch the Home Rule Movement and was made President of the Calcutta session of the Congress in 1917.

Bose, Subhash Chandra (1897 - 1945): He was the supreme commander of *Azad Hind Fauj* (the Indian National Army). In January 1941, he escaped out of India and reached Berlin. He died in a plane crash on August 18, 1945.

Exercise -1

- Who was the founder of 'Drain Theory' which among others, exposed the constant drain of wealth from India to England:
 - S.N. Bannerjea
 - Gopal Krishna Gokhale
 - Dadabhai Naoroji
 - M.K. Gandhi
- A striking characteristic of Indian cultural Renaissance was:
 - Growth of new schools of philosophy.
 - Birth of new regional languages.
 - Research oriented study of the past history and antiquities of India.
 - Growth of novel at the expense of other forms of writing.
- The earliest movement which took up the cause of lower caste against Brahmana domination was
 - Nair Service Society
 - Satya Shodak Society
 - Mahajan Sangam
 - Vokkaliga Sangha
- What was the objective of Vaikom Satyagraha launched in Kerala?
 - Remove untouchability.
 - Force the temple authorities to appoint non-brahmins as priests.
 - Ban the institution of Devadasis for temple service.
 - Open the temples for the entry of the lower castes avarnas.
- Who said "If it was proved to me that it (untouchability) is an essential part of Hinduism I for one would declare myself an open rebel against Hinduism itself"?
 - B.R. Ambedkar
 - M.K. Gandhi
 - B.G. Tilak
 - Jyotiba Phule
- Identify the institution which was turned into Benaras Hindu University by Madan Mohan Malaviya.
 - Bethane College for women started in 1849 by Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar.
 - Hindu college founded in 1817 by David Hare.
 - Vedanta college founded in 1825 by Rammohan Roy.
 - Central Hindu school established by Mrs. Annie Besant.
- Where did Vivekananda attend the World's Parliament of Religion in 1893?
 - Chicago
 - New York
 - Washington
 - Alaska
- In 1888, Sir Syed Ahmed founded the
 - Patriotic Association
 - Upper Indian Mohammadan Association
 - National Conference
 - Muslim League
- "Patriotism is religion and religion is love for India"- whose utterance is this?
 - Raj Narain Bose
 - Swami Vivekananda
 - Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 - Bankim Chandra Chatterjee
- Identify the social reformers of Maharashtra who adopted the pen name of "Lokहितawadi"?
 - Atmaram Panduranga
 - Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 - Gopal Hari Deshmukh
 - Krishna Shastri Chiplunkar
- Who among the following was the Minister and Chief Advisor of Nana Saheb Peshwa?
 - Wajid Ali Shah
 - Azimullah Khan
 - Maulvi Ahmad Shah
 - Amirullah Khan
- The original name of Banda Bahadur was
 - Mahesh Das
 - Lachhman Das
 - Dwarka Das
 - Harnam Singh
- Which Sikh Guru began 'Sachcha Padshah'?
 - Guru Gobind Singh
 - Guru Hargovind
 - Guru Tegh Bahadur
 - Guru Arjan Dev
- Which one of the following Sikh Guru enjoyed the rank of 5000 zat and 5000 sawar under the Mughals?
 - Guru Hargovind
 - Guru Har Kishan
 - Guru Tegh Bahadur
 - Guru Gobind Singh
- The transformation of the Sikhs into a military, fighting community was began by
 - Guru Hargovind
 - Guru Gobind Singh
 - Guru Tegh Bahadur
 - Guru Arjan Dev
- Which one of the following sets of powers constituted the anti-British front in 1780?
 - Nizam, Mysore, Berar and Marwar
 - Nizam, Berar the Rohilas and the Marathas
 - The Marathas, Mysore, Berar and Nizam
 - Mysore, the Marathas, the Rohilas and Berar
- In which book did, Dadabhai Nauroji presents his 'Drain of wealth theory'?
 - Poverty and un-British rule in India
 - Economic problems of India
 - British Rule and its consequences
 - None of these
- Dadabhai Nauroji, the greatest exponent of the theory of 'Drain of wealth' called the economic exploitation of India
 - Evil of all evils
 - A continuous fleecing
 - A continuous British invasion
 - None of these

19. The Anti-Partition movement was initiated on
 (a) 7 Aug. 1904 (b) 7 Aug. 1905
 (c) 7 Aug. 1906 (d) 7 Aug. 1907
20. The demand for the Tebhaga Peasant Movement in Bengal was for
 (a) the reduction of the share of the landlords from one-half of the crop to one-third
 (b) the grant of ownership of land to peasants as they were the actual cultivators of the land
 (c) the uprooting of Zamindari system and the end of serfdom
 (d) writing off all peasant debts
21. Annie Besant was
 1. responsible for starting the Home Rule Movement
 2. the founder of the Theosophical Society
 3. once the President of the Indian National Congress
 Select the correct statement/statements using the codes given below?
 (a) 1 only (b) 2 and 3 only
 (c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
22. The Ilbert Bill controversy was related to the
 (a) imposition of certain restrictions to carry arms by the Indians
 (b) imposition of restrictions on newspapers and magazines published in Indian languages
 (c) removal of disqualifications imposed on the Indian magistrates with regard to the trial of the Europeans
 (d) removal of a duty on imported cotton cloth
23. The Radcliffe Committee was appointed to
 (a) solve the problem of minorities in India
 (b) give effect to the Independence Bill
 (c) delimit the boundaries between India and Pakistan
 (d) enquire into the riots in East Bengal
24. The Partition of Bengal made by Lord Curzon in 1905 lasted until
 (a) the First World War when Indian troops were needed by the British and the partition was ended
 (b) King George V abrogated Curzon's Act at the Royal Durbar in Delhi in 1911
 (c) Gandhiji launched his Civil Disobedience Movement
 (d) the Partition of India in 1947 when East Bengal became East Pakistan
25. What was/were the object/objects of Queen Victoria's Proclamation (1858)?
 1. To disclaim any intention to annex Indian States
 2. To place the Indian administration under the British Crown
 3. To regulate East India Company's trade with India
 Select the correct answer using the code given below.
 (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 only
 (c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3
26. The word Adivasi was used for the first time to refer to the tribal people by:
 (a) Mahatma Gandhi (b) Thakkar Bappa
 (c) Jyotiba Phule (d) B.R. Ambedkar
27. The educated middle class in India:
 (a) opposed the revolt of 1857
 (b) supported the revolt of 1857
 (c) remained neutral to the revolt of 1857
 (d) fought against native rulers
28. With reference to the 'revolt of the year' who of the following was betrayed by 'friend' captured and put to death by the British?
 (a) Nana Sahib
 (b) Kunwar Singh
 (c) Khan Bahadur Khan
 (d) Tantya Tope
29. The meeting of Indian and British political leaders during 1930-32 in London has often been referred to as the First, Second and Third Round Table Conferences. It would be incorrect to refer to them as such because:
 (a) the Indian National Congress did not take part in two of them
 (b) Indian parties other than the Indian National Congress, participating in the conference represented sectional interests and not the whole of India
 (c) the British Labour Party had withdrawn from the conference thereby making the proceeding of the conference partisan
 (d) It was an instance of a conference held in three session and not that of three separate conference
30. Which one of the following is not correct about the Cabinet Mission Plan ?
 (a) Provincial grouping
 (b) Interim Cabinet of Indians
 (c) Acceptance of Pakistan
 (d) Constitution framing right
31. The Indian Muslims, in general, were not attracted to the Extremist movement because of :
 (a) influence of Sir Sayed Ahmed Khan
 (b) anti-Muslim attitude of Extremist leaders
 (c) indifference shown to Muslim aspirations
 (d) extremists policy of harping on Hindu aspect
32. 'Abinava Bharat' a secret society of revolutionaries was organised by:
 (a) Khudiram Bose (b) V.D. Savarkar
 (c) Prafulla Chaki (d) Bhagat Singh
33. The first venture of Gandhi in all-India politics was the:
 (a) Non-Cooperation Movement
 (b) Rowlatt Satyagraha
 (c) Champaran Movement
 (d) Dandi March
34. During the Indian freedom struggle, the Khudai Khidmatgars, also known as Red Shirts called for:
 (a) the Union of Pakhtun tribal areas in north-west with the Afghanistan
 (b) the adoption of terrorist tactics and methods for terrorising and finally ousting the colonial rulers
 (c) the adoption of communist revolution ideology for political and social reform
 (d) the Pathan regional nationalist unity and a struggle against colonialism.
35. The last opportunity to avoid the partition of India was lost with the rejection of :
 (a) Cripps Mission (b) Rajagopalachari Formula
 (c) Cabinet Mission (d) Wavell Plan

36. During the freedom struggle, Aruna Asaf Ali was a major woman organizer of underground activity in:
 (a) Civil Disobedience Movement
 (b) Non-Cooperation Movement
 (c) Quit India Movement
 (d) Swadeshi Movement
37. During Indian freedom struggle, the National Social Conference was formed. What was the reason for its formation?
 (a) Different social reform groups or organizations of Bengal region united to form a single body to discuss the issues of larger interest and to prepare appropriate petitions/representations to the government
 (b) Indian National Congress did not want to include social reforms in its deliberations and decided to form a separate body for such a purpose
 (c) Behramji Malabari and M. G. Ranade decided to bring together all the social reform groups of the country under one organization
 (d) None of the statements (a), (b) and (c) given above is correct in this context
38. Which one of the following chronological orders of the given events is correct ?
 (a) The Cripps Mission – The Civil Disobedience Movement – The Cabinet Mission’s Plan
 (b) The Civil Disobedience Movement – The Cripps Mission – The Cabinet Mission’s Plan
 (c) The Cripps Mission – The Cabinet Mission’s Plan – The Civil Disobedience Movement
 (d) The Civil Disobedience Movement – The Cabinet Mission’s Plan – The Cripps Mission
39. Which one of the following is the correct chronological sequence of events during Indian freedom struggle ?
 (a) Appointment of Simon Commission – Irwin-Gandhi Pact – Moplah Rebellion
 (b) Appointment of Simon Commission – Moplah Rebellion – Irwin-Gandhi Pact.
 (c) Moplah Rebellion – Appointment of Simon Commission – Irwin-Gandhi Pact.
 (d) Moplah Rebellion – Irwin-Gandhi Pact – Appointment of Simon Commission
40. The War of Independence of 1857 failed because
 (a) The revolution was not well organised
 (b) It was not supported by public
 (c) There were differences of opinions
 (d) All of these
41. In which state, the Kondo Dora revolt broke out?
 (a) Gujrat (b) Bihar
 (c) Rajasthan (d) Andhra Pradesh
42. Before Quit India movement, the British government made a plan to imprison Gandhi and other Congress leaders. The plan was known as —
 (a) Operation Desert
 (b) Operation Blue Star
 (c) Operation Seashore
 (d) Operation Zero Hour
43. Who started the Ahmadiya Movement in 1889?
 (a) Altaf Hussain (b) Nazir Ahmad
 (c) Shibli Mohani (d) Mirza Ghulam Ahmad
44. During whose tenure, the resolution of total Independence was passed?
 (a) Lord Chelmsford (b) Lord Wavell
 (c) Lord Irwin (d) Lord Willington
45. In which of the following movements, did Mahatma Gandhi make the first use of hunger strike as a weapon?
 (a) Non-cooperation Movement
 (b) Rowlatt Satyagraha
 (c) Ahmedabad Strike
 (d) Bardoli Satyagraha
46. Direct Action Day was observed by Muslim League on
 (a) 15th August 1946 (b) 16th August 1946
 (c) 17th August 1946 (d) 18th August 1946
47. Where was the ‘Jatiya Sarkar’ formed during the Quit India Movement?
 (a) Ballia (b) Nagpur
 (c) Satara (d) Tamluk
48. Which one of the following had supported the Non-cooperation Resolution of Mahatma Gandhi in the special session of the Indian National Congress at Calcutta in 1920?
 (a) C.R. Das
 (b) B.C. Pal
 (c) Madan Mohan Malviya
 (d) Moti Lal Nehru
49. In which of the following sessions of Indian National Congress, Mahatma Gandhi had said, “Gandhi may die but Gandhism will remain forever”?
 (a) Calcutta Session 1928
 (b) Lahore Session 1929
 (c) Karachi Session 1931
 (d) Ramgarh Session 1940
50. Jiatrang Movement started in
 (a) Nagaland (b) Tripura
 (c) Manipur (d) Mijoram
51. Aruna Asaf Ali was connected with which one of the following movements as a woman organiser of underground activity?
 (a) Civil Disobedience Movement
 (b) Non-cooperation Movement
 (c) Quit India Movement
 (d) Swadeshi Movement
52. Who of the following had called Subhash Chandra Bose as ‘Desh Nayak’?
 (a) Mahatma Gandhi
 (b) Ram Manohar Lohia
 (c) Ravindranath Tagore
 (d) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
53. A Provisional Government of India with Raja Mahendra Pratap as its president was established during the First World War in
 (a) Afghanistan (b) Germany
 (c) Singapore (d) Turkey
54. Who out of the following had told “ Destruction is the best method of dealing with the foreign clothes”?
 (a) Ravindranath Tagore
 (b) Mahatma Gandhi
 (c) Chittaranjan Das
 (d) Subhas Chandra Bose

55. Where was Mahatma Gandhi when a raid was made by Congress Volunteers on Dharsana Salt Depot?
 (a) In Yervada Jail
 (b) In Sabarmati Jail
 (c) In Agha Khan Palace Poona
 (d) In Ahmadanagar Fort Jail
56. Who is the author of the book entitled 'A Nation in the Making'?
 (a) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
 (b) Surendranath Banerjee
 (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 (d) Subhas Chandra Bose
57. Who among the following attended all the three Round Table Conferences?
 (a) Mahatma Gandhi (b) Bhimrao Ambedkar
 (c) Vallabhbhai Patel (d) Jawaharlal Nehru
58. Who among the following leaders escaped from the prison and organised underground activities during the Quit Indian Movement?
 (a) J.B. Kriplani (b) Ram Manohar Lohia
 (c) Achyut Patwardhan (d) Jayaprakash Narayan
59. The main cause behind the rise of the Faraizi Movement was that
 (a) the Muslim tenants were oppressed by the East India Company.
 (b) the Christian missionaries attacked the Islamic religion.
 (c) the Hindu domination was to be eradicated.
 (d) the Hindu money-lenders oppressed the Muslim community.
60. Find out the non-precursor of the 1857 revolt
 (a) Ulgulan (b) Santhal Rising
 (c) Sanyasi Revolt (d) Faraizi Revolt
61. An important administrative reform for which the early nationalists agitated concerned
 (a) the separation of judiciary from executive
 (b) the discontinuation of the policy of disarming the Indians
 (c) Indianisation of higher grades of the administrative service
 (d) dissuading the British policy of aggressiveness against India's neighbours
62. Gopal Krishna Gokhale founded
 (a) Poona Sarvajanik Sabha
 (b) Bombay Presidency Association
 (c) Servants of India Society
 (d) Landholder's Society
63. Why were Tilak and others imprisoned in 1897?
 (a) Their speeches and writings were directed towards creating hostile feelings towards the British government.
 (b) They violated the terms of the Arms Act.
 (c) They refused to attend the court trial presided by a British judge.
 (d) They broke the salt tax law.
64. Who, among the early nationalists, carried on active propaganda in England to persuade the British to yield to their demands?
 (a) Gopal Krishan Gokhale
 (b) Dadabhai Naoroji
 (c) M.G. Ranade
 (d) Dinshaw E. Wacha
65. Which of the following was not one of the demands of the Moderates about which they organized agitations on constitutional lines during 1885 to 1905?
 (a) Expansion of Legislative Councils, representation of Indians on the Secretary of State's Council, Viceroy's Executive Council and Government Executive Councils.
 (b) Larger employment of Indians in higher services, and holding of India Civil Service Examinations in England and India simultaneously
 (c) Reduction in military expenditure
 (d) More educational facilities and employment opportunities for women
66. The Swadeshi movement was started because
 (a) the British massacred innocent people at Jallianwala Bagh
 (b) the British government did not grant responsible government in India
 (c) Lord Curzon divided Bengal
 (d) of de-industrialisation in India
67. The large scale expression of the Militant nationalism for the first time, was against:
 (a) Seditious Meetings Act, 1907.
 (b) Partition of Bengal, 1905.
 (c) The Indian Council Act, 1892.
 (d) Official Secrets Act, 1904.
68. Find out the wrongly stated after effects of the Swadeshi movement.
 (a) A market for Indian goods in abroad was built up.
 (b) Nationalist poetry, prose and journalism flourished.
 (c) Indian industries were given a fillip.
 (d) Indian educational institutions were set-up to impart literary, technical or physical education.
69. What was the real objective of the partition of Bengal?
 (a) Create division among the ranks of Indian nationalists.
 (b) Stop the tide of nationalism in Bengal.
 (c) Build up separate administrative units for better efficiency of administration.
 (d) Appease the large majority of Muslims.
70. Which of the following was not one of the causes for the rise of Extremism in the Congress?
 (a) The Indian Council Act, 1892 did not satisfy the aspirations of Congressmen and it was felt that the policy of appeals and prayers had brought no results.
 (b) There was widespread resentment against the passing of the Seditious Meetings Act and the Indian Press Act.
 (c) The exclusion of the Indian intelligentsia from all the big jobs in the country created bitterness.
 (d) Dissatisfaction with the progress of the past two decades made some leaders lose faith in the British sense of justice and fair play.

71. Identify the most important of the early secret societies of terrorist youth set-up
- Brati Samiti
 - Anushilan Samiti
 - Suhrid Samiti
 - Swadesh – Bhandhava Samiti
72. Which of the following was not one of the factors responsible for the wide acceptance of the cult of extremism?
- The terrible famines of 1896-97 and 1899-1901 followed by bubonic plague took a very heavy toll of life and the people attributed the ‘phenomenon of ever-recurring famines to the anti-national economic policy of the Government.’
 - The anti-Indian and imperialist policies of Lord Curzon such as the Calcutta Corporation Act, the Official Secrets Act, the Indian Universities Act and above all the Partition of Bengal in 1905, created resentment and provoked violence.
 - The constant economic drain on the resources of the country on account of the global expansion of the British Empire.
 - Indian nationalists gained more confidence and drew inspiration from Abyssinia’s repulsion of the Italian army (1896) and Japan’s thumping victory over Russia (1905) which exploded the myth of European superiority
73. Why did the Europeans in India start a vigorous movement for the repeal of the Ilbert Bill?
- For excluding Indians from Viceroy’s council.
 - They wanted to be exempted from the jurisdiction of Indian Judges and magistrates.
 - For monopolizing the higher judicial posts for Europeans.
 - All of the above.
74. The Morley-Minto Reforms which were passed in 1909.
- Established a constitution-making body
 - Enlarged the central and the provincial legislative councils
 - Made the Executive Council of the Governor-General purely English in composition
 - Decreased the number of the provincial and central legislative members
75. What was the charge against Bal Gangadhar Tilak for which he was sentenced to six years’ transportation in July 1908?
- For being the chief exponent of the cult of extremism
 - For inciting violence during the Surat session of the INC.
 - For seditious writings in his paper Kesari
 - For being instrumental in the murder of the British Plague Commissioner in Poona
76. Indian National Movement was influenced by-in the early twentieth century
- Boer War, 1899
 - The Russian Revolution, 1917
 - The Russian-Japanese War, 1904-5
 - The outbreak of the First World War, 1914.
77. Name the militant nationalist who had a leading role in propagating the Swadeshi sentiments to the rest of the country.
- Aurobindo Ghosh
 - Lala Lajpat Rai
 - Bipin Chandra Pal
 - Bal Gangadhar Tilak
78. The special feature of the All India Congress session at Surat was that
- The Extremists and Moderates competed for getting their own man elected as the President of the session
 - The Moderate attempted to repudiate the resolutions of the Calcutta session
 - Session ended in confusion
 - All of these are valid
79. Which one of the following was the main reason for the split between the Moderates and the Extremist at the Surat session of the INC in 1905 known as ‘Surat Split’?
- Attempts of the Extremists to get B.G. Tilak elected as the Congress President
 - The shift of the Congress venue from Nagpur to Surat
 - Bipin Pal’s efforts for a broad-based resolution on boycott to cover boycott of honorary offices as well as foreign goods
 - Unleashing of violence in the open session of the Congress by the Extremists
80. Which of the following was not one of the objectives and methods of the Extremists in the Congress?
- The new leadership sought to create in the people a sense of sacrifice and a readiness- to suffer for the cause of the country
 - The Extremists advocated boycott of foreign goods and use of Swadeshi
 - A National Scheme of Education was launched to provide an alternative to Government-controlled universities and colleges
 - Terrorist and revolutionary methods to turn out the British from India by force or fraud were sought to be justified
81. Which of the following was not one of the measures suggested by Raja Rammohan Roy for the betterment of the peasant’s lot?
- Substitution of ryotwari system for zamindari system
 - Reduction of the rent to be paid by the tenants and the revenue paid by the zamindars
 - Loss is revenue to be made up by tax upon luxuries or by employing low-salaried Indians as collectors
 - Fixity of rents for the cultivators on the lines of the Permanent Settlement with the zamindars
82. Which of the following was not one of the Raja Rammohan Roy’s suggestions for organising the Company’s government on a more rational basis?
- Constitutional reforms must be guaranteed
 - The rule of law ought to be supreme
 - Civil liberties and individual rights must be guaranteed
 - The absolute ownership of property by the individual must be recognised
83. The most fearless and bold woman leader of the peasant movement, who sacrificed her life to protect peasants’ rights, was:
- Ambika Chakraborty
 - Snehlata Wadekar
 - Veera Gunnamma
 - Preeti Lata Wadekar

84. Who among the following was the Governor-General of India immediately preceding Chakravarti Rajagopalachari?
 (a) The Marquess of Linlithgow
 (b) Lord Mountbatten
 (c) Lord Wavell
 (d) Lord Chelmsford
85. With which one of the following did the Civil Disobedience Movement in India commence?
 (a) The Dandi March
 (b) No Tax campaign by Sardar Patel
 (c) The unfurling of the National flag by Nehru
 (d) Mahatma Gandhi's going on fast
86. After 1857, which of the following announced, at a Darbar at Allahabad, the assumption of the Government of India by the Sovereign of Great Britain?
 (a) Lord Canning (b) Sir John Lawrence
 (c) Lord Mayc (d) Lord Northbrok
87. In which one of the following sessions was the Indian National Congress split into moderates and extremists?
 (a) Nagpur (b) Allahabad
 (c) Surat (d) Calcutta
88. Which one of the following is the correct chronological order of the freedom movements of India?
 (a) Quit India Movement, Non-Cooperation Movement, Civil Disobedience Movement
 (b) Non-cooperation Movement, Civil Disobedience Movement, Quit India Movement
 (c) Quit India Movement, Civil Disobedience Movement, Non, Cooperation Movement
 (d) Non-Cooperation Movement-Quit India Movement-Civil Disobedience Movement
89. Who among the following was the founder of the Muslim League?
 (a) Muhammad Ali Jinnah
 (b) Shaukat Ali
 (c) Nawab Salimullah
 (d) Aga Khan
90. Who among the following Urdu poets was invited to the Second and Third Round Table Conference?
 (a) Faiz Ahmad (b) Josh Malihabadi
 (c) Muhammad Iqbal (d) Firaq Gorakhpuri
91. Who among the following was thrice elected President of the Indian National Congress?
 (a) Dadabhai Naoroji
 (b) Surendranath Banerjee
 (c) Gopal Krishna Gokhl
 (d) Shankaran Nair
92. Who among the following was not a member of the Cabinet Mission?
 (a) Sir Stafford Cripps
 (b) AV Alexander
 (c) Radcliffe
 (d) Pathick Lawrence
93. Who among the following was elected as the President of All India Khilafat Conference met at Delhi in 1919?
 (a) Motilal Nehru (b) Mahatma Gandhi
 (c) M A Jinnah (d) Shaukat Ali
94. Who among the following was not a member of the Constituent Assembly?
 (a) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
 (b) Acharya JB Kriplani
 (c) Lok Nayak Jayprakash
 (d) K M Munshi
95. Who among the following had moved the objectives resolution which formed the basis of the Preamble of the Constitution of India in the Constituent Assembly on December 13, 1946?
 (a) Dr B R Ambedkar
 (b) Dr Rajendra Prasad
 (c) Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
 (d) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru
96. The Doctrines of 'Non-Violence' and 'Civil Disobedience' associated with Mahatma Gandhi were influenced by the works of
 (a) Churchill-Irwin-Tolstoy
 (b) Ruskin-Tolstoy-Thoreau
 (c) Thoreau-Humen-Shaw
 (d) Cripps-Tolstov-Howes
97. Which of the following statements on Gandhian movements is not correct?
 (a) Mahatma Gandhi was in favour of mass movement
 (b) Gandhian movements were non-violent in nature
 (c) In Gandhian movements, leadership had no role
 (d) Mahatma Gandhi was in favour of passive resistance
98. After the death of Raja Rammohan Roy, the Brahma Samaj split into two sections; the Brahma Samaj of India and the Adi Brahma Samaj. Who were the leaders of the two sections, respectively?
 (a) Keshab Chandra Sen and Debendranath Tagore
 (b) Radhakanta Deb and Debendranath Tagore
 (c) Keshab Chandra Sen and Radhakanta Deb
 (d) Debendranath Tagore and Radhakanta Deb
99. The Nehru-Liaquat Pact between India and Pakistan was signed in 1950 to resolve the issue of
 (a) the protection of minorities
 (b) the accession of princely states
 (c) the border disputes
 (d) the problem of refugees
100. October 26, 1947 is an important date in the Indian history, because of
 (a) Maharaja Hari Singh's signing on Instrument of Accession
 (b) ceasefire with Pakistan
 (c) merger of Sind
 (d) declaration of war over India by Pakistan
101. Who drafted the Constitution of Muslim League, 'The Green Book'?
 (a) Rahamat Ali
 (b) Muhammad Iqbal
 (c) Muhammad Ali Jinnah
 (d) Maulana Muhammad Ali Jauhar
102. Which one of the following commissions/ committees was appointed by the British Government to investigate into the massacre in Jallianwala Bagh?
 (a) Welby Commission
 (b) Hunter Committee
 (c) Simon Commission
 (d) Butler Committee

103. 'Dyarchy' was first introduced in India under
 (a) Morley-Minto reforms
 (b) Montford reforms
 (c) Simon Commission plan
 (d) Government of India Act, 1935
104. When Lord Mountbatten became the first Governor-General of India, who among the following became the Governor-General for Pakistan?
 (a) Lord Mountbatten
 (b) Muhammad Ali Jinnah
 (c) Liaquat Ali Khan
 (d) Shaukat Ali
105. Consider the following paragraph
 He was seriously injured in police lathi charge in Lahore during demonstrations against Simon Commission, for which he subsequently died in November, 1928. Later on, the British officer who was responsible for the lathi charge on him, was shot dead by Bhagat Singh and Rajguru.
 The revolutionary referred to in the above paragraph is
 (a) Pandit Govind Ballabh Pant
 (b) Lala Lajpat Rai
 (c) Mangal Singh
 (d) Motilal Nehru
106. Which among the following are the five principles of peaceful co-existence of Panchsheel as outlined by Jawaharlal Nehru?
 (a) Mutual respect, military collaboration, economic collaboration, de-colonisation and territorial integrity
 (b) Mutual respect for each other territorial integrity and sovereignty, non-aggression, non-interference, equality and mutual benefit and peaceful co-existence
 (c) Peaceful co-existence, economic collaboration cultural interaction, territorial integrity and decolonisation
 (d) Disarmament, peaceful co-existence, economic collaboration, cultural interaction and territorial integrity
107. Which one among the following prompted Rabindranath Tagore to surrender his title of 'Sir'?
 (a) The passing of the Rowlatt Act
 (b) The passing of the Act of 1919
 (c) To support Mahatma Gandhi's Satyagraha Movement
 (d) To protest against the massacre at Jallianwala Bagh and the imposition of martial law in Punjab
108. Which one of the following statements regarding the Revolt of 1857 is not correct?
 (a) The revolt was supported whole heartedly by the educated, elite Indian everywhere
 (b) The diverse elements which took part in the revolt were united by their hatred of British rule
 (c) The role of Hindu-Muslim unity in the revolt was acknowledged by many, including British officials
 (d) The revolt did not spread to South India
109. To which among the following the residuary powers were conferred by the federation established by the act of 1935?
 (a) Federal legislature
 (b) Provincial legislatures
 (c) Governor-General
 (d) Provincial Governors
110. Consider the following statement and identify the author of the statement using the codes given below
 I shall work for an India in which the poorest shall feel that it is their country, in whose making they have an effective voice, an India in which there shall be no high class and low class of people, an India in which all communities shall live in perfect harmony.
 (a) Baba Saheb Ambedkar
 (b) Mahatma Gandhi
 (c) Gurudev Tagore
 (d) Pandit Nehru
111. Which one among the following statements regarding the social and religious reform ideas of Raja Rammohan Roy is not correct?
 (a) His efforts led to the formation of Brahmo Samaj in 1828
 (b) He considered different religions as embodiments of universal theism
 (c) His Vedantic monism was strengthened after 1815 since an exposure to Christian unitarianism
 (d) He paid attention exclusively to the problems/issues of the emerging middle class of India
112. Which one among the following was part of Gandhi-Irwin Agreement of 1931?
 (a) Stern action against policemen guilty of brutal assault on Satyagrahis
 (b) Nehru to represent Congress at the Round Table Conference of 1931
 (c) Deletion of communal question from the agenda of the conference
 (d) Release of political prisoners excepting those guilty of arson and violence
113. Consider the following statement and identify with the help of the codes given below, the person who made the statement
 'It would be quite impossible for a few hundred British to administer against the active opposition of the whole of the politically minded fo the population.
 (a) Jawaharlal Nehru in April, 1947 in an address to Congressmen at Lucknow
 (b) Clement Attlee January, 1947 in a private letter addressed to Ernest Bevin
 (c) Lord Mountbatten in December, 1946 in a note given to British Parliament
 (d) Viceroy Wavell in January, 1946 in a letter to Secretary of State
114. In addition to Macaulay's Minutes on Education, another landmark draft is also attributed to him. Identify the draft from the following.
 (a) Draft of Indian Penal Code
 (b) Draft of Indian Forest Policy
 (c) Draft of the Zamindari Abolition Act
 (d) Draft of the Maritime Trade Policy
115. Which one among the following is correct about the Doctrine of Lapse?
 (a) It did not allow the Indian rulers to adopt any heir
 (b) It did not allow an adopted heir to rule a state after the death of the ruler
 (c) It made the annexation of Indian State compulsory after the death of a ruler
 (d) It made the annexation of Indian State compulsory if the adoption of heir had not been approved by the British authorities

116. What was the 'privy purse' in the context of the history of modern India?
- A purse given privately by one organisation to another
 - A purse given by the Government of India to dignitaries for services rendered
 - A grant given by the Government of India to the erstwhile Prince of India
 - A gift given by an erstwhile Prince of India to the Government of India
117. The Constituent Assembly of India was chosen on the basis of the provincial elections of 1946. With the withdrawal of the Muslim League from the Constituent Assembly, it turned out that majority of the assembly members were also members of the Congress. Under that circumstance, how was the Constituent Assembly given a broader social basis?
- By nominating independent members from various minority groups
 - By nominating independent members from various caste and religious groups
 - By nominating independent members of different castes, religious groups and women and also by taking in representatives of the princely states and asking for written submission from the public at large
 - By taking in representatives of the princely states and asking for written submission from the public at large
118. The first effort at drafting a Dominion Status Constitution for India was made in response to the
- Minto-Morley reforms
 - Montague-Chelmsford reforms
 - Simon Commission
 - First Round Table Conference
119. The Iron Pillar near Qutub Minar draws attention of scientists due to its
- antiquity
 - glitter
 - hardness
 - rustlessness
120. Gandhiji led the Indian Nationalist Movement from the front and his leadership was motivated by a wider philosophy, he nurtured throughout the course of the movement. Which one among the following was a continuous movement based on this philosophy and not a specific movement?
- Non-Cooperation Movement
 - Swadeshi Movement
 - Quit India Movement
 - Civil Disobedience Movement
121. Which among the following was the most immediate factor for the spread of Swadeshi and boycott of foreign goods during the first decade of the last century?
- Curzon's design to curtail the sphere of local self-government
 - Curzon's attempt to control the universities
 - Curzon's partition of Bengal
 - Curzon's plan to curb the growing popularity of the Indian National Congress
122. Which one among the following statements appropriately defines the term 'Drain Theory' as propounded by Dadabhai Naoroji in his work 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India'?
- That a part of India's national wealth or total annual product was being exported to Britain for which India got no material returns
 - That the resources of India were being utilised in the interest of Britain
 - That the British industrialists were being given an opportunity to invest in India under the protection of the imperial power
 - That the British goods were being imported to India making the country poorer day by day
123. Which one among the following was not a demand of the Prarthana Samaj?
- Women education
 - Widow remarriage
 - Raising the age of marriage for boys and girls
 - Abolition of untouchability
124. The Name of Ram Prasad Bismil is associated with
- Kanpur Conspiracy Case
 - Alipore Conspiracy Case
 - Kakori Conspiracy Case
 - Meerut Conspiracy Case
125. Which one among the following states was first annexed by Lord Dalhousie under the Doctrine of Lapse?
- Nagpur
 - Jhansi
 - Sambalpur
 - Satara
126. The Cabinet Mission Plan for India envisaged a
- Federation
 - Confederation
 - Unitary form of Government
 - Union of States
127. Which one among the following statements is correct?
- The Revolt of 1857 was not supported by the Nizam of Hyderabad
 - Dinabandhu Mitra was the author of the book, Unhappy India
 - The Sindhis of Gwalior gave shelter to the Rani of Jhansi
 - Mangal Pandey led the Sepoys March to Delhi
128. Which one among the following principles was not propagated by the Theosophical Society?
- Belief in Karma and Rebirth
 - Belief in Universal Brotherhood and Humanity
 - Belief in Vedantic Philosophy
 - Belief in the Eradication of Untouchability
129. Which one among the following statements regarding Bal Gangadhar Tilak is not correct?
- He propounded the theory of the Arctic Home of the Aryans
 - He founded the Anti-Cow Killing Society
 - He set-up the Home Rule League at Poona
 - He supported the Age of Consent Bill
130. Dalhousie has been regarded as the maker of modern India because he brought about reforms and made a beginning in many fields. Which one among the following was not one of his schemes of reforms?
- Educational reforms
 - Construction of railways and introduction of telegraph and postal services
 - Establishment of a public works department
 - Factories Act to improve the condition of Indian labour

131. Which one among the following correctly describes Gandhiji's attitude towards the Swarajist leaders?
 (a) He was not opposed to their entry into council
 (b) He had full trust in their bona fides and considered them most valued and respected leaders
 (c) He was not in favour of maintaining warm personal relations with them
 (d) He was neutral to government's offensive against the Swarajists and did not defend them
132. Several nationalist leaders in India wrote commentaries on the Bhagvad Geeta to argue the case for an ethical foundation to Indian nationalism, who among the following is an exception to it?
 (a) Sri Aurobindo
 (b) Mahatma Gandhi
 (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 (d) Ram Manohar Lohia
133. Who among the following was not associated with the foundation of the All India Trade Union Congress?
 (a) NM Joshi (b) Lajpat Rai
 (c) VV Giri (d) Joseph Baptista
134. Several socio-political organisations were formed in the 19th and 20th centuries in India, Anjuman-e-Khawatin-e-Islam founded in the year 1914 was
 (a) All India Muslim Ladies Conference
 (b) A radical wing of the All India Muslim League
 (c) All India Muslim Student's Conference
 (d) All India Islamic Conference
135. Consider the following
 'India would be far more reliable as a base for operations. Moreover, the prospect of a settlement will be greatly enhanced by the disappearance of Gandhi, who had for years torpedoed every attempt at a settlement.'
 The above statement was made by the British in the context of
 (a) Kheda Satyagraha
 (b) Civil Disobedience Movement
 (c) Quit India Movement
 (d) Non-Cooperation Movement
136. Which one among the following was the primary reason behind the failure of the Young Bengal Movement in Bengal?
 (a) It did not appeal to educated people
 (b) Its economic programme was not popular
 (c) It was too radical
 (d) It did not have good leaders
137. Who among the following first used the word 'Swarajya' in its political sense and accepted Hindi as the national language of India?
 (a) Rammohan Roy (b) Swami Vivekananda
 (c) Mahatma Gandhi (d) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
138. Which one among the following statements about Civil Disobedience Movement is correct?
 (a) It started with Gandhiji's march to Champaran
 (b) Under Gandhi-Irwin agreement Congress agreed to give up Civil Disobedience Movement
 (c) The British Government was quite soft towards the movement from the beginning
 (d) There was no violence during the movement
139. The social ideals of Mahatma Gandhi were first put forth in
 (a) Hind Swaraj
 (b) An Autobiography—The Story of My Experiments with Truth
 (c) History of the Satyagraha in South Africa
 (d) The Bhagavad Geeta According to Gandhi
140. Who among the following was not associated with the activities of the Theosophical Society?
 (a) Madame H P Blavatsky
 (b) Mr A O Hume
 (c) Col H S Olcott
 (d) Mrs Annie Besant
141. Which among the following was the reason of the resignations of the Indian Ministers in all the provinces in the year 1939?
 (a) The Governors refused to act as constitutional heads
 (b) The Centre did not provide the required financial help to provinces
 (c) The Governor-General converted Indian administration from federal to unitary one because of the beginning of the World War II
 (d) India was declared a party to the World War II without the consent of the provincial government
142. The Ghadar party, formed in the USA, was determined to start a revolt in India. Which among the following provinces did the party choose to begin its armed revolt ?
 (a) Punjab (b) Bengal
 (c) United Provinces (d) Bihar
143. Which of the four linguistic regions in South India remained unaffected by the Non-Cooperation Movement (1921-22) ?
 (a) Kerala (b) Tamil Nadu
 (c) Andhra Pradesh (d) Karnataka

Exercise -2

- Swami Dayanand
 - Attacked the spread of western sciences.
 - Organised social services during natural calamities, like floods, droughts, epidemics etc.
 - Encouraged inter-caste marriages and widow remarriage.
 - Opposed child marriages and polygamy.

(a) 2 & 3 (b) all of the above
(c) 1, 2, 4 (d) 2, 3, 4
- Identify the prominent members of the "Servants of India Society".
 - N.M. Joshi (2) N.H. Kunzru
 - Shri Ram Bajpai (4) Jyotiba Phule
 - Gopal Ganesh Agarkar

(a) 1, 4, 5 (b) 2, 3, 4
(c) 1, 2, 3 (d) 3, 4, 5
- Consider the following individuals—
 - N. M. Joshi 2. Dewan Chamanlal
 - Shiva Rao 4. V. V. Gin

Which movement amongst the following were all of the above associated with?

(a) Communist Movement
(b) Kisan Sabha Movement
(c) Trade Union Movement
(d) State People's Movement
- Consider the following leaders—
 - Balwant Rai Mehta
 - J. N. Sen Gupta
 - Sardool SinghKaveshar
 - SudhakarRao

Who among these were Not the Chief conveners of the All India State's People Conference (AISPC)?

Codes:

(a) 2 and 3 (b) 1, 2 and 4
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 2, 3 and 4
- Consider the following statements regarding the proposals of cripp's mission -
 - A constitution making body consisting of the elected representatives from British India and members from the princely states.
 - India was promised to have dominion status.
 - It suggested partition of India.
 - Setting up an executive council composed of Indian alone.

Which of the statements is / are correct ?

(a) 2, 3 and 4 (b) 1, 2 and 3
(c) 1, 2 and 4 (d) All of these
- Write the correct chronological order of the following -
 - Foundation of swaraj party
 - Jallianwalabagh tragedy
 - Congress league pact
 - Chauri-chaura incident

(a) 2, 3, 1 and 4 (b) 3, 2, 4 and 1
(c) 3, 2, 1 and 4 (d) 2, 3, 4 and 1
- The Sard Act, 1930 provided -
 - Civil marriages
 - Penalisation for bigamy
 - Penalisation of parties to a marriage in which the girl was below 14 years and the boy was below 18 years of age.
 - Legalisation of inter-caste marriage.

(a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 3 only
- With reference to the Second Round Table Conference, consider the following statements.
 - Viceroy Irwin agreed to release all prisoners who were imprisoned without any guilty.
 - The provision was given for provincial autonomy.

Which of these statements is/are correct?

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Consider the following statements -
 - Balwantrai Mehta was one of the persons chiefly responsible for the initiative to convene the All India. States People's conference in 1927.
 - C. Rajagopalachari was chiefly responsible in persuading Mahatma Gandhi to decide to initiate the 'Individual Satyagrah'.

Which of the above is/are correct?

(a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
- Consider the following statements with regard to Champaran Satyagraha (1917)
 - The Champaran Satyagraha marked Mahatma Gandhi's first appearance in Indian politics as a leader of the masses.
 - Young nationalists like Rajendra Prasad and J.B. Kriplani and worked with Mahatma Gandhi at Champaran.
 - It was during this movement that Mahatma Gandhi formulated his philosophy of Satyagraha.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct ?

(a) 3 only (b) 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 3
- Give the correct sequence of the following events by using the codes given below:
 - Hunter Report
 - Home Rule Movement
 - Jallianwalla Bagh Massacre
 - Rowlatt Act

Codes:

(a) 2, 4, 3, 1 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
(c) 2, 1, 3, 4 (d) 1, 2, 3, 4
- Read the following events connected with Indian freedom struggle and find the correct chronological order of the events from the codes given below:
 - Muslim Deliverance Day
 - Direct Action Day
 - Resignation of Congress Ministries
 - Individual Satyagraha

Codes:

- (a) 3, 1, 4, 2 (b) 1, 2, 3, 4
 (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 (d) 1, 3, 2, 4

13. Who addressed whom as the spiritual father of Indian Nationalism?

- (a) Lala Hardayal - Tilak
 (b) Subhashchandra Bose - Swami Vivekanand
 (c) Bipinchandra Pal - Swami Dayanand Sarswati

(d) Balgangadhar Tilak - Madan Mohan Malviya

14. Which one of the following statements about Subhaschandra Bose is not correct?

- (a) He appeared in the I.C.S. examination in 1920 and stood 4th in order of Merit.
 (b) He was president of Indian National Congress in the year of 1938 and 1939.
 (c) He had spent his incarcerated life in Mandalay Jail.
 (d) He took part in the Quit India Movement.

15. Arrange the following in a chronological order of their establishment:

1. Ghadar Party
2. Communist Party of India
3. Congress Socialist Party
4. Hindustan Socialist Republican Association

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 2, 1, 3, 4
 (c) 3, 4, 2, 1 (d) 4, 3, 1, 2

16. Consider the following events related to India's freedom struggle and find their correct chronological order from the codes given below the events:

1. Bomb-hurling at the Central Legislative Assembly Hall in Delhi.
2. Martyrdom of Jatin Das.
3. Martyrdom of Bhagat Singh.
4. Karachi session of the Indian National Congress.

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 3, and 4 (b) 4, 3, 2, and 1
 (c) 3, 4, 1 and 2 (d) 2, 1, 3, and 4

17. Arrange the following events in chronological order and choose the correct answer using the codes given below:

- A. Amritsar Incident
- B. Chauri Chaura Incident
- C. Champaran Movement
- D. Moplah Revolt

Codes:

- (a) A, B, C, D (b) B, A, C, D
 (c) C, A, D, B (d) C, A, B, D

18. Which of the following newspapers advocated revolutionary terrorism during the period of Indian freedom struggle?

1. Sandhya
2. Yugantar
3. Kaal

Choose the correct answer from the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2 (b) 1, 3
 (c) 2, 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3

19. Arrange the following in the chronological order and the select the correct answer from the codes given below:

1. The August offer
2. The Cabinet Mission Plan
3. The Cripps Mission Plan
4. The Wavell Plan

Codes:

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 4, 3, 2, 1
 (c) 1, 3, 4, 2 (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

20. Put the following events in chronological order and choose your answer with the help of given codes:

1. Formation of an interim government.
2. The arrival of the Cabinet Mission.
3. Muslim League Launches Direct Action.
4. Jinnah's Wrecking of the Shimla Conference.

Codes:

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1 (b) 4, 2, 3, 1
 (c) 1, 2, 4, 3 (d) 4, 2, 1, 3

21. Which of the following movements drew women out from the seclusion of home?

1. Swadeshi Movement
2. Home Rule Movement
3. Non-Cooperation Movement
4. Civil Disobedience Movement

Select the correct answer from the codes given below:

- (a) 1 and 3 only (b) 2 and 4 only
 (c) 3 and 4 only (d) 1, 2, 3 and 4

22. Consider the following statements:

- The government of India Act 1935 provided for
 1. The provincial autonomy.
 2. The establishment of Federal Court.
 3. All India Federation at the centre.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
 (c) 1 and 3 (d) 1, 2 and 3

23. Consider the following statements in regards to the Gandhi-Irwin Pact:

1. According to the Pact, British Government accepted to release all the political prisoners.
2. Irwin agreed on giving the right to peaceful and non-aggressive picketing of liquor and foreign cloth shops.
3. British government allowed making of salt for personal consumption in coastal regions.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
 (c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

24. Consider the following statements regarding the revolt of the Royal Indian Navy in 1946:

1. The revolt was launched to protest against racial discrimination and unpalatable food.
2. Lord Wavell the concurrent viceroy of India condemned the response of the Indian Army towards the revolt.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
 (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

25. Consider the following statements in regard to the parallel government emerged during the Quit India Movement.

1. The first such government emerged in Satara.
2. The government which emerged in Tamluk was known as 'Jatiya Sarkar'.
3. The longest lasting and effective parallel government was in Satara.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

26. Consider the following statements:

- The Gandhi-Irwin Pact 1931, placed the Indian National Congress on an equal footing with the British Indian Government.
- The participation of Muslims in the Civil Disobedience Movement was less than that of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) 1 only (b) 2 only
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

27. Which of the following statements in regard to the 3rd June Plan are correct?

- The successor governments would be given dominion status.
- There was a provision for the Boundary Commission to determine boundaries of the successor states as India and Pakistan.
- It was mandatory for India and Pakistan to remain within the British Commonwealth.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below:

Codes:

- (a) 1 and 2 only (b) 2 and 3 only
(c) 1 and 3 only (d) 1, 2 and 3

28. Bring out the incorrect matching

- Khan Bahadur-Barielly
- Birjis Qadir-Lucknow
- Lachman Rao-Jhansi
- Kunwar Singh-Gorakhpur

- (a) 1 and 4 (b) 1 and 3
(c) 3 and 4 (d) 4 only

29. Name the rulers of India states who allied with the British in suppressing the revolt of 1857.

- Gulab Singh of Kashmir
- Raja of Jodhpur
- Nizam of Hyderabad
- Scindhia of Gwalior,
- Holkar of Indore.

- (a) 1, 2 (b) 2, 4
(c) 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 (d) 1, 3, 5, 4

30. **List-I** **List-II**

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|
| A. Punnapara Vayalar Movement | 1. U.P. |
| B. Teabags Movement | 2. Kerala |
| C. Telengana Movement | 3. Bengal |
| D. Eka Movement | 4. Andhra |

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |

31. **List-I** **List-II**

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. P. S. Sivaswami Iyer | 1. Mahatma Gandhi's associate |
| B. Munnuswami Naidu | 2. National Liberal Federation |
| C. Madeleine Slade | 3. Justice Party |
| D. Narasimha Chintamani | 4. Industry |

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |

32. **List-I**

- Bardoli Satyagraha
- Indian Kisan School
- Bengal Praja Party
- Bakasht Struggle

List-II

- Swami Sraddhananda Saraswati
- Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
- Faziul – Huq
- N.G.Ranga

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (b) | 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| (d) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |

33. **List-I (Events)**

- Lahore session of the Indian National Congress adopting Purna Swaraj
- Formation of Naujawan Eharat Sabha
- Karachi session of the Indian National Congress adopting Fundamental Rights
- Brussels conference against Colonialism and Imperialism

List-II (Year)

- 1928
- 1931
- 1927
- 1929

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| (b) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (c) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |

34. **List-I**

- Prafulla Chaki
- Sukhdev
- Ashfaqullah Khan
- Ganesh Ghosh

List-II

- Lahore Conspiracy case
- Kakori case
- Chittagong armoury raid case
- Bomb assault in Muzaffarpur, 1908

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| (b) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (d) | 1 | 4 | 2 | 3 |

35. **List-I**

- Tattvabodhini Sabha
- Darul—Uloom Deoband
- Delhi Urdu Renaissance
- Sarvajanik Sabha

List-II

- Devendranath Tagore
- Ganesh Vasudev Joshi
- Rashid Ahmed Ganguli
- .Zaka Ullah

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 |
| (b) | 1 | 3 | 4 | 2 |
| (c) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

36. **List-I** (Individuals) (Movements)
 A. Baba Ramsingh
 B. Mirza Ghulam Ahrned
 C. Mukund Das
 D. Nauroji Furdunji
- List-II**
 1. Satya Mahima Dharma
 2. Rahnumai Mazdayasan Sabha
 3. The Namdhari Movement
 4. The Ahmadiyah Movement

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	3	4	1	2
(b)	4	3	1	2
(c)	4	3	2	1
(d)	3	4	2	1

37. **List-I**
 A. Vanchi Iyer
 B. T. K. Madhavan
 C. Srinivas Pillai
 D. E. V. Ramasami Naicker
- List-II**
 1. Vaikom Satyagraha
 2. Tinneveli Conspiracy case
 3. The Hindu Progressive Improvement Society
 4. Self-respect movement

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	4	3	1
(b)	3	2	4	1
(c)	2	1	3	4
(d)	1	2	3	4

38. **List-I**
 A. Bhagat Jawahar Mal
 B. Vilayat Au
 C. Sayaid Fadi
 D. Khoodi Mallah
- List-II**
 1. Wahabi Movement
 2. Kuka Movement
 3. Mopalah Revolt
 4. Pabna Riots

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	4	3
(b)	1	2	3	4
(c)	2	1	3	4
(d)	1	2	4	3

39. **List-I**
 A. Chinnava
 B. Haji Shariatulla
 C. Alluri Sitaram Raju
 D. Krishna Daji Pandit
- List-II**
 1. Gadkari Revolt, 1844
 2. Faraizi Movement, 1888
 3. Rampa Uprising, 1922
 4. Kittur Uprising, 1824

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	4	2	3	1
(b)	2	3	4	1
(c)	1	4	3	2
(d)	3	2	4	1

40. **List-I**
 A. Subbarayalu Chetty
 B. Swami Narayana Gum
 C. Raghunathaya
 D. Gajalu Lakshmanarasu Chetty
- List-II**
 1. Veda Samaj
 2. Upasana Sabha
 3. Jati Mimamsa
 4. Crescent

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	3	1	4
(b)	1	3	2	4
(c)	4	1	2	3
(d)	1	2	4	3

41. **List-I**
 A. Sayaid Ahmed Bareilvi
 B. Muhammad Qasim Nanautawi
 C. Mirza Gulam ahmaed
 D. Zaka Ullah
- List-II**
 1. Dar-ul-ulum Deoband
 2. Barahim
 3. Tariquah-i-Muhammadiyah
 4. Delhi Urdu Renaissance

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	3	4	2
(b)	3	1	2	4
(c)	1	3	2	4
(d)	3	1	4	2

42. **List-I (Authors)**
 A. Dadabhai Nauroji
 B. Dayanand Saraswati
 C. Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 D. Bankim Chandra Chatterji
- List-II (Books)**
 1. Satyarath Prakash
 2. Ananda Math
 3. Poverty and Un-British Rule in India
 4. Gita Rahasya

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	3	4	1	2
(b)	2	1	3	4
(c)	1	3	4	2
(d)	3	1	4	2

43. **List-I**
 A. Kanpur
 B. Arrah
 C. Lucknow
 D. Bareilly
 E. Jhansi
- List-II**
 1. Rani Lakshmbai
 2. Nana Saheb
 3. Kunwar Singh
 4. Begam Hazrat Mahal
 5. Khan Bahadur Khan
- (a) A-2, B-4, C-3, D-5, E-1
 (b) A-2, B-3, C-4, D-5, E-1
 (c) A-3, B-1, C-2, D-4, E-5
 (d) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4, E-5

44. **List-I**
 A. Bal Gangadhar Tilak
 B. M.K. Gandhi
 C. Dadabhai Nauroji
 D. J.L. Nehru
- List-II**
 1. Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it.
 2. We do not ask any favour. We only want Justice.
 3. What I have done will endure not what I have said or written.
 4. There will be no freedom in this country or in the world so long as a single human being is unfree.

(a)	A - 1; B - 2; C - 3; D - 4
(b)	A - 1; B - 4; C - 3; D - 2
(c)	A - 1; B - 3; C - 2; D - 4
(d)	A - 1; B - 2; C - 4; D - 3

45. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Champaran Mein Mahatma Gandhi
 B. The Springing Tiger
 C. Living an Era
 D. India from Curzon to to Nehru and After
1. D.P. Mishra
 2. Rajendra Prasad
 3. Hugh Toye
 4. Durga Das

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	3	1	4
(b)	3	2	4	1
(c)	4	3	2	1
(d)	2	3	4	1

46. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Rajendra Lahiri
 B. Sukhdeo
 C. Roshan Singh
 D. Ram Prasad Bismil
1. Gonda Jail
 2. Lahore Jail
 3. Gorakhpur Jail
 4. Allahabad Jail

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	2	3	4
(b)	1	2	4	3
(c)	2	1	3	4
(d)	4	3	2	1

47. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. V.S. Srinivas Shastri
 B. V.D. Savarkar
 C. Ramaswamy Naiekar
 D. B.T. Ranadive
1. Indian National Liberation Federation
 2. Communist Party of India
 3. Hindu Mahasabha
 4. Justice Party

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	3	4
(b)	3	2	1	4
(c)	1	3	4	2
(d)	2	4	3	1

48. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Abul Kalam Azad
 B. Feroz Shah Mehta
 C. Annie Besant
 D. Mahatma Gandhi
1. Bombay Chronicle
 2. Al-Hilal
 3. Young India
 4. New India

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	4	3
(b)	1	2	3	4
(c)	2	1	3	4
(d)	3	2	1	4

49. **List-I (Act)** **List-II (Largely based on)**
- A. Indian Council Act 1909
 B. Government of India Act 1919
 C. Government of India Act 1935
 D. Independence Act 1947
1. Mountbatten Plan
 2. Simon Commission Report and joint select committee recommendation
 3. Montague-Chelmsford Reforms
 4. Morley-Minto Reform

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	2	3	4
(b)	4	3	2	1
(c)	3	4	1	2
(d)	4	1	2	3

50. **List-I (Event)** **List-II (Year)**
- A. Non-Cooperation Movement
 B. Civil Disobedience Movement
 C. Formation of Congress Ministries
 D. Quit India Movement
1. 1942
 2. 1937
 3. 1930
 4. 1920

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	2	3	4
(b)	4	3	2	1
(c)	2	1	4	3
(d)	3	4	1	2

51. **List-I** **List-II**
- A. Lady Catherine Mayo
 B. Larry Collins and Dominique Lapierre
 C. Ram Manohar Lohia
 D. Jawaharlal Nehru
1. Freedom at Midnight
 2. Mother India
 3. Discovery of India
 4. Guilty Men of India's Partition

Codes:

	A	B	C	D
(a)	2	1	4	3
(b)	1	2	3	4
(c)	1	2	4	3
(d)	4	3	2	1

52. **List-I (Congress presidents)** **List-II (Venues of session)**
- A. Dr. M. A. Ansari
 B. Purushottam Das Tandon
 C. Sarojini Naidu
 D. Subhashchandra Bose
1. Haripura
 2. Kanpur
 3. Madras
 4. Nasik

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| (c) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (d) | 4 | 1 | 3 | 2 |

53. **List-I**

- A. General Hearsey
- B. Sir Hugh Wheeler
- C. Colonel Mitchell
- D. General Hewitt

List-II

- 1. Commanding Officer of Meerut on the eve of the Revolt.
 - 2. Commanding Officer of Kanpur on the eve of the Revolt.
 - 3. Commanding Officer of 19th NI. at Berhampur.
 - 4. Commanding officer of the 34th NI. at Barrackpur.
- (a) A-4, B-2, C-3, D-1 (b) A-2, B-1, C-2, D-3
 (c) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4 (d) A-3, B-4, C-1, D-2

54.

List-I

(Peasant Movements)

- A. Faqir
- B. Ramosis
- C. Pagal Panthis
- D. Bihar Kisan Sabha

List-II

(Leaders of Peasant Movements)

- 1. Swami Sahajanand Saraswati
- 2. Karam Shah
- 3. Manju Shah
- 4. Chittur Singh

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 3 | 4 |

55.

List-I

(Newspapers/Journals/Periodicals)

- A. Sabd Kaumundi
- B. Indian Mirror
- C. Amrit Bazar Patrika
- D. Hindu

List-II

(Founder/Founder Editors)

- 1. Keshav Chandra Sen
- 2. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
- 3. G.S. Aiyar & Viraraghavachari
- 4. Sisir Kumar Ghosh

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 1 | 3 | 4 | 2 |
| (b) | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

56.

List-I

(Movements)

- A. Wahabi Movement
- B. Faraizi or Faraidi
- C. Ta ayuuni
- D. Ahmadiya Movement

List-II

(Founders of the Movement)

- 1. Mirza Ghulam Ahmad
- 2. Karamat Ali Jaunpuri
- 3. Haji Sharait-Allah
- 4. Sayyid Ahmad Racadvi

Codes:

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| (b) | 3 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| (c) | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 |
| (d) | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 |

57. Consider the following statements

- 1. At the time of independence, the Government of India followed the calender based on Saka era.
- 2. The National Calendar commenced on Chaitra 1 Saka, 1879 corresponding to March 22, 1957 AD.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
- (c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

58. Arrange the following in chronological order

- 1. Partition of Bengal
- 2. Chauri-Chaura Incident
- 3. First Round Table Conference

Codes :

- (a) 1, 2, 3 (b) 3, 2, 1
- (c) 1, 3, 2 (d) 2, 1, 3

59. Match the following

List I	List II
(Session of Indian National Congress)	(Venue)

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| A. 1st session | 1. Allahabad |
| B. 2nd session | 2. Madras |
| C. 3rd session | 3. Calcutta |
| D. 4th session | 4. Bombay |

Codes :

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|---|---|---|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D | | A | B | C | D |
| (a) | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | (b) | 1 | 3 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) | 4 | 2 | 3 | 1 | (d) | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

60. What is the correct sequence of the following events?

- 1. Bardoli Satyagraha
- 2. Rajkot Satyagraha
- 3. Champaran Satyagraha
- 4. Nagpur Satyagraha

Codes :

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 4, 3, 1, 2
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2 (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

61. Match the following

List I	List II
(Person)	(Associated in Formation of)

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. GK Gokhaie | 1. Servants of Indian Society |
| B. MM Malaviya | 2. Banaras Hindu University |
| C. C Rajagopalachari | 3. Free India Society |
| D. VD Savarkar | 4. Swatantra Party |

Codes :

	A	B	C	D
(a)	1	2	4	3
(b)	3	4	2	1
(c)	1	4	2	3
(d)	3	2	4	1

62. What is the correct sequence of the following events?

1. Rowlatt Act
2. Gandhi-Irwin Pact
3. Morley-Minto Reforms
4. Illbert Bill

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3 (b) 3, 4, 1, 2
(c) 4, 1, 3, 2 (d) 4, 3, 1, 2

63. Match the following

List I (Person)	List II (Satyagraha)
A. Raj Kumar Shukla	1. Kheda Satyagraha
B. Ambalal Sarabhai	2. Ahmedabad Mill Strike
C. Indulal Yagnik	3. Bardoli Satyagraha
D. Vallabhbhai Patel	4. Champaran Satyagraha

Codes :

	A	B	C	D
(a)	3	1	2	4
(b)	4	1	2	3
(c)	4	2	1	3
(d)	3	2	1	4

64. Consider the following statements relating to Raja Rammohan Roy

1. He knew that the spread of Western education was necessary to develop a national and scientific attitude in the Indian society.
2. He played a pioneering role in the religious and social reform movements of 19th century, Bengal.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2

65. Consider the following statements

1. Dayanand Saraswati founded the Arya Samaj in 1875.
2. The Arya Samaj repudiated the authority of the caste system.
3. Dayanand Saraswati was born in the Brahman family.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 3

66. Assertion (A) First War of independence broke out in India in 1857, soon after the departure of Lord Dalhousie from India.

Reason (R) Lord Dalhousie's annexationist policy had caused great discontent.

Codes :

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
(b) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
(c) A is true, but R is false
(d) A is false, but R is true

67. Consider the following statements about Swami Vivekananda

1. He said that Vedanta was the religion of all.
2. He believed in reviving all the best traditions of Hinduism.
3. He was impressed by the status of women in the West.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 3

68. Which of the following statements about Annie Besant are correct?

1. She founded the Central Hindu College at Benaras.
2. She organised the Home Rule League.
3. She introduced the Theosophical Movement in India.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 1 and 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) 1 and 3

69. Consider the following statements relating to the famous Muzaffarpur murders (1908)

1. The bomb, which was hurled at their carriage of Mrs Pringle and her daughter was actually intended for Mr Kingsford, the District Judge of Muzaffarpur.
2. The revolutionaries wanted to kill Mr Kingsford, because he had inflicted severe punishments on Swadeshi activists.
3. Khudiram and Prafulla Chaki had to pay the penalty for their action by death.

Which of the statements given above is/are correct?

- (a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) 2 and 3 (d) All of these

70. Which of the following was/were the main feature (s) of the Government of India Act, 1919?

1. Introduction of separate electorates for Muslims.
2. Devolution of legislative authority by the centre to the provinces.
3. Expansion and reconstitution of central and provincial legislatures.

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- (a) Only 2 (b) 1 and 3
(c) Only 3 (d) 2 and 3

71. Which of the following statements regarding Mahatma Gandhi's philosophy of Satyagraha is/are correct?

1. Truth and non-violence are its two vital ingredients.
2. The follower of Satyagraha would resist evil but not hate the evil doer.

3. The Satyagrahi would, if necessary, inflict suffering on himself, and also the evil doer.
Select the correct answer using the codes given below
(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2 and 3
(c) Only 1 (d) 1 and 2
72. Consider the following statements relating to Indigo Revolt
1. The Indigo Revolt is particularly memorable for the role played by the intelligentsia to uphold the cause of the movement.
 2. After the revolt, the colonial authorities set-up the Indigo Commission to enquire into the grievances of the Indigo cultivators.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) Only 1 (b) Only 2
(c) Both 1 and 2 (d) Neither 1 nor 2
73. Consider the following events in the history of British India
1. Santhal Rebellion
 2. Indigo Revolt
 3. Sanyasi and Fakir Rebellion
 4. Birsa Munda Rebellion
- Which one of the following is a correct chronological sequence of the above events starting with the earliest?
(a) 3, 2, 1, 4 (b) 1, 4, 2, 3
(c) 3, 1, 2, 4 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3
74. Statement I : Bal Gangadhar Tilak sought to diffuse the spirit of nationalism among the masses.
Statement II : Tilak organised a corps of volunteers to help the famine stricken people in the Deccan.
Codes :
(a) Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
(b) Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
(c) Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
(d) Statement I is false, but Statement II is true
75. Consider the following statements about the Non-Cooperation Movement
1. The movement was a mixture of nationalism, middle class politics, religion, feudalism, agrarian discontent and working class agitation.
 2. The movement was much greater in intensity than any other political agitation which came before it.
 3. The movement helped to foster Hindu-Muslim unity. Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) Only 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) Only 3 (d) 1 and 3
76. Consider the following statements about Dr Ram Manohar Lohia
1. He believed the Satyagraha without constructive work is like a sentence without a verb.
 2. He wrote his PhD thesis paper on the topic of Salt Satyagraha, focusing on Mahatma Gandhi's socio-economic theory.
 3. He recognised that caste, more than class, was the huge stumbling block to India's progress.
Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
(a) Only 1 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) All of these
77. Which of the following statements relating to the Non-Alignment Movement is/are not correct?
1. Non-alignment came to symbolise the struggle of India and other newly independent nations to retain and strengthen their independence from colonialism and imperialism.
 2. Non-alignment advanced the process of democratisation of international relations.
 3. Military alliances formed a major part of non-alignment.
Select the correct answer using the codes given below
(a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) Only 3 (d) Only 1
- Directions (Qs. 78-79) :** The following questions consist of two statements, Statement I and Statement II. You are to examine these two statements carefully and select the answers to these items using the codes given below
- Codes
- (a) Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
 - (b) Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
 - (c) Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
 - (d) Statement II is false, but Statement I is true
78. Statement I: In North-Western India, the Civil Disobedience Movement took a mass character under the leadership of Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan.
Statement II : The Nehru Report (1928) had argued that the 'next immediate step' for India must be dominion status.
79. Statement I : Gandhiji failed to realise that the Khilafat was an extra-territorial issue.
Statement II : The cause of Khilafat was discredited by 1923, as Mustafa Kamal Pasha set-up a secular republican Government in Turkey.
80. Which of the statements given below about Vivekananda are correct?
1. He believed that Vedanta was fully rational.
 2. He criticised his countrymen for having lost touch with the outside world.
 3. He condemned the caste system.
 4. He considered the Veda to be infallible.
Select the correct answer using the codes given below
(a) 1, 2 and 3 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 1, 3 and 4 (d) 1 and 2

81. Statement I Annie Besant worked together with the Congress and the Muslim League during the Home Rule Movement.
Statement II Annie Besant felt that this was necessary to get the support of the masses for the Home Rule Movement.
Codes :
- Both the statements are true and Statement II is the correct explanation of Statement I
 - Both the statements are true, but Statement II is not the correct explanation of Statement I
 - Statement I is true, but Statement II is false
 - Statement II is false, but Statement I is true
82. Consider the following statements about the Ahmedabad Mill Strike of 1918
- It was related to a dispute between the workers and the European mill owners regarding hours of work.
 - Gandhiji advised the workers to go on strike.
- Which of the statements given above is/are correct?
- Only 1
 - Only 2
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
83. Which of the statements given below about the Champaran Satyagraha is/are correct?
- It was related to Indigo plantations.
 - It started because the European planters oppressed the Zamindars.
- Select the correct answer using the codes given below
- Only 1
 - Only 2
 - Both 1 and 2
 - Neither 1 nor 2
84. Match the following
- | List I | List II |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Jyothere Thass | 1. Satyashodhak Samaj |
| B. Jyotiba Phule | 2. Dravida Kazhagam |
| C. John Rathinam | 3. Self Respect Movement |
| D. E V Ramaswami Naickar | 4. Dravida Mahajana Sabha |
- Codes :
- | | A | B | C | D |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| (a) | 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 |
| (b) | 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| (c) | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| (d) | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |

Hints and Explanations

EXERCISE-1

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (b)
6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (c)
11. (b) 12. (b) 13. (b) 14. (d) 15. (a)
16. (a) 17. (a) 18. (c) 19. (b)
20. (a) The Tebhaga movement is a peasant movement in the history of Bengal and India. It was a movement of the peasants who demanded two-third share of their produce for themselves and one-third share to the landlord.
21. (c) Annie Besant had formed and led the Home Rule Movement as she was influenced by the Irish Home Rule League. She also became the President of Indian National Congress in 1917. But she was not the founder of the Theosophical Society; rather she was the second President of the society. The founder was Henry Steel Olcott.
22. (c) Ilbert bill exempted British subjects from trial by Indian magistrates and in cases involving death or transportation they could only be tried by a high court. This proposal provoked furious protests by the Indians.
23. (c) The Radcliffe Line is a boundary demarcation line between India and Pakistan upon the Partition of India. The Radcliffe Line was named after its architect, Sir Cyril Radcliffe.
24. (b) In 1911 King George V visited India. A durbar was held at Delhi and The capital of India was transferred from Calcutta to Delhi also Partition of Bengal was annulled.
25. (a) The object/objects of Queen Victoria's Proclamation (1858) were to disclaim any intention to annex Indian States as the announcement reversed Lord Dalhousie's pre-war policy of political unification through princely state annexation. It was also to place the Indian administration under the British Crown Therefore, statement 1 and 2 are correct. However it was not to regulate East India Company's trade with India so statement 3 is wrong.
26. (b) Adivasi means primitive people.
27. (c) 28. (d)
29. (d) First round table conference was initially between the British and the Indian as equals. The INC did not participated in the first and third conference.
30. (c) Cabinet mission proposed a rejection of the demand for a full fledged Pakistan because the Pakistan so formed would include large non-muslim population – 38% in the N-W and 48% in the N-E.
31. (d)
32. (b) 'Abinava Bharat' a secret society of revolutionaries was organised in 1904 by VD Sabarkar.
33. (b) Rowlatt Satyagraha was the first action of Gandhi on all India level. Satyagraha was to be launched on April 6, 1919. But after the Jallianwala Bagh massacre, Gandhiji was alarmed by the atmosphere of violence and withdrew the Movement on April 18, 1919.
34. (d) Khudai Khidmatgars were organized by Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan (Frontier Gandhi). Khudai Khidmatgar literally translates as the servants of God, represented a non-violent freedom struggle against the British Empire by the Pashtuns (also known as Pathans, Pakhtuns or Afghans) of the North-West Frontier Province.
35. (c) Cabinet Mission (1946) was the last opportunity to avoid the partition of India with the formation of interim Government. But Muslim League rejected the plan even though they won 73 out of 78 seats in the interim government. They did not attend the first meeting of Constituent Assembly on Dec 9, 1946.
36. (c) There was an award of ₹5000 on her arrest. Later she was called the grand old lady of the independence movement.
37. (b) Because Indian National Congress did not want to include social reforms in its deliberations and decided to form a separate body for such a purpose.
38. (b) The Correct Chronological orders of given events are: The Civil Disobedience Movement (1930); The Cripps Mission (1942); The Cabinet Mission's Plan (1946)
39. (c) The correct chronological sequence of given events is as follows :
Maplah Rebellion (1836 → 854) → Simon Commission (1927) → Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931)
40. (d) 41. (d) 42. (d) 43. (d) 44. (b)
45. (c) In the Ahmedabad strike, Mahatma Gandhi made his first use of hunger strike as a weapon. In 1918, Mahatma Gandhi intervened in a dispute between the workers and mill-owners of Ahmedabad. He advised the workers to go on strike and to demand a 35 per cent increase in wages. But he insisted that the workers should not use violence against the employers during the strike.
46. (b) Direct Action Day was observed by Muslim league on 16th August, 1946. Direct Action Day also known as the Great Calcutta Killings, was a day of widespread riot and manslaughter between Hindus and Muslims in the city of Calcutta (now known

- as Kolkata) in the Bengal province of British India. The day also marked the start of what is known as The Week of the Long Knives.
47. (d) Satish Chandra Samanta became the president of Tamluk Congress Committee and remained an active congress member for decades. He was known for his leadership qualities and other constructive work. His leadership qualities could be observed during the formation of a parallel government named Tamralipta Jatiya Sarkar (Tamralipta National Government) in Tamluk during the Quit India Movement.
48. (d) Moti Lal Nehru had supported the Non-cooperation Resolution of Mahatma Gandhi in the special session of the Indian National Congress at Calcutta in 1920.
49. (c) In the Kranchi Session 1931 of India National Congress, Mahatma Gandhi had said "Gandhi may die but Gandhism will remain forever."
50. (c) Jiatrang Movement started in Manipur.
51. (c) Aruna Asaf Ali was connected with Quit India Movement. The members of the Socialist Party including Ram Manohar Lohia, Jayaprakash Narayan and Aruna Asaf Ali started consolidating underground networks. The role of the underground movement was seen as one keeping up popular morale by providing a line of command and guidance to activists across the country.
52. (c) Rabindra Nath Tagore had called Subhash Chandra Bose as 'Desh Nayak.'
53. (a) A Provisional Government of India with Raja Mahendra Pratap as its President was established during the first world war in Afghanistan.
54. (b) Mahatma Gandhi had told, "Destruction is the best method of dealing with the foreign clothes."
55. (a) When a raid was made by Congress Volunteers on Dharsana salt depot Mahatma Gandhi was in Yervada Jail. On May 21, 1930, Sarojini Naidu, Imam Sahib and Manilal took up the task of leading a raid on Dharsana salt works.
56. (b) Surendra Nath Banerjee is remembered and widely respected today as a pioneer leader of Indian politics – first treading the path of Indian political empowerment. He published an important work. 'A Nation in Making; which was widely acclaimed.
57. (b) Dr. Ambedkar attended all the three Round Table Conferences in London and forcefully argued for the welfare of the "untouchables". Meanwhile, British Government decided to hold provincial elections in 1937. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar set up the "Independent Labor Party" in August 1936 to contest the elections in the Bombay province. He and many candidates of his party were elected to the Bombay Legislative Assembly.
58. (d) Jai Prakash Narayan escaped from the prison and organised underground activities during the Quit India Movement.
59. (a) Faraizi Movement was started in East Bengal in 1804 and lasted till 1860. It was founded by Haji Shariatullah and was succeeded by his son Muhammad Mohsin, commonly known as Dadu Mian. The cause behind the movement was degeneration of the Islamic society and loss of power to the British. Hence its aim was to remove abuses from Islamic society as well as to restore Muslim rule by expelling the British from India. Faraizi movement was amalgamated with the Wababi movement in the later stages.
60. (a) Ulgulan (rebellion) of Munda Tribesmen, led by Birsa Munda occurred during 1899-1900. They had been struggling against the destruction of their system of common land holdings by the intrusion jagirdars, thikadars and merchant moneylenders.
61. (c)
62. (c) Gopal Krishna Gokhale (1866-1915), a follower of Mahadev Ranade, political Godfather of Gandhi, founded Servants of India Society in 1905.
63. (a)
64. (b) For this objective Dadabhai Naoroji in 1866 organised the East India Association in Landon.
65. (d) 66. (c) 67. (b) 68. (a) 69. (b)
70. (b)
71. (b) All the four samitis were based on revolutionary activities. They were mainly based in Eastern Bengal and Assam with Numerous branches. Among them Anushilan Samiti, the most active, was organized by Pulin Bihari Das with its headquarters at Dacca.
72. (c)
73. (b) Ilbert Bill was in innocuous measure which started to remove only a procedural anomaly, a discriminatory provision against Indian magistrates. But the European community felt outraged at this assumption of racial equality and regarded the trial of a white man by an Indian magistrate as an intolerable piece of degradation and hence they started an agitation against the bill.
74. (b) 75. (c) 76. (c) 77. (d) 78. (d)
79. (c) 80. (d)
81. (a) He preferred the zamindari system to ryotwari, for he was in favour of a strong middle class.
82. (a) 83. (c)
84. (b) Lord Mountbatten was preceded by C Rajgopalachari. Lord Mountbatten was the last Viceroy of India (1947) and the first Governor-General of the independent Dominion of India (1947-48). He was preceded by C. Rajgopalachari.
85. (a) Under the leadership of Gandhiji, the Civil Disobedience Movement was launched in AD 1930. It began with the Dandi March. On 12 March 1930, Gandhiji with some of his followers left the Sabarmati Ashram at Ahmedabad and made their way towards Dandi, a village on the west coast

- of India. Here, Gandhiji protested against the Salt Law (salt was a monopoly of the government and no one was allowed to make salt) by making salt himself and throwing up a challenge to the British government.
86. (a) After 1857 Lord Canning announced at a Darbar at Allahabad.
87. (c) The 23rd Session (1907) of the Congress was held at Surat. In the session, there was an open clash between the Moderates and the Extremists and ultimately it led to a split in the Congress.
88. (b) The Non-Cooperation Movement, 1920-22
Civil Disobedience Movement in India, 1930-34)
The Quit India Movement, 1942
89. (c) The All India Muslim League, a political organization was founded in 1906 by Aga Khan under the Nawab of Dhaka Salimullah. Its main purpose was to safeguard the political rights of Muslims in India.
90. (c) Muhammad Iqbal was invited to the second and third round table conference.
91. (a) Dadabhai Naoroji
2nd Session Calcutta Dec. 27-30, 1886 Dadabhai Naoroji
9th Session Lahore Dec. 27-30, 1893 Dadabhai Naoroji
22nd Session Calcutta Dec. 26-29, 1906 Dadabhai Naoroji
92. (c) Cabinet Mission was composed of three Cabinet Ministers of England
- Sir Pethick Lawrence, Secretary of State for India.
 - Sir Stafford Cripps, President of the Board of Trade,
 - A. V. Alexander, the First Lord of the Admiralty
 - Sir Cyril Radcliffe was appointed to chair two Boundary Commissions in June 1947 -one for Bengal and one for Punjab.
93. (b) Gandhiji was elected President of the All-India Khilafat Conference which met at Delhi on November 23, 1919. They decided to withdraw all cooperation from the government if their demands were not met.
94. (c) The Constitution of India was drafted by the constituent assembly and it was set up under the cabinet Mission plan on 16 May 1946. The members of the constituent assembly were elected by the Provincial assemblies by method of single transferable vote system of proportional representations. Members of the committee: Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel, K. M. Munshi, Acharya J. B. Kriplani. Lok Nayak Jai Prakash was not the member of the constituent assembly.
95. (d) The historic Objective Resolution was moved by Jawaharlal Nehru on 13 December 1946, and was adopted unanimously on 22 January 1947.
96. (b) Walden Pond Thoreau wrote an essay on Civil Disobedience where he advocated the doctrine of peaceful resistance. He thought that if any law was felt to be unjust, or unnecessary, it was incumbent on the individual to refuse to obey that law in any nonviolent way that they could harness. John Ruskin (an English art critic), Leo Tolstoy (a Russian count) and Henry David Thoreau (an American naturalist/backwoodsman), three apparently very different individuals, each from very different backgrounds, but all shared similar, interwoven values. The book that had made such an immediate and profound impact on Gandhi was John Ruskin's seminal work *Unto This Last*. Another deep influence on Gandhi's thinking was the writings of Leo Tolstoy, especially the essay *The Kingdom of God is Within You* which mapped out Tolstoy's individualistic interpretation of Christian living.
97. (c) Gandhi Ji was the preeminent leader of Indian independence movement in British-ruled India. He led various movements such as Champaran and Kheda Satyagraha, Khilafat movement, Non-cooperation movement, Quit India Movement etc.
98. (a) The conflict between Sen and Debendranath Tagore was broadened in 1865, when Tagore allowed the Brahmos conducting services to wear their sacred threads. Sen objected this decision and withdrew from the Brahma Samaj along with his followers. Keshab Chandra Sen and his disciples established the Brahma Samaj of India on 15th November, 1866 and Debendranath Tagore grouped themselves into the Adi (original) Brahma Samaj.
99. (a) The Nehru-Liaquat pact was signed between India and Pakistan in 1950 to resolve the issues of protection of minorities.
100. (a)
101. (c) Muhammad Ali Jinnah drafted the constitution of Muslim league 'The green Book'.
ted by Maharajah Hari Singh of Jammu and Kashmir, on 26 October 1947. By executing this document Maharajah Hari Singh agreed to accede to the Dominion of India.
102. (b) On 13 April 1919, a crowd of nonviolent protesters, along with Baishakhi pilgrims, had gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh garden in Amritsar, Punjab to protest against the arrest of two nationalist leaders, Dr. Satyapal, Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew, On the orders of Brigadier-General Reginald Dyer, the army fired on the crowd for ten minutes, there were 370 dead and 1200 wounded.
103. (a) Dyarchy was a system of double government introduced by British India.
104. (b) Mohammed Ali Jinnah was Indian Muslim politician, founder and first governor-general (1947-48) of Pakistan. He was born on Dec. 25, 1876 at Karachi (now in Pakistan) and died Sept 11,

1948, at Karachi. As the first Governor-General of Pakistan, Jinnah worked to establish the new nation's government and policies, and to help settle the millions of Muslim migrants who had emigrated from the new nation of India to Pakistan after the partition. He is revered in Pakistan as Quaid-i-Azam.

105. (d) In 1928, the British government set up the Commission, headed by Sir John Simon, to report on the political situation in India. The Indian political parties boycotted the Commission, because it did not include a single Indian in its membership, and it met with country-wide protests. When the Commission visited Lahore on 30 October 1928, Lajpat Rai led silent march in protest against it. The superintendent of police, James A. Scott, ordered the police to lathicharge. He became seriously injured and died on 17 November 1928. To take revenge of the death of Lala Lajpat Rai, Bhagat Singh and his associates plotted the assassination of Scott. But, the revolutionaries, mistaking J.P. Saunders, an Assistant Superintendent of Police, as Scott, killed him instead.
106. (b). The Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence are a set of principles to govern relations between states. The agreement was signed between India and China on 29 April 1954. The five principles of the panchsheel are :
- Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty.
 - Mutual non-aggression.
 - Mutual non-interference in each other's internal affairs.
 - Equality and cooperation for mutual benefit.
 - Peaceful co-existence.
107. (d) Rabindranath Tagore was Asia's first Nobel Laureate who won the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1913 for his creation of Gitanjali. The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre happened in Amritsar on 13 April 1919 in which Brigadier-General Reginald Dyer ordered British, Indian Army soldiers to open fire on an unarmed gathering of men, women and children. Thousands of people were killed in this massacre. Tagore renounced the knighthood that he had received in 1915.
108. (a) The Indian Rebellion of 1857 began as a mutiny of sepoys of the East India Company's army on 10th May 1857, in the cantonment of the town of Meerut.
109. (c) Governor General was the sole authority to decide and confer such powers upon central and state legislature.
110. (c)
111. (d) Reforms of Raja Ram Mohan Roy:
- Crusaded against social evils like sati, polygamy and child marriage etc.
- Demanded property inheritance rights for women.
 - Supported induction of western learning into Indian education.
- He is best known for his efforts to abolish the practice of *sati*, the Hindu funeral practice in which the widow was compelled to sacrifice herself on her husband's funeral pyre in some parts of the then Bengal.
112. (d) The proposed conditions of Gandhi-Irwin pact were as follows:
- Discontinuation of the civil disobedience movement by the Indian National Congress
 - Participation by the Indian National Congress in the Round Table Conference
 - Withdrawal of all ordinances issued by the British Government imposing curbs on the activities of the Indian National Congress
 - Withdrawal of all prosecutions relating to several types of offenses except those involving violence
 - Release of prisoners arrested for participating in the civil disobedience movement
 - Removal of the tax on salt, which allowed the Indians to produce, trade, and sell salt legally and for their own private use
113. (b) This statement was made by Clement Attlee. He was a British Labour Party leader and prime minister of Britain during the period of 1945-51. He was known for the granting of independence to India.
114. (a) The Indian Penal code was drafted in 1860 on the recommendations of first law commission of India established in 1834 under the Charter Act of 1833 under the Chairmanship of Thomas Babington Macaulay. It came into force in British India in 1862. Indian Penal Code (IPC) is the main criminal code of India. It is a comprehensive code intended to cover all substantive aspects of criminal law.
115. (d) Doctrine of lapse, in Indian history, formula devised by Lord Dalhousie, governor-general of India (1848-56), to deal with questions of succession to Hindu Indian states.
- According to 'Doctrine of Lapse', if any ruler of a protected state died without a natural heir, the states' authority will pass to the English East India Company. Annexation in the absence of a natural or adopted heir was enforced in the cases of Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Chota Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853), and Nagpur (1854).
116. (c) Privy Purse in India was a payment that was made to the royal families of the former princely states of India. The Privy Purse was created as part of the agreements made by them to merge with Union of India in the year 1947.
117. (c) For the first time in 1934, the idea of a Constituent Assembly for India was put forward by M. N.

- Roy. Under the cabinet mission plan of 1946, elections were held for the first time for constituent Assembly. The Constitution of India was drafted by the constituent assembly and it was set up under the cabinet Mission plan on 16 May 1946. The members of the constituent assembly were elected by the Provincial assemblies by method of single transferable vote system of proportional representation.
118. (c) Simon Commission was appointed under the chairmanship of Sir John Simon in November 1927 by the British government to report on the working of the Indian constitution established by the Government of India Act of 1919. The commission consisted of seven members. None of the Indians was appointed in the commission.
119. (d) The iron pillar near Qutub Minar highlights ancient India's achievements in metallurgy. The pillar is made of 98 per cent wrought iron and has stood 1,600 years without rusting or decomposing.
120. (b) Gandhi's vision of a free India was not a nation-state but a confederation of self-governing, self-reliant, self-employed people living in village communities, deriving their right livelihood from the products of their homesteads.
121. (c) The British tried to curb Bengali influence on the nationalist movement and also introduced a new form of division based on religion to create challenges for the Indian National Congress, which was slowly becoming the main opponent to British rule.
122. (a) Dadabhai Naoroji was the first man to say that internal factors were not the reasons of poverty in India but poverty was caused by the colonial rule that was draining the wealth and prosperity of India. In 1867, Dadabhai Naoroji put forward the 'drain of wealth' theory in which he stated that the Britain was completely draining India. He mentioned this theory in his book *Poverty and Un-British Rule in India*.
123. (d) Prarthana Samaj was founded by M.G. Ranade and R.G. Bhandarkar in 1867 with an aim to make people believe in one God and worship only one God. The main reformers were the intellectuals who advocate reforms of the social system of the Hindus. He never demanded abolition of untouchability.
124. (c) Ram Prasad Bismil was the famous freedom fighter who was involved in the historic Kakori train robbery. He was born in 1897 at Shahjahanpur, Uttar Pradesh. On 9th August, 1925, Ram Prasad Bismil along with his fellow followers looted the money of the British government from the train while it was passing through Kakori, Lucknow. Except Chandrashekhar Azad, all other members of the group were arrested. Ram Prasad Bismil along with others was given capital punishment. This great freedom fighter of India was executed on 19th December, 1927.
125. (d) Satara was first annexed by Lord Dalhousie under the Doctrine of Lapse. The Doctrine of Lapse was an annexation policy purportedly devised by Lord Dalhousie, who was the Governor General for the East India Company in India between 1848 and 1856. By applying the doctrine of lapse, Dalhousie annexed the States of Satara (1848 A.D.), Jaipur (1849 A.D.), Sambhalpur (1849 A.D.), Bahar (1850 A.D.), Udaipur (1852 A.D.), Jhansi (1853 A.D.), and Nagpur (1854 A.D.).
126. (d) The cabinet Mission plan for India envisaged a Union of State. Cabinet Mission of 1946 to India aimed to discuss and plan for the transfer of power from the British Government to Indian leadership, providing India with independence. The mission consisted of Lord Pethick-Lawrence, the Secretary of State for India, Sir Stafford Cripps.
127. (a) The Nizam-ul-Mulk of Hyderabad was a monarch of the Hyderabad State, did not support the revolt of 1857.
128. (d) The Theosophical Society was officially formed in New York City, United States, in November 1875 by Helena Petrovna Blavatsky, Henry Steel Olcott, William Quan Judge and others.
129. (d) Considered as Father of Indian National Movement; Founded "Deccan Education Society" to impart quality education to India's youth; was a member of the Municipal Council of Pune, Bombay Legislature, and an elected 'Fellow' of the Bombay University; formed Home Rule League in 1916 to attain the goal of Swaraj. The Age of Consent Act, 1891 was a legislation enacted in British India on 19 March 1891 which raised the age of consent for sexual intercourse for all girls, married or unmarried, from ten to twelve years in all jurisdictions, its violation subject to criminal prosecution as rape. It was opposed by Hindu nationalists including Bal Gangadhar Tilak.
130. (d) Factory act to improve the condition of Indian labour was not an initiative of reforms of Dalhousie. It is associated with Lord Ripon.
131. (b) Gandhiji had full trust in their bonafides and considered them most valued and respected leaders.
132. (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak interpreted Gita as the scripture of Karmayoga.
133. (c) V.V. GIRI was the fourth president of India from 24 August 1969 to 24 August 1974. He became president of the All India Trade Union Congress twice but was not the founding member of AITUC.
134. (a) It is founded in Aligarh in 1914. It claimed to represent the interests of all Muslim women. Besides working for the social and educational uplift of Muslim women the Anjuman's main contribution was to popularize a new style of burqa pattern on the Turkish model.

135. (c) Above statement was made in the context of Quit India Movement by the Britishers.
136. (c) In fact, their radicalism was bookish; they failed to come to grips with the Indian reality.
137. (d) The word Swarajya was first coined by Bal Gangadhar Tilak. He is known for his quote "Swarajya is my birthright, and I shall have it!"
138. (b) The Gandhi-Irwin Pact was signed by Mahatma Gandhi and Lord Irwin on 5 March 1931 before the second Round Table Conference in London. One of the proposed conditions is Discontinuation of the civil disobedience movement by the Indian National Congress.
139. (c) Hind Swaraj- Gandhi ji's views on Indian Home Rule
My Experience with Truth- Autobiography of Gandhiji
He deployed satyagraha in the Indian independence movement and also during his earlier struggles in South Africa for Indian rights and social Justice.
Bhagavad Gita- Spiritual Lives of Common people.
140. (b) The Theosophical Society was officially formed by Helena Petrovna Blavatsky, Henry Steel Olcott, William Quan Judge in New York in November 1875. Allan Octavian Hume was one of the founders of the Indian National Congress.
141. (d) At the outbreak of the World War II, the Viceroy proclaimed India's involvement without prior consultations with the main political parties. When Congress demanded an immediate transfer of power in return for cooperation of the war efforts, the British government refused. As a result Congress resigned from power in all the provinces.
142. (a) The Ghadar Party was an organization founded by Punjabi Indians in the United States and Canada with the aim of securing India's independence from British rule. After the outbreak of World War I, Ghadar party members returned to Punjab to agitate for rebellion alongside the Babbar Akali Movement.
143. (d) Most of the South Indians participated in the movement except Karnataka which remained unaffected.
- March 1920. Home Rule Movement was started in Poona on 23rd April 1916 by Bal Gangadhar Tilak. Jalianwala Bagh Massacre happened on 13 April 1919 and Rowlatt Act was passed in March 1919. It was an anarchical and revolutionary crimes Act.
12. (a) The correct chronological order of the events is:
Resignation of Congress Ministries 29 Oct 1939
Muslim Deliverance Day 22 Dec 1939
Individual Satyagraha 17 Oct 1940
Direct Action Day 16 Aug 1946
13. (b) Subhashchandra Bose addressed Swami Vivekanand as the Spiritual father of Indian Nationalism.
14. (d) Subhashchandra Bose had not participated in the Quit India Movement. He appeared in I.C.S. examination in 1920 and stood 4th in order of Merit. He was president of Indian National Congress in 1938 and 1939.
15. (a) The correct chronological order of the establishment of revolutionary institution is:
Ghadar Party 1913
Communist Party of India 1925
Hindustan Socialist Republican Association 1928
Congress Socialist Party 1934
16. (c) The correct chronological order of the events related to India's freedom struggle is:
Bomb-hurling at the Central legislative Assembly Hall in Delhi (8 Apr. 1929)
Martyrdom of Jatin Das (13 Sep. 1929)
Martyrdom of Bhagat Singh (23 March, 1931)
Karachi Session of Indian National Congress (March, 1931)
17. (c) The correct chronological orders of the events is:
Champaran Movement 1917
Amritsar Incident 1919
Moplah Revolt 1921
Chauri Chaura Incident 1922
18. (d) The newspapers Sandhya, Yugantar and Kaal advocated revolutionary terrorism during the period of Indian freedom struggle.
19. (c) The correct chronological order is:
The August Offer – 1940
The Cripps Mission Plan – 1942
The Wavell Plan – 1945
The Cabinet Mission Plan – 1946
20. (b) The correct chronological order of the events is:
Formation of an interim government – 1937.
Jinnah's wrecking of the Shimla Conference – 1945.

EXERCISE-2

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (d) 5. (c)
6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (a) 9. (c)
10. (b) Mahatma Gandhi started Satyagraha (Revolt against British) at Champaran district of Bihar followed by the young nationalists like Dr. Rajendra Prasad and J.B. Kriplani.
11. (a) Hunter Committee was appointed in October 1, 1919 for Jalianwala Bagh massacre and gave its report in

- The arrival of the Cabinet Mission – 24 March, 1946.
Muslim League launches Direct Action – 16 Aug. 1946.
21. (d) Swadeshi Movement began in 1905. Home rule movement started in 1916. Non-cooperation movement started in 1920. The civil Disobedience movement started in 1930.
 22. (d) The Government of India Act 1935 provided for the provincial autonomy, the establishment of federal court and all India Federation at the centre.
 23. (b) The Gandhi–Irwin Pact was a political agreement signed by Mahatma Gandhi and the then Viceroy of India, Lord Irwin on 5 March 1931 before the second Round Table Conference in London. The British Government agreed to
 - Withdraw all ordinances and end prosecutions
 - Release all political prisoners, except those guilty of violence
 - Permit peaceful picketing of liquor and foreign cloth shops
 - Restore confiscated properties of the satyagrahis
 - Permit free collection or manufacture of salt by persons near the sea-coast
 - Lift the ban over the congress.
 24. (a) Lord Wavell, the concurrent viceroy of India, gave a clean chit to the Indian Army for its role during the revolt of RIN as it, on a whole, had been most commendably steady.
 25. (b) Although at the national level the ability to galvanize rebellion was limited, the movement is notable for regional success especially at Satara in Maharashtra, Talcher in Odisha, and Midnapore. In Tamluk and Contai subdivisions of Midnapore, the local populaces were successful in establishing parallel governments, which continued to function, until Gandhi personally requested the leaders to disband in 1944.
 26. (a)
 27. (a) Regarding the 3rd June plan. The successor governments would be given dominion status. There was a provision for the Boundary Commission to determine boundaries of the successor states as India and Pakistan.
 28. (d) Kunwar Singh led the Revolt of 1857 in Bihar.
 29. (c) 30. (c) 31. (b) 32. (c) 33. (c)
 34. (b) 35. (a) 36. (a) 37. (b) 38. (a)
 39. (b) 40. (a) 41. (b) 42. (c) 43. (b)
 44. (c)
 45. (a) “Champaran mein Mahatama Gandhi” is associated with Rajendra Prasad. “The springing Tiger” is associated with Hugh Toye. “Living an Era” is associated with D.P. Mishra and “India, from Curzon to Nehru and after” is associated with Durga Das.
 46. (b) Rajendra Lahiri was hanged in Gonda Jail, Sukhdeo (associated with Rajguru and Bhagat Singh) was hanged in Lahore Jail, Roshan Singh was hanged in Allahabad jail and Ram Prasad Bismil was hanged in Gorakhpur Jail. Rajendra Lahiri, Roshan Singh and Ram Prasad Bismil were all associated with Kakori Kand.
 47. (c)

(Person)	(Organisation)
V.S. Srinivas Shastri	Indian National Liberation Federation
V.D. Savarkar	Hindu Mahasabha
Ramaswam Naiekar	Justice Party
B.T. Ranadine	Communist Party of India
 48. (a) Abul Kalam Azad – Al-Hilal
Feroz Shah Mehta – Bombay Chronicle
Annie Besant – New India
Mahatma Gandhi – Young India
 49. (b)
 50. (b) Non-Cooperation Movement started in 1920. Civil Disobedience Movement started in 1930. The formation of Congress ministries took place in 1937. The Quit India Movement began in 1942.
 51. (a) ‘Mother India’ was written by Lady Catherine Mayo. Larry Collins and Dominique Lapierre wrote the book ‘Freedom at midnight’. Ram Manohar Lohia has written the book ‘Guilty men of India’s partition’. J.L. Nehru wrote the book ‘Discovery of India’.
 52. (c) Dr. M.A. Ansari became the President in Madras session. Purushottam Das Tandon became the President in Nasik session. Sarojini Naidu became the President in Kanpur session. Subhash Chandra Bose became the President in Haripura session.
 53. (a) 54. (b) 55. (d) 56. (a)
 57. (b) The Indian National Calendar, sometimes called the Saka calendar, is the official civil calendar in use in India. Saka Calendar begins on 22 March every year except in leap years when it starts on 23 March. The Kushana emperor Kanishka is credited with the initiation of the Saka era on his accession to the throne in 78 A D.
 58. (a) The partition of Bangal took place on 16 October 1905. The Chauri Chaura incident occurred at Chauri Chaura in the Gorakhpur district of the United Province, British India on 5 February 1922. The first Round table conference was opened officially by King George V on November 12, 1930 in London.
 59. (a)

1 st Session	Bombay	Dec. 28-30, 1885	Womesh Chandra Bonnerjee
2 nd Session	Calcutta	Dec. 27-30, 1886	Dadabhai Naoroji
3 rd Session	Madras	Dec. 27-30, 1887	Badruddin Tyabji

60. (d) • Champaran Satyagrah - 1917
• Nagpur Satyagrah - 1923
• Bardoli Satyagrah - 1928
• Rajkot Satyagrah - 1939
61. (a) • G.K Gokhale established The Servants of India Society in Pune, Maharashtra, on June 12, 1905.
• Pandit Madan Mohan Malaviya founded Banaras Hindu University (BHU) at Varanasi in 1916.
• The Swatantra Party was founded by C. Rajagopalachari, was Indian conservative political party that existed from 1959 to 1974.
• Vinayak Damodar Savarkar founded Free India Society(student society).
62. (d) • Illbert Bill- 1883
• Marley Minto Reforms- 1909
• Rowlatt Act- 1919
• Gandhi Irwin pact- 1931
63. (c) Gandhi ji launched Champaran Satyagrah on the repeated request of a local leader, Raj kumar Shukla, Ambalal Sarabhai was an industrialist of Ahmedabad . He gave both personal and financial support to the freedom struggle in Ahmedabad. Indulal Kanaiyalal Yagnik was an independence activist and a leader of the All India Kisan Sabha. He participated in the Kheda Satyagraha(In 1918,) led by Gandhiji. Vallabhbhai Jhaverbhai Patel was a barrister and leader of Indian Independence. He started Bardoli Satyagrah in Gujarat against the raised tax of 30%.
64. (c) Raja Ram Mohan Roy was an Indian socio-educational reformer who was also known as 'Maker of Modern India' and 'Father of Modern India'. He was born on May 22, 1774 into a Bengali Hindu family. He was the founder of the Brahma Samaj, one of the first Indian socio-religious reform movements. He advocated the study of English, Science, Western Medicine and Technology. He was given the title 'Raja' by the Mughal Emperor.
65. (a) Dayanand Saraswati founded the Arya Samaj which was an organization for teaching the true Vedic religion and also a social reform movement. He fought for equal rights for all and emphasized on social upliftment of women and the so-called lower caste. He denounced superstitions and condemned practices such as animal sacrifices.
66. (a) The Doctrine of Lapse was introduced by Lord Dalhousie. The states annexed by the application of this doctrine of lapse were Satara, Jaitpur and Sambalpur, Baghat, Udaipur, Jhansi and Nagpur. Due to this annexation policy discontent simmered among many sections of Indian society and the largely indigenous armed forces; these rallied behind the deposed dynasties during the Indian rebellion of 1857 also known as the Sepoy Mutiny of 1857.
67. (a) All statements are correct.
68. (a) Annie Besant (1847-1933) was the second President of The Theosophical Society from 1907 to 1933. She founded Central Hindu college at Banaras. Besant launched the All India Home Rule League along with Lokmanya Tilak in 1916.
69. (d) On the evening of 30 April 1908, Khudiram threw a bomb on the carriage of Kingsford but it was occupied not by Kingsford but the wife and daughter of barrister Pringle Kennedy were killed instead of Kingsford.
70. (d) Some of the features of Government of India Act 1919(Montague Chelmsford Reforms) are as follows:
- It introduced Diarchy system.
 - The Government of India Act of 1919, made a provision for classification of the central and provincial subjects.
 - The Indian executive comprised of the Governor General and his council.
 - This act made the central legislature bicameral. The first house which was central legislature, with 145 members (out of which 104 elected and 41 nominated) was called central Legislative Assembly and second called with 60 members (out of which 33 elected and 27 nominated) was called Council of States. The term of the assembly was fixed 3 years and council 5 years.
 - The act provided for the establishment of a Public Service Commission in India for the first time.
71. (d) Principles of Satyagrah
- Nonviolence (ahimsa)
 - Truth - this includes honesty, but goes beyond it to mean living fully in accord with and in devotion to that which is true
 - Not stealing
 - Chastity (brahmacharya) - this includes sexual chastity, but also the subordination of other sensual desires to the primary devotion to truth
 - Non-possession (not the same as poverty)
 - Body-labour or bread-labour
 - Control of the palate
 - Fearlessness
 - Equal respect for all religions
 - Economic strategy such as boycott of exported goods (swadeshi)

72. (c) The Indigo revolt of Bengal was directed against British planters who forced peasants to take advances and sign fraudulent contracts which forced the peasants to grow Indigo under terms which were the least profitable to them. Digambar Biswas and Bishnu Biswas who organised the peasants into a counter force to deal with the planters lathiyals (armed retainers). In April 1860 all the cultivators of the Barasat subdivision and in the districts of Pabna and Nadia resorted to strike. They refused to sow any indigo. It led to the appointment of an Indigo Commission in 1860 by the government by which some of the abuses of Indigo cultivation was removed.
73. (a) Santhal Rebellion (January 3, 1856) was a native rebellion in present day Jharkhand in eastern India against both the British colonial authority and upper caste zamindari system by the Santalpeople. The Indigo revolt (or Nilbidroha) was a peasant movement and subsequent uprising of indigo farmers against the indigo planters that arose in Bengal in 1859. Sanyasi means Ascetics and Sadhus. In this rebellion, the Sanyasis or Fakirs including the Hindu and Muslim ascetics stood up against the oppressive tax collection post Bengal famine of 1770. Birsa was an Indian tribal freedom fighter and a folk hero, who belonged to the Munda tribe. (1875-1900)
74. (b)
75. (b) Noncooperation movement, (September 1920-February 1922), was organized by Gandhiji to induce the British government of India to grant self-government, or swaraj, to India. Noncooperation was agreed to by the Indian National Congress at Calcutta in September 1920 and launched that December. The movement was to be nonviolent and to consist of the resignations of titles; the boycott of government educational institutions, the courts, government services, foreign goods, and elections; and the eventual refusal to pay taxes.
76. (d) Ram Manohar Lohia- An Indian politician and activist who was a prominent figure in socialist politics and in the movement toward Indian independence. In 1934 Lohia became actively involved in the Congress Socialist Party (CSP), Lohia wrote his PhD thesis paper on the topic of Salt Taxation in India, focusing on Gandhi's socio-economic theory. "Where caste prevails, opportunity and ability are restricted to ever-narrowing circles of the people", these words from Ram Manohar truly project what he thought of ever-existent caste system in India.
77. (c) The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) is a group of states which are not formally aligned with or against any major power bloc. The organization was founded in Belgrade in 1961. The principles of The Non-Aligned movement were:
- Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty
 - Mutual non-aggression
 - Mutual non-interference in domestic affairs
 - Equality and mutual benefit
 - Peaceful co-existence
78. (b) The Civil Disobedience Movement was formed in the year 1930 and was one of the most important phases in the Indian National Movement. The main ideology behind the Civil Disobedience Movement was to defy the laws made by the British. The British government was pressurized by the Indian National Congress to accept the Nehru Report (1928) as it is. The Calcutta Session of the INC held in 1928 warned the British government that it would start a Civil Disobedience Movement if India was not granted the dominion status. 2nd March 1930 is remembered as one of the important days in Indian history as the Civil Disobedience Movement was launched on that day. The launch triggered off with a Dandi Salt March where the British Salt was broken.
79. (a) The Government created commissions and commissions on one another with an undeclared motive of creating mutual apprehensions and mistrusts. It was the time when the top leaders including Gandhi were failed to understand the political implications of his extensions of support to the cause of Khilafat. Practically, the leaders of Khilafat needed support of Gandhiji only for a defined particular purpose.
80. (a) Swami Vivekananda, known in his pre-monastic life as Narendranath Datta, was born in an affluent family in Kolkata on 12 January 1863. He was a major force in the revival of Hinduism in India, and contributed to the concept of nationalism in colonial India. His vast knowledge of Eastern and Western culture as well as his deep spiritual insight, fervid eloquence, brilliant conversation, broad human sympathy, colourful personality, and handsome figure made an irresistible appeal to many types of Americans who came in contact with

him. Vivekananda founded the Ramakrishna Math and the Ramakrishna Mission. He later travelled to the United States, representing India at the 1893 Parliament of the World Religions.

81. (a)

82. (b) In February March 1918, there was a situation of conflict between the Gujarat Mill owners and workers on the question of Plague Bonus of 1917. The Mill Owners wanted to withdraw the bonus while the workers demanded a 50% wage hike. The Mill Owners were willing to give only 20% wage hike. In March 1918, under the leadership of Gandhi, there was a strike in the cotton mills. In this strike Gandhi used the weapon of Hunger

strike. The result was that the strike was successful and the workers got a 35% wage increase.

83. (c) The Champaran Satyagraha of 1917 was Mahatma Gandhi's first Satyagraha. The peasants (bhumihars) of the Champaran and other areas of North Bihar were growing the Indigo under the tinakathia system. Under the tinakathia system the peasants were bound to plant 3 out of 20 parts of his land with indigo for his landlord. One local peasant leader Rajkumar Shukla had invited Mahatma Gandhi to visit Champaran. The very important outcome of the movement was the enactment of Champaran Agrarian Act assented by Governor General of India on 1st May, 1918.

84. (c)